RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

28, 3
On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.
The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.
JOHANNIS DE TROKELOWE,
et
HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE,
MONACHORUM S. ALBANI,
NECNON QUORUNDAM ANONYMORUM,
CHRONICA ET ANNALES,
REGNANTIBUS HENRICO TERTIO, EDWARDO PRIMO,
EDWARDO SECUNDO, RICARDO SECUNDO,
et HENRICO QUARTO.
CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.

JOHANNIS DE TROKELOWE,
ET
HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE,
MONACHORUM S. ALBANI,
NECNON
QUORUNDAM ANONYMORUM,
CHRONICA ET ANNALES,
REGNANTIBUS HENRICO TERTIO, EDWARDO PRIMO,
EDWARDO SECUNDO; RICARDO SECUNDO,
ET HENRICO QUARTO.

EDITED
BY
HENRY THOMAS RILEY, M.A.,
OF CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;
AND OF THE INNER TEMPLE, BARRISTER-AT-LAW.


PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, READER, AND DYER.
1866.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**Introduction** ix

Walsingham's English History, and its St. Alban's Sources xlv

Opus Chronicorum (MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi.) 3

Johannis de Trokelowe Annales (MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi.) 63

Henrici de Blaneforde Chronica (MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi.) 131

Annales Ricardi Secundi et Henrici Quarti, Regum Anglie (MS. Coll. Corp. Christi, Cant. No. vii.) 155

Interpolations in MS. Cotton. Faustina B. ix. fols. 189 and 198 423

Appendix.—Liber de Benefactoribus Monasterii Sancti Albani (MS. Coll. Corp. Christi, Cant. No. vii.) 427

Glossary 467

Index 479

Index to the Names of Benefactors mentioned in the Appendix 539
INTRODUCTION.
The first of the historical works contained in the present Volume, the *Opus Chronicorum*, is copied from the Cottonian MS. Cladius D. vi., described in the preceding Volume (Rishanger, etc.,) of the *Chronica Monasterii S. Albani*, and belonging to the earlier half of the fourteenth century. The *Opus Chronicorum* is the first in order of the seven works \(^1\) attributed by Bale to William Rishanger, monk of St. Alban's.

Upon examination, however, the difference of style, and the nature of its contents, would alone sufficiently prove that the *Opus* could not possibly have been written by the same person who compiled the \(^2\) Chronicle, which, whether really written by Rishanger or not, now goes under his name. That the writer of the latter work employed the *Opus Chronicorum* in the formation of his own Chronicle, does not admit of a doubt; but beyond that, and the fact that they both were compiled at the Abbey of St. Alban's, there is no connexion whatever between them. So far indeed from their having proceeded from the same pen, not only does the compiler of Rishanger's Chronicle \(^3\) correct errors committed by the writer of the *Opus*, but whereas Rishanger's Chronicle, or at least the latter

---

\(^1\) As the "*Chronicorum Opus*:", see the quotation from Bale in the Volume containing Rishanger's Chronicle, pp. x., xi.

\(^2\) See pp. 3–230 of the preceding Volume (Rishanger, etc.,) of the *Chron. Mon. S. Albani*.

\(^3\) See page xiii. in this Introduction, for example.
part of it, was written after the death of Edward II. (A.D. 1327), the Opus professes (p. 4) to have been compiled at the desire of John, Abbot of St. Alban’s, who can only be identified with John Maryns, Abbot of that place from the close of A.D. 1301 to March 1308; seeing that a murrain is mentioned in the Opus (pp. 37, 38) as having commenced in England A.D. 1274 and lasted for eight-and-twenty years after that date, or, in other words, down to A.D. 1302. The end of the life, too, of Edward I. (July 1307) is almost undoubtedly alluded to in the passage of the Opus (page 50),—“Dominus Rex . . . omnibus diebus vitae suae eam plangebat,”—the King mourned for Queen Alianor all the days of his life; a fact which additionally proves that Maryns must have been the Abbot alluded to, Abbot John de Berkhamsted having died in November 1301, and no Abbot named “John” having succeeded till the election of John Moot (or De la Mote) as Abbot in 1396. The dates also of the various events mentioned in the Opus, as the reader will observe on reference to the Notes and the outer margins, are repeatedly erroneous; whereas in the so-called Rishanger’s Chronicle, though the facts of the Opus have to a considerable extent been made use of, the dates are in general corrected throughout.

The result then is, that the Opus and Rishanger’s Chronicle cannot have been written by the same hand, and indeed the probabilities appear to be that Rishanger was the writer of neither of them; while, on the other hand, it seems by no means improbable that the Gesta Edwardi Primi (printed in pp. 411–424 of the preceding Volume), commencing in A.D. 1297, the year succeeding that in which the narrative


See the Introduction to the preceding Volume of the Chron. Mon. S. Albanian (Rishanger, etc.), p. xxv.
of the Opus ends, and to which Rishanger has annexed his name as the writer (p. 411), was intended by him as a Continuation of, or companion to, the Opus Chronicorum.

The monastic writer of the Opus, in his Proemium—which looks somewhat like a faint, very faint, imitation of the opening passages of Sallust's Bellum Catilinarium—makes somewhat large promises (in a very confused kind of Latin), though his results unfortunately are comparatively small; and what is even more vexatious, whereas he says (p. 4) that of much of his later matter he himself has been an eye-witness—"de recentioribus statibus vel ipse vidi, vel a fidedignis viris audivi," his history becomes more and more meagre in its details as it approaches his own times, and ultimately fades away into a few disjointed memoranda for the later years, carelessly thrown together.

After cursorily reviewing the primary causes of the dissensions between Henry III. and the Barons (pp. 4, 5), and touching upon the Provisions of Oxford (p. 5), the writer passes on (pp. 6-9), though under incorrect dates, to the transactions of A.D. 1261, 2; the matter of which has been pretty closely adhered to in Rishanger's Chronicle (pp. 8-10). The context then passes on, almost immediately, to A.D. 1264, the Battle of Lewes; the account of which is wholly abandoned in Rishanger's Chronicle for more copious and more valuable materials. The description, however, in the Opus, of the miseries inflicted on the country by the civil war, and of the injunctions of De Montfort against pillage (p. 12), appears in the pages of the Chronicle; the same, too (pp. 32, 33), with the account

1 "Voluntati fuit interrupta tem- porum seriem resarcire," page 4.
2 Probably, either the Wars of the Barons, undoubtedly written by Rishanger, or the sources from which that Chronicle was derived.
INTRODUCTION.

Collation of the contents of the Opus Chronicorum with the text of Rishanger’s Chronicle.

of the intended Tournament at Dunstable, A.D. 1265, and the anger of the Earl of Gloucester consequent on its prohibition (Opus, pp. 14, 15). The description of the treatment of the body of De Montfort, as given in the Opus (p. 18), the cutting off of the head, and but one foot, is corrected in the account given in Rishanger’s Chronicle (p. 7); though even there not to the real extent of its revolting details, as given in the Liber de Antiquis Legibus.

In page 20 of the Opus, the town of St. Alban’s is mentioned as having been strongly fortified during the Wars of the Barons; an account which is duly transferred to Rishanger’s Chronicle, though it omits to add, as stated in the Opus, that the town thence gained the name of “Little London” (Minor Londonia) throughout all England: a name which, we learn from other sources, it still retained for at least forty years afterwards.

The act of fatal folly committed by Gregory de Stokes, Constable of Hertford (p. 21), is closely copied in Rishanger’s Chronicle (pp. 38, 39); the same, too, with the account (p. 22) of the miraculous punishment of the despoilers of the Cell of St. Giles (Chron., p. 40). The rather questionable compliment paid to Edward the First (p. 26), by way of illustration of his martial prowess, in comparing him to Ishmael,—“His hand being against every man, and every man’s hand against him,” is, rather singularly, repeated in the Annales Anglice et Scotice (p. 378), printed in the preceding Volume of the Chron. Monast. S. Albani, whoever the writer of that narrative may have been. Rishanger’s Chronicle (p. 64) mentions by anticipation, from a like mention in the

1 The same account is given in Rishanger’s Wars of the Barons.

2 In a letter (an authentic copy of which is still preserved in the Public Record Office) written by Edward II., when Prince of Wales (A.D. 1304), to his bailiff at Langley, he speaks of certain persons of his retinue as then residing at “Little London” (Petite Londres).
Opus (p. 26), the marriage of the Princess Joanna of Acre to Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester; but omits the additional account, given in the Opus, of her ultimate marriage (A.D. 1297) to a man of inferior rank (Ralph de Monthermer); together with her illogical answer (p. 27) to her father, Edward I., when taken to task by him or his advisers for so demeaning herself.

The narrative of the destruction of Norwich Cathedral by fire (A.D. 1272), as given in Rishanger’s Chronicle (pp. 73, 74), appears to have been partly borrowed from the Opus (p. 28); with an addition, however, as to the employment of Sir Thomas Trivet, as Justiciar, in the work of punishing those accused of the crime; information derived either from the Annales of Nicholas Trivet, the Dominican, who was a son of the Justiciar, or from his sources. But whereas the text of the Opus informs us (p. 28) that some of those convicted were hanged, while some were condemned to be drawn by horses, and others to be burnt, these horrible details are corrected, and somewhat modified, in the text of the Chronicle, which merely states that many were condemned to be drawn at horses’ tails and hanged. So, too, in the text page 29 of the Opus, where we are somewhat grandiloquently informed that Charles I., King of Sicily, with all his army, was lost at sea on his return from Tunis, is corrected in the Chronicle (p. 67):—“The sea swallowed up nearly all his army, and his treasure brought from Tunis, together with all his baggage.”

Prince Edward’s resolution, on hearing of these disasters (p. 29), to enter Acre, even if accompanied solely by Fowin, his palfreyman, is closely copied in the
Collation of the contents of the *Opus Chronicon* with the text of Rishanger’s Chronicle.

Chronicle (pp. 67, 68). The same, too, with the account of Edward being wounded at Acre by an assassin (Chron. pp. 69, 70); though we learn from the Chronicle the additional fact, that, in wresting the knife from his antagonist, Edward was wounded in the forehead and in the hand; while again, no mention is made in the Chronicle of the mode adopted of stanching the flow of blood, by the application of precious stones, as alleged in the *Opus* (p. 30). The somewhat full account (p. 31) of Edward’s reasons for not taking vengeance on the Saracens is abridged in the Chronicle (pp. 70, 71). The account of the death of Henry III., and particulars as to his wife and children, as given in the *Opus*, are transferred to Rishanger’s Chronicle, and have thence found their way (through MS. Reg. 13 E. ix.) to the pages of Walsingham. The \(^1\) same, too, as to the character of Henry depicted in the *Opus* (pp. 35, 36); a character, marked by an attention to religious formalities, which might have been an indication of really conscientious feeling in a good man, but which could have been nothing but a debased superstition in a person so utterly destitute of principle as he repeatedly proved himself to be. The account, again, of Henry’s last moments and death (p. 36) is closely copied in Rishanger’s Chronicle (pp. 73, 74), and from thence (through MS. Reg. 13 E. ix., previously mentioned,) into the pages of Walsingham; but, whereas the *Opus* says (p. 36) that Henry received the Eucharist in both kinds—“*corpus et sanguinem devote suscepit,*”—the compiler of the Chronicle, in a spirit perhaps of more rigid orthodoxy, has omitted all mention of the latter,—“*deinde devote suscepit corpus Christi*” (p. 74) being the words of his text.

The account (pp. 37, 38) of the disease among sheep, introduced A.D. 1274, and which lasted for eight-and-twenty years, appears in the pages of the Chronicle.

\(^1\) See Rish. *Chron.* pp. 74, 75.
INTRODUCTION.

(p. 84); and so too with the account (p. 40) of King Edward’s capture of Anglesey, and the losses of the English army in Wales (Rish. p. 103). The details of the grief manifested by Edward for the death of his Queen, Alianor, the solemn reception of her remains at St. Alban’s, and the honours generally paid to her memory, are also transferred to Rishanger’s text (pp. 120, 121). The account (pp. 50, 51) of the origin of the dissensions between England and France, A.D. 1292, is also borrowed in Rishanger’s Chronicle (pp. 130, 131); and the closing lines of the Opus (p. 59), a narrative of the disturbances between the scholars and burgesses of Oxford, are also closely followed in the pages of that work (p. 167).

It only remains to add, in reference to the Opus Chronicorum, that, like the other works from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi. printed in the preceding Volume of the Chronica Monasterii S. Albani, it is now published for the first time.

Johannis de Trokelowe ¹Annales, A.D. 1307–1323—The second work in the present Volume, is also transcribed from the Cotton. MS. Claudius D. vi., the St. Alban’s book so often mentioned, and the only manuscript, it is believed, of the work known to exist. The Annales were edited, with the Chronicle of Henry de Blaneforde, in 1729 (Oxford) by Thomas Hearne, with about the average amount of his usual accuracy: owing to the limited number of copies ori-

¹ It seems not improbable that William Rishanger himself originally contemplated writing these Annales; but that, through death, or some other cogent cause, the compilation of them fell into the hands of other inmates of the House. However this may have been, in his Gestæ Edvardi Primi, p. 421, Rishanger refers to his intended narration of a fact which occurred after the death of Edward I.,—¹ sicut “postea declarabitur,” and to the accession of Edward II. (p. 424), in the words—“prout appareti “inferius.”

² About fifty errors of his will be found pointed out in the Notes.
Of the writer himself of these Annales, beyond his name, mentioned in folio 210a. of the MS., no information whatever has survived. The work, though limited to the reign of Edward II., was evidently compiled after the death of that sovereign, and at a date at least as late in the reign of Edward III. as the year 1330; for in page 111 it will be found that the writer clearly alludes to the end of both the Roger Mortimers, the Elder and the Younger, the latter of whom was executed on the 29th of November in that year. It deserves remark also, that when the writer penned the above passage, it could not have been other than his intention to continue his history at least down to that date. Why he stopped short in the year 1323, the narrative being there taken up by his successor, Blaneforde, we are not informed.

Trokelowe’s Annales, from the occasional want of chronological accuracy which is easily to be detected in them, bear strong marks of having been compiled from a mass of notes, probably accumulated from time to time, and destitute to a considerable extent of any chronological details. In other respects, his history is of considerable value as an authority for the reign of Edward II.: it has been extensively employed as material by the compiler of MS. Reg. 13 E. ix., and through him has become the basis, in a great measure, of Walsingham’s History of that reign, down to the year 1323. Trokelowe’s style and Latinity, though
far from classical, are in general superior to that of the works in the same volume that have been attributed to Rishanger. His language is inflated and grandiloquent at times, and is generally somewhat altered (perhaps not always for the better) by the compiler of MS. Reg. 13 E. ix.; consequently appearing in the pages of Walsingham in the same altered form.

It has been already shown, that with Bale and his copyists there certainly has been a tendency to attribute to Rishanger’s pen more than is justly its due. Somewhat singularly, a similar tendency had been manifested by the compiler of MS. Reg. 13 E. ix. (Walsingham’s basis) more than a century and a half before. While copying from Trokelowe’s pages, he evidently supposed himself to be indebted to a compilation made by Rishanger; for, on one occasion, when referring his readers to his sources for further information, he uses these words:—“Cætera qui voluerit videre plenius, in Chronicis Willelmi Rysangre, apud Sanctum Albanum, plenius poterit reperire; ubi Recordatum Regis habetur de omnibus memoratis,”—a reference which points, beyond all question, to the contents of Trokelowe’s Annales, as given in pp. 112-124 of the present Volume. The suggestion made by Mr. T. Duffus Hardy, the present Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, in page 30 of his General Introduction to the Monumenta Hist. Brit., solves the error, in all probability:—“Walsingham”—[or rather, MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi.] See the inner margins of Vol. I. of Walsingham’s Hist. Angl. pp. 119-169.

2 See the Introduction to the preceding Volume of the Chronica Mon. S. Albani; also pages 9 and 10 ante.

3 See Walsingham’s Historia Angl. I. pp. 165 and xvi. The passage alluded to, bears reference to the execution of numerous English nobles on the charge of conspiring with Thomas, Earl of Lancaster; the record and process of judgment against the Earl being also given.
Reg. 13 E. ix., Walsingham’s basis]—“seems to have been misled by observing at the head of the MS. “1 No. 4 in the same volume as these Annals (Cott. "Claud. D. vi. 9) these words,—*Incip. Cron. fratris W. de Rishanger;* and the subsequent articles [down] “to Blaneford having no titles at the beginning, he “supposed that the whole was written by Rishanger, “overlooking Trokelowe’s name at the end of 2 No. 9.”

**Henrici de Blaneforde Chronica, A.D. 1323, 1324**—

the third work in the present Volume, follows the *Annales* of Trokelowe in folio 210 a. of MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi., 3 without any interval, and has rubrics in apparently the same hand as Trokelowe throughout. The Proemium is of a lengthy and somewhat ambitious nature, commencing in a religious vein, and then passing on to the early inhabitants of Albion, and the victories gained over its giant population by Brut and Corinæus; though the work itself has all the appearance of having been originally intended merely as a Continuation of Trokelowe’s *Annales*. For though the writer (in page 132) would appear, from the nature of his language, to have been compiling almost at the moment of the conclusion of the truce with Scotland A.D. 1323, (and consequently before the 4 date which has been assigned to the compilation of Trokelowe’s *Annales*), yet his Chronicle enters upon the year 1324, and in one instance (p. 147), it alludes to an event, the death of the elder Mortimer in prison, which took place in 1326. It has been already noticed that Trokelowe’s *Annales* were probably compiled after A.D.

---

1 The *Wars of the Barons*, MS. Claudius D. vi., folio 97 a.

2 Page 127 of this Volume. See also the facsimile at the beginning of this Volume.

3 See the facsimile at the beginning of this Volume.

4 After A.D. 1330; see p. xvi. ante.
1330; and if so, supposing Blaneforde’s Chronicle was originally intended as a Continuation of it, it must also have been written after that date.

Of Henry de Blaneforde, monk of St. Alban’s, the writer of this brief and mutilated Chronicle, nothing beyond the name, given at the beginning of his work, appears to be known. The Chronicle is mentioned in Walsingham (from MS. Reg. 13 E. ix.) as that of Henry “Blankforde,” while by others, again, of the old writers, he is called “Blancfront.” In the Liber Benefactorum (p. 448 of this Volume), a Walter Blancfront is mentioned, as having given (at some unrecorded date) the church of Potesgrave to the Abbey of St. Alban’s. The place now known as “Blanquefort,” near Bordeaux, is called “Blanckeforde” in the Annales de Waverleia (p. 404), edited by Mr. Luard in this Series, and it seems not improbable that Henry de Blaneforde was a native of, or through his family derived his origin from, that place, which then belonged to the English crown. It is impossible to say or surmise to what date Blaneforde’s Chronicle originally extended, as it is now nothing more than a fragment, and ends abruptly in A.D. 1324, the part which originally followed folio 215 b. being lost, and no other copy of it known to exist. In style and general merits it assimilates to Trokelowe’s Annales, with which it has been printed by Hearne, and (through MS. Reg. 13 E. ix.) the greater part of its matter has been transferred to the pages of Walsingham’s History.

Annales Ricardi Secundi et Henrici Quarti, Regum Anglie, A.D. 1392–1406.—It has been already noticed in the Introduction (p. vii.) to the Second Volume of Wal-

singham’s History, that MS. No. vii., Coll. Corp. Christi Cambridge (or rather, the collection of MSS. bound up in one volume, and so numbered), has been incorrectly described in Nasmith’s Catalogue (1777) as containing no less than five distinct MS. Histories, in the following terms;—“1. Historia Anglica ab anno 1377 ad annum 1400. 2. Historia Anglica ab anno 1404 ad annum 1409. 3.—ab anno 1393 ad annum 1403. 4.—ab anno 1400 ad annum 1406. 5.—ab anno 1393 ad annum 1422;” whereas, correctly speaking, it contains but three such Histories. Since the above was written, thanks to the courtesy of the Master and Fellows of Corpus Christi College, always so readily accorded in the cause of literary research, the Editor has been enabled to examine every page of these historical materials for the reigns of Richard II. and his two immediate successors, with the following results.—The volume contains three distinct historical works in reference to the above-mentioned reigns, and no more. The first of these MSS. (A.D. 1377–1405) embraces (taking them in their correct order) pages 1–28 of the volume, 43, 44, 31, 32, 71, 72, 101–104, 89, 90, 41, 42, 29, 30, 45–48, being imperfect at the end. The second MS. (A.D. 1392–1406) is a Continuation of the Manuscript in the Royal Library at the British Museum, 13 E. ix. (fols. 177–326); and embraces pp. 49–70, 73–88, 91–100, 83–40, 105–136, of the Corpus volume in its present state. The third of the MSS. (A.D. 1392–1422) begins at page 137, and ends at page 182, the earlier part of the History, previous to A.D. 1392, being lost.

Now the compiler of the so-called Walsingham’s History (MS. Arundel. Coll. Arm. No. vii.), on coming to the end of his materials in the St. Alban’s volume, now known as MS. Reg. 13 E. ix., and proceeding with

---

1 The Histories were thrown together in this confused state, as early at least as the middle of the fifteenth century. See page xxi.
INTRODUCTION.

materials drawn from the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii., seems to have overlooked the fact that MS. (2) in that volume, the first folio (pp. 49, 50) of which is in the same handwriting as his previous source, MS. Reg. 13 E. ix., was undoubtedly the legitimate Continuation of that History down to A.D. 1406; the other MSS. (1) and (3), being little more than condensations of, or abstracts from, it between the dates A.D. 1392-1406. It was owing to this oversight, in all probability, that he adopted the text of No. (3), and consequently of much of that of No. (1), (from which No. (3) was immediately compiled); taking no notice whatever of No. (2), the original of them both, and, as being the most circumstantial in its narrative, by far the most valuable of the three.

At the foot of the first page of the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii., as already remarked in the Introduction to the Second Volume of Walsingham's History (p. viii.), in large characters, there is written the following Note:—

"Hunc librum cronicalem tam gestorum regum quam
"abbatum, post mortem Domini Willelmi Wyntershylle
"in quaternis derelictum, connecti fecit Domnus
"Roberius Ware; et licet diversae materiei diversa
"sunt, propter defectus quaternorum, non consonantium;
"studeat tamen lector flores mellifluos et coloribus
"amaricatos, prout tempora fuerunt, degustare, timere,
"et refutare." From this Note we may perhaps be enabled to gain some idea, if not as to the authorship of the whole of these three historical pieces, of the circumstances attending the compilation of one of them, at least.

From MS. Cotton. Claudius E. iv., a St. Alban's volume, we learn that William Wyntershylle, monk of St. Alban's, was present at the election of Abbot John Moot, in the

1 The two Abbots whose lives are treated of at considerable length in a narrative bound up in the latter part of the volume, are Thomas de la Marc, who died A.D. 1396, and John Moot, who died in 1401.
INTRODUCTION.

of William Wyntershylle.

year 1396. Holding no abbey office at that time, we may judge approximately of his age by his then standing in the list of monks who voted. In this list of monks, sixty in number, he is the thirtieth, and consequently may have then been, in all probability, from forty to forty-five years of age. In a description of the state of the Abbey Church of St. Alban's, during the early part of the abbacy of John Whethamstede, A.D. 1429, the Harleian MS. 3775 (evidently a compilation made at St. Alban's) mentions the fact that (translated),—In the nave of the church, opposite the iron gate that closes the Chapel of the Blessed Virgin, near to the pillar, lies the body of Sir William Wyntyrshulle, formerly almoner of this church, chaplain to four abbots, and cross-bearer; a man of great learning, and who, with the aid of Sir Robert Ware, the Bursar, decorated the altar of the Reclining Cross and of St. Laurence with pictures, books, and ornaments. And he furnished the same Chapel of St. Mary with books, vestments, and other requisites for the altar, in various ways according to the requirements of the festivals.” In another place the same authority says,—“There is also another altar, consecrated in the north aisle by brother William Wyntyrshulle, in honour of our Saviour, the Holy Virgin, St. Laurence, and St. Blaise;” and again,—“There is an altar there before the image of the Blessed Virgin Mary (in the south aisle), erected by the care and at the expense of our bro-

1 From MS. Lansdowne 375 we learn that he was almoner A.D. 1381, 2.
2 This date is ascertained from fol. 137 a.; where A.D. 1429 is mentioned as the current year, in reference to an inventory of articles that had been given by Wyntershylle to the altar of St. Laurence.
3 Fol. 134 a.
4 Latin: Dominus;—the “Dan” of Chaucer and the early poets.
5 Latin: Crucis Inclinatior; meaning probably the instrument of martyrdom of St. Laurence.
6 Fol. 136 a.
7 Fol. 136 b.
INTRODUCTION.

"ther, William Wyntyrshulle; and during all histime
very handsomely kept up, as more fully appears in
"the Roll of Benefactors thereof." This, beyond a doubt,
is the same William Wyntershylle who is mentioned
in the foot-note above quoted (p. xxi). He is here
spoken of as having been a man of great learning; and as
he died probably somewhere about 1424, it seems highly
probable that the Corpus Christi volume, left by him at
his death in loose sheets, or quires,—"post mortem in
"quaternis derelictum,"—or at least the historical com-
pilation from the others, MS. (3), A.D. 1392-1422, was
either his own composition, or compiled under his im-
mediate supervision. The "Domnus Robertus Ware,
also mentioned in the above foot-note, stands fifty-second
in the list of monks who voted at the election of Abbot
John Moot in 1396, while again his name stands first
among the monks, not holding office, who were present
at the re-election of Abbot John Whethamstede in
1451. No reference has hitherto been found to any
office held by Robert Ware in the Abbey during his
earlier years, which may have entailed upon him the
duties of "Scriptorarius;" but we have already seen him
acting as coadjutor with Wyntershylle in the decoration
of the altar of St. Laurence, and it not improbably was
at an early moment after the death of Wyntershylle
(between A.D. 1420 and 1430) that he caused these

1 The Bodleian MS. No. 462 may
not improbably have furnished his
text from A.D. 1406 to 1422.
That it was originally a St. Alban's
volume, from internal evidence there
can be but little doubt.

2 In the Registr. Roberti Blake-
ney,—Arundel Collection, in the
College of Arms.

3 In MS. Harl. 3775, already
quoted, he is mentioned as having
held the offices of Bursar and Kitch-
ener (Coquinarius).

4 Meaning, no doubt, keeper of the
scriptorium, or copying-room. From
the life of Abbot Thomas de la Mare,
in MS. Corpus Christi, No. vii., we
learn that Thomas Walsingham was
for some time Scriptorarius of St.
Alban's, while at the same time he
held the precentorship: see Wal-
singham's History, Vol. II., Introd.
p. xx.
INTRODUCTION.

The Corpus Christi volume were scattered sheets to be bound together in their present disarranged form; though some of the commencing folios of MS. (3) had, even then, in all probability, been lost.

The reader, on referring to the Second Volume of the Historia Anglicana, hitherto attributed to Walsingham, will find by reference to the inner margins that the compiler has borrowed the whole of his matter from the end of A.D. 1392 to 1422, the close of his History, pp. 211-346, from MS. (3) of the Corpus Christi volume No. vii., hardly a word of its text being varied or omitted in his compilation. The portions again of MS. (1) in the Corpus Christi volume (A.D. 1392-1405) which have been omitted in the compilation of MS. (3) in that volume, and consequently do not appear in the pages of Walsingham, will be found in Appendix (D.) to the Second Volume, pp. 411-424.

The following collation, it is believed, will abundantly shew how great an oversight was committed in the compilation of Walsingham's History from A.D. 1393 to 1406, by the adoption of the very meagre details of the mere abstract contained in MS. (3); in place of the circumstantial and interesting narrative contained in MS. (2), which may perhaps be not undeservedly pronounced the most valuable memorial of the period that we now possess.

The yearly Summary at the close of A.D. 1392 (Transiit annus, etc.), in page 156 of this Volume, which we might naturally look for in MS. (2) as being the legitimate Continuation of MS. Reg. 13 E. ix., at the

---

1 The volume is no longer in its original binding, but in paper and leather, of apparently the close of the last century.
2 Cited there as MS. Corp. Chr. vii. (5), the title given to it in Nasmith's Catalogue.
3 From which the preceding part of Walsingham's History (A.D. 1272-1392) has been derived.
end of each year, is now abandoned in Walsingham’s text.

A.D. 1393.—The account (p. 156) of the death of Sir John Devreux, and the appointments consequent thereon, is fuller than in Walsingham (Vol. ii. p. 213). The statement (pp. 157, 158) as to the magnificent equipment of John, Duke of Lancaster, as one of the English envoys, and of the temporary truce concluded with France, is omitted in Walsingham: the refusal, for a time, of the people of Bordeaux to admit Henry Percy the Younger (Hotspur) as their Custos, or Warden (p. 158), is also unrecorded in that work. The same, too, with the account of the visitation of St. Alban’s by two monks of Ramsey, given in page 158. The miracles wrought by the remains of Baldwin, Abbot of Bury (p. 159), are not mentioned in Walsingham. The detailed accounts of the sedition in the County of Chester, through distrust of the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester, and the Earl of Derby (afterwards Henry IV.); of the outbreak at York, through a dispute between Sir R. Rokele and one Bekwythe; of the ultimate quelling of the insurrection by the Duke of Lancaster; of his raising troops there for the King’s service in other parts; of the Duke of Gloucester’s readiness to defend his brother; and of the accusation of the Earl of Arundel of contemplated treason (pp. 159-162), are wholly omitted in Walsingham. The same, too, with the narrative of the treachery practised towards the Queen of Spain (Castille), daughter of the Duke of Lancaster, and her final escape (pp. 162-164). The account of the restoration of Cherbourg by King Richard to the King of Navarre (p. 164) is fuller than in Walsingham (p. 214). The account of the pollution of the Church of St. Paul, London, with human blood; and that of the irruption of the Scots into Northumberland, the censure of the

1 Repeated, by inadvertence, in pp. 169, 170.
Collation of the contents of Walsingham's History (A.D. 1392–1406) with the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii. MS. (2).

Earl of Northumberland for his remissness in checking them, and the commendation of his son, Ralph Percy, for his vigour (p. 164), are unnoticed in Walsingham. The same, also, as to the account of the munificence shown by one German, a shoemaker of St. Alban’s, and the Summary with which the year concludes (p. 165).

A.D. 1394.—The accounts given of the detection of a cutpurse by King Richard at a high festival, held at Christmas in his palace at Westminster; of the tournament held by certain nobles, clothed in monastic garb; and of the pollution of Lincoln Cathedral (pp. 165, 166), are omitted in Walsingham. The insidious attack upon Sir Thomas Strother, Governor of Jedburgh Castle, by Sir William English, and of the ultimate defeat of Strother in single combat; the accounts given of disastrous fires in various parts of England; of the visit of King Richard to St. Alban’s; of the concessions then promised by him, but never performed; and of the great abundance of wine and wheat at this period (pp. 166–168) receive no notice in Walsingham’s pages. The burials of Constance, Duchess of Lancaster, and of Mary, wife of Henry, Earl of Derby (afterwards Henry IV.), on consecutive days (p. 168) at Leicester, are also unnoticed in Walsingham. The character given to Isabella, the lately deceased Duchess of York (p. 169), as being “munda et venerea”—“worldly and wanton”; and the hit at the Dominicans of Langley (the near neighbours of the St. Alban’s people), where the Duchess was buried, and “where, it is said, the bodies of many traitors have been deposited” (p. 169)—in allusion, no doubt, to Piers de Gaveston, among others,—are omitted in Walsingham. The same, also, as to the account (p. 169) of the Duke of Lancaster crossing over to receive the

---

1 At the time when this was written, the body of King Richard was temporarily reposing there. | Edmund de Langley, Duke of York, was also buried there.
Dukedom of Aquitaine, and of the objection shown by the people to receive any other person than the King himself, or his immediate heir. The death of Sir John Hawkwood, the English soldier of fortune, in Italy (p. 171), is expatiated on at more length than in Walsingham (p. 215). The reasons suggested for the order being issued for the Irish throughout England to return to their own country, their alleged mercenary tendencies, and the acts of violence and rapine committed by them on their departure (p. 172), are omitted in Walsingham (p. 215). The names also of the native Irish chieftains who were compelled to submit (pp. 172, 173) are not mentioned there (p. 215).

A.D. 1395.—The "Conclusions" fixed by the Lollards upon the doors of St. Paul’s and Westminster Abbey (pp. 174–182) are not given in Walsingham’s text. The account also of the principal supporters of these Conclusions, and of Richard’s manner of dealing with them on his return to England (pp. 182, 183), is more full and circumstantial than that given in Walsingham (p. 217); while the verses fixed by the Lollards upon the doors of St. Paul’s (pp. 182, 183) are wholly omitted there; as is also the death of Richard Stury (p. 183), one of the chief supporters of the Lollards. The story related (in pp. 183, 184) of the singular fraud practised by an Esquire of Staffordshire and one John Colby upon the religious houses of Essex and Suffolk, is omitted in Walsingham. The statement (p. 185) that King Richard placed gold rings of great value upon the fingers of the corpse of Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, when re-interred at Colne in Essex, is omitted in Walsingham’s account of the re-interment (p. 219).

A.D. 1396.—The narrative of the interview between the Kings of England and France, near Calais, previous

1 Given, however, in a most unintelligible form, as to nomenclature.  

2 Having been brought from Louvain, where he died, A.D. 1392.
Collation of the contents of Walsingham's History (A.D. 1392–1406) with the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii. MS. (2). to the marriage of the Princess Isabella to King Richard (pp. 188–194), is much more detailed and circumstantial than the comparatively meagre account given in Walsingham's History (pp. 220, 221). The death of Thomas De la Mare, Abbot of St. Alban's, and the succession of John Moot as Abbot (p. 195), are unnoticed in Walsingham.

A.D. 1397.—The creation of Thomas Beaufort, son of John, Duke of Lancaster, and Katherine de Swynford, as Earl of Somerset (p. 195), is omitted in Walsingham; the same, also, with the ordinance (p. 195) that the Justiciars in future shall have no assessors. The curious story of how a widow and her children were vexed by a spirit (pp. 196, 197), and the account (pp. 197–199) of a most determined act of self-destruction through a similar agency, are also omitted in Walsingham. The account of the news brought from Germany of the intended election of King Richard as Emperor, is given (pp. 199, 200) with much greater circumstantiality than in Walsingham's text, (pp. 222, 223). The privileges alleged to have been granted by the Pope to John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon (pp. 200, 201) are passed over unnoticed in Walsingham. The whole of the circumstances attending the arrest of the Earls of Arundel and Warwick (pp. 202, 203), and, in particular, the circumstantial account of the arrest of the Duke of Gloucester at Pleshy, in Essex, by Richard himself in person (pp. 203–206), are entirely omitted in Walsingham; and so also, the fulfilment of a prevalent prophecy on the fall of the Duke, and the public sorrow manifested for the capture of these nobles (p. 206). The account of the body-guard formed for the King's protection from among the “malefactors” of the County of Chester, their misdeeds, and their acts of rapine and violence (pp. 207, 208) are barely noticed in Walsingham's text, being dismissed in three lines only (p. 224). The account of other arbitrary acts of King Richard, the
character of Sir John Bushy, and the demand by him of the impeachment of the Duke of Gloucester and the Archbishop of Canterbury, with the description of Bushy's abject adulation of King Richard (pp. 209, 210), are omitted altogether in Walsingham. Again, the account of the annulment of the charters of pardon of the cowardice shown by the prelates in reference thereto, and of the submission of all the prelates, with one exception, to the King's dictation (pp. 210, 213), is curtailed in Walsingham's text (p. 224) into a notice of thirteen lines only. The circumstantial and interesting account of the trial and sentence of the Earl of Arundel, of his charitable munificence to the poor between Westminster and Charing Cross, when proceeding to the place of execution, and of the indignities inflicted upon him by Richard's Chester men, just before his death (pp. 214-218), is also compressed in Walsingham into a single page (p. 225); while the marvellous, and certainly very doubtful, fact of the headless body rising on its feet, and standing erect during a time sufficient to allow of the repetition of the Lord's Prayer (p. 218), is unnoticed there. The particulars of Richard's terrors after Arundel's execution, and of the exhumation of the headless corpse, in order to allay his fears, are given much more fully (pp. 218, 219) than in Walsingham (p. 226). The banishment of six or seven Augustinian Friars for daring to sympathize with the Earl (p. 219) is unnoticed in Walsingham. The account of the trial of the Earl of Warwick (pp. 225, 226) is considerably abbreviated in that text (p. 226); while the hypocritical tears of King Richard, the Duke of Lancaster, and others present on the occasion, pass without notice. The same, also, with the interrogatories administered to the Duke of Gloucester at Calais by the Irish Justiciar, William de Rikille (p. 221). The hesitation shown by the Earl of Nottingham, (the Earl Marshal), at first, when ordered to
Collation of the contents of Walsingham’s History (A.D. 1392–1406) with the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii. MS. (2.)

put the Duke to death (p. 221), is unnoticed in Walsingham (p. 226); together with the threat alleged to have been uttered by Richard, that in case of refusal, Nottingham himself should be slain. The account too (p. 221) of the perpetration of the murder is more circumstantial than that given in Walsingham (p. 226); and the same as to the particulars of King Richard adding to his shield the arms of St. Edward the Confessor (p. 223, Wals. p. 227). The account of the new creations of Earls, Marquises, and “Dukelings” (Duketti), as the populace derisively called them, and of the tyranny and malevolence now openly displayed by the reckless sovereign, with the names of his principal advisers (pp. 223, 224), is not found in Walsingham’s pages.

A.D. 1398.—The proceedings against Sir John de Cobham (p. 224) are not given in Walsingham’s text (p. 227); and there is a similar omission as to the breach of the promise made to him and the Earl of Warwick by Richard, of sufficient maintenance while in exile at Guernsey and the Isle of Man. The general pardon granted at the termination of the Parliament held at Shrewsbury this year (pp. 224, 225), is omitted in Walsingham. The circumstances attending the quarrel between the Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk, the indications of popular feeling in favour of the Duke of Hereford, and the interference of King Richard to prevent the duel (pp. 225, 226), are given with a minuteness that is not to be found in Walsingham (pp. 227, 228). The alleged threats of the Sultan Bajazet against the Pope and Cardinals, the aid given to the Emperor of Constantinople by King Richard, in money but not in men, and the prophecy uttered by William Norham, the hermit, with his imprisonment in the Tower by Richard’s order (pp. 231, 232), are omitted in Walsingham. The same, also, as to the

---

1 The “—— Cobham” of our text (p. 224) appears in the form of two Cobhams, John and Reginald in Walsingham, p. 227.
account of how Richard was deceived by false prophets, and of the flatteries proffered to him, to his ultimate ruin (pp. 233, 234). The account of the extortion by Richard of money from various Counties, under the name of "Le Plesaunce" (pp. 234, 235. Deinde — libertatem), is omitted in Walsingham (p. 231); and so likewise, the extortion by Richard from certain of his subjects (p. 236) of deeds signed in blank, with the view, it was said, of filling them up with consents to the sale of Calais to the King of France. The same, also, as to the fact of Richard now entrusting himself exclusively to his body-guard of Cheshire men; an alleged prophecy, and the explanation thereof in reference to him; the curious circumstance of his having been originally baptized by the midwives at his birth, in the name of "John;" and the outspoken expression of his fears, before departing for Ireland (pp. 237, 238). The successes of the Duke of Surrey and of the German commander, in Ireland (p. 239), are omitted in Walsingham; and so, also, is the account of the bad feeling of his English subjects towards Richard, of his alleged designs against them, and his apprehensions of the more wealthy of their number (pp. 239, 240). The statement as to the alleged promise of assistance to Henry, Duke of Lancaster, from the French; the enumeration of his adherents, other than the Archbishop of Canterbury and the Earl of Arundel; and the good wishes in England for his success, though not openly expressed (pp. 241, 242), do not appear in Walsingham; while the whole of the particulars of the landing of the Duke of Lancaster, the flight of Richard’s councillors, and the execution of certain of them (pp. 244–247), are here given in greater detail than in Walsingham’s text (pp. 232, 233). The conversation of King Richard with Henry, the Duke’s eldest son, in reference to his father’s invasion (p. 247), is omitted in Walsingham. Richard’s loss of time, also, through hesitation, and his dread of the lower classes
among his subjects; the final announcement to his household of his flight; the breaking of his wand of office by Sir Thomas Percy, the Steward; and the misfortunes befalling the King and his adherents, immediately on their flight (pp. 248, 249), are there omitted. Many of the circumstances attending Richard’s departure from Flint to Chester, his journey thence to London in custody of the Duke of Lancaster, and the fact of his having rested from Saturday to Monday at St. Alban’s on the road, the Duke always maintaining the most respectful demeanour towards him (pp. 250, 251), are altogether unnoticed in Walsingham. The form of the oath taken by Richard at his Coronation, and the Articles of accusation against him (pp. 258–277), are not given in Walsingham’s text. The claim to the crown, made by Henry, Duke of Lancaster, is here (p. 281) given in the original English, whereas in Walsingham (p. 237) it appears in a Latin form. The English address made by Henry, on being placed upon the throne, the reasons (at the suggestion of Sir William Thernyng, the Justiciar), for his not claiming the throne by right of conquest, and the official appointments forthwith made by him (p. 282), are omitted in Walsingham. The proclamation for the benefit of all those claiming to act officially at the Coronation, and the reasons given by the new king for the shortness of the notice for the assembling of Parliament (p. 283), are unnoticed in Walsingham. The same, also, as to the form of the announcement to Richard of his deposition, given at great length in the original English, with Richard’s answers thereto (pp. 284–287); and as to the ordinance made in Convocation in reference to the habits of Bishops belonging to religious orders (p. 287). The whole of the matters preliminary to the Coronation of Henry IV., with an account of the ceremonial employed on the Coronation of the Kings of England, extending from p. 287 to p. 297, are also omitted in Walsingham’s text. The story
INTRODUCTION.

of the holy ointment, or oil, with its eagle-shaped ampulla, said to have been given by the Virgin Mary to St. Thomas (Becket), and to have been treasured up for near two centuries and a half, to be used for the first time at the Coronation of Henry IV., is given here with minute detail (pp. 297-300), whereas in Walsingham it is dismissied in little more than half a page (239). This story bears every appearance of having been concocted (and not without Archbishop Arundel’s knowledge, possibly), in order to give a high and solemn sanction in the eyes of a superstitious public to the usurpation of Henry; the “coming man” for whom, through ages, this precious gift of the Virgin to England’s great Saint had been reserved. The account of the magic scroll alleged to have belonged to King Richard, and the statement of Magdelene, his priest; the resignation of Sir John Cheyne, the Speaker in Parliament; the petition presented in behalf of the Commons; the charges made by Sir William Bagot against the Duke of Albemarle; the remark alleged to have been made by Richard to the prejudice of the present King, then Duke of Hereford; together with the preliminary matter, prior to the judgment pronounced against the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester (pp. 301-315), are entirely omitted in Walsingham. The judgment also against the accusers (pp. 315-320), as given in Walsingham, pp. 241, 242, is shorn of the preliminary part. The fact of a letter being found

1 To preserve the effects of this holy ointment, we learn (p. 309) that the King had to keep his head covered up for a week; he being then washed, “under episcopal ministration.” Hence, no doubt, the peculiar head-dress, a loose cloth, with which he is represented in some of his portraits.

2 See Mr. Hardy’s Materials for the History of Great Britain (published in this Series), Vol. II. p. 383. The notion was borrowed, probably, from the legend attached to the sacred oil of St. Remi, used for the coronation of Clovis.

3 From “Nostis, Domini,” p. 315 of this Volume, down to—“Super quibus Domini,” p. 318.
A.D. 1400.—The alleged attempt (pp. 322, 32) to poison King Henry and his eldest son, the Prince of Wales, is unnoticed in Walsingham. The singularly interesting particulars of the conspiracy, capture, and execution, by the people of Cirencester, of the Earls of Kent and Salisbury, are given with much more of detail (pp. 323-326) than in Walsingham’s pages (pp. 243, 244.) The same remark applies also (pp. 326-329) to the capture and execution of the Earl of Huntingdon at Pleshy, in Essex (Wals. p. 245), for complicity in the conspiracy. In Walsingham, we are merely told (p. 245) that the deposed king, Richard, killed himself by voluntary abstinence from food; but in the present work, though itself the source of Walsingham’s statement, the facts bear a different aspect. Richard, it says (p. 330), intended to kill himself with hunger (semetipsum inedia voluit peremisse). His friends, however, at last prevailed upon him to take food, but on attempting to do so, he found himself unable to swallow it; the orifice of the gullet (orificio stomachi), the writer says, having become closed through long abstinence. The circumstances, also, (p. 331) attending the conveyance of his body from Pontefract to London are incorrectly related in Walsingham (p. 246) in some particulars; and the important fact is there altogether suppressed, that when it was ostensibly shown to the public (for the purpose of identification), at the various places on the road at which it rested for the night, the face was exposed only from the lowest part of the forehead to the throat (ab ima parte frontis usque ad guttur, p. 331)—a mode of shewing it anything but likely to ensure a really satisfactory recognition. Such being the case, to some at least the question will suggest itself, whether this really was the body of Richard, or
of some other person substituted in his place? and even if it really was his body, whether the upper part of the head was not closely covered, with the object of concealing the blows inflicted by Piers Exton and the other assassins, who by some accounts are represented as having been the instruments of his death? The fact, too, that the body rested for a night at St. Alban’s (p. 331), which place, as a prisoner, he had so recently visited, is not noticed in Walsingham’s pages. The accounts given of the embassy sent to escort back Queen Isabella to France; of the disastrous fight between the youths of London in St. Paul’s Churchyard; and of prodigies seen in the air at Kingston in Cambridgeshire (pp. 331, 332), are omitted in Walsingham. The same, also, with the request by Henry IV. of a subsidy from the clergy, his visit to St. Alban’s, the invasion of the Orkneys by the English, the duel between two foreigners and two knights of the King’s retinue at York, and the reward of the prowess of one of these knights with the hand of the King’s sister, the widowed Countess of Huntingdon (p. 332, 333); matter which has passed unnoticed in Walsingham. The death of William, Abbot of Waltham, through the pestilence, and the bestowal of one or more benefices upon Thomas Merk, the deprived Bishop of Carlisle (p. 334), with the yearly summary (Transit annus, etc.), are also omitted there.

A.D. 1401.—The visit of the Emperor of Constantinople to Henry IV. at Eltham; the appointment of Sir Ernald Savage as Speaker in Parliament; and the declaration of King Henry that he has had no share in the spoils of the late king (p. 335), receive no notice in Walsingham. The same, also, is the case with the examination of a Lollard priest (William Sautre) by the Archbishop of Canterbury (p. 336) before being committed to the flames. The account of the defeat and death of the son of Bajazet, and of the departure of the Emperor of Constantinople from England, is in
INTRODUCTION.

Collation of the contents of Walsingham’s History, (A.D. 1392–1406) with the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii. MS. (2.)

fuller detail (p. 336) than in Walsingham (p. 247); while the appointment of new officers of state by King Henry, and the popular murmurs against him (p. 337), are unnoticed there. The account of the death of John Moot, Abbot of St. Alban’s, and of the election of William Hethworthe, and the attempt on the King’s part, by threats, to enforce the election of another (p. 338), are omitted in Walsingham; the ordination of monks at St. Alban’s, as acolytes, and the notice of the dreadful storm on the feast of Corpus Christi (pp. 339, 340), are also omitted. The singular story of the appearance of the devil at Danbury in Essex (p. 340) is given in fuller detail than in Walsingham (p. 250). The allegation that Edmund Mortimer purposely suffered himself to be defeated by Glendower; the defeat of the Scots by the Bishop of Carlisle and others; together with the account of another great storm of thunder and lightning, of the mischief done by an evil spirit to the church of All Saints at Hertford, and of the visitation of the Abbey of St. Alban’s by Commissioners of the Abbot of Ramsey (pp. 341, 342), are all omitted in Walsingham. The death of Edmund de Langley, Duke of York, and his unostentatious burial at Langley (p. 344), are not mentioned in Walsingham; and so, also, the indulgences obtained by the Carthusians of London, and the community of religious near Hitchin; the ransom paid for Reginald, Lord Grey, to Glendower; the commendation by Parliament of the services of George, Earl of Dunbar; and the enactments in Parliament as to the Mendicant Friars, the poor, and the Sanctuary at St. Martin’s-le-Grand (pp. 348–350).

A.D. 1403.—The account of the Bull 1 alleged to have been issued, revocatory of certain privileges and indulgences, with the copy of it, as given in pp. 350–360, is

---

1 This so-called Bull bears strong marks of a spurious origin. It seems by no means unlikely that it was fabricated with the object of bringing the Pope (Boniface IX.) into discredit in this country.
omitted in Walsingham. The circumstances leading to the outbreak of the Percies, and resulting in the Battle of Shrewsbury (pp. 360–369), are given in fuller detail than in Walsingham (pp. 254–258); and in the latter text the remarkable story (pp. 369, 370) of the murder of Sir R. Gousile (or Gonsile) during the Battle, by one of his own household, is omitted: the same, also, in reference to the exposure of the body of Henry Percy the Younger (Hotspur) to public view, and the sorrow manifested by his uncle, the Earl of Worcester, on beholding it (p. 370). The march of the Earl of Northumberland to aid his son, and his ultimate retreat to his castle at Warkworth, are described in detail (p. 371), while compressed in the other text into about seven lines (Wals. pp. 258, 259). The exception made of the Duke of Orleans and the Count de Saint Pol in the temporary truce with France (p. 372) is omitted in Walsingham’s statement (p. 259). The account (p. 372) of the conviction for falsehood of a prophesying hermit, and his execution at York, is unnoticed in Walsingham: the same, also, with the account (p. 373) of the Archbishop of Canterbury and other Bishops meeting the King at Worcester, and representing the impoverished state of the clergy, and their consequent inability to bear further taxation. The Dominus —, with an hiatus, in Walsingham (p. 259), who so resolutely opposed the clamour of the knights and esquires for the spoliation of the Bishops, was the Archbishop of Canterbury, as we find from the present text (p. 373). The Note given in p. 374, it deserves to be remarked, from page 120 of the MS., although no part of the history itself, was clearly written at a time when Glendower was

1 Identified, in a line added in Corp. Chr. vii. No. (1), with William Norham, who has been previously mentioned (p. xxx) as having addressed King Richard also in the language of prophecy.

2 The word "venerabatur," in this passage, is more appropriately replaced by the "aucupabatur" of Walsingham.
Collation of the contents of Walsingham’s History (A.D. 1392–1406) with the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii. MS. (2).

still harassing the English; and, being an addition to the already written pages of the narrative, affords proof of its compilation almost contemporaneously with the events which it records.\(^1\) The Convocation of the clergy by the Archbishop in St. Paul’s, the grant made to the King by the clergy at his request, and the loan raised by Henry (the Abbot of St. Alban’s lending 100 marks), until the grant should be paid (p. 373, 374), are not mentioned in Walsingham’s pages. The interesting account given of the burning of Plymouth by the Bretons (pp. 374, 375) is compressed in Walsingham into a couple of lines (p. 259); and the singular churlishness displayed by the Plymouth people towards their aiding neighbours, together with the warning given to the Sieur de Castellis, the Breton leader (p. 375), are there unnoticed. The exploits, too, of William de Wilford (pp. 375, 376) are recounted in much greater detail than in Walsingham (p. 260). The Parliament summoned at Coventry; peace and pardon proclaimed by order of the King; the adventures of certain English pilgrims, and the prophecy to them by a foreign hermit (pp. 376–378), are not noticed in Walsingham. The various transactions in the Parliament summoned at London, of twelve weeks’ duration (pp. 378–381), are but slightly glanced at in Walsingham (p. 260); and so, also, the demand (pp. 381, 382) of tribute by the French, in the name of Queen Isabella, from the Isle of Wight (Wals. pp. 260, 261). The speech made by Henry IV. at the shrine of Edward the Confessor at Westminster, in thankfulness for the victory gained over the Bretons by the men and women of Dartmouth, together with the solemn Te Deum chaunted thereon (pp.

\(^1\) The line, it appears (p. 374), was written “at the end of the choir of the Monks of St. Alban’s.”—Whether this means that it was composed there, or inscribed, as a prayer, on that spot, does not appear.
INTRODUCTION.

385, 386), is not noticed in Walsingham; nor do we find there mentioned the remarkable successes (pp. 386–388) of Henry de Pay against the French. The victory gained over Spanish ships by the Earl of Somerset, and the asserted discovery by the Spaniards of the Canary Island (pp. 389, 390), are also omitted in Walsingham; the latter not inappropriately perhaps, as, in date at least, it is palpably incorrect. The account of the discussions in the Unlearned, (or Lack-learning,) Parliament (pp. 391–394), held at Coventry in October this year, differs materially from that in Walsingham (pp. 264–267), and they are evidently borrowed from different sources. The account of the dysentery at Coventry, and of the great reverence shown by the Archbishop of Canterbury for the Sacrament of the Lord’s Body; with complaints to the King, on the prelate’s part, of the irreverent behaviour of certain knights and esquires (pp. 394–396), does not appear in Walsingham’s pages.

A.D. 1405.—The offer made by the Anti-Pope to Pope Boniface IX., and the singular circumstances attending the death of the latter (pp. 397, 398), are not noticed in Walsingham; nor yet the accusation by Lady Despencer of her brother, the Duke of York, of high treason; the privity of Thomas, Earl Marshal, thereto; and the denial by the Archbishop of Canterbury of any complicity therein (pp. 398, 399). The capture of the son and the Chancellor of Glendower; the designs of the Earl of Northumberland against the Earl of Westmoreland; the siege of the Castle of Merke by the Count de Saint Pol, and his defeat with great loss; the defeat of the French fleet by Prince Thomas and Edmund Holland, Earl of Kent; and the asserted appearance of a dragon near Sudbury (pp. 399–402), are all omitted in Walsingham. The list of grievances drawn up by Scrope, Archbishop of York, and Thomas Mowbray, Earl Marshal (pp. 403–405), is also not given there. The account of the capture and execution of the Archbishop and the
INTRODUCTION.

Collation of the contents of Walsingham’s History (A.D. 1392—1406) with the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii. MS. (2).

Earl, through the treacherous conduct of the Earl of Westmoreland (pp. 405—411), though varying, to some extent, from that in ¹ Walsingham (pp. 268—270), is given here in more full and more interesting detail; the deception practised by King Henry upon the Archbishop of Canterbury (pp. 408, 409, 411), when interceding for his brother prelate, being wholly unnoticed in the other compilation. The circumstances attending the retreat of the Earl of Northumberland to Berwick, and the consternation of the Mayor on discovering that he is in rebellion against the King (pp. 411, 412), are omitted in Walsingham; though his pages (271) contain some facts, as to the siege of Berwick Castle, which are not to be found in the present text. The passage—“Venit ergo Wigorniam—in proximo habiturum” (pp. 414, 415), is evidently a repetition of matter belonging to a prior year (1403), the dispute between the Archbishop of Canterbury and certain knights at ² Worcester, when proposing the spoliation of the clergy. This repetition, however, has been avoided in Walsingham. The accusation of fifty-nine Abbots and Priors of England by a thief, a sawyer by trade, and the detection of his falsehoods by Sir W. Cokayn, the Justiciar (pp. 415, 416), with the extortion of a subsidy for the Papal Nuncios (p. 417), are unnoticed in Walsingham.

A.D. 1406.—The combat between the English and the Welsh on St. George’s Day, and the death of a son of Owen Glendower (p. 418), are omitted in Walsingham; as also, the new grant made by the clergy to the King; (p. 418); the dismissal of the Bretons of the Queen’s household, with her two daughters by her former marriage; the eclipse of the sun this year; and the seizure of wines captured in French ships, solely for the consumption

¹ See the variations also of Corp. Chr. vii., MS. (1) from MS. (3) in Walsingham, Vol. II. pp. 423, 424, Appendix (D).
² See p. xxxvii. ante.
of the great, to the detriment of the general public (p. 419), similarly unnoticed in Walsingham. The report of the envoys who had escorted the Princess Philippa to Denmark, and the publication of certain miracles alleged to have been wrought by St. Alban (p. 420), passages which are also unrecorded in Walsingham, close this interesting record of the later years of Richard II. and the earlier ones of his successor’s reign; the most valuable history of the period, in all probability, as already suggested, that now exists. Though mixed up indiscriminately with other sheets in the Corpus Christi Volume (No. vii.), it is somewhat singular that until now its existence should have been entirely overlooked; and the more especially, considering the comparative paucity of historical materials for this period that we now possess.

In the Cottonian MS. Faustina B. ix. there is a Manuscript History of the latter years of Edward III. and the reign of Richard II., mutilated in the earlier part, and ending in A.D. 1399. The text of this MS. for the years 1393–9 bears a close resemblance to that of MS. (2) of the Corpus Christi volume, No. vii.; from which, to all appearance, it has been mainly derived. It is much fuller in its details than MSS. (1) and (3) of the Corpus volume; and while it omits various portions of the matter contained in MS. (2), it has some few interpolations of historical matter that is not to be found in MS. Reg. 13 E. ix., or in its legitimate successor, MS. (2) of the Corpus Christi volume. The only two of these interpolations, however, that appear to be of

1 The Historia Vita et Regni Ricardi Secundi, by a monk of Evesham, published by Hearne in 1729, is also of great value, especially for the latter years (A.D. 1393–1400) of Richard’s reign; but while it contains much matter that is not to be found in the Corpus Christi No. vii. MS. (2), the latter contains considerably more that is unnoticed in the Evesham compilation.

2 See p. 304 of this Volume.
any appreciable value, are those printed in pp. 423, 424, of this Volume—the singular story of the origin of the insanity with which Charles VI. of France was attacked, as said to have been narrated to the envoy of King Richard by the Queen of France herself; and the account of the brutal assault perpetrated by Richard on the Earl of Arundel within the walls of Westminster Abbey, under the pretext that he had been dilatory in attending at the funeral of Queen Anne.

The MS. Bodley, No. 462 (folio), from such examination as the Editor has been enabled to afford it, has every appearance, so far at least as its account of the reign of Richard II. is concerned, of being a close transcript of MS. Faustina B. ix. It is continued, however, to the year 1420; and there seems a strong probability that this may have been the source from which MS. (3) of the Corpus Christi volume, (after abandoning MS. (1), as derived from MS. (2),) derived its materials between A.D. 1405 and 1420. As already remarked (p. xxiii.), it bears internal evidence of having originally been a St. Alban’s volume.

The Liber de Benefactoribus Monasterii Sancti Albani, printed in the Appendix to this Volume (pp. 427–464), is transcribed from a Manuscript, the fourth in order, in the Corpus Christi volume No. vii., so often mentioned.

1 They both refer, in exactly the same words, to the text of MS. Reg. 13 E. ix., in reference to Wat Tyler’s insurrection, in 1381.—"Si quem scire delectat horum malorum nomina incentorum, sive ductorum, communium, una cum opinionibus cur hac mala diversis provinciis uno eodem tempore hiisdem fere diebus infra Octabas festi Corporis Christi specialius acciderunt,


2 It's earlier matter is apparently derived from Rishanger and MS. Reg. 13 E. ix.
INTRODUCTION.

This Manuscript, we learn (see p. 429), as containing the names of all the then Benefactors of the Abbey of St. Alban's, was prepared with the view of being laid upon the great altar there; and from p. 428 we may conclude that it was written in the closing years of Abbot Thomas de la Mare, who died A.D. 1396. Here and there, the spaces of the parchment that had previously been left in blank are filled up with matter of a later date, entered probably during the next twenty years, and in a different style of writing from that of the original text; which is embellished with minute portraits in great numbers, wholly fanciful in origin, no doubt, but executed in most brilliant colours, and with very considerable artistic skill; presenting, in fact, a singularly extensive variety of the head-gear and physiognomies, both male and female, of that period.

There is also extant another, and larger, "Book of Benefactors" of St. Alban's, now MS. Cotton. Nero D. vii. It was executed, probably, some twenty years or more after the Corpus Christi Manuscript; as, in addition to all the interpolations in that MS. above mentioned, it contains also a number of names of still later date. This volume is also replete with illuminations, somewhat similar to those in the Corpus MS. already noticed; though, while considerably larger in size, they are inferior in artistic merit in quite an equal degree. In page 450, (Note 1,) of this Volume, it

---

1 Distinguished in this Volume by being enclosed in square brackets.

2 The latest date, apparently, that is mentioned, is the death of Henry IV. (p. 434), which took place in March 1413.

3 Alan Straylere, mentioned in the interpolations in the present text as a benefactor to the Abbey (see p. 464), is named in MS. Nero D. vii. as having executed some, at least, of the illuminations and pictorial illustrations in that volume. From the richness of some of these illuminations, the volume is sometimes styled, "The Golden Book of St. Alban's."
has been remarked that the benefactor to the Abbey, Serlo le Marcer (or Mercer), formerly Mayor and Sheriff of London, is there erroneously called "de Mercer." With such singular incorrectness, however, has the later Manuscript (Nero D. vii.) been transcribed from the earlier one, and so little did the St. Alban’s people, after all, bear in mind the names of their dead and gone benefactors, that this slight error in the Corpus MS. has absolutely been magnified into the unintelligible, and indeed almost unrecognizable, name of "Serlo de Marceio," (fol. 98.); an indication that it is anything but an improvement on its predecessor.

The facsimile facing the title-page of this Volume represents folio 210 a. of MS. Cotton. Claudius D. vi., where the text of Trokelowe is immediately succeeded by that of Blaneforde.¹

H. T. R.

¹ See pp. 127, 131, post, and p. xviii, ante.
Walsingham's English History, and its St. Alban's Sources.


1 MS. Cotton, Claudius D. vi., fols. 115-134; pp. 3-59 of the present volume. Rishanger's "Wars of the Barons," (published by Mr. Halliwell, for the Camden Society) or its sources, may have also, though sparingly, been employed. The "Annales" of Nicholas Trivet, or its sources, have also been extensively used in the compilation of Rishanger's Chronicle, see Rishanger, Introd., pp. xxiii., xiv.

2 MS. Claudius D. vi., fols. 163-174; printed (pp. 371-408) in the Third Volume (Rishanger, etc.) of the present Series.

3 MS. Bibl. Reg. 14 C. i., fols. 11-15; printed (pp. 481-492) in the same Volume.

4 MS. Cotton, Faustina b. ix., fols. 75-144; printed (pp. 1-230) in the Third Volume of the present Series. As to the question of the authorship of this Chronicle by William Rishanger, see pp. xxii.-xxv. of the Introduction of that Volume.

5 MS. Claudius D. vi., fols. 175-182; printed (pp. 437-470) in the same Volume.


7 MS. Claudius D. vi., fols. 210-215; pp. 131-152 of the present Volume.

8 Printed (pp. 155-420) in the present Volume.

9 Number (5) according to the notation in Nasmyth's Catalogue (1777), page 4; but Number (3) more correctly, as stated in pages xx. and xxiv. of this Volume. Not improbably, MS. Bodl. No. 462 may have furnished materials to this MS. between A.D. 1405-1420, where it ends.

10 Vols. i. and ii. of the present Series of St. Alban's Chronicles. Its other ascertained sources, Trivet, Matthew of Westminster, Marimuth, Roger of Chester, Hemingburgh, etc., will be found indicated in the margins of the First Volume, between pages 80 and 328. As to the question whether Thomas Walsingham may not in reality have been the compiler of the Manuscript Reg. 13 E. ix. (Brit. Museum) only, and not of the whole of the "Historia Anglicana," see Vol. ii. Introd. pp. ix.-xiii.
CORRIGENDA.

Page 17, Note 2, for 19 read 16.
Page 21, line 6, for “obstaclo” read “obstaculo.”
Page 31, line 9, for “inopinatu” read “inopinato.”
Page 38, line 7, add Note. “bubulci in orig.; perhaps an error for bubuli,
“or bubali.”
Page 80, line 1, for “voluntate” read “voluntati.”
Page 137, line 28, for “sic dictus” read “si dictus.”
Page 162, line 27, for “corrupuerunt” read “corruperunt.”
Page 291, line 18, for “appatibus” read “apparatibus.”
Page 319, line 20, for “confortatorie” read “confortatorio.”
Page 340, line 32, for “toli” read “tholi,” (the classical form).
Page 349, line 27, for “economiae” read “economiae.”
OPUS CHRONICORUM.
OPUS CHRONICORUM.

[MS. Cott. Claudius D. VI., fol. 115 a—fol. 134 b.]

---

Incipit Prooemium sequentis operis.

Sunt quaedam vetustatis indicia, chronico more et patrio sermone per annos Domini ordinata, in quibus enitescit virorum fortium magnificentia, prudentium sapientia, justorum judicia, \(^1\) temperatorum modestia: sic etiam in rebus gestis omnium gentium et nationum, quae utique Dei judicia sunt, benignitas, probitas, cautela, et hiis similia et contraria, non solum spirituales ad bonum accendunt et a malo repellunt, verum etiam saeculares ad bona sollicitant, et in malis futuris praecavendis præmununt, juxta illud; —“Non vitatur malum, nisi cognitum;” et si Archangelus Raphael, a Deo missus, mentionem fecerit de cane, ut in \(^2\) Thobia, ratione dictante, diligens inquisitio fieri debet de rebus necessariis. Historia igitur præterita, quasi præsenta, visui representat, futura ex præteritis imaginando dijudicat. Habet quidem et præter haec illustres transactorum dotes notitia; quod ipsa maxime distinguat a brutis rationabiles. Bruti namque homines et animalia unde sunt nesciunt, patriæ suæ casus et gesta ignorant, nec scire volunt.

\(^1\) temperatorum in orig.  
\(^2\) In reference to the appearance of the Archangel Raphael to Tobias, the son of Tobit, in the Apocrypha. The gist of the allusion is, however, by no means clear.
Hæc ergo considerans, hujus regni gesta, et nostræ
gentis origines, mores, et virtutes, tum propter patriæ
caritatem, tum propter exhortantium auctoritatem, in-
vocato Spiritu Sancto, voluntati fuit interrupta tem-
porum seriem resarcire, necnon præterita memoriae
commendare; quia minus feriunt jacula quæ prævi-
dentur. Quicquid vero de recentioribus ætatis apposui,
vel ipse vidi, vel a fidedignis viris audivi; in
quo scilicet opere sequenda et fugienda lector diligens
dum invenerit, ex eorum imitatione et evitacione, Deo
cooperante, melioratus fructum afferat exoptabilem.

In nomine Sanctæ et Individuae Trinitatis, Patris, et
Filiæ, et Spiritus Sancti.—

Incipit Liber Chronicorum, editus ad instantiam
venerabilis patris nostri, Domini Johannis, Dei gratia,
Abbatis hujus Ecclesie.

A.D. 1259.
Beginning of the dis-
sensio between
Henry III.
and the
Barons.
Partiality
of foreign-
ers, shown
by King
Henry.
(A.D.
1260.)

Anno ab Incarnatione Domini millesimo ducentesimo
quinquagesimo nono, qui est annus regni Regis
Henrici Tertii 1 quadragesimus tertius, 2 orta est dis-
sensio inter Regem et Barnagium.

Anno Dominicae Incarnationis millesimo ducentesimo
sexagesimo primo, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici
Tertii quadragesimus 3 quartus, 4 cum idem Rex toto
tempore suo haberetur maxime erga alienos largissi-
mus; qui quidem alieni, ut Dominus Willelmus de
Valontia, cum sibi consimilibus, leges Anglicanas nite-

1 quadragesimus in orig.
2 This passage, from "orta" down
to "Barnagium," appears as a rubric
in the original. It is clear, how-
ever, that it must bear reference to
the year previously mentioned —
1259—and a full stop must be placed
between hujus Ecclesie and Anno
ab Incarnatione, etc., as this Chroni-
cle could not by any possibility
have been compiled (editus) in that
year.
3 More correctly, "quintus."
4 This sentence is incomplete.
batur pervertere, et legibus patriæ suæ consimiles A.D. 1260. fieri, immemor Dominici præcepti,—1 "Leges meas custo-
dite," et iterum per 2 Prophetam,—"Væ qui condunt
leges iniquas, et scribentes scripserunt injustitias, ut
opprimerent pauperes in judicio, et vim facerent cause
"humilium populi Dei." Hæc fuit causa primitiva This, the
dissensionis et discordiae inter Regem et Barnagium
suum; quapropter omnes alienigenæ, ex communi as-
sensu Barnagii, jussi sunt ad propria expeditius repe-
dare, et Angliam irrevocabiliter evacuare.

Eodem tempore, ex assensu totius Barnagii, Dominus The Pro-
Rex Statuta Angliæ apud Oxoniam ordinavit, et jura-
it, ipse cum Edwardo, primogenito suo, et Barnagio, se
eadem Statuta irrefragabiliter observari. Processu tem-
poris, Dominus Rex penituit se juramentum fecisse. The King
Habito Rex secum cogitatu secretiori, qualiter, Provi-
sioni Baronum suppositus, ex insolito cogebatur manum
retrahere, et eorum ac dispositioni, licet
utili, adhaerere vehementer doluit, et se hujus muta-
turum corde firmiori decrevit. Convocatis itaque mag-
natibus, dixit :—"Vos omnes pro communi regni et
Regis utilitate, ut 4 asseruistis, et commodo, provisum
que inter vos universaliter decrevistis, præstitis jura-
mentis, observari ; cui et me, una cum filio meo,
juramento alligastis consimili. Nunc autem indubi-
tanter expertus sum, vos, non tantum Regis et regni,
quantum propriis, inhiantes emolumentis, penitus a
pacto resiliere, et me non quasi dominum, sed quasi
ministrum, vestrae subjugasse custodiæ. Thesauro
insuper ex insolito minorato, debitum ubique suc-
crescit, liberalitasque Regis, et 7 potestas, fere pro-
strata succumbit. Unde non miremini, si, vestro non

1 Probably, in allusion to Leviticus xviii. 5, 26, and xix. 19.
- Isaiah x. 1.
3 Some word, similar to voluntati, seems to be omitted here.
4 Qy. if sibi and mutationem are not the words intended ?
5 asseruistis in orig.
6 Sic in orig.; it seems to be redundant.
7 potestas in orig.

He takes measures for that purpose.

Quo dicto, destinatis Rex ministris Romam pro absolutione, specialiter scriptis Regi Franciae, et filio suo, Edwardo, pro subministrando sibi auxilio; cui Rex infinitos sibi promisit miles, per septem annos, si nessesse fuerit, propriis sumptibus sustinendos; et Edwardus in congregandis, ut dicebatur, viribus, omnimodos labores adhibuit.

Impetratur littera Papalis pro absolutione juramenti.

King Henry retires to the Tower of London, and seizes the public treasures. (A.D. 1261.)

The Barons encamp without London.

Prince Edward declines to be absolved from his oath.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo ² securao, qui est annus Regis Henrici Tertii quadragesimus ³ quintus—interim Rex, Statuto magnatum neglecto, et consilio deceptus ⁴ Achitofel adulatorio, in Turrim se Londoniarum intruisset, et thesaurum, ibidem depositum, diruptis seris, consumendum dispersit. Conductis itaque operariis, eandem fecit turrim ubique firmari, civitatemque Londoniarum, refirmatis seris et clausuris, mandavit per gyrum communir; convocatisque singulis de cивitate a duodecin annis et supra, fecit omnes jurare de fidelitate sibi servanda, clamante hoc praecone, ut quotquot vellent Regi militare, illius veniant sustinendi pecunia. Quo audito, Barones ubique confluabant cum viribus, hospitati extra muros, hospitiis sibi intra omnino negatis; sicque letalis ubique suspicabatur guerra, nunquam per multos retro annos tam proxima.

Tunc temporis, circa Pascha, impetrata fuit littera Papalis super absolutione Regis, et Edwardi, filii sui, de predictis juramentis; sed Rege hoc non acceptante, Edwardus se sponte iteratis innodavit sacramentis.

¹ assummo in orig. ² Apparently nono in orig. ³ More correctly, "sextus." ⁴ In allusion to II. Samuel, cc. xv., xvi., xvii.
Audientes hoc magnates, firmiter in proposito persistentes, destinatis ad Regem mediatoribus, obnixe rogabant, ut communiter praestitum inviolabili teneret juramentum; et si quid sibi displicuerit, eisdem osten-deret ad emendandum. Qui, nequaquam adquiescens, sed eorum ingressus vix patiens, dure, minanter, ac proterve, respondit, dicens quod, ipsis a conventione deficientibus, non amplius adquiescerit; sed unusquisque deinceps propriis defenseibus provideret. Tandem mediantibus quibusdam discretis, ad hoc, vix mitigatus, inducit, ut duo eligerentur, unus ex parte una, et alius ex altera; qui duo tertium sibi assume- rent, et, auditis querelis Regis et aliorum responsis, stabilem utrobique pacem providerent: quod hinc inde usque ad adventum Edwardi conceditur differendum.

Audiens hoc Edwardus, scilicet, predictam in Anglia discordiam per suum citius adventum pacem sortituram et reformandam, adopta de hastiludio victoria, con-festim repatriavit, adductis secum Johanne de Braines, sororio suo, et Willelmo de Valoniis, de terra super Valence. qui tunc ingressum vix obtinuit, ita tamen ut, praestito in ingressu sacramento, Baronum Provisioni in omnibus obediret, et singulis contra eum querelis depositis, et deponendis, si necessa fuerit, responderet. Edwardus vero, super vanis Regis consiliiis et consiliariis edoctus, eisdem valde iratus, sponte se a patris absentavit obtutibus, et fideliter, ut praejuraverat, as-sentit Baronibus. Inquisitis itaque diligenter pra-dictae contentionis fautoribus, et cognitis, unanimiter omnes cum Edwando conjurarunt, quod nunquam consentirent in uno, donec quosdam malos consiliarios a suo amoveret Consilio; addentes quod, per talium pacis perturbatorum suggestiones, Rex sese decipitur, et, im-petrata Papali absolutione, Provisio, Regi et regno

A.D. 1261. The Barons humiliate themselves, and propose to make terms with the King.

1 Qy. Bretayne? John, Duke of Bretagne, was the husband of his sister, Beatrice.

The King retires to the Tower of London. The Earls of Gloucestere and Leicester are reconciled.

Comites Glovniiae et Legitur, prius per verba indecentia discordes, pace sunt tunc firmissima confedere-rati, (ut replicari possit illud Evangelicum,—“Amici facti sunt Pilatus et Herodes,”) simul cum Edwardo et aliis contestantes, quod aut predictorum perturbatorum pacis a Rege moverent consortium, aut, guerra viciniore suscitanda, alterutros sedarent in interitum.

The King retires, first, to Dover, and then to Rochester. (A.D. 1262.)

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo tertio, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quadragesimus sextus, timentes non modicum predicti consiliarii se armis viribusque circumquaque præmuniti, se infra Turrim et custodiam diutius receperunt. Qui tandem, interveniente Regina, vix quibusdam concordati magnatibus, circa Pascha invicem suscepti sunt in pacis amplexibus. Quo facto, Dominus Rex audacius se extra Turrim exposuit, Domino Johanne Mauncel infra dimisso, versusque Doveriam itineravit continuo. Venienti autem cum mediocri familia liberum patfecit Castelli introitum, cum nec ei oblatum nec vetitum, sed, tanquam clavis totius regni, custodiae esset diligently a Baronibus deputatum. Quo Rex statim sentiebat se falsis suggestionibus deceptum, et Baronum suorum fidelitate ubique, licet ignoranter, suffultum; commendansque illius custodiam

2 Sic in orig.; probably an error for Legacestrice or Leycestrice.
4 More correctly, “septimus.”
5 This passage is evidently imperfect: see Rishanger’s Chronicle, p. 10.
6 Probably, preemuniri.
7 de in orig., by inadvertence.
Domino E. Waleram, mox Castellum Roucestrie adiit, A.D. 1262. et quaedam alia; et ubique liberum invenit introitum et exitum.

Tunc temporis, Dominus Rex, volens a juramento prius praestito, tanquam absolutus, resilire, audacter circuit per civitates et castella, volens eorum, et totius regni sui, plene possidere dominia; animatus ex hoc quod Rex Francie, una cum magnatibus suis, nuper sibi promisit viriliter succurrere.


1 se is repeated here in orig., by inadvertence. 2 Repeated in orig.
A.D. 1264. Hostilities between the King and the Barons.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo quarto, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quadragesimus septimus,—ab illa die Comites et Barones in Regem, et in complices suos, insurrexerunt, prædia et maneria eorum igne comburentes; et, vice versa, complices Domini Regis, eadem facientes, Baronum substantias invadentes. Barones vero, hoc audientes, insulum Eliensem in manu forti intraverunt, totam patriam circumjacentem sibi subjungentes. Hæc dissensio inter Regem et Barones duravit usque ad quartum-decimum diem Maii.

Circa idem tempus, præcogitaverunt Barones, quomodo hujusmodi discordiae finem imponerent, oculo ad oculum calamitates et oppressiones populi, et Ecclesiae desolationem, intuentes, sententiam illius versificatoris memoriae commendantes:—

2 "Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi."

Simon de Montfort, in unanimi assensu congregati, elegerunt Dominum Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, in Leicester, leader of their army. Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, in Leicester, leader of their army. Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, leader of their army. Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, leader of their army. Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, leader of their army. Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, leader of their army. Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, leader of their army. Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, leader of their army. Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, leader of their army.

Illico, unanimi assensu congregati, elegerunt Dominum Simonem de Monte Forti, Comitem Leycestrie, in ducem exercitus eorum; tum propter ejus constantiam, tum propter belli notitiam. Tantus erat ei arbor finem malis imponere, ut mallet ultima experiri, quam regni calamitatem ulterior protendi.

Bellum Leuwense.

The Battle of Lewes. Anno gratiae millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo quinto, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quadragesimus octavus, die quarto Maii, Dominus Rex, et Edwardus, primogenitus suus, cum exercitu suo, non inerti militum copia, bello se animose, intermissa obsidione, obtulerant apud Leuwes. E contrario, Barones cum magnó

1 More correctly, "octavus."
2 Horace, Epist. I. 2, 14.
3 More correctly, "nonus."
4 The Battle of Lewes took place not on the 4th, but on the 14th, of May, and in the previous year, 1264, as already alluded to.
impetu, toto annisu, in Regem et suum exercitum in- A.D. 1264. surrexerunt.

De fuga Londonensium.

Londonienses, nimio timore perculsi, tanquam vecordes versificatoris;—

"Bellat prudenter, qui bella fugit sapienter."

2 Quod cum cognovisset Edwardus, insecutus est eos cum exercitu suo; frustra, quia velociores eo erant. 

Rex ipse, quamvis ad defendendum se non ei defuisse set animus, quibusdam ambagibus totum exercitum suum amisit, præter paucissimos commilitones, infestis viribus, vexillisque, aciem regalem in hac necessitate protegentes; caeteri, cum Edwardo, Londonienses fugientes ocius insecuti sunt.

Rex captus est a Baronibus.

Tandem Dominus Rex, a Baronibus circumquaque aggressus, ultro se obtulit Comiti; ita omnibus circa se vel captis vel fugatis, cedendum pro tempore et teneri sustinuit. Prædictus Comes præcepit Regem illæsum asservari, cum fratre suo, Rege Alemanniae, et cum suis commilitonibus; non passus ullo exprobrationis convicio illum proscindi, et quem iratus modo impugnat, regnum fastigatum, placidus, ecce! sustinet triumphatum; ut, compositis iræ et laetitiae motibus, et consanguinitati impenderet humanitatem, et in captive diadematis respiceret dignitatem. 

Vulgus vero civium Londoniarum circumquaque dispersum, Edwardus, cum commilitonibus suis reversus, ignorant quid patri suo. Dominus Regi, contigerit, tetendit se versus Castellum Leuwense, 

---

1 veterunt in orig.
2 Indistinct in orig.; apparently Qui.
3 Perhaps an error for indefessis.
4 procindi in orig.
5 This is intended, no doubt, in the sense of an ablative absolute.
A.D. 1264. Wallingford Castle.

explicans si posset patri subvenire. Illico comprehensus ab exercitu Baronum, ductus est sine mora in Castellum Walingfordiae, carcerali custodia mancipatus.

*Edwardus captus et incarceratus apud Walford.*

Miseries totus annus ille sequens, cum quinque mensibus et duabus septimanis, asperitate guerre inhorruit. Castella per totam Angliam erant quæque suas partes defendentia, verum, ut verius dicam, depopulantia; milites castellorum abducebant ab agris pecora et pecudes, nec ecclesiis nec cemeteriis parentes, domibus miserrorum ruicolarum usque ad stratum expilatis.

Equidem ex voluntate Comitis emanavit preceptum, ne aliqui, sub poena decapitationis, in Sanctam Ecclesiam vel cemeterium, depredandi causa, presumptuose iuxtrarent, nec sacri seu religiosi ordinis hominibus, vel eorum familias, manus violentas injecissent: sed nihil propemodum hac profecit industria. Erat ergo videre *calamitatem*, Angliam, praelatissimam quondam nutriculam, speciale domicilium, quietis, ad hoc miseriae devolutam esse, ut nec etiam episcopi, nec monachi, de villa in villam tute possent progridi.

Comes interea modestly agere omnia conatus est, se nihil magis cavere quam ne vel parvo detrimento vinceret magnates quos ad sacramentum jusjurandi servandum fletere non posset: satis habebat in officio continere, ut qui nusquam adquiescere vellent, minus nocerent. Ubi cumque tamen commode fieri posse videbat, et militis et ducis eleganter officium exequebatur; denique munitiones quæ potissimum partibus susceptis nocebant, strenue debellabat.

*Edwardus missus est ad Castellum Herefordiae.*

Processu temporis, hoc est, circa festum Trinitatis, Edwardus, ex industria Comitis et Baronum, missus est

1 *calamitatem* in orig.
ad tutiora loca, scilicet, in Castellum Herefordiae, cum custodibus sibi deputatis. Nee multis post diebus evo-
lutis, accesserunt ad custodes quatuor viginti milites de finibus Walliae, ¹ militali disciplina edocti et instructi, summo opere flagitantes, ut Edwardi fungerentur collo-
quo. Cumque custodes hæc Edwardo denunciassent, ait illis,— "Certus sum, quod hac de causa hue vene-
" runt, ut me eruerent de manibus vestris;" cui ² ille,— "Viriliter agite, et resistite illis." Mox responsum est eis ubertim et splendide a custodibus, nullatenus fieri quod rogabant.

**Edwardus evasit de carcere Herfordiae.**

Placuit custodibus consilium Edwardi, veruntamen
dolum ignorabant; quia facilius est vitare discordem,
quam declinare fallacem. Erant enim ibi tres des-
trarii optimi et velocissimi: summo mane Edwardus
dixit custodibus suis,— "Si inveni gratiam in oculis
" vestris, sinite me ascendere unum ex equis istis
" quem elegero, ut probem illum." Qui libenter as-
sensum dederunt illi. Ministri straverunt eum, et
Edwardum desuper sedere fecerunt. Mox calcaribus
appositis, currere cogit ³ equum sub ipso calcar acutum.
Confestim alta voce proclamat,— "Eia, custodes, abite,
" dicite sociis vestris et Comiti, Anglia lucratur." Ab
illa die cogitabat, et totis viribus insudabat, qualiter
se vindicaret de Comite et suo exercitu.

Eodem tempore Dominus Rex de villa in villam, de
castello in castellum, peragrabat; honorifice susceptus
est, veruntamen sub custodia Comitis deputatus est.
Comes autem, pertentatis illorum, et cognitis, animis,
quos datis ⁴ obsidionis tutiores per evasionem Edwardi
esse noverat, dispositoque quid deinceps agendum tene-

---

¹ Sic in orig.
² The narrative is evidently in-
complete.
³ *equum* in orig. This passage
⁴ *equm in orig. This passage

Edward is sent to Hereford Castle.

A.D. 1265.
A.D. 1265. ret, nec multum post malignitatem adversae fortunae paulominus expertus est: per quendam insidiarum 1 consciunm præmunitus, paratos sibi evitavit dolos ad 2 tempus.

Anno gratiae millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo sexto, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii 3 quadragesimus nonus, Rex, consternatus animo quod in insidiis parum profecisset, astutia agendum ratum, serenitate vultus, necon gratuita confessione, magnitudinem culpæ attenuare studuit. Juravit simpliciter verbis, pro placito Comitis conceptis, se nunquam ulterius tanto 4 sceleri affuturum. Hoc quidem egit verbo tenus, sed nunquam ei plenam exhibuit amicitiam, cujus semper suspectam habebat potentiam. Itaque coram Comite pulchre jocundeque Comitem illum appellans, retro maledicis verbis mordebat, et quibus potuit possessionibus vellicabat. Comes vero, artem arte illudens, permisit Regem quocumque ei placuerit progredi, custodibus sibi deputatis. Ille vero, quasi positus in specula, rerum providere exitum, et ne de juramento, quod fecerat erga Deum et homines, perfidiæ notaretur, sedulo cogitabat.

Qualiter filii Comitis Leicestriæ acclamare fecerunt torneamentum contra Comitem Gloucestriæ.

In festo Sancti Michaelis tunc temporis, filii Comitis Leicestriæ acclamare fecerunt torneamentum apud Dunstapliam contra Comitem Gloverniæ. Ibidem accesserunt Londonienses, necnon infinita multitudine militum et armatorum. Quod cum didicisset 5 armigerulus Comes, pater eorum, increpavit protervam praesumptionem eorum, firmiter eis injungens, ut in inceptis et praecogitatis

---

1 concium in orig. 4 celeri in orig.
2 temptus in orig. 4 arumigerulus in orig.
3 More correctly, “quinquagesi-” mus, Rex.”
0 arumigerulus in orig.
stultitiis desisterent; constantem comminando, quod nisi A.D. 1255.
maturius preceptis ejus adquiescerent, in tali loco eos collocaret, ut neque solis neque lunae beneficio gauderent. Sic suos, qua potuit animositatem, a torneamento compescuit, ut nec communis pugnae copiam facerent, cum propter eminentem guerram, tum propter ne provinciam coram se vastari sineret.

Quo audito, 1 Comes Gloverniae, quod Dominus Simon de Monte Forti prohibuisset torneamentum Dunstapliæ, ultra quam credi possit, incanduit ejus indignatio; nec non quamplurimis, precedentes equis et armis, turgentes indignabantur, et verbis probrosis conviciabantur, dicentes,—“Manifeste ridiculosum est, quod hic alieni gena totius regni dominium sibi praesumit subjugare.”

Comes autem Gloverniae tacitus rem considerabat. Mox he with-ruptis amicitiis pristinis, cum indignatione recessit; ita quod totum oblivionis traderetur pristinae amicitiae, nec non juramenti confederatio. Quapropter, ut

“——— Exitus acta 2 probant,”

factus est ei de cætero hostilis inimicus; suorumque insidiis necatus, egregiae probitatis et constantiae, processu temporis, decus luit.

Qualiter Comes Gloucestriae 3 insidiabatur Comiti Leicestriæ.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo septimo, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii 4 quinquagesimus,—ab illa die, et deinceps, Comes Gloverniae cogitabat, et affectum operibus impendebat, cum in potestate hostium casualiter divertisset, de superstitione praesumptione et audacia Comitis Leicestriæ vindicaret, eumque morti traderet.

---

1 Perhaps an error for Comite.
2 probat is the correct reading of the Pentameter.
3 incidiabatur in orig.
4 More correctly, “quinquagesimus primus.” This line is altogether out of place, and 1265 is the date.
A.D. 1265.

Interim Comes Leicestriae Regem verbis compositis et modestis sic alloquitur, rationem praferens, quod Rex ad regnum et ad regimen regni aspiraverat, et omnem fidem regni, juratam et publicitam, neglexerat ipsum et; quinetiam contra legem egisset, qui, post sacramentum juramenti, decretum infringere et infirmare non erubuisset. Animabant nimirum animum Comitis multorum discretorum eloquia, quos super negotio consulerat, nullo modo eum posse sine ignominia vitam finire præsentem, vel mereri beatitudinem future, si juramentum suum irreptit faceret. Hec optimates, sæpius pristinorum beneficiorum memoria induiti, dixerunt Regi,—"Si Dominus Rex sanum consulerat, sicut se seram penitentiam acturum, cum oculos suos clauserit, Qui auffert spiritum principem," Rex autem, quamvis nimio favore obnoxius, aliquandiu auribus suis blandientes dissimulavit audire, mollitus dilatationis amaritudinem, vel, quod magis opinor, future ulterior discussionem. Nee solum hoc a Rege, sed et ab optimatibus, ab his etiam quos constantiae ejus invidia clam mordebat, maxime a ministris Regis et Comitis Glovneriae, quæque poenæ et derogationis cogitasset, conferebantur.

Eadem die, Rex eluctatus captioinem, necnon custodiae mancipationem villipendens, contra resistentes sibi, crebere, ut ferebatur, dicere solebat,—"Ex quo, gratia Dei, inunctus sum in regem paterno jure, quare destitutus sum?" Statim juravit, more solito,—"Per pietatem Dei, nunquam Rex dejectus appellabor." Hae et iis similia, ab Inventione Sanctæ Crucis usque ad Vincula Sancti Petri, plurimorum verborum agmine versata crebris, tunc demum debito fine conclusa. Tandem eo modo res ventilata, ut aquis conditionibus Rex et sui complices absolveretur a custodia, nullo pacto alio interveniente, nisi ut quisquis partes suas
pro posse suo tueretur. Illud vero percelebre magnificumque fuit, quod pro isto eventu nemo Comitem Leycestrem vel infractum mente, seu etiam tristem vultu, vidit. Ita conscientiam altae nobilitatis inspirabat Spiritus Sanctus, et roborabat; nunquam inflexus est. Quamvis enim primo blanditiis invitatius, postea minis lacessetur, nunquam se fortunae ludibrio subjetat, sed tanquam mons immobile persistebat, secundum veram nominis sui interpretationem; quia Simon interpretatur “obediens.” Obedientiam reddidit Deo, votum suum inviolabiliter observans, juxta illud:—


Qualiter Edwardus prosequebatur filium Comitis Leycestrei.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo ² septimo, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quinquagesimus primus, pridie ante festum Sancti Petri, quod dicitur “Ad Vincula,” venit Simon, filius Domini Simonis de Monte Forti, cum exercitu non modico, in subsidium patris sui; quod cum cognovisset Edwardus, occurrebat illis, et concussit eos a maximo usque ad minimum. Simon autem, nullum emolumentum sibi contigisse intelligens, intra Castellum de Kelingworthe cum festinatione latenter intravit. Ista facta erant per diem Sabbati, scilicet, in Vigilia Sancti Petri ad Vincula.

De Bello de Evesham.

A.D. 1265. Gloverniæ, cum comitatu suo, lento gradu. Comes vero Leicestriæ, cum oculos levaret, et innumerabilem multitudinem virorum bellatorum adventasse contemplaret,—erant enim ibi juvenes multi fortes et leves, qui malent equitationum discursus quam pacem; —præterea plures illorum confusi erant, quia Regem bellantem anno elapsos apud Leuwes deseruerant, nunc vero conventu isto fugæ suae antedictæ opprobrium 1 auferre conabantur. Confestim Comes Leycestriæ suis commilitones instantissime exoravit, ut terga verterent et fugam inirent, dicens,—"Quia impossibile est vobis tantæ multitudini resistere;" deinde specialiter alloquentur Dominum Hugonem Dispensatorem, in his verbis;—"Domine Hugo, potens es viribus, tam sapientiam tibi contulit Dator sapientiæ, multum prodesse potes terræ Anglicæ. Jam quiesce, ut vivas; fugæ hac vice, ne moriaris." At ille;—"O pater venerande, video patientiam tuam, et constantiam. Christus, ex alto prospiciens, laboribus tuis et ærumnis nunc finem imponit; calicem passionis quem bibiturus es, ipsemet gratanter bibam;" et addidit; —"Nonne præstaret mori et gloriose occubere, quam tam insignem contumeliae pati?" 3 Tune fax belli immissa bellatorum amixtionem animata convaluit, circumquaque posita. Comes autem Leicestriæ, cum se cognovisset vitam transitoriam mutare in æternam, gratulabatur: gratis ad locum martyrii properavit, ut cognoscerent omnes, quod non invitus, non compulsus, pateretur, exemplo edoctus gloriøsi Archipräsulis Cantuariæ, et Martyris, Thomæ.  

The Earl of Leicester is slain.

1 auferre in orig.  
2 tanti in orig.  
3 This passage is unintelligible, to all appearance.
OPUS CHRONICORUM. 19

detruncaverunt. Unde quondam prognosticum evenit. In ipso temporis articulo, sol obscursatus est, et tenebrae factae sunt super terram, quasi dimidiae horae spatio; unde nonnulli miraculi exemplum et multorum materiar sermonum exiit per totam Angliam, quod idem Comes, scilicet, Dominus Simon de Monte Forti, coronam martyrii, et bravium sui cursus, nactus est. Unde, ut a veridico relatore didici, in illa hora in qua occubuit, quidam capellanus quando Missam suam inchoavit, tanta erat aeris serenitas, nec quidem ulla nebula apparuit in firmamento, vix cum multis candelis accensis potuit Missam terminare, prae obscuritatis densitate.

Ipse quippe, sicut primus ad juramentum Oxoniae praestitit et inviolabiliter observandum initium suscepit, ita semper invicto animo in incepto gratis constantissime perseveravit; "gratis" dico, quia nonnulli fautorum, ejus vel fortunam sequentes, ejus constantiam imitantes, multa jam emolumenta consecuti, spe ampliorum præmiorum pro justitia pugnaverunt, et in eodem loco animas Deo reddiderunt. Non ergo alicui, si haec integre scribo, adulationis seu indignationis surrepat suspicio; nihil enim dabitur gratiae, sed sola veritas historiæ, sine ullo fuco mendacii, posterorum producetur notitiae.

De obitu Domini Simonis de Monte Forti.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo septimo, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quinquagesimus secundus, postquam Dominus Rex cognovit. Marvellous occurrence at the moment of his death.

---

1 Qv. if not quodam?
2 ore in orig.
3 Probable an error for nonnullis.
4 serenitas in orig.
5 pungnaverunt in orig.
6 The numerals are almost erased.
7 The Chronicler has already mentioned the year 1267, as being the fiftieth, and the fifty-first, year of Henry III. See pages 15 and 17, ante. The year 1268, no doubt, is meant, though 1265 would be correct.

B 2
A.D. 1265. visset Comitem Leicestriæ sic occubuisse, sœgre sustinuit; animo molesto consternatus est, nec non et Edwardus; vellent enim eum vivum et illæsum habuisse. Tandem, cum omnia quæ ad illum diem pertinent, consummarentur, Rex et sui ad propria declinaverunt, et sic de singulis. Deinde venerunt monachi de Hevesham: corpus prædicti Comitis ad Monasterium suum, cum magna reverentia, asportaverunt, et honorifice in secretiori loco coenobii sui reconduntur, per multum tempus a cunctis ignotum. Metuebant enim indignationem magnum incurrere; forte si cognovissent eos tantam gratiam dicto Comiti exhibuisse, imposuissent eis fors an regiam majestatem non modicum læisse. In illa die, occubuerunt cum prædicto Comite, Dominus Henricus, primogenitus suus, et ille invictus athleta, miles Christi, Dominus Hugo Dispensator, cum aliis optimatibus, Comitibus, Baronibus terræ, cum exercitu eorum quindecim vexilla. Postea filii Comitis Leicestriæ, Simon et Guido, qui superstites relicterant, exulati sunt ab Anglia irrevocabiliter. Uxor vero Comitis libere, cum tota supellectili sua, ducatu Edwardi, natale solum petiit, nunquam reversura.

Qualiter burgenses Sancti Albani tunc temporis villam muniebant.

Ipso eodem tempore, erat villa Sancti Albani adeo diligentì custodia, tam intus quam afforís, serís et barris obfirmata, propter guerræ formidinem, ut omnem aditum vel exitum negarent transeuntibus, præcipue ascensoribus equorum: quapropter tune temporis appellabatur per totam Angliam "Minor Londonia."

---

1 congnovissent in orig.  
2 forsam in orig.  
3 majestatem in orig.  

---

The town of St. Alban's is strongly fortified; whence styled "Little London."
De stulta præsumptione Gregorii de Stokes.


---

1 Castellum in orig. 2 comodo in orig. 3 asanguis in orig. 4 Joshua ii. 19. 5 pervenisset in orig.
A.D. 1265. Illis diebus venerunt quidam latrunculi ad Cellam Sancti Egidii de Bosco.


Mirum dictu! mirabile auditu! Mox omnes quasi elingues et inermes facti sunt, nec inventus est solus ex illis quinquaginta, qui manum erigere posset ad evaginandum gladium, seu ad arcum tendendum. Sic compescuit eos ultio divina, et in reprobum sensum dedit. Ipsis denique inter frutices et fruges progressientibus, et se abscondentibus, a ruricolis spoliati sunt, et interfeci. Quidam illorum per triduum se ibidem abscondebant in sepibus et spinis. Quamvis eis esset necessitas et copia evadendi, non est permissum desuper; qui autem non ceciderunt gladio, fame perierunt, et inedia.

Dominus Rex acclamare fecit pacem per totam Angliam.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo sexagesimo nono, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quinquagesi-
mus tertius,—cum igitur Domino Regi, Henrico Tertio, A.D. 1265. de bello et de adversariis suis victoria cessisset, convocavit omnes regni proceres apud Wincestriam. Ibi tenuit solemnne Parlementum suum, consilio eorum tractatus, quid de illis faceret, qui illi dextras dederunt, qui super eos eum regnare noluerunt, qui capti erant et sub custodia carcerali deputati;—quorum possessiones, prædia, et maneria, in manu Regis capta erant;—et quid de filiis Comitis Leicestriæ agendum esset. Convoctis itaque proceribus, cum id judicatum fuisse coram eis, assensum praebuerunt, ut illi qui Domino Regi impetum fecerant, et eum impugnare nitebantur, eorum corpora et possessiones pro voluntate Domini Regis, donec condigna satisfactive et conditione adquiescerent, esseque regiae voluntati submitterent, tributumque singulis annis fisco regio tribuerent, quosque regiae majestatis læse gratiam invenirent. Adquievit Dominus Rex, et eorum consilium accepit.

Placuit etiam Regi et optimatibus, ut filii Comitis Leicestriæ ad propria repondarent, nec copiam revertendi obtinerent de cætero. Cum autem Dominus Rex neminem sibi infra regnum suum resistere animadverterit, leges pristinas confirmavit, stabilem pacem et justitiam, per totum regnum suum fieri præcepit. Mittebat per solemnes nuncios de Comitatu in Comitatum, per litteras regales patentes, ut si quis possessiones alienas, ovem vel bovem, seu aliquid, invito domino, sibi usurparet, vel usurpando abigeret, capitalem subiret sententiam.

Qualiter quidam de Dunstaplia contra pacem abegit duodecim boves cujusdam hominis de Colne.

Rege autem regnum, cum pace et tranquillitate regente, emensa deinde quindena, quidam abigens du-

Rex vero, cum tranquillitate reliquis vitae suae diebus quietum otium ducens, Angliam tractatbat, pacem et justitiam amabat, pacis perturbatores impugnabat. Reliquos annos vitae suae et regni breviter 2 percensere libet, ut nec rerum cognitione fraudentur posteri, nec in iis que minus ad hanc historiam pertinent prolixius immorari videar.

Qualiter Rex Franciae misit post Edwardum, ut esset ei comes individuus in Terram Sanctam.

Anno Dominicae Incarnationis millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quinquagesimus tertius, Rex Franciae, Lodowicus, secundum quod Rex cœli et terræ, mundi Salvator, cor ejus illustraverat, salubi consilio nixus, ut paganorum tumorem extenuaret, brutam et hostilem temeritatem eorum retunderet, necnon Terram Sanctam, in qua Salvator mundi dignatus est visibiliter conversari et pro redemptione humani generis mori, quam quidem terram sibi usurpando vendicant,5 insuper et vexillum sanctae Crucis, in qua dignatus est mori, crebris expeditionibus in deditionem Christianitatis manciparet. Quapropter ad propositum suum irrevocabiliter com-

---

1 is in orig. 2 persensere in orig. 3 is in orig. 4 More correctly, "quartus." 5 This passage is incomplete.
plendum, substantis et necessitudinis, velut arenam ad 1269.
maris, congregis, illud Evangelium in corde suo revolvens,—
"Quis rex, volens committere bellum versus alterum regem, non prius cogitans si possit cum decem millibus occurrere ei, etc.?" Nec eo sequinus illuc expeditionem pro temporum opportunitate dirigebat, donec nobilium suorum consorciis, cum innumerabili pecunia, et non modo peculio regiae magnanimitatis, locum sanctum visitaret.


Quod cum audisset Edwardus, mox Domino Regi sic orsus est fari;—"Domine mi, Rex, nostis quod sub-sstantia Anglicana jam depopulata est, tum propter diutinam guerram inter Regem et Barones ventilla-tam, tum propter bellorum varios eventus; et ego tenuis sum, et cum parvo comitatu incedens." Ad

\[1\] coniessis in orig.  
\[2\] cognoceret in orig.  
\[3\] Louis agrees to supply Prince Edward with money.  
\[4\] illari in orig.  
\[5\] cunctarumque in orig.  
\[6\] cuntasque in orig.
A.D. 1269. hæc Rex respondit,—"Triginta duo millia ³ libras legalis " monetæ tibi dabo, tantum adquiesce precibus meis."

Edwardus enim magnæ stature erat, et audaciae et fortitudinis, usum bellorum et notitiam armorum sciens. Fama ejus militiae ac probitatis per extremos mundi cardines divulgata est, ut merito illi quod de ² Ismaele dictum est, coaptari possit,—"Quia manus omnium contra illum, et illius contra omnes." Cujus viribus et industria Rex ultra modum confisit, idcirco illum precibus interpellabat, ut secum iter salutis arripperet. Placuit Edwardo vehementer Regis affectus; confestim pronunciavit, se paratum fore petitioni et ordinationi Domini Regis secum iturum, et mori et vovere, ad ulteriorum inimicorum Crucis Christi.

Dato igitur in amba parte foedere, paravit Rex se navem intrare. Unde tantum ³ perhibebatur exercitum habere, quantus erat difficilis ab ullo posse superari.

Confestim Edwardus in Angliam reidiit, ut licentiam a Regem et patrem in hunc modum rogasset, commovit dei pietas in lacrymas; justi desiderii petitioni adquiescens, suam benedictionem impendens, secum adducendo de optimatibus terræ permittens, quotquot spirituali desiderio eum sequi cupiebant. Denique seuti sunt eum quatuor Comites, et Barones totidem, et non modica multitudu virorum fortium. Adduxit autem secum conjugem suam, nomine "Alienoram," ex nobili genere editam, quæ omnes mulieres illius temporis in sapientia, et prudentia, et pulchritudine, superabat; dicerem enim, nisi adulatio videretur, non imparem fuisse Sibyllæ sapientissimæ; quæ quidem Alienora in terra illa, scilicet, in Acre, concepit, et peperit filiam quam vocabant "Dominam Johannam de Acre," quæ processu tem-
oporis tradita est Domino Gilberto, Comiti Gloucestriae, legitimo matrimonio; quae peperit ei duos filios; quo defuncto, assumptit sibi quemdam militem, elegantem forma, sed tenuem substantia. Non dico quod omnes proceres terrae hoc factum gratis animis exceperunt, terrae nullus expugnavit; omnes metu vel reverentia fraenarunt ora; metu, quia ex regia prosapia, quia filia Regis, reverentia, quia Comitissa praecipua regni. Attemen aderat unus e magnatibus terrae, qui in auribus Domini Regis, patris sui, intonuit, quod ejus honor adversum foret hujusmodi matrimonium, cum nonnulli nobles, reges, comites, et barones eam adoptabant toro legitimo. Cu illa respondit;—"Non est ignominiosum Her neque probrosus magno Comiti, et potenti, pauper-\[1\]culam mulierem, et tenuem, sibi legitimo matrimonio copulare; sic vice versa, nec Comitissae non est reprehensible, nec difficile, juvenem strenuum promovere." Placuit responsio ejus Domino Regi, et sic sopita est indignatio ejus et optimatum.

**Quomodo Edwardus se paraverat versus Terram Sanctam.**

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo primo, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quinquagesimus quintus, Edwardus, parata classe, applicuit Holy Land. in Galliam; cumque cognovisset Regem Franciae iter inceptum arripuisse versus Terram Sanctam, per mare transfretando, secutus est vestigia ejus sanus et incolumis; cumque processu temporis pervenisset in civitatem Thunis, ibi inveniebat Regem Franciae, cum exercitu suo; quod cum cognovisset Rex Franciae, quod Edwardus ibidem applicuisset, laetatus est gaudio magno; cum optimatibus suis occurrir eit, et sic cum osculo benignissime admissus est.

---

De combustione ecclesiae ¹ Norwicensis.

Norwich Cathedral is destroyed by fire.
(Æ.D. 1272.)

Eodem tempore, scilicet in crastino Sancti Laurentii, orta est contentio inter eives Norwic et Prioratum ejusdem. Itaque, hoste maligno instigante, in tantum incanduit indignatio eorum in Prioratum, et cornua superbiae eorum, more rinocerotis, attollentes, ut, timore Dei postposito, totam ecclesiam, cum edificiis, igne concremaverunt, excepta Capella Sancti Walteri, secur Infirmarium. Demum quicquid residuum inventum fuit, quod igne non erat combustum, ut vasorum, librorum, et hujusmodi, etiam cupam auream quae pendebat ad majus altare, in qua, more solito, impositum fuerat corpus Dominicum, violenter asportare non verebantur: quod factum detestabile, et a Christianis inauditum, cum pervenesisset ad aures Domini Regis Henrici Tertii, ultra quam credi potest, consternatus est. Mox juravit,—"Per pietatem Dei, vadam et visitabo eos, reddendo illis secundum merita sua."

King Henry takes vengeance on the incendiaries.

Sine mora, assumptis secum Comite Gloverniæ, Gilberto, Episcopo Rovensi, cum non modico ⁴ apparatu, versus Norwicum iter arripuit. Cumque Dominus Rex claro intuitu sanctam ecclesiam combustam esse cer neret, vix se compescuit a lacrymis, quia religioso affectu eam diligebat. ⁵ Episcopus autem anathematizavit omnes huic facto consentientes. Confestim Rex hujusmodi malefactores condemnavit: aliqui eorum per suspensum vitam condigne exhalaverunt, aliqui per equorum detractionem, aliqui per combustionem, condemnati sunt. Insuper communitas civitatis ejusdem in tribus mille marcis argentii, ecclesiae læse infra terminum ⁷ triennii solvendum, ad ecclesiam paedificandam, necnon in una ⁸ cuppa aurea, ponderis decem librarum

¹ Norwicensi in orig.
² rinocerontis in orig.
³ edificiis in orig.
⁴ apparatu in orig.
⁵ affectum in orig.
⁶ Episcopus Roffensis, in Rishanger's Chronicle.
⁷ trienni in orig.
⁸ culpa in orig.
auri, et aestimationis centum librarum argenti, in qua A.D. 1272. corpus Domini ponitur, extitit condemnata. Ista accidebant in tempore Willelmi de Brunham, tum temporis dictae ecclesiae Prioris.

De obitu Lodowici, Regis Franciae, versus Terram Sanctam.

Annum ille in quo Lodowicus, Rex Franciae, iter aripiebat versus Terram Sanctam, integre emensus nondum fuerat, et quando Edwardus ad eum copiosa navium classe applicerat, cum suprema dies, adveniens, ipsum ab hac luce subtraxit, in Thunis insula. Tunc Karolus, Rex 1 Sicilie, frater Lodowici predicti, Regis Franciae, largiendo thesaurum Regis, qui a tempore atavorum suorum reservatus fuerat, utens consilio 2 Achitofel, iterum treugas accepit contra paganos. Eadem ipso stulte praecogitante, necnon ad propria remeare volente, ecce ! miraculum divinum : mox mare aperuit os suum, et deglutivit eum cum toto exercitu suo, et cum tota supellectili sua : demum, ultione divina, non remansit solus 4 superstes, qui posset rem gestam proximo denunciare.

Cum Edwardus claro intuitu contemplasset, hujusmodi eventum illis accidisse non sine Dei providentia, percussit pectus suum, et juravit solito juramento, in haec verba ; — " Per sanguinem Dei, quamvis omnes cum millones et patriote mei me desererint, ego cum " Fowino, custode palefridi mei" — sic vocabatur custos,— " Acram intrabo, necon pactum fœderis et juramentui usque ad mortem observabo. Quo audito, omnes Anglicani cum eo viriliter et constantier illuc properabant. Cum autem hoc Soldano Babilonie de- nunciatum esset, dixit astantibus,— " Totam nationem

---

1 Cicilie in orig.  
2 II. Samuel, cc. xv., xvi., xvii.  
3 This is not the fact. The state-  
ment is corrected in Rishanger's Chronicle, p. 66.  
4 supertes in orig.
"nosteram sibi subjicere proponit;" quia cunctis timori erat pro sua magna valitudine et militia.

Qualiter Edwardus erat vulneratus toxicato cultello, et, Deo juvante, sanatus.

Prince Edward is wounded at Acre, by an assassin. (A.D. 1271.)

Edward was wounded at Acre, by an assassin. (A.D. 1271.)
Cumque Amyrayl, vir praepotens, cognovisset Edwardum toxicato vulnere per nuncium suum sauciatum moleste sustinuit, et ultra quam credi potest consternatus; quia non emanavit a conscientia sua, ut aliquid mali ei continget; quia intimo cordis affectu illum diligebat. Suspicabatur quod per eum superstitionem sectam paganorum mutaret, et ad Christianitatis religionem convertetur. Cumque divulgatum esset inter Christianos de inopinatu casu Edwardi, omnes amaximo usque ad minimum, catervatim ad eum currerunt, visitandi gratia. Timuerunt valde eum esse morti proximum; vix se continuuerunt quin in paganos irruerent; quod cum progressi meditarentur, erexit se Edwardus: oecus allocutus est omnem populum, dicens: "Viri fratre, et commilitones Christi, consocii peritatis et adversitatis, quorum probitates hactenus et in dandis consiliis et in militiis agendis, expertus sum; adipite nunc unanimiter sensus vestros, et sapienter praevidete super negotiis que vobis agendis esse noveritis. Quicquid enim a sapiente diligenter praevidetur, cum ad actum accedit, facilius toleratur; facilius ergo hostilitatem paganorum tolerare poterimus, si communi studio præmeditati fuerimus, quibus modis eam debilitare institerimus. Videtis me jam morti proximum, et si in presenti mortuis fuero, invadent vos, tanquam ovos sine pastore. Igitur audite consilium meum. Inhibeo, ex parte Dei, ne aliquis vestrum temere praesumat exercitum paganorum, vel in modo, vel in magno, infestare, seu improperium dare; quia nonnulli nostræ gentis ad sepulchrum Domini nostri, peregrinationis gratia, iter arripuerunt, per medios fines illorum perrexerunt; unde, si pagani aliquam molestiam per vos perpessi fuerint, qui residui estis, predicti peregrini neci inopinatae tradentur." Industria namque Edwardi, per

1 conscientia in orig.
A.D. 1271. cunctas paganorum nationes divulgata, cunctos in amorem ipsius illexerat, et, ut dicebatur, ipse Soldanus sanum consilium ipsius commendabat, et amplius verebatur.

Sanum consilium Edwardi omnes approbabant.

Edward's followers approve of his advice.

Edward's Sapientis animi effectum, optimi consilii profectum, laudare indesinenter debens, nunc ergo te approbo. Edward's followers approve of his advice. quod Deus non differt lare gri, festina subjugare quod ultro vult subjugari, festina nos omnes exaltare; qui, ut exalteris, non vulnera suscipere, nee vitam amittere, formidamus neque diffugiamus, at nunc nobis licentiam progradienti ad pugnam concede. Ad hæc Edwardus:—

"Gaudens admodum gaudeo, et, desiderio exstuans, sito cruorem inimicorum Crucis Christi, quemadmodum fontem, si triduo prohiberem ne biberem, quam dulcia erunt vulnera, quæ nihil recipiam vel infeream, quando dextras conseremus. Ipsa enim mors dulcis erit, dum per eam in vindicando Redemptorem nostrum, in exaltando religionem Christianitatis, ut, devictis ipsis, cum laetitia potiamur victoria."

Postquam Edwardus et caeteri ad hæc quæ dicenda erant, dixerunt;—"Videamus exercitum nostrum, si possit comparari exercitui paganorum;" computatis igitur vexillis Christianorum, ac diligenter recensitis, ex sola insula Anglicana, nec non caeterum insularum, tam ad milites armatos quam ad pedites, sagittarios, diminuendos numbers of the English troops. cuntas in orig. Sic in orig., probably an error for debemus. Edward the Elder being reckoned as the first, probably, and Edward the Confessor as the second. See the Annales (after Rishanger), p. 371, Note 4, and the Introduction to that Volume, p. xxxvii. This appears to be an apostrophe on behalf of Edward's followers. The whole of this narrative appears to be in a confused state, and incomplete. hæc in orig.
et fundibarios, vix reperierunt centum; reddendo A.D. 1271.
singula singulis de gente Christianorum, contra mille millia paganorum.

Quomodo Edwardus et Anglicani repatriare cæperunt.

Dispositis quibusque necessariis, congregatis tandem 1
cunctis, infecto negotio, Edwardus omnes in obsequium
suum unanimiter paratos præcepit celeriter repatriare,
et exercitum majorem, neconon copiosiorem, de omni
natione Christiana disponere et praeparare. Digredientur
ur ergo proceres, digredientur et Anglicani, et quod
eis præceptum erat perficere non differunt.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo
secundo, qui est annus regni Regis Henrici Tertii quin-
quagesimus sextus, incipientibus Kalendis Augusti, Ed-
wardus, cum Anglicanis, iter versus Angliam arripuit.
Cumque cum comitatu suo mare ingressus est, ubi tem-
pestivo ventorum affluatu, cum innumerabili navium
casse 2 circumseptus, prospero cursu et cum laetitia
altum secaret, portum 3 Sicilie applicuit. Illico tentoria
sua figens, expectavit ibidem insulanos reges et pro-
vinciarum provincialium duces, qui veniebant in obviam
sibi.

Rex autem 3 Sicilie Edwardum cum magno honore
suscepit, ipsis convivantibus et regale convivium cele-
brantibus. Tandem Rex ait Edwardo; — "Domine,
" non ero tibi boni nuncii bajulus, quod ægre sustineo.
" Dominus Rex Angliae, pater tuus, et Dominus Rex
" Alemannie, avunculus tuus, et Dominus Johannes,
" primogenitus tuus, viam universæ carnis ingressi
" sunt." Qui cum nominassset primogenitum, quantum
naturæ possibile est commotus, cœpit contristari et
plangere eum, more David plangentis filium suum

---

1 cunctis in orig.  
2 circumseptus in orig.  
3 Sicilie in orig.
A.D. 1273. 1 Absalon;—"O infelix ego, quod infortunium me in "hunc locum subvectat? Quis mihi tribuat ut moriar "pro te, fili? O invincibilis mortis poena, quae tam in- "opinabiliter florem tuæ juventutis consumit; ut igi- "tur illam quæ erat mihi altera spes, altera vita, "altera dulcedo jocunditatis, vitam diuturniori luce "dignam, finivit!" In hunc modum inconsolabiliter filium suum planxit. Mater vero ejus multo amplius et prolixius dolorem dolori accumulavit.

**De morte Regis, patris sui.**


**De Rege Edwardo.**

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo tertio, qui est annus regni Regis Edwardi primus,— Dominus Henricus Tertius, Rex Angliae, pater suus, dormivit cum patribus suis. Regnavit autem quinquaginta sex annis et eo amplius, quantum distat a festo Sanctorum Simonis et Judæ usque ad festum Sancti Edmundi Archiepiscopi. Tempore suo translatus fuit gloriosus Martyr, Thomas, Archiepiscopus Cantuariæ, quinquagesimo anno Martyrii sui. Eo tempore accepit idem Rex Henricus Tertius nobilissimam mulierem, "Alienoram" nomine, legitime matrimonio, filiam Comitis de Saveia; de qua genuit Edwardum, qui regnavit post ipsum, et Edmundum, qui fuit Comes Leycestriae et Lancastriae; et duas filias, seilicet, Beatricem,

---

1 II. Samuel, xviii. 33.

De commendatione Regis Henrici Tertii.

Erat enim idem Rex Henricus quasi stella matutina in medio nebulæ, et quasi luna plena in diebus suis luxit. Erat enim amatorem religionis, et cultor religiosorum. Cumque diligentier monachorum vitam et mores investigatione prudentissima didicisset, vocatis ad se Monasteriorum fratribus, cum eis hujusmodi sermonem habuit.—"Quot monachos habetis?" Cui cum respon- sum esset, tot et tot, at ille:—"Suntne obedientes " patri spirituali? In servitio divino strenui et " fortes?" Et addidit:—"Ad nos spectat examen de " eorum moribus et conversatione; si vivunt continenter, " si honeste se habent ad eos qui foris sunt, si in victu " sobrii, si moderati habitu." Item, talis erat religiosa consuetudo ejus, omni die quatuor aut quinque Missas

1 *marita* in orig.  
2 Probably in allusion to *Levi-" ticus* xviii. 5, 26, and xix. 19.  
3 *Isaiah* x. 1.  
4 *stella* in orig.
A.D. 1272. audire præoptavit; et cum sacerdos corpus Dominicum elevaret, tenens manus sacerdotis, illud devote osculari consuevit.

De religiosa devotione et fide ejus.

Quodam tempore, cum idem Rex ad audiendum servitium divinum produxius in ecclesia moram traheret, quidam frater Prædicatorum, cum prædicare verbum Dei populo decrevisset, ait Domino Regi;—“Domine, tempus transit, populus nos præstolatur; accedatis expeditius ad audiendum verbum Dei.” Cui ille respondit;—“Per pietatem Dei! malo loqui cum Deo, quam te audire loquentem de eo.” Ibi commendabatur a multis ejus devotio, et devota religio.

Ubi predictus Rex migravit de hoc mundo.

Cumque condignam ultionem super transgressione ecclesiae Norwicensis, ut supra dictum est, in propria persona, in tam matura ætate, contra eos qui dissipaverunt domum Dei, reddere curavit, sancta hac æmulatione Deum placavit iratum, mox Londoniis adire decretit. Cum autem ad Abatiam Sancti Regis et Martyris Edmundi declinasset, mox languor ipsum invasit, ac tenuit, usque ad consummationem vitæ. In ipso aegritudinis articulo, venerunt ad eum Comites et Barones terre, et Episcopi, visitandi gratia, et solatii. Coram Episcopo, spirituali patre, ipse ore proprio sua fatebatur peccata, et manu propria pectus suum percutiebat, et malam voluntatem dimittebat; consilio Dei et episcoporum, emendationem vitæ sua observaturum se promittebat. Sub ista promissione ab Episcopis absolvitur; crucem Domini adoravit, corpus et sanguinem devote suscepit, eleemosynam suam dis-

1 Qy. if not an error for prolixius, or perhaps, productius?
posuit, ita dicendo:—"Solvantur debita mea, reliqua A.D. 1272.
"indigentibus distribuantur." Tandem illi auctoritatem de unctione infirmorum, quam Ecclesia a Beato

Procesu temporis, in ecclesia Westmonasterii, cum patribus suis, honorificae sepulture commendatur. Cu
jus animae propitietur Redemptor animarum!

De adventu Regis Edwardi in Angliam, simul et Coronatione.

Anno Dominicæ Incarnationis millesimo ducentesimo A.D. 1274.

De diuturna infirmitate domesticorum animalium.

Anno regni Regis Edwardi Tertii seundo, infesta lues domesticorum animalium totam pervagata est Angliam, among sheep.

1 Two of the Saxon Edwards reckoned as prior kings. See page 32 ante, Note 3.
2 pervagata in orig.
3 Plene in orig.

*Qualiter Rex vocavit* 

*Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, refuses to attend Parliament.*

Eodem tempore, dum Parlamento indicto necnon Statuta salubria Westmonasterii providerentur, misit Rex per solemnes nuncios ad Neulinum, Principem Walliae, ut veniret ad Parlamentum suum, et quod faceret ei, secundum consuetudinem, legitimum homagium: qui venire contempsit. Statim Rex, commotus in iram propter ejus contemptum et inobedientiam, consilio Barnagii, non inerti *apparatu secessit in Walliam. Walenses autem, Regis adventum formidantes, opinantes se levi negotio ab exercitu Regis posse circumveniri, terga verterunt. Tandem Wallia circumvenita et obsessa, Dominus Rex absque difficultate apud Snoudunam pervenit; quo audito Neulino, ipse, sibi timens, ad Regem sponte venire maturavit, necon regiae *majestatis offensam placare, pollicendo se etiam Statuta omnia firmius et fidelius servatum; et addidit,— “Quid enim attinet contra torrentem brachia tendere? Contra stimulum calcitrare? Et cum laboribus non nisi odium querere, extremae sit, ut quidam ait, dementia.” Talibus promissionibus a Neulino pollicitis, sopita est Regis indignatio. Mox Dominus Rex adduxit eum Londoniis: ibi fecit ei

---

1 *Hispanie* in orig.  
2 An error for *Leulinum*.  
3 *aparatu* in orig.  
4 *magestatis* in orig.
homagium, et desponsavit filiam Domini Simonis de Monte Forti, anno quinto regni Regis Edwardi.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo, qui est annus regni Regis Edwardi Tertii nonus,—eodem tempore misit Dominus Rex Dominum Rogerum de Clifford in Walliam, tanquam Justiciarum totius Walliae. Eo tempore venenum malitiae, diu in animo David, fratris Neulini, nutritum, tandem erupit in publicum. 1281.)


Causa belli inter Regem Angliae et Neulimum, Princem Walliae.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo primo, qui est annus regni Regis Edwardi Tertii undecimus, Dominus Rex, tales casus moleste ferens, animum sumum, diversis cruciatibus vexatum, nunc hunc nunc illuc revolvit, cogitando an cæpta prælia cum Neulino et complicibus suis committat.

Tandem adquiescens consilio Barnagii sui, Walliam aditus cum exercitu suo ingreditur. Commilitones igitur suos catervatim disponere volens, ut opus accidisset, sciret ubi posset sese recipere, et hostibus suis prælia ingerere. Pars quoque exercitus sui disponitur

1 See page 32, ante, Note 3.
2 Probably for intempestive.
3 mansiparet in orig.
4 disponere in orig.

De morte Neulini.

Processu temporis, descendebat Neulinus de Snoudune, et venit ad Montem Gumori, et improperabat Anglicanos magis jactantia atque minis abundare, quam audacia et probitate valere. Quod cum audisset Rogerus le Estraunge, pro tanto opprobrio indignatus, et non modicum iratus, illico evaginato gladio quo accinctus erat, irruit in eum, et, ejusdem capite amputato, corpus truncum reliquit. Caput suum misit

1 dilituerant in orig.
Lundoniensibus, suspendendum super Turrim, ad futurorum cautelam, ne hujusmodi seditionem attentare præsumant.

**Qualiter David captus est et incarceratus.**

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo secundo, qui est annus regni Regis Edwardi Tertii undecimus, tota patria circa Gloucestriam, usque ad profundas Gualas, partim vi, partim benevolentia, pedetentim residuis illius anni mensibus, post mortem 1283.) Neuini, Principis Walliae, Domino Regi, Edwardo Tertio, applicuit, ad persequendum et capiendum David. Aliquantis castellorum, intra munitiones suas se contutantes, exitum rerum speculabantur; deinde, ex ordinatione Domini Regis, Dominus Johannes de Vesci, cum aliis militibus, animis obstinatis, obsedit Snoudun; qua sine difficultate capta, appropinquavit Rex, si forte laborantibus opem aliquam conferret; villas quae eam erant, manu forti intravit, nihil omnino, in quantum valebat, reliquum faciens, quod posset inimicis suis esui, seu alicui usui, esse. Mox voti compos effectus, totam Walliam in manu sua capiebat; deinde prosecutus est David, et per exploratores Walenses, convicaneos suos, captus, et Domino Regi adductus est; et, ipso jubente, apud Salopisbyr carcerali custodia mancipatus; et in festo Sancti Michaelis proximo sequente, secundum merita sua, justitia dictante, diuidicatus est. Et quia fuit traditor Domini Regis, adjudicatum fuit ei, equis dilaniari, et pro homicidio et deprædatione bonorum alienorum, adjudicatum est ei, ut suspendatur per quatuor partes Angliæ.

---

1 This is apparently the word; but it is doubtful.
2 pededentim in orig.
3 conferet in orig.
4 reliquum in orig.
Bellum inter Regem Franciæ et Hispaniæ.

War between the Kings of France and Aragon. (A.D. 1285.)

Emensis postmodum paucis diebus, orta est guerra formidable inter Regem Franciæ et Hispaniæ; denique, cum utrinque decertarent, supervenit nox, quæ singulos ab armis ad quietem invitavit. Quietem desiderabant multi; plures vero, qui magis optabant bellum quam pacem, consilium inierunt, quo adversarios suos perderent.

At Gallicani, cum inspexissent superbiam suam sibi nocuisse, nec aliquod emolumentum contulisse, Hispanicos autem fere triumphasse, proposuerunt cum diluculo egredi, inimicos suos ad campestre proelium provocare; quod factum est. Nam ut diem protulit Titan, egressi sunt, dispositis catervis, ut propositum suum exequentur; et mutuam necem utroque conficiunt.

King Edward is requested to mediate.

The son of Charles II., King of Sicily, is captured by Peter III., King of Aragon. (A.D. 1285.)

Death of Philip III. of France, and Peter, King of Aragon.

King Edward crosses over to France, to


Illis diebus, Summus Pontifex, Honorius, misit Dominum Edwardum, Regem Angliæ, in Franciam, propter suam valitudinem et nobilitatem, ut dictos Reges pacificaret; et sic, mare transfretato, ibidem moram traxit

1 Isspainæ in orig. | 2 Sic in orig.; probably, for felicis. | 3 Sic in orig.; probably, for felicis.
per multum tempus, anno regni sui quartodecimo, et mediate. 
fecit mirabilia magna in Wasconia, ab hiis qui se nolabant regnare super eos.

*Iterum Walenses cceperunt levare aculeos suos contra Regem Anglie, Edwardum.*

Anno millesimo ducentesimo octogesimo quarto, qui est annus regni Regis Edwardi Tertii quintus-decimus, 

*Praelium in Alemannia.*

Eodem tempore factum est proelium magnum in Ale- 
mannia; ubi occubuerunt Dominus Henricus de Hicin- 
burne, et frater ejus, et populi ad numerum decem millium. Ibi captus fuit Archiepiscopus de Colonia.

¹ effectus in orig. ⁵ opinum in orig. ² Reces ap Meredith is probably meant. ³ opida in orig. ⁴ opidum in orig. ⁶ opidi in orig.
A.D. 1288. Illo eodemque anno copiosa fertilitas frumenti abundabat in Anglia.

Incipiunt Statuta ultimo edita apud Westmonasterium, anno regni Regis Edwardi Tertii octodecimo.

"Quia emptores terrarum et tenementorum de feodis magnatum et aliorum, in prejudicio eorundem, temporibus retroactis multotiens in feodis suis sunt ingressi, quibus libere tenentes eorundem magnatum et aliorum terras et tenementa sua vendiderunt, tenenda in feodo sibi et hereditibus suis de feoffatoribus suis, et non de capitalibus dominis feodorum; per quod domini iidem, domini capitales, eschaitas et maritagia, et custodias terrarum, et tenementa, de feodis suis existentia, sepius amiserunt; quod quidem eisdem magnatibus, etiam aliis dominis, quam plurimum durum et difficile videbatur, et similiter, in hoc casu exhaeredatio manifesta;—Dominus Rex, in Parliamento suo post Pascha, apud Westmonasterium, anno regni sui octodecimo, videlicet, in quindicesma Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, ad instantiam magnatum regni sui, concessit, providit, et statuit, quod de cetero liceat unicuique homini terram suam, seu tenementum suum, seu partem inde, pro voluntate sua vendere; ita quod feofatus teneat terram illum, seu tenementum, de eodem capitali domino, pro eodem servitio et consuetudines, per quæ feofator suus illa prius tenuit. Et si partem aliquam terrarum suarum, seu tenementorum, alicui vendiderit, feofatus illum teneat immediate de capitali domino, et oneretur statim de servitio quantum pertinet, sive pertinere debet, eodem domino pro particula illa, se-

---

1 magnatum in orig. 6 suuum in orig.
2 existenter in orig. 7 eodem in orig.
3 quidam in orig. 8 causa in orig.; corrected from Stat. Realm.
"cundum quantitatem terrae, seu tenementi, venditi, A.D. 1290.
"et sic in hoc 1 casu decidat capitali domino ipsa
"pars servitii per manum feofatoris capienda, ex quo
"feofatus debet eidem domino capitali, juxta quanti-
tatem terrae seu tenementi venditi, de particula illa
"servitii sic debiti esse intendens [et] respondens.

"Et sciem dum est, quod per praedictas venditiones,
"seu emptiones, terrarum seu tenementorum, seu par-
tis 2 alicujus eorumdem, nullo modo possunt terre,
"seu tenementa illa, in parte vel in toto, ad manum
"mortuam devenire, arte vel ingenio, contra formam
"Statuti super hoc dudum editi. Et sciem dum, quod
"istud Statutum locum tenet de terris venditis et
"emptis in feodum simpliciter tantum, et quod se
"extendit ad tempus futurum; et 3 incipiat locum te-
"nere ad festum Sancti 4 Michaelis proximo futurum."

Cum dudum provisum fuisset, quod viri religiosi Contents
feoda aliquorum non ingrederentur sine licentia et
voluntate capitalium dominorum, de quibus feoda illa
immediate tenentur; et viri religiosi postmodum nihil-
ominus tam feoda sua propria, quam aliorum, hactenus
ingressi sunt, ea appropriando et emendo, et aliquando
ex dono aliorum recipiendo; per quod servitia, quae ex
hujusmodi feodo debentur, et quae ad defensionem
regni ab initio provisa fuerunt, indebite subtra-
huntur, et deinde capitales domini eschaetas suas inde
amittunt; Rex, super hoc pro utilitate regni congruum
remedium 6 provideri volens, de consilio Praelectorum,
Comitum, et aliorum 7 fidelium regni, de Consilio Do-
mini Regis 8 existentium, providit, ordinavit, et statuit,
quod nullus religiosus, aut alius quicunque, terras
aut tenementa aliqua emere vel vendere, vel sub colore
donationis, aut termini, aut alterius tituli cujuscun-
que, ab aliquo, 9 [recipere, aut alio] quovis modo, arte,

1 causa in orig.; corrected from Stat. Realm.
2 alicus in orig.
3 incipiad in orig.
5 regum in orig.; corrected from Stat. Realm.
6 proinde in orig.
7 fidelis in orig.
8 existenter in orig.
A.D. 1279, vel ingenio, sibi appropriare presumat, sub forisfacturæ eorum, per quod 1 ad manum mortuam terræ et tenementa hujusmodi deveniant quoqu modo.

Providit etiam Dominus Rex, quod si aliquis religiosus, aut alius, contra praesens Statutum alium modo, arte, vel ingenio, venire præsumpserit, liceat Domino Regi, et aliis immediate capitalibus dominis taliter alienati feodi, illud infra annum a tempore alienationis hujusmodi ingredi, et tenere in feodium et hæreditatem. Et si dominus capitalis negligens fuerit, et feodum illum ingredi noluerit infra annum, tunc liceat proximo capitali domino 2 mediato feodi illius, infra dimidium annum sequentem, feodium illum ingredi et tenere, sicut praedictum est; et 3 sic quilibet dominus mediatus, si propinquior dominus in ingrediendo hujusmodi feodium negligens fuerit, sicut praedictum est. Et si omnes capitales domini feodi illius, qui plena fuerint ætate, et infra quatuor maria, et extra prisonam, per primum annum negligentes fuerint, vel remissi, in hac parte, Rex, statim post annum completum a tempore quo hujusmodi emptiones, donationes, aut alias appropriationes, fieri 4 contigerit, terras et tenementa hujusmodi 5 capiæt in manum suam, et alios feoffabit per certa servitia Regni inde ad defensionem regni 6 facienda; salvis capitalibus dominis feodorum illorum wardis, 7 eschaetis, et aliis ad ipsos pertinentibus, ad servitium inde debitum et consuetum.

Regnante Domino nostro Ihesu Christo in æternum et ultra.

Edwardus, primogenitus illustri Regis Anglie, Henrici Tertii, regiam unctionem accepit, et coronam, pariter et regnum obtinuit paternum, anno Verbi Incarnati mil-
OPUS CHRONICORUM. 47

lesimo ducentesimo septuagesimo tertio. De hoc Rege, scilicet Edwardo, non solum invalida apud Anglos fama disserit, verum etiam per universum Latinum orbem praecominium publicatur et prædicatur, tum propter ejus militiae et fortitudinis strenuitatem, tum propter sapientiae et prudentiae praerogativam. Cujus hic verba pro compendio subjicerem, ubi quia ultra opinionem in laudibus principis commendatur. Felices se reges alienigenæ pro magnó munere ferebant, si vel affinitate vel muneribus ejus amicitias mercarentur; et quia nobilis animus semel incitatus in ampliora conatur, Johannem Bailol, quam Regem Scotiæ præsecerat, Leulimum, Principem Walliæ, cedere regnis compulerit, propter eorum rebellionem et inobedientiam; alios tamen digniores, pro beneplacito suo, non multó post, miseratione infractus, in antiquum statum, sub se regnantes, substituit, gloriosius esse pronuncians regem facere, quam regem esse.

Verum inter haec miranda et insigni præconio prosequenda vita Regis interior; licet enim, ut quidam ait,—“Leges inter arma silent,”—ille inter fremitus armorum leges tulit, quibus sui et divino cultui et discipline militari assuescerent. Et quia occasione paganorum Christianis insidiantium, ut eorum barbaricam rabiem attenuaret, et eos Christianitati subjugaret, Anglicanos multotiens oppresserat et vexarat per taxationes vicesimae, quindinæ, et decimæ, non multum imputandum est ei, quod eos excoriaret, seu depauperaret, quia sic oportuit fieri; hoc commento pacem infudit provinciæ, propellendo hostiles invasiones.

Rex Edwardus multos liberos habuit.

Ex nobilissima muliere, Regina Angliæ, vocabulo His wife "Alianora," quæ tempore illo omnes mulieres praes

1 Sic in orig. 2 Cicero, Pro Milone. 3 vexaret in orig. 4 processit in orig.

Et quoniam animus disciplinatus ipse sibi doctrina est, et magister sapientiae, Domina Alienora, Regina, post discessum Domini sui, dicti Regis Henrici Tertii, de illo regali supercilium inclinata, multis annis carnem, in deliciis nutritam, cilicio convolveret in eadem domo Amesburiae, exuendo veterem hominem, valedicens seculo, habitum sanctimonialium induit, imitans vestigia neptis suæ. In qua quidem domo splendidum regiae sanctitudinis refulgurat speculum, quoniam illius meritis deputatur, quod eo loco multo devotarum Deo foeminarum chorus claritate religionis totam Angliam irradians. Illie sacrae virgines, nullius penitus corruptæ conscience, illic religiose continentis, post primi tori damna secundi ignis nesciae; in quorum omnium moribus, ita facetus pudor cum modesta consentit elegantia, quod nihil supra. Unde probabilis credulitas apponitur dicentibus, quod per illarum orationes totus sustentatur orbis.

1 semet in orig.  
2 In allusion to Eph. iv. 22 and ibid.  
3 This sentence is incomplete.
Cum autem tempus appropinquaret, ut debitum naturae solveret, reddidit Creatori suo gratam animam; corpus suum, cum aromatibus conditum, in eadem ecclesia condigno honore et reverentia sepulturæ traditur, anno Coronationis filii sui, Regis Edwardi, vice-simo; anima in coelis congaudet, ut creditur.

Obiit Alienora Secunda, Regina Anglie.

Anno ab Incarnatione Domini, millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo, qui est annus regni Regis Edwardi Tertii decimus-nonus, Domina Alienora Secunda, Regina Anglie, migravit de hoc saeculo, in villa de Herdebi, juxta Lincolniam; cujus animæ propitietur Deus. Quoniam de optimis moribus ejus paucæ quædam lamentando descripsi, ob mortis ejus dolorem, et cordis amaritudinem, dignum enim duxi genealogiam ejus breviter veraciterque subtexere; ut cum diligens indagator progenitorum suorum probitates rimatur, qualis in eis virtus enuiturit, qualis pietas splenduerit, agnoscat quam naturale sit abundare divitiis, flore virtutibus, victoriis illustrari, et, quod hiis omnibus praestat, Christiana religione et justitiae prærogativa fulgere. Est enim ad optimos mores obtinendos maxime incentivum, scire se ab optimis quibusque nobilitatem sanguinis meruisse; cum ingenuum animum semper pudet ingloriosa progenie degenerem inveniri; et contra rerum sit naturam, de bona radice fructus malos pullulare. Licet igitur regnum non amittens sed mutans, temporale deserens et adipiscens æternum, tamen ejus transmigrationem nonnulli lacrymabiliter planxerunt. Erat enim quasi columna totius Anglie, sexu quidem femina, sed animo atque virtute plus viro; quum temporibus suis Angliam alienigenæ miπime

---

1 She was, in reality, the third Queen Eleanor, the wives of Henry II. and Henry III. having borne that name; and died A.D. 1291.

2 adipiscens in orig.
A.D. 1291. gravabant. Sicut Aurora transactæ noctis tenebras radiis suæ claritatis depellit, ita hujus sanctissimæ mulieris et reginae promotione, per omnem Angliam nox infidelitatis expellitur; irarum atque discordiarum propelluntur.

Cum hujus Reginæ laudabilem vitam mors pretiosa conclusit, Dominus Rex, mox resolutus in lacrymas, omnibus diebus vitæ suæ eam plangebat; misericordem Ihesum jugis precibus pro ea interpellabat, eleemosynarum largitiones, necon Missarum solemnitates, pro ea in perpetuum, in multis locis regni sui, præordinavit et procuravit.

Cumque tempus appropinquaret ut traderetur corpus sepulturæ, Dominus Rex jubet adesse summos regni proceres, cum pontificibus. Corpus delatum est Londoniis, conditum aromatibus: in ecclesia Westmonasterii, cum Regibus terræ, traditur sepulchrum honorificæ; anima in ccelo, Deo disponente, exultat cum angelis. Cumque corpus portaretur ad locum sepulturæ, et appropinquasset ad Sanctum Albanum, totus Conventus, solemniter revestitus in albis et capis, perrexit in obviam ei, usque ad extremitatem villæ, videlicet, ad ecclesiam Sancti Michaelis. Deinde in presbyterio, ante majus altare, collocatur; nocte illa a toto Conventu officiiis divinis et saecris vigiliis, assidua devotione, honoratur. In omni loco et villa in quibus corpus pusebat, Dominus Rex iussit crucem miro tabulatu erigi, ad Crucifixi laudem et ejus memoriam, ut a transeuntribus pro ejus anima deprecetur: in qua quidem cruce ejusdem Reginæ effigiem depingi fecit.

Quomodo orta est dissensio inter Regem Franciae et Angliæ, et utrumque regnum.

A.D. 1292. Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo secundo, qui est annus regni Regis Edwardi vicesimus

1 A word is apparently wanting here.

\footnote{\textit{kaut} in orig.}
A.D. 1293. *Quomodo Anglicani se vindicabant de Normannis.*


*Quomodo Rex Franciæ invitavit Regem Angliæ ad Parlamentum suum.*

Anno illo emense, Rex Franciæ invitavit Regem Angliæ ad Parlamentum suum. Mox Rex Angliæ respondit, quod ad Parlamentum suum venire diffugeret;

₁ agrediuntur in orig. └────> ² Probably for Pictavorum.
neceon et ei subjectionem et homagium facere con-
tempsit: quod ipse graviter ferens, afflictioque durissimis
proelis populo, patriamque pristino jugo supposuit.

Ea tempestate, cum Anglici assuetum iter maris diu-
tius persulcarent, invenerunt triginta naves viris armatis
ad bellum paratis: eos neci tradiderunt, naves vero
Regi Angliae obtulerunt; quod moleste sustinuit, affir-
mans se de eorum sanguine immunem esse. Normanni
ab illa die obsidebant omnes portus in suis partibus
applicantibus congruos; ubi naves mercatorum appulsa-
erant, diversis machinationibus opprimere et custodire
nitebantur. Copia transeundi omnibus Anglicis penitus
denegatur, et, vice versa, Anglicani portus suos fortis-
sime custodiebant per quatuor partes Angliae, ubi pu-
tabant hostium suorum incursus. Duravit illud flagi-
tium in utroque regno fere per quinquennium; siqui-
dem e vestigio Normannorum et Pictorum, cum suis
complicibus, multi cæsi, multi in mare mersi: sic non
semel certatum est, sed multotiens. Cumque semper
victoria consentiret Anglis, ut fere fit in rebus mor-
talium, et istis successus accendit audaciam, et illis
timor aluit ignaviam, ut nihil magis Normanni quam
cum Anglis manus consenerere caverent.

Quomodo Edwardus Tertius, Rex Angliae, cogitabat
utrumque regnum pacificare.

Interea Rex Edwardus, non minus acer ingenio quam
alacer in prælio, dissensiones et prælia utriusque regni
cum dolore ferens, tanquam ¹ viscera sua de claustro
pectoris acerbitate ferri abstracta, sententiam illius ver-
seculi memoriae commendans;—

2 "Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi,"—

¹ vicera in orig. | ² Horace, Epist. I. 2, 14.
A.D. 1294. cogitabat in corde, ut sapiens princeps, ut sese cum Rege Franciae pacificaret, ne strages tanta utriusque gentis diutius duraret. Mandavit etiam Regi Franciae, ut, teste conscientia sua, benevolentiam suam et gratiam musquam se demeruisse, nec offensam promeruisse; ex quo humiliter supplicavit, si in aliquo delinqueret, quod in nullo conscius est, satisfacientem admitteret ad gratiam: si non deliquit, justo Dei judicio interveniente, bene semper de caetero promerentem ad pacis osculum recipieret, et a persecutione amodo cessaret. Direxit epistolam per solemnes nuncios, mandans ut concordiam inirent, et ut omnis indignatio, hucusque habita, perpetuae oblivioni traderetur; expertus Regem posse plecti prece quam fastu tyrannico. Mandavit igitur ei, daturumque sese promitteret Wasconiam, ea conditione, ut ei daret sororem suam, cognomento Margaretam, legito matrimonio possidendum, et quod eam refeoffaret sibi et heredibus suis.

Postpositis ergo debellationibus, suaserunt majores natu Regi Franciae promissionibus Regis Angliae acquiescere; dicebant namque perniciosum esse, et Deo odibile, necnon totius orbis dignitati contrarium, diutius pululare discordiam. Quippe timebant Regis audaciam, Anglorum fortitudinem praeferebant ipsos sensu, et sapiencia, ac humilitate coadunari, quam dubium certamen de caetero inire. Hii et pluribus aliis Rex Franciae mitigatus, paruit consiliis suorum, et Edwardo, Regi Angliae, promisit dare sororem suam toro maritali, dato ambabus partibus foedere irrefragabili; et quod eam refeoffaret de Wasconia, ut supra dictum est. Illico Rex Franciae, cum suis, Burdeus intravit, seisinam inde paravit.

---

1 conscientia in orig. 2 promeruisse in orig. 3 conscius in orig. 4 tyrannico in orig. 5 roffeoffaret in orig.
Quomodo Rex Franciae, auditum consilio adulatorio, proponit a pacto resilire.

Sed quia discordia sese prosperis rebus semper misero conatur, succedente tempore, mille artifex, hostis antiquus, suscitavit quosdam fabricatores mendacii et discordiae, qui ad Regem Franciæ accesserunt, dicentes:—“Ut quid ignavia te tantum occupavit, ut Regis Angliæ debitam subjectionem prætermittis? Ad. Parlementum tuum venire distulit, assuetam reverentiam et obedientiam reddere contennit; add quod in pluribus debellationibus expertus es, qui quotiens in provinciam nostram applicendi resistere prævales; ipsumque e regno suo, scilicet, Wasconiam, fugare potes. Rump foedus quod tibi dedecori est, trade sororem tuam alteri regi, ut ipsius auxilio Wasconiam in perpetuum possides.” Postquam igitur et pluribus aliis animum Regis corruperunt, adquievit ipse: ut a prædictis adulatoribus et falsis consiliariis edoctus fuerat, resilivit a primæ pactiosis federe.

Philippus autem, Rex Franciae, Regi Angliæ, Edwardo, nec utilis nec infestus fuit, propterea quod esset ventri magis quam negotiis deditus. At vero Carolus, frater ejus, varium se præstitit, ut in neutra parte bene constans. Primo enim tempore plurimus in fra trem irarum auctor, Edwardo, Regi Angliæ, ad capiendam Wasconiam, fuit corruptus Anglorum spoliis, et multo Regis obryzo, non quod Rex Angliæ ei obtulerit, sed quod ille concupiverit ultro; ne clarissimæ patriæ nervos dissimulatione sua, necnon segnitiae, succidi sinister.

Postea vero simultas inter eos exorta est, pro eo quod Comes Flandriæ decrevisset filiam suam filio Regis Angliæ dare, legítimo matrimonio. Diu ex parte

1 falsis in orig.  
2 corruptus in orig.
A.D. 1294. utriusque ¹ Regis labores viarum consumpserunt nuncii, ut dignarentur Reges pacificare; cum utrique grossum tumeret cor, nec alter alteri pro persona cederet. Rex Angliæ, memor sacrae Scripturæ;—“Sapientia invicit ‘malitiam,’” et illud Salomonis,—² “Melior est patiens ‘viro forti,’” maluit fatuitatem, necnon protervam arrogantiam Gallorum, patientia extundere ad tempus, quam viribus repellere, juxta illud;—³ “Omnia tempus ‘habent.” Quapropter boni principis se velle sequi exemplum, ut modestia sua eorum remoretur impetus quos ita paratos prospererat ad bellum. Postremo, cum videret prudentiam suam sinistra interpretatione turbari, et ignaviam vocari, in tantum ut Carolus praedas ageret, obsidiones procuraret, ex persona Regis majori fortitudine vim animi concussit Wasconiam obsidere et obtinere.

Quod cum per nationes divulgamus esset, et ad notitiam Regis Angliæ pervenisset, emensa hyeme, Rex Angliæ consilium habuit a familiaribus suis, ut expeditius ad partes Wasconiae tenderet. Mox navigium suum parat, prosperos ventos expectat. Optato igitur vento flante, erexit vela sua, cum exercitu suo Wasconiae applicuit; jamque rates telluri appulerant, ecce! gentes Wasconiae et Walenses, quorum non erat numerus, cum tota fortitudine sua ei occurrerunt, adjutorium pollicentes. Ibi consilium cum proceribus regni inivit, qualiter hostes suos longius arceret, ut terram suam quiete teneret. Aderat secum Comes Leicestrie, Dominus Edmundus, frater suus, princeps militiae suæ, et alii Comites et Barones, quorum consilio totum regnum tractabatur. Aderat et Regis Alemanniae exercitus, aderant et Regis Aragundiae commilitones, qui ut caeteros in affectum pugnandi induxissent, consilium dederunt ut recenter Wasconiam adirent, Gallos

¹ Regi in orig. ² Eccles. vii. 8. ³ Eccles. iii. 1.

Quomodo Judæi expulsi sunt ab Anglia.

Eodem tempore fuerant Judæi nonnulli in omni civitate et villa famosa in Anglia habitantes inter Christianos; quos Rex Edwardus, cum consilio procerum suorum, jussit exulari, et terram suam uno die irre- vocabiliter evacuare, tali dans decretum;—ut quicumque Judæus inventus fuerit in Anglia post primam admonitionem, aut fonte baptismatis ablueretur, aut sic Christum, Dei Filium, fideliter confiteretur, aut capite ictur; Mox Judæi, cum tota supellectili sua, timore mortis perculsi, Angliam moleste evacuaverunt. Cumque naves nacti essent, et mare intrassent, vene- runt tempestate, flaverunt venti validi, et naves eorum concusserunt, unde quamplures dimersi erant. Quidam in littore Gallicano appulsi, miserrime, Dei providentia, interierunt. Denum Rex Galliae, misericordiæ fractus, licet inimici Dei hucusque exitissent, saltem creaturae Dei, et ingrati, permisit eos in potestate sua habitare per modicum tempus; videlicet, in Amias civitate. Cum id Romæ nunciatum fuisset, et Summi Pontificis aures offendisset, acris ignescens ira, ipsum acriter increpavit.

A.D. 1294. Victories gained by the English over the French.

1 insidiis in orig. 4 Sie in orig. 2 plecetaretur in orig. 5 Sic in orig. 3 concuserunt in orig.
The goldsmiths of England punished for clipping the coin.

Quomodo omnes aurifabri de Anglia pro tonsione monetae incarcerati sunt simul et semel uno die.

Emensis deinde paucis diebus, gravis querela facta fuit Regi Edwardo pro tonsione monetae; quia vix, aut cum difficultate, inter viginti marcas inveniretur unus denarius bonus et legalis, quin tonderetur aut minor aretur solito. Quapropter Rex Edwardus per omnes Comitatus regni direxit brevia sua de villa in villam, ut uno die omnes et singuli aurifabri caperentur, et in prisonam tenerentur, donec super hujusmodi transgressionem punirentur, ne posteri sui talia attentarent.

Quomodo Edwardus Tertius, Rex Angliae, scripsit Summo Pontifici, Bonefacio.

His et alius incitatus, Edwardus, Rex Angliae, conquestus est Summo Pontifici, qualiter Rex Franciae eum illusisset, pactum foederis confregisset; postulans instantissime quatinus consilium et auxilium apponere dignaretur; firmiter pollicendo, et cum juramento affirmando, quod si voti compos efficeretur, videlicet, ut pactionis foedus teneretur, et pax stabilis et firma inter utrumque regnum consolideretur, seipsum, cum omni exercitu suo, absque cunctatione, Terrae Sanctae submitteret, ad debellandam barbaricam rabiem Sarazenorum, et eorum qui Terram Sanctam obsident.

Obiit Dominus Edmundus, Comes Lancastriae et Leicestriae.

Eodem tempore obiit Dominus Edmundus, frater Regis Angliae, quem idem Rex constituit ducem et principem super exercitum Wasconiae. Illic in quadam ecclesia cadaver ejus exinteratrum est, ne diuturnitate
OPUS CHRONICORUM. 59

A.D. 1295. He is buried at Westminister.

Corruptum nares assidentium et astantium exacer-
baret. Ossa quidem in quadam cista, ad hoc idonea,
reconduntur, quousque serenas auras paulo clementior
hyems inveheret. Tandem emenso dimidio anno, Lon-
doniiis maritimo conductu subvectantur, et in ecclesia
Westmonasterii condigno honore sepulture traduntur.

**Orta est dissensio in Universitate Oxoniæ, inter
scholares et burgenses.**

Sub eodem tempore orta est discordia intolerabilis
Disturbances between
inter burgenses Oxoniarum et scholares. Facta enim
the scholars
prius quadam contumelia inter duos garciones diverse
and burgesses at
nationis, mox eis succurrunt compatriotæ, ita quod
Oxford.
aliis in alios insurgentibus, quamplures verberati re-
duntur, et vulnerati utrobique, quidam mortui. Sicque
(A.D.
totā villa perturbatur, quod omnes, tam clericis quam
1296.)
laici, evacuatis domibus, glomeratim ad pugnam con-
volurunt. Absentibus itaque clericis, quidam de laicis
domos eorum clam intraverunt, et bona diversimoda
abinde asportaverunt. Ibi interficiebatur Dominus
Fulco de Neirmith, rector ecclesiae de Pychelnstorn.
Deposita igitur super hoc querela coram Rege, Dominus
Rex præcepit Justiciariis villam Oxoniæ adire, pacem
inter discordantes reformare, justitia dictante, homicidas
judicio plecti. Nihilominus, ut pax firma solidaretur in
Universitate, burgenses pro transgressione scholaribus
satisfecerunt in ducentis libris. Igitur Episcopus Lin-
colniensis, volens pacem Universitatis roborare, omnes
de cetero pacis perturbatores solemniter excommuni-
cavit.

1 corruptum in orig.  4 These two words are omitted in
2 idonia in orig.      orig., and added, in another hand,
3 Apparently martinio in orig. in the margin.
JOHANNIS DE TROKELOWE ANNALES.
JOHANNIS DE TROKELOWE ANNALES.

[MS. Cott. Claudius D. VI. fol. 192a—fol. 210a.]

Incipiunt Annales Regis Edwardi, filii Edwardi, filii Henrici Tertii.


Qui, suscepto regni gubernaculo, fidelitates et homagia a prelatis, magnatibus, et proceribus universis susceptit. Sed antequam patrem debitarer sepulture, statim in tyrannidem erectus, Episcopum Cestriæ, Dominum Walterum de Langetone, regni Thesaurarium, ac patris sui, nuper defuncti, executorem praecipuum, executione testamenti penitus impedita, capi fecit, et includi, ac, Dei timore et sancti Dei Matris Ecclesiae honore postpositis, inhumane tractari. Fuit enim causa inimicitiae, quam erga praefatum Episcopum diu habuerat idem Rex, vivente patre, pro eo, quod eum ab insolentiis suis, quibus nimis indulsit, facete corripuit, leniter arguendo, pluries obsecrando, ac leviter increpando, ac eum ab expensis superfluis compescendo. Hiis igitur de causis praefatum Episcopum, sic captum, squalore carceris coartavit; artatum omnibus bonis, et etiam

1 Leniter, in Hearne.
sibi debitis, in regno penitus spoliavit; spoliatum adeo dure detinuit, quod non erat in Anglia qui auderet pro eo adjutorii verbum proferre. Quam quidem persecutionem diu sustinuit, de Justiciariis et ceteris regni sapientibus auctoritate regia vicibus iteratis correptus; de reddenda ratione de officio thesauriae examinatus; sed nunquam in dandis responsis congruis ad objecta ab aliquo superatus, tandem gratia respirante, auctori- tate mediante Papali, ad semi-gratiam Regis recipitur, rebus et officio Episcopali restitutus.

De revocatione Petri de Gavestone, prius exulati.

Piers de Gavestone is recalled from exile. (A.D. 1307.)

Account of Gaveston.

His great cupidity.

---

1 This initial letter is omitted in orig.
todiendum tradebat. Rege vero patre 'sublato de medio, statim ab exilio revocatur; et ei Comitatum Cornubiae contulit, qui specialiter spectat ad coronam.

De transitu Regis ad Franciam, pro uxore sua ducenda.

King Edward crosses over to France, to marry the Princess Isabella (A.D. 1308).

De Torneamento Walingfordiae.


1 sullato in orig.
2 Omitted in orig.
3 Sic in orig.
De Parliamento citato.

1 [P]erpendentes postea ligii homines terrae, quod, eis contemptis; Rex alienigenam et ignobilem magnatibus praeposuit universis; adeo quod tota terrae disposition post eum ivit, nec aliquod negotium in Curia Regis sine ipso valuit expediri, regiumque thesaurum sibi indies cumulavit, dicebant intra se;—"Hic homo multa mala facit; et si dimittamus eum sic, omnes sequentur eum, regem nostrum circumveniet, alienigenas super nos inducet, ut tollant nostrum locum et gentem." Ab illo die cogitaverunt acerius contra eum procedere.

Hiis igitur et aliis moti rationibus, Regem proceres inducebant, ut, terrae magnatibus convocatis, juxta eorum consilium negotia regni tractaret, et a periculis, sibi et regno imminetibus, diligentem caveret. Annuente autem Rege, dieque Parliamenti uti signato, convenerunt in unum ecclesiarum Praetati, Comites, et Barones, ac proceres universi; habituque inter eos diligentem tractatu, a Rege postulabat instanter, ut liberam disponendi quosdam Articulos, pro Ecclesia et regno perutilibus, concederet facultatem. Qui licet prius multum reniteretur, eorum denique prae-buit petitioni consensum, et quod suam ordinationem ratam teneret juramento firmavit. Ipsi vero, consensu Regis adepto, sex Episcopos, cum aliis de clero et populo fidelibus et discretis, qui predictos Articulos ordinarent, concorditer elegerunt; et sic, finito dicto Parliamento, unusquisque cum gaudio ad propria remeavit.

Sequitur de alio Parliamento, et de proscriptione Petri de Gavestone.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo octavo, dictis Articulis per communem assensum dispositis et in

1 Omitted in orig.
Parliamento proximo proponendis, Regem inducebant ratified
magnates, ut ipsam provisionem per litteram suam, by King
sigillo regio consignatam, continuo confirmaret, et ad (A.D.
eam perpetuo conservandum iterum juramentum pro-
stantaret. Quo facto, Magister Robertus de Wynchelse, 1310).
Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, cum eeteris suffraganeis, a clero
sententiam excommunicationis in omnes contra
dictos Articulos venientes solemniter promulgavit.

His expeditis, predicti Articuli in ecclesia Sancti
Pauli Londoniiis, in praesentia praelatorum et magnatum,
publice legebantur. Inter quos, tenor Magnae Chartae,
cum alii provisionibus, Ecclesiae et regno necessariis,
petebatur. Et ut Dominus Rex dictum Petrum, prout
pater suus jussaret, exularet, alienigenas a Curia sua,
aliosque malos consiliarios, amoveret, et ut omnia
negotia regni cum consilio cleri et magnatum terrae
de cetero pertractaret, nullamque guerram inciperet,
vel quocunque extra regnum suum se diverteret, absque
assensu communi. Et licet haec dura et insolita Do-
mine Regi viderentur, eorum tamen prsBbuit provisioni
consensum, et dictum Petrum usque in Hyberniam
exulavit; sed alios adhuc Articulos effectui distulit
mancipare.

De revocatione Petri, et alia ejusdem proscriptione.

Rex, Petri prædicti moleste gerens absentiam, qualiter
ipsum ab exilio securius revocare posset, anxie cogi-
tavit. Accepto super hoc diversorum consilio, didicit
quod intrepide eum revocaret, si sororem Comitis Glo-
vernæ, qui tunc juvenis erat, sibi in matrimonium
copularet.

Dicto igitur Petro ab exilio revocato, et nuptiiis inter
He returns 
es celebribus, licet eidem Comiti multum displiceret,
return from exile
mox cornua suacept erigere, cor 1 Regis a consilio
1307).

1 Regem, Hearne.
suorum procerum fecit avertere, et prædictam provisionem fortiter impugnare. At Barones, haec omnibus amore Comitis antedicti patienter sustinentes, expectabant si forte modum suum emendare vellet. Sed frustra; nam de die 1 in diem thesaurum Regis plus solito collegit, mercatoribus, ut prius tradendo ; ita quod Regem inter breve tempus in tantum depauperavit, quod pro expensis suis, cum per patriam transiret, unde solvere non habebat. Regina similiter in Curia sua tot defectus suscituit, quod Domino Regi, patri suo, lacrymabili est conquista. Unde idem Rex omnes Angligenas sibi notos pro tanta tolerantia acriter increpavat.

Nec sufficiebat eadem Petro quae jam dicta sunt fecisse, nisi magnates terre pro hiis quae sibi fecerant turpiter derideret, pejora prioribus eis comminando. At ipsi cernentes quod in negotiis jam inceptis nihil proficiebant, et quod eorum patientia dicto Petro audaciam malignandi praestabat, Domino Regi unanimi assensu nunciabant, ut vel dictum Petrum a sua societate citius amoveret, Articulosque ad optatum effectum deduceret, vel ipsi in eum, tanquam in regem perjurum, ab illo die insurgerent. Rex autem; suam paupertatem cognoscens, et potentiam intelligens, multitudine et potentiae illorum ad tempus satisfacere disposit. Wi compulsus præfatum Petrum terram abjurare permisit, tali quidem conditione a Baronibus sibi imposita, quod si ulterius in Anglia, vel aliqua terra potestati Regis Angliæ subjecta, inveniretur, statim, et tanquam publicus terræ inimicus, damnetur. Sub illa quidem conditione, dato sibi conductu, a regno Angliæ exiit, et terram Franciæ, morandi gratia, intravit. Quo audito, Rex Franciæ ministris suis incontinenti mandavit, ut ubiquique inveniri posset, caperetur et sub salva custodia poneretur, scien

---

1 in die in diem in orig. ; by inadvertence.
ANNALES. 69

pro certo ipsum in partibus illis non diu permansu-A.D. 1311. rum, sed versus Angliam in brevi reditum, ad filiae suae, Regnae Angliae, et omnium magnatum, gravamen et contemptum; et sic fieret novissimus error pejor priore.

De vagatione et reditu Petri.

[M]andatum siquidem Regis Franciae Petrum non Gaveston latuit; unde, a regno Franciae celeriter exiens, Flan-
driam intravit; anxie cogitans ubi locum tutum ad
inhabitandum reperire valeret. Et sic per diversa loca
transiens, quærens requiem, et non inveniens, dixit;—
"Revertar in Angliam, unde exivi; spero enim quod
"Dominus meus, Rex Angliae, et gener meus, Comes
"Gloverniæ, adhuc salvabunt me." Et, assumptis se-
cum alienigenis nequioribus se, Angliam repetavit, et
Domino Regi, in partibus Eboraci tunc existenti, circa
Natale Domini se representavit; a quo, cum tota
familia sua, amicabiliter susceptus est.

Rumore itaque super adventu suo divulgate, tota
Anglia, velut arundinetum Zephyro vibrante collimum,
infrenduit; novissima enim opera ipsius pejora erant
prioribus. Magnates igitur in unum conveniunt; quid
faciendum, qualiterve in hoc casu cautius sit proceden-
dum, diligently inquirunt; guerram enim incipere, seu
Regem inquietare, si melius fieri posset, multum eis
displacebat. Habito quidem super praemissis diligent
tractatu, pro certo inveniunt, quod, vivente ipso Petro,
pax in regno esse non poterit, Rex in thesauru abun-
dare, Reginam suam debito amore tractare, magnates
suos, prout decet, honorare, ulterioris nequibit; unde
contra hujusmodi pericula super salubri remedio solli-
cite tractabunt. Sed quia populus sine capite, sicut
gregex sine pastore, dispersim et erranter incedit, Tho-

1 reditu in orig. speaking, was his brother-in-law,
2 Omitted in orig. not his son-in-law.
3 The Earl of Gloucester, correctly their chief.
A.D. 1312. mam Lancastriae Comitem, qui tunc prae ceteris Angliac magnatibus nobilitate et divitiis præcellerat, in ducem sibi, et capitaneum, unanimi consensus statuerunt.

Sed antequam in præsenti materia remotius procedatur, justum est ut de ipso Thoma, qualis et quantus fuerit, et unde originem habuerit, præsenti paginæ, ad perpetuam rei memoriam, aliquid inseratur.—

**De ortu et nobilitate Thomaæ, Comitis Lancastriæ.**


His tribus Comitatibus, ut præmittitur, adeptis, regnum Franciae ingreditur, in torneamentis et hastiliudii, alisque gestis militaribus, sic agens, quod ubique victoria sibi ascribitur. Accidit etiam eodem tempore, quod Rex Navvariae, qui filiam cujusdam nobilis duxerat in uxorem, de qua filiam unicam genuerat, diem Clausit extremum; cujus regina, viri solatio destituta, sic honeste et sapienter se et suam Curiam regebat, quod multi principes ipsam dilexerunt, et reginae laudaverunt eam. Fama igitur nobilitatis et pulchritudinis istius dominae ubique volabat. Rumor etiam super

---

1 *ipsius*, Hearne.
probitate, elegantia, et largitate, Domini Edmundi, per multas regiones diffusus, corda audientium in amorem ipsius vehementer excitabat.


Duo quippe filii eorum, Henricus, scilicet, et Johannes, partim ex dono Domini Edwardi Regis, patrui eorum, partim ex bonis parentum suorum, divites admodum effecti sunt; sed prefatus Thomas, ut filius senior, hæreditatem patris sui expectavit.

Incipiente autem guerra inter Reges Angliae et Franciae in Vasconia, Dominus Edmundus, pater istius Thomæ, illuc transmittitur, ut per ipsius industriam exercitus Anglorum regeretur. Cumque diutius populum Anglicanum ibidem rexisset, et bella plurima devicisset, castraque et civitates, per Francos diu occupatas, in manu forti recuperasset, appropinquavit tempus suum ut de hac luce migraret ad Christum. Non in bellis devictus, nec in campis occisus, vel
A.D. 1312, aliqua Gallicorum fraude circumventus, sed naturali febre vexatus, spiritum emisit. Quo apud Westmonasterium honorifice inter suos progenitores sepulturae tradito, dictus Thomas hæreditatem suam intravit, vitamque et mores boni patris sui in militia et largitate prosequi non neglexit.

De instructione Comitis Lincolniae, et de desponsatione filiæ suæ.

Advice given to the Earl of Lancaster, by his father-in-law, Henry, Earl of Lincoln.

1 [T]homas, Comes Lancastriae, filiam nobilis viri Comitidis Lincolniae, 2 quæ sibi unica fuerat, processu temporis desponsavit. Qui quidem Comes strenuus in militia, maturusque in consiliis, suo tempore fuerat, et dictum Thomam, ut filium et hæredem suum, in gestis militaris et modo vivendi diligenter instruebat.

Hic, cum diem mortis suæ cerneret imminere, venientem ad se Thomam, ut languores ipsius pro viribus mitigaret, et ut ultimam ejus benedictionem acciperet, sic est allocutus:—“Fili mi, filiam meam unica desponsasti; unde hæreditas mea tibi incumbit. Filius quidem boni patris es, ex parte cujus tres Comitatus habuisti, et nunc per uxorem tuam duos alios obtinebis, videlicet, Lincolniae et Sarisbiriae; et sic super quoque Comitatus dominaberis. Memento ergo, qualiter præ cunctis Angliae magnatibus Dominus te ditavit; unde honorem sibi præ cæteris impedere teneris. Cernis jam oculata fide, quod Ecclesia Anglicana, quæ solemat esse libera, per oppressiones Romanorum, et injustas exactions a regibus totiens extortas, nunc facta est ancilla. Populus etiam terræ nostræ, quæ multis libertatibus gaudere solet, variis vexationibus et talliagiis, per reges huc usque impositis, in servitutem deductur. Quare te adjuro, pro benedictione Dei et mi, quatenus, cum tempus videris opportunum, Ecclesiam et populum ex talibus oppressi.
sionibus, ob honorem Dei, pro viribus tuis liberes et A.D. 1312.

defendas; Regi tuo, qui dominus et nepos consanguineus est, honorem et reverentiam debitam exhibeas,
et ut malos consiliorum et alienigenas a Curia sua amoveat, tenoremque Magnae Chartae, cum aliis Articulis, a clero et populo pro statu Ecclesiae et regni salvando, petitis et concessis, et, sub interatione anathematis in contravenientes dati, a venerabili patre nostro, Domino Roberto de Winchelse, Cantuariensi Archiepiscope, una cum toto clero Angliae, confirmatis, ad finalem effectum perducat, cum omni cautela et maturitate inducas, consiliorum et ministrorum Anglicanos tibi eligas, quibus, ut unicuique quod justum est faciant, Curiamque tuam in omni plenitudine et discretionem dirigant, jugiter praecipias. Et cum de statu regni cum ceteris terrae magnatibus contigerit retractare, consilio nobilis viri Guidonis, Comitis Warwickensi, qui praeceteris paribus suis sano consilio et maturitate pollet, ac circa regni utilitates profundius tractat, indubitans adhaeret. Haec faciens, gratiam et honorem invenies in hoc saeculo, et gloriam in futuro.

Hiis dictis, data sibi benedictione, et Sacramentis ecclesiasticis devote perceiveste, temporalibusque rebus suis bene dispositis, migravit ad Christum, et in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniis cum honore sepultus est. Cujus haereditatem, ex parte uxoris suae sibi debitam, dictus Thomas ingreditur; monita patris sui legalis memoriter retinens, tales consiliorum et ministrorum sibi elegit, per quos erat vir in cunctis prospere agens.

De prosecutione Articulorum, et persecutione Petri.

Et ne posteros lateat de his, qui dictos Articulos pro statu Ecclesiae et regni instantius petebant, nomina eorum memoriae commendare disposui.

1 patri in orig.    2 Sic in orig.
Inter quos dictus Thomas erat præcipuus; cui adhæsit nobilis vir, Comes Herefordiae, Hunfridus de Boun, a patre suo similis adjuratione constrictus; qui dum viveret, una cum Comitis Marescallo, in eisdem Articulis petendis a Rege Edwardo seniore fortiter instabat. Sed cum videret se ulterius vivere non posse, vocato filio suo, ipsum, ut pro statu terræ salvando diligenter vigilaret, profunde adjuravit. Quo viam universæ carnis ingresso, Comes Marescallus, in hujus prosecutione solus durare non valens, timore ductus, cum hærede cararet legitimo, ut Regis benevolentiam sibi coaptaret, ipsum post mortem suam hæredem sibi constituit. Quo post dies paucos ab hac luce transeunte, Rex dictum Comitatum intravit, et Domino Thomæ de Bruther­tone, filio suo ex secunda Regina genito, perpetuo jure donavit.

Comes quidem Gloverniae, adhuc juvenis, qui nepos Regis erat, ex sorore sua natus, nec Regem voluit offendere, nec paribus suis in petendis libertatibus deficere; et ideo, pro bono pacis in partes reformando, mediator extitit fidelissimus. Comites quidem de Penebroke, et de Warewic, et de Arundel, cum aliis multis Baronibus et nobilibus terræ, in suo proposito fortiter steterunt. Sed Comes de Warenna, qui diu ante, titubans, parti Regis favebat, per Archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, paribus suis, ad prædictæ negotia prosequenda, 1 reconciliatur.

Præfatus vero Thomas, ut præmittitur, in primicerium electus, communi ductus consilio, solemnes nuncius Domino Regi, apud Eboracum existenti, transmisit; ex parte communitatis eorundem, ut vel dictum Petrum eis redderet, vel terram Angliae, ut praerogativum est, evacuare præciperet.

Message sent to the King, in reference to Gaveston.

1 reconciliatur in orig.
ANNALES. 75

De fuga Regis cum Petro.

A.D. 1312.

The King proceeds to Newcastle-on-Tyne, with Gaveston.

Rex vero, sinistro ductus consilio, petitiones eorum parvipendens, ab Eboraco se transtulit, et Novum Castellum super Tinam usque pervenit; ubi, cum dicto Petro et sua familia, usque ad festum Dominicae Ascensionis perhendinavit, Regina apud Tinemutam existente. Videntes itaque magnates se esse delusos, copiosum exercitum armatorum et peditum congregaverunt, et versus Novum Castellum super Tinam iter suum direxerunt, non ut Domino Regi aliquam injuriam irrogarent, sed ut ipsum Petrum caperent, et secundum suas leges judicarent.

Rex autem, super eorum adventu non inscius, proceedit loco se transtulit, et infra Tinemutam cum dicto Petro se recepit. Tandem, cum certus esset quod ipsi magnates infra burgum Novi Castrī introitum haberen, de quaedam navi in portu de Tine sibi providebat, et, nec maris pericula abhorrens, nec fretibus Regīnae, tunc prægnantis, et ut secum remaneret luctuose rogantis, compatiens, ipsam navim cum dicto Petro intravit, et Scædeburgam, Domino ducente, sanus et incolumis pervenit; in quo quidem loco Castrum Regīs fortissimum situm est, sed nec armis nec victualibus preæminitur. Ubi Rex dictum Petrum salvo custodiri et ipsum Castrum, prout poterant, suis jussit preæmuniir, seipsum ad partes Eboraci transferendo.

At Comites, hoc audientes, equos et alia bona quae dictus Petrus in villa Novi Castrī dimiserat, ad certum valorem appretiari, et loco tuto servari, fecerunt, se et suum exercitum post ipsum incontinenti movendo. Thomas autem, Lancastriæ Comes, Regīnae languoribus præ cæteris condolens, quia suus avunculus erat, secretos nuncios sibi destinavit, ipsam consolando, fideliterque

1 [R]ex vero. 2 a dicto loco se transtulit. 3 abhorrens. 4 Lancastriæ Comes.
A.D. 1312. promittendo, quod non cessaret, antequam ipsum Petrum
a Domini Regis consortio totaliter amoveret; ad ipsam
tamen personaliter accedere noluit, ne forte indigna-
tionem Regis causa ipsius incurreret.

De captione Petri, et morte ejusdem.

Magnates igitur, ad Castrum de Scardeburga veni-
entes, tentoria sua ibidem fixerunt, nec invenerunt qui
eis impedimentum inferrent. Dictus Thomas cum suo
exercitu exinde recessit, Comitibus de Warenna et de
Penebrooke ad Castrum expugnandum dimissis; et, facto
insultu acerrimo, cum inclusi ulterius se defendere ne-
quirent, ipse Petrus se eisdem reddidit, tali quidem
conditione, quod, omni exceptione exclusa, considera-
tioni Comitum totaliter se submitteret; et sic in eorum
custodia positus, humiliter petiiit ut Domini Regis frui
meretur colloquio, Rege simul hoc idem petente.

Quo facto, Rex ut vita ipsius salvaretur cum magna
instantia rogavit; pollicens multiplicer se pro ipso
ad eorum voluntatem in omnibus satisfacturum. Quam
quidem promissionem Comes de Penebrooke amplexens,
sub periculo amissionis omnium terrarum suarum, ut
ipsum illæsum et indemnem usque ad certum diem
custodiret Domino Regi promisit, et sic versus par-
tes Walingfordiae eundem duxisse proposuit. In quo
quidem itinere, cum per villam de Dadintone, que non
multum distat a Warwico, contingeret eos declinare, et
dictus Comes cum Comitissa sua, non longe a dicta
villa manente, proponeret pernoctare, ipsum Petrum in
eadem villa cum simplici custodia incaute dimisit.

Heisseized Comes enim Warwicensis, super eorum adventu non
inscius, cum magno strepitu et multitudine armatorum
eadem nocte superveniens, levi facto insultu, ipsum
cepit, et ad Castrum suum Warwicense secum deduxit.
Habito igitur inter magnates longo tractatu, utrum

1 Omitted in orig.
utilius esset ipsum continuo neci tradere, an, juxta A.D. 1312 Regis desiderium, liberum abire permittere, respondit unus, vir quidem magnae auctoritatis inter eos, et consilii, dicens;—1 "Prædam, quam diu ventilavimus, non sine gravi sudore jam cepimus; ridiculosum foret nobis iterum foras quaerere, cujus gaudemus corporali possessione. Expedit ergo potius, ut iste solus moriar, tur homo, quam gens nostra per guerras et bella pereat. Ipso enim vivente, secura tranquilitas in terra Angliæ esse non poterit. Quod multis documentis factenus expertis sumus." Cujus suasionibus cæteri consentientes, ad locum ubi feriendus erat deduci fecerunt, et judicio in eum, quam legis subversorem et publicum terræ proditorem, dato, capitalem subivit sententiam, juxta Warwickum, anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo duodecimo. Cujus cadaver, apud Oxoniam per biennium inter Fratres custoditum, postea apud Langele, inter Fratres Predicatores, quos Rex ibidem constituit, de fisco victuros, et pro se et progenitoribus suis, et pro anima Petri, celebraturos, delatum est, et anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo decimo-quarto honorifice tumulatum.

De persecutione magnatum a Rege, pro morte Petri.

Rex autem, audita morte ipsius, ultra quam credi potest anxiatus est, et qualiter mortem suam vindicare poterit intime meditatur. At Comites, e contra, provisiones suas ad effectum deduci intrepide postulabant, Domino Regi nunciantes, quod nisi hæc maturius faceret, ad ipsum in manu forti celerius venirent. Ad quod faciendum, totam patriam circa Dunestapile equis et armis impleverunt, Rege interim apud Londonias existente. Videntes itaque Episcopi Angliæ, una cum Comite Gloverniæ, tantam dissensionem Ecclesiae et regno

---

1 Præda in orig. words, are omitted in Hearne.
2 This, and the five following
A.D. 1312. Attempts are made to mediate between the King and the Barons.

fore periculosam, viriliter se intromittebant, ut pax inter eos posset reformari; hospitia sua in villa Sancti Albani, ut levius ad partes venirent, accipientes. Sed et quidam Cardinalis, titulo Sanctae Priscæ (Albus Monachus, Abbas quondam Frigid Fontis in Vasconia) "Arnoldus" nomine, tunc Domini Papæ Vice-Cancellarius, et Episcopus Pictaviensis, ejusdem Domini Papæ Camerarius, (sed postea Cardinalis effectus,) a latere Summi Pontificis, pro pace inter partes reformanda, in Angliam missi, Abbatiam Sancti Albani, pro hospitiis suis, occupabant.

At cum quidam clerici, ex parte dictorum dominorum, ad ipsos Comites apud Whathamstede, ubi erant cum suis exercitibus congregati, super Regem ulterioris processuri, accessissent, litteras Domini Papæ eisdem deferentes, dicebant se litterarum notitiam non habere, sed in militia et in usu armorum eruditos esse; quare dictas litteras non curabant videre. Requisiti insuper, si placeret eis, ut dicti domini ad eos pro pace reformanda personaliter accederent, respondebant, multos nobiles et litteratos Episcopos, et alios praelatos, in regno Angliae fore, quorum consilio uti volebant; nec permittere vellent, quod aliquis extraneus, vel alienigena, de factis suis, seu regni negotiis, ullo modo se intromitteret; ac tale mandatum eisdem dominis per eosdem clericos remiserunt, quod in crastino summo mane iter suum versus Londonias maturaverunt, timore perterriti, licet prius apud Sanctum Albanum per mensem vel amplius moram traxisse cogitassent.

Episcopis igitur, una cum Comite Glovernise, ut praemissum est, intervolantibus, furorem eorum sub tali forma temperabant; scilicet, quod iisdem magnates thesaurum et equos, et omnia jocalia, quae a dicto Petro de Gavestone apud Novum Castellum capiebant,
Domino Regi, vel alii, suo nomine, certo die venienti, apud Sanctum Albanum restituere deberent; et Dominus Rex petitiones eorum ad effectum perduceret. Cumque Dominus Johannes de Sandale, Angliae Thesaurarius, et Dominus Ingelardus de Warle, Garderobe Domini Regis custos, ad praedictos diem et locum, cum potestate Regis, ad praedictos diem et locum, accederent, nec aliquis ex parte dictorum dominorum compareret, qui praedicta restitueret, vel eorum absentiam excusaret; ne forte, processu temporis, eisdem posset impingi, quod per eorum negligentiam steterat quominus praedicta sortirentur effectum, litteras, manu Notarii Publici signatas, in praemissorum testimonium confici, et in ecclesia Sancti Albani, coram dicti loci Prior et senioribus, et eisdem toto populo ad hoc vocato, per duos dies faciebant; et, ad majorem hujus facti evidentiam, ac sui excusationem, sigillum ejusdem loci Conventus eisdem litteris apponi procurabant. Postea tamen venerunt, et juxta conditionem praemissam legitime Satisfecerunt, certam excusationem suæ moræ assignantes.

De nativitate Edwardi, filii Regis.

Sub hoc tempore, Domina Isabella, Regina Angliæ, puerum filium suum primogenitum apud Wendesouere, in die Sancti Bricii, anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo duodecimo, qui fuit annus regni Regis Edwardi, filii Regis Edwardi, sextus. Et licet Dominus Lodowicus, ejusdem Reginae frater, caeterique domini et dominae de Francia, tunc ibidem existentes, nomen Regibus Franciae conveniens puero voluissent aptasse, magnates Angliæ, hoc non permittentes, ipsum nomine patris sui Edwardum vocari fecerunt. Ob cujus ortum tota Anglia ingenti plausu laetata est, et pater ejus tam hilaris efficitur, quod dolorem, quem pro morte Petri conceperat, temperaret.

Ab illo ergo die crevit amor filii, et evanuit memoria.
Petri; et Dominus Rex voluntate procerum suorum humilissim usit solito coepit condescendere.

Sequitur de Parlamento.

A.D. 1313. Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo tertio-decimo, adhuc instabant quidam, qui inter Regem et suos proceres sinistra seminabant, conantes ipsum a consilio eorum avertere, unde rancor praehabitus inter utrosque dependebat.

Habito igitur super præmissis Parlamento in festo Sancti Michaelis, anno videlicet Domini millesimo trecentesimo tertio-decimo, ut prædictur, Dominus Rex, pro parte sua, super contemptu sibi, in exercitu quem contra eum apud Novum Castellum super Tynam ducebant, et in captione Petri, et morte ipsius, illato, eodem acriter impetebat. At illi ad objecta unanimiter respondebant, se in nullo præmissorum desuisse, immo potius gratiam Regis, et amorem, in hoc facto promeruisse: cum non in ipsius contemptum exercitum illum adduxerant, sed ut publicum inimicum terræ, per communitatem Angliæ, ex duorum Regum assensu, totiens exbannitum, destruerent; per quem Regis thesaurus consumebatur, et dissensio inter ipsum et suos fideles hactenus fovebatur.

Hujusmodi autem responsione a Rege et suo Consilio intellecta et approbata, magnates expresse dicebant, se finem negotiorum suorum velle videre; multitum enim expenderant, et parum adhuc profecerant, nec volebant diutius varias alicujus promissiones frustra expectare.

Tandem, disponente Deo, in cujus manu corda principum existunt, populum Anglicanum in tot calamitatibus diutius fluctuare nolente, mediante etiam Regina, una cum Comite Gloverniae et Episcopis praebibatis,  

* et episcopis et episcopis in Hearne.
rancor eorum sub tali forma mitigatus est; videlicet, A.D. 1313, quod ipsi Comites, cum suis complicitibus, in Aula Westmonasterii in pleno Parliamento venire deberent, et se Domino Regi humiliare, ac de hiis in quibus ipsum offenderant, veniam postulare. Et Dominus Rex eosdem ad gratiam et firmam pacem, absque ulla fictione seu scrupulo malitiae, deberet admittere, et tanquam ligios et fideles suos in vero amore tractare, Articulosque petitos ad finalem effectum perduere; et, ne pro morte sæpedicti Petri aliquis ulterior impetereetur, chartam suam cuiuslibet petenti super indemnitate concedere.

Hii rite peractis, ipsi magnates, Regis paupertatem considerantes, quintum-decimum denarium bonorum temporalium per totam Angliam sibi concedebant, et a dicto Parliamento, cum gaudio et pace bona, recebant.

De morte Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, Roberti de Winchelse.

Sub hoc etiam tempore, videlicet, quinto Idus Maii, Magister Robertus de Winchelse, postquam ecclesiam Cantuariensis laudabiliter toto suo tempore rexisset, et magnates terræ in suis libertatibus petendis intrepide contra Regem fovisset, ab hoc seculo migravit ad Christum. Quo sepulture tradito, monachi dicti loci, licentia a Rege obtenta, tempore debito ad electionem procedente, Magistrum Thomam de Cobbehame, virum eminentis litteraturæ, multisque virtutibus redivitum, unanimi assensu elegerunt, non deferentes inhibitioni Summi Pontificis, qui ante mortem dicti Roberti ipsius honoris collationem sibi reservavit.

Dictus vero Thomas, electioni de se facta consentiens, Sedem Apostolicam, tunc Avennoniaæ existentem, munus

De morte Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, Roberti de Winchelse.

1 Sub hoc etiam tempore, videlicet, quinto Idus Maii, Magister Robertus de Winchelse, postquam ecclesiam Cantuariensim laudabiliter toto suo tempore rexisset, et magnates terræ in suis libertatibus petendis intrepidely contra Regem fovissent, ab hoc seculo migravit ad Christum. Quo sepulture tradito, monachi dicti loci, licentia a Rege obtenta, tempore debito ad electionem procedenter, Magistrum Thomam de Cobbehame, virum eminentis litteraturæ, multisque virtutibus redimitum, unanimi assensu elegerunt, non deferentes inhibitioni Summi Pontificis, qui ante mortem dicti Roberti ipsius honoris collationem sibi reservavit.

Dictus vero Thomas, electioni de se facta consentiens, Sedem Apostolicam, tunc Avennoniaæ existentem, munus

1 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1313. confirmationis petiturus, adivit. Ostenso quidem electionis processu, licet in persona electi vitium non inveniretur, Summus tamen Pontifex electionem illam, post reservationem sibi factam, nullam omnino esse denunciavit. Et quia Ecclesia Anglicana continuis tribulationibus vexabatur, idem Summus Pontifex de viro, per quem dictae tribulationes melius sedari possent, Ecclesiæ viduatae providere sollicita cogitabat.

Habito igitur super hiis tractatu prolixo, et diversorum consilio requisito, tandem in Dominum W[alterm], Wigorniensem Episcopum, Domini Regis Angliæ Cancellarium, oculos dirigebat; acute praeponderans, quantum gratiam coram Domino Rege præ castis inveniebat, quam mature in suo officio erga omnes se habebat, quantaque discretionem rancorem, inter Regem et suos proceres motum, temperabat; sperans talem virum Ecclesiæ et regno multum posse proficere, qui inter seculi tot varietates, absque aliquis offensione novit incedere, honorem Cantuariensis ecclesiam, una cum pallio, gratis sibi conferebat, prædicto Thomæ spem promotionis honorificæ promittendo.

Dictus vero Walterus honorem sibi collatum, post longas reluctationes, reverenter suscipientis, ad ecclesiam Cantuariensem Dominica Quinquagesimæ, quæ tune decimo-tertio Kalendas Martii veniebat, accessit, et omnibus, quæ ad tantam solemnitatem pertinent, decenter expletis, festum splendidissimum Domino Regi et Reginae, cæterisque magistris, causa ipsius illuc accedentibus, eodem die solemniter celebravit.

A.D. 1314. Death of Pope Clement V., and accession of John XXII. (A.D. 1316.)

De Creatione Papa Johannis Vicesimi-secundi.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo quarto-decimo, nono die mensis Aprilis, obiit Clemens Papa, Archiepiscopus quondam Burdegalensis. Cui successit Jacobus Episcopus Avennoniae, et vocatus est "Johannes:" sed Curia inter eos biennio vacavit.
De transitu Regis versus Scotiam, et de Bello de
\[1\] Strivelyne.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo quarto-decimo, A.D. 1314. Rex a Londoniis recessit, et, diversis locis peragritis, apud Sanctum Albanum in Vigilia Palmarum proximo sequente declinavit; ubi quandam crucem auream, lapidibus pretiosis et diversorum Sanctorum reliquis insertam, Beato Albano devote obtulit; seipsum, cum Regina et filio suo, ejusdem Sancti precibus, et dicti loci monachorum orationibus, affectuose commendavit. Qui cum intellexisset quod pater suus chorum Sancti Albani renovare disposuerat, desiderium patris exploravit, centum marcas argenti una cum meremio, apud Dynesleiam quaerendo, Conventui dedit; precipientiis eis, ut pro nulla pecunia omitterent quin dictum opus, ad honorem Dei et Beati Albani, laudabiliter consummarent.

In crastino quidem Palmarum, iter versus insulam Eliensem arripuit, ubi solemnitatatem Paschalem nobiliter tenuit. Deinde per Lincolniam et Eboracum, acb urgium Novi Castri super Tinam, transiens, \[2\] Berewicum usque pervenit; ubi universis, servitium militare sibi debentibus, expectatis, praeter Comites Lancastriæ, Warennæ, Warewichiæ, et Arondelæ, qui pro eo quod Articulos, totiens concessos, ad effectum non deduxerat, se absen- tabant, et, dispositis militiae sue turmis, ad obsidionem Castri de Strivelin dissolvendam gressus suos cum exercitu copioso maturavit; ubi fixis tenitoriis, quidam de exercitu Anglorum, equitaciones coram cuneis Sco- torum facientes, ipsos atrociter provocabant. At illi, virilliter resistentes, multos nobiles illo die Dominico, scilicet, in Vigilia Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, peremerunt: pro quo quidem casu Anglici exacerbati, in crastino vindicari velvinci firmiter proponebant.

---

1 Strivelyn in Hearne.  
2 Berewic in Hearne.

Robertus vero le Brois, qui se Regem Scotorum clamitabat, pedes, cum suis consortibus, totum exercitum suum præcedebat, ut sic, periculo inter majores et minores coaequato, nemo de fuga cogitaret. Stant hinc magnates Anglie, cum suis turmis Scotos fortiter insilientes. Stant inde duces Scotorum, sese viriliter defendentes. Et collidentibus ad invicem catervis, bellum cruentissimum commiserunt. Fragor lancearum, tinni-

\[1\] scutorum in orig., by inadvertence.  \[2\] insilientes in orig.
ANNALES. 85

tus gladiorum, ictuum strepitus repentinorum, gemitus A.D. 1314.
morientium, vulneratorum lamentatio, in ipso conflictu audita, aera perturbare videbantur. Multo tempore nimis gladiis circa capita tinnientibus altercatum est, et decertantibus utrinque viriliter partibus ex adverso, ceciderunt quamplures, letaliter vulnerati. Quod cum Gilbert, videret G[ilbertus] Comes Gloverniae, indignatus est valde super eorum feritate; suos commilitones 1 exhortatur, ut in Scotos effeminatos, congressiones Anglicanas expectare non solentes, irruant truculenter; et, nomen militiae sibi volens acquirere, exemplum suis in seipso prætendens, ut aper bellicosus, in incendio irae sue turbas hostium invasit, gladium suum cruori eorum inebriando. Quemcumque enim mucrone suo attingebat, caput ei, aut membro aliquod, amputabat. In ipsum tandem, eorum necem ita sitientem, pondus totius proelii conversum est; adeo ut lancearum cuspidibus ex omni parte sui corporis applicatis, impingentibus hinc inde diversis, ad terram prosternitur, et caput ejus clavis hostium undique malleatur, donec animam, cum sanguine, sub pedibus equinis exhalaret. Reliqui vero omnes de exercitu suo, videntes eum sic occubuisse, timore perterriti fugam inierunt, dominum suum, in campo trucidatum, proh O dolor! relinquentes.

Nobilis quidem Barro, R[obertus] de Clifforde, cum multis aliis nobilibus, in ipso conflictu funestissimo corruerunt. Caeteri vero Comites, ruinam ipsorum pendentes, in abyssum desperationis demersi, terga derunt, fugae praesidio sibi consulentes. Comes quidem Herefordiae in fugiendo captus est, et multi nobiles cum eo; sed et Comes de Penebrooke, post multorum internecionem, a discrimine mortis vix evasit.

---

1 exortatur in orig.
2 Sic in orig.
3 caput in orig.
4 suo in Hearne.
5 exalaret in orig.
6 Omitted in Hearne.
7 internicionem in orig.
A.D. 1314. Rex vero, ruinam suorum, et fugam, amaro gestans animo, et prae immanitate iracundiae periculum mortis contemnens, hausto spiritu acriore, in hostes, more leonis, sublatis catulis, irruit truculenter, et, more animosi militis, multorum sanguinem gladio vibrante effudit. Sed militares acies, ipsum in tanto discrimine consti­tutum perpendentes, invictum et quasi reluctantem vix a tanto periculo eripere potuerunt. Et sic retrocedens fugam, a suis compulsus, inivit, meliorem fortunam ex­pectans, proponens firmiter illatas sibi injurias in tem­pore retributionis 1 graviter vindicare.

Hoc autem bellum funestissimum commissum est juxta Castrum Strivelense, in loco qui "Bannokemora" nuncupatur, in festo Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistae, anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo quarto-decimo, et regni ejus Regis Edwardi septimo.

De divisione nobilis Comitatus Gloverniae.

Cum idem Comes in dicto execrabili bello mortem incurrisset, Comitissa, ipsius uxor, imprægnata fuisse credebatur; expectabaturque per biennium, si forte fœtum produxisset; et cum tempus pariendi, tam pro­lixo tempore frustra expectatum, pertransiit, divisa est ejus hereditas inter tres sorores ipsius; quarum pri­mam duxit in uxorem Dominus Hugo Dispens[sa]tor; secundam vero despensavit Dominus Hugo d’Audele, quam prius habuit Dominus Petrus de Gavestone, quondam Comes Cornubiae; tertiam autem duxit Do­minus Rogerus de Tamari, quam prius desponsaverat Dominus Johannes de Burgo, filius et hæres Comitis Ultoniæ de Hybernia.

Et sic dividitur nobilissimus Comitatus Gloverniae, qui dicebatur altera columna Angliæ, in tres Baronias.

1 Omitted in Hearne.
De gestis Scotorum post victioriam belli.

1 [S]æpedictus Robertus le Brus, adepta sic ex insperato victoria, spolia interfectorum et fugitivorum colligi fecit, suisque stipendiariis, et hiis qui pro sua partis defensione tam laudabiliter triumpharunt, magnifice distribuit. Proceres quoque, quos in prælio ceparat, incarcerandos seu redimendos sibi retinuit, et sic decenter ac civiliter custodiri praecipit, quod corda multorum sibi adversantium in amorem sui mirabiliter commutavit. Corpora quidem Comitis Gloverniæ et Baronis de Clifforde Domino Regi Anglie, apud Berwickum tunc existenti, pro sua voluntate sepelienda, sine ullo pretio destinavit. Comes quidem Herefordiae pro uxore Roberti le Brus, quæ prius capta fuerat, aqua conditione a carcere liberatur; qui sanus et incolumis abire permittitur. Caæteri vero captivi per redemptionem seu commutationem similiter evaserunt.


1 Omitted in orig.
2 Berwic in Hearne.
3 nescio in Hearne.
4 carentes in orig., by inadvertence.
A.D. 1314.

The King holds a Council at York.

De tractatu apud Eboracum.

1[R]ege vero in hunc modum fugato, nulla dies interim praeteriit, 2 quin casum suorum, elationemque Scotorum, amara mente tractavit; et, a Berewike se transferens, Eboracum pervenit; ubi clero et populo congregatis, in autumno, scilicet, proximo sequente, quendam tractatum inter se privatim tenuerunt. In qua quidem convocatione affuit Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, Domini Regis tunc Cancellarius; et, ne uUa inter eum et Dominum Eboracensem super eorum primatia habe­ retur dissensio, et ex eorum dissensione tumultus fieret in populo, communisque utilitas impediretur, ad instan­ tiam Domini Regis, cum cleri consensu, 3 quamdam formam amicabilem inierunt. Soluto isto consilio, unus­ quisque quo sibi placuit, se divertebat.

De sepultura Petri de Gavestone.

Gaveston is finally buried at Langley.

Rex versus Wyndesore, ubi Natale suum tenuit, iter suum dirigebat; et in die Octavarum Sancti Joh­ nannis Evangelistae proximo sequentium, corpus saspe­ dicti Petri, balsamo et aromate conditum, apud Lange­ leiam, in ecclesia Fratrum Praedicatorum, a venerabili patre Cantuariensi, et aliis quatuor Episcopis, una cum Abbatibus et aliis viris ecclesiasticis innumerabilibus, in magna devotione sepeliri fecit. Pauci tamen pro­ cerum terrae ad ipsam humationem cum Rege adesse voluerunt.

Sequitur de 4 Parliamentis.

A.D. 1315. In crastino quidem Purificationis, 5 continue subsequen­tis, proclamatum est Londoniis quoddam Parlia­ mentum; ad quod venerunt clerus et populus, et cum

1 Omitted in orig. 2 qui in orig. 3 Omitted in Hearne. 4 Parlamento in Hearne. 5 continuate in orig., by inadver­ tence.
tanta diligentia de statu terrae emendando in eo trac- 
taverunt, quod usque diem Palmarum ibidem perman- 
serunt. In quo quidem Parliamento talia providerunt, 
Ut liquet per litteram, Vicecomiti Essexiæ et Hert- 
fordiæ per Dominum Regem in hæc verba directam.—

Breve Regis.

"R. de Pereris, Vicecomes Essexiæ et Hertfordiæ, ballivo libertatis de Sancto Albano, salutem. Man-
datum Domini Regis, in hæc verba, recepi:— Ed-
wardus, Dei gratia, Rex Angliæ, Dominus Hiber-
niæ, et Dux Aquitaniae, Vicecomiti Essexiæ et Hert-
fordiæ salutem. Querelam Praelatorum, Comitum, 
et Baronum, et aliorum de communitate regni nos-
tri, per petitionem suam, coram nobis et Consilio 
nostro exhibitam, recepimus; continentem, quod 
de boibus, vaccis, multonibus, porcis, aucis, gallinis, 
caponibus, pullinis, columbellis, et ovis, magna et 
quasi intolerabilis est caristia, hiis diebus, in ipso-
rum, et omnium infra idem regnum degentium, 
damnum non modicum, et gravamen; propter quod, 
nobis cum instantia supplicarunt, ut super hoc cura-
remus de congruo remedio providere. Nos igitur, 
supplicationi predictæ pro communi utilitate populi 
dicti regni, prout expediens visum fuerit, annuen-
tes, ordinavimus, de consilio et assensu Praelatorum, 
Comitum, Baronum, et aliorum de Consilio nostro 
existentium, in ultimo Parliamento nostro apud 
Westmonasterium habito, quod melior bos vivus, 
venalis, crassus, de grano non pastus, vendatur de 
cætero pro sexdecim solidis; et si de grano pastus 
fuerit, et sit crassus, pro viginti quatuor solidis ad 
plus tune vendatur; et quod melior vacca, viva, et 
crassa, pro duodecim solidis vendatur; quilibet por-
cus duorum annorum, crassus, pro quadraginta de-
JOHANNIS DE TROKELOWE

A.D. 1316. "nariis; multo tonsus, crassus, pro quatuordecim denariis; multo lanatus, crassus, pro viginti denariis; auca erassa pro duobus denariis et obolo; capo bonus pro duobus denariis; gallina bona pro uno denario; duo pullini pro uno denario; quatuor columbellae pro uno denario; viginti quatuor ova pro uno denario, de cætero vendANTur. Quod si aliquem, vel aliquos, qui hujusmodi res venales, pro pretio, ut premititur, ordinato vendere noluerit, vel noluerint, contigerit inveniri, tunc prædictæ res venales nobis remaneant forisfactæ. Et quod ordinationem prædictam volumus ex nunc per totum regnum nostrum firmiter et inviolabili observari, tibi præcipimus, firmiter injungentes, quod in singulis civitatis, burgis, et villis mercatoris, et locis aliis in balliva tua, tam infra libertatem quam extra, ubi videris expedire, et ordinationem prædictam publice et distincte proclamari, et ipsam in omnibus et singulis suis articulis, sub forisfactura prædicta, per totam ballivam tuam de cætero facias inviolabili observari. Et hoc, sicut indignationem nostram vitare, et teipsum indemnem servare, volueris, nullo modo omittas. Teste meipso, apud Westmonasterium, quarto-decimo die Martii, anno regni nostri octavo. Quare tibi mando quod mandatum istud diligenter exequaris."

3 Hujusmodi igitur provisione per omnes Comitatus Anglie publicata, et gravi pena in puletarios et alios auxionarios, Londoniis et alibi, provisionem non observantes, inficta, ipsi iterum, in quindenam proximae Paschae, tam clerum quam populus, ex edicto Regis citati, super aliiis negotii tractaturi, Londoniis convenerunt. Sed quidam procerum, varias impedimentorum causas

1 tonsitus in orig. 
1 Apparently hujus only, in orig. 
1 Apparently hujus only, in orig. 
4 ipsam in orig. by inadvertence. 
5 proximi in orig. 
6 causas presentabant in Hearne.
prætendentenses, se absentabant. Unde ¹ dictum Parliamentum non sortiebatur effectum; et sic unusquisque quo sibi placuit se divertebat, et qui terram defendere debuerant, otio vacabant.

De invasione Scotorum.

Scotis interim in cæde et rapinis totam Northumbriam et partes Occidentales, a Carleolo usque Eboracenses, absque ullius impedimento, proeliantibus, et quæque sibi obvia in ferro et flamma devastantibus.²

Et sciemur, quod non remansit in partibus illis aliquis locus, ubi Angliци tute latere poterant, praeterquam in civitate Carleolensi, et burgo Novi Castri super Tinam, et Prioratu de Tynemuta, cæterisque Castris per Northumbriam, quæ tædioso labore et sumptibus immensis custodita fuerunt. Ad quæ quidem loca miseri de patria, cum ulterioris quicquid non haberent unde tributa Scotis solverent, sicut prius per multa tempora solvere solebant, ut miseram saltem vitam servarent, confugerunt.

Nobilis etiam villa de Berewico, quæ infra metas Scotiae sita est, adhuc in custodia Anglorum, magno quidem labore, permanebat. Dunelmenses vero, post multas depopulationes, pacem pro pecunia ad tempus sibi comparabat.

De invasione Edwardi Brus in Hibernia.

Praefatus Robertus le Brus, ex obtenta victoria in Edward le Brus is sent to invade Ireland. superbiam erectus, suum exercitum dividebat, et maximam exinde partem in Hiberniam transmisit; fratrem suum carnalem, "Edwardum" nomine, ducem eis praeficiendo, ut terras Regis Angliæ in partibus illis depopularet, et vires ejus, si exercitum ad partes illas defendendas transmitteret, enervaret.

¹ edictum Parliamenti in Hearne. | ² This passage is incomplete.
A.D. 1315. 
Rising in Wales.

Ad confusionem etiam Regis Angliae et regni, quidam in Wallia erexerunt se, oppressiones et gravamina, patri- bus suis ab Anglis olim illata, ad memoriam reducentes; et tempus ultionis sibi arridere cernentes, castra Regis et terras invadebant; homines Domino Regi fideliter adhaerentes, cum omnibus bonis suis, in igne et gladio consumebant, audaciam resistendi a victoria Scotorum sibi assumentes, foedusque et fiduciam cum eis ineuntes.

De peste, fame, et caristia, inauditis.


The King at St. Al- ban's.

De transitu Regis ad partes alius.

A.D. 1316. 
The ordi- nance as to the sale of victuals repealed.

2 [R]ex exinde apud Clipstone in Sirewode declinavit, ubi Curiam suam tempore Natalitio tenuit; et circa festum Purificationis apud Lincolniam, per consilium Baronum suorum, provisiones antedictas omnino re-
ANNALES.

vocavit, præcipient generaliter, ut unusquisque bona sua venalia meliori foro quo posset venditioni exponeret.


Hujusmodi igitur fame prævalente, tam magnates quam religiosi curias suas restringebant, solitas eleemosynas subtrahebant, familias suas minuebant. Unde illi a curis sic amoti vitam delicatam ducere consueti, 1 foderie nesciebant, mendicare erubescebant, penuria tamen cibi et potus devicti bona aliena sitiebant, cedibus et rapinis intendentes. Tot autem effecti sunt infideles, quod in pace vivere non permiserunt fideles.

Angustiis igitur et miseriis præmissis et futuris consideratis et intellectis, illud propheticum quod in 2 Jeremia dicitur,—"Si egressus fuero ad agros, ecce! occisi gladio; et si introiero in civitatem, ecce! at tenuati fame,"—in populo Anglicano adimpieri hiis diebus cernere poterimus, ad agros egredientes, cum ruinam gentis nostraæ in Scotia et Vasconia, Wallia et Hibernia, diversis temporibus factam, una cum hiis qui

1 In allusion to Luke xvi. 3. | 2 Jeremiah xiv. 18.
per insidias latronum de die in diem jugulati sunt, ad mentem reducimus. Attenuatos autem fame perpendimus civitatem introientes, cum pauperes et egenos, ipsa fame oppressos, per vicos et itinera squalentes et mortuos jacere conspicimus.

Sequitur de Parliamento.

A.D. 1316. Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo sexto-decimo, magnates terre, edicto regio vocati, Londonias, super statu regni tractaturi, convenerunt; et ipso Parliamento durante, crevit fames vehementer. Summa enim frumenti et etiam salis pro triginta solidis usque ad festum Sancti Johannis Baptistae vendebatur; a quo quidem die usque ad festum Assumptionis Sanctae Mariae ad quadraginta solidos ascendebat. Ipsa igitur fame totam terram sic opprimente, mortalitas hominum subsecuta est. Tot enim moriuntur egeni, quod vix sufficiunt vivi ad sepulturam mortuorum. Morbus enim \(^1\) dysentericus, ex corruptis cibis conceptus, fere omnes maculavit; \(^2\) quem sequebatur acuta febris, vel pestis gutturuosa.

Et sicut homines, ex ciborum corruptione intoxicati, succumbebant, sic bestiae et pecora, ex herbarum putredine infectae, morticinio corruerant; nec se meminit aliquis tantam caristiam et famem prævidisse, nec tantam mortalitatem secutam fuisset. Nec potuit in hac pestilentia contra predictos morbos prudentia physicorum, prout antiquitus solebat, aliquod conrum in arte sua reperire remedium. Herbas enim medicinales, quæ mortalitatis tempore levamen languardis solebant conferre, propter aeris intemperiem, et inordinatam elementorum collisionem, contra suam naturam degeneratae, virus pro virtute reddebant.

\(^1\) dissentericus in orig.  \(^2\) quam in orig.
De filio Regis nato secundo.

Praedicto vero Parliamento quibusdam ex causis deficiente, et dicta fame usque ad festum Assumptionis Beatae Marire durante. In quo quidem die natus est Domino Regi filius apud Eltham, et vocatum est nomen ejus "Johannes." Ob cujus ortum Rex laetior II. effectus; et, quibusdam partibus peragratis, versus Clippistonam in Sirewude, ubi Natale suum anno revoluto tenuit, iter suum maturavit; anno scilicet Domini, millesimo trecentesimo sexto-decimo; et vice-simo quarto die mensis Januarii sequentis apud Wedestoike tale edictum ab ipso emanavit. —

De duritia et caristia, quae fuerunt in Anglia, tam victus quam potus.

Ut posteris liqueat, quanta duritia vivendi per Angliam tunc erat, pausa, prirnquam mandatum regium exprimatur, huic scripto prirnquam inserere. Quatuor autem denariatus de grosso pane non sufficiebant uni simplici homini in die. Carnes quidem communes, et ad vescendum licitae, strictae erant nimis; sed carnies equinæ pretiosæ eis fuerant, qui canes pingues furabantur; et, ut multi asserebant, tam viri quam mulieres parvulos suos, et etiam alienos, in multis locis furtim comedebant. Sed, quod horribile est ad futurorum notitiam perducere, incarcerati etiam fures inter eos recentem venientes in momento semivivos devorabant.

Sed cum sit sine potu victus inanis, de ipso potu mentionem facere nulli tædium generabit. Lagena enim melioris cervisiae, quæ tunc per Angliam fiebat, pro duobus nummis vendebatur, melioris autem pro tribus, sed optimum quatuor. Londonienses igitur, per famem praeteritam afflictii, et futurum metuentes, ne

---

1 This passage is incomplete.
A.D. 1316. frumentum ulterius per potum consumeretur, pro salute mediocris populi statuerunt, ut lagena melioris cervisiae pro tribus obolis venderetur, et alia pro denario, et non ultra. Rex autem, ad clamorem populi excitatus, ut secundum Statutum Londoniarum ubique per regnum suum, tam infra libertates quam extra, in civitatibus, burgis, et villis mercatoris, cervisia venderetur, et in villis campestribus, pro denario tantum, expresse praepit; et ne frumentum ulterius in cervisiam converteretur sub gravi forisfactura inhibuit; ut patet per breve suum Vicecomiti Hertfordiae et Essexiae, et per eundem Vicecomitem ballivis libertatis Sancti Albani, in hae verba directum. Et nisi celerius hujusmodi mandatum promulgari fuisset, maxima pars populi illo anno, sicut in ceteris precedentibus fecerat, fame et inedia desperisset.—

Breve Regis.

A.D. 1317. "Edwardus, Dei gratia, Rex Anglieæ, Dominus Hiberniæ, et Dux Aquitaniae, Vicecomiti Hertfordiae et Essexiae salutem. Quia ex frequenti insinuatione populi nostri, et per petitionem coram nobis et Consilio nostro exhibitam, intelleximus quod pro eo quod braciatrices in diversis locis in regno nostro cervisiam braciant, et eam pro voluntate sua, in oppressionem populi regni nostri, nimis care vendunt, ad antiquam assisam respectum aliquem non habendo, tam frumentum quam hordeum, quae, pro pane faciendo pro sustentatione populi prædicti, reservari possunt, prout necesse est, hiis diebus, et de quibus propter temporis intemperiem, jam per biennium elapsum contingentem, ubique in regno nostro minor habetur copia in praesenti, quam haberí consuevit temporibus retroactis, in braesium convertunt; in

1 frumenti in orig.  
2 exhibitam in orig.  
3 ordeum in orig.
ANNALES. 97

Tantum, videlicet, quod nisi citius super hoc facias unus A.D. 1317. de remedio provideri, magna pars mediocris et paupercum, ob bladorum et aliorum victualium defectum, in brevi, quod absit, fame et inedia inevitabiliter subjacebit:—Nos, salvationem populi nostri volentes, ut tenemur, viis et modis omnibus, quibus melius expedire videmus, providere, ac considerantes quod in civitate nostra Londoniarum, ubi major est concursus populi quam alicubi in regno nostro, assis cervisiae, videlicet, melioris lagenae pro tribus obolis, et debilioris pro uno denario, observari præcipitur et etiam observatur, et quod assisa illa in aliis civitatibus, burgis, et villis mercatoriiis, in dicto regno nostro, adeo commode sicut in civitate prædicta, poterit observari; de consilio nostro, ordinamus, quod in civitatibus, burgis, et villis mercatoriiis, lagena melioris cervisiae pro tribus obolis, et alterius pro denario, et in villis campestribus lagenæ melioris cervisæ pro uno denario, tantum vendatur, quousque inde aliud duxerimus ordinandum. Et ideo tibi præcipimus, firmiter injungentes, quod in plenis comitatibus tuis, et in civitatibus, burgis, et villis mercatoriiis, et locis aliis in balliva tua, ubi expedire videris, assisas prædictam facias observari et firmiter proclamar. Scire facies omnibus et singulis dominis libertatam, et aliis in balliva tua, qui habent emendam cervisiae, quod ipsi in libertatibus suis, sub gravi forisfactura, eandem assisas cervisiae custodiri faciant antedictam. Intendimus enim in brevi mittere quosdam fideles nostros ad Comitatus prædictos, ad inquirendum qualiter et quomodo domini libertatum et alii assisas illam custodierint et custodiri fecerint, et ad capiendum in manus nostras libertates eorum qui in custodia hujus assisas, post clamationem prædictam, negligentes fuerint, vel remissi. Teste meipso, apud Wudestoke, vicesimo quarto die Januarii, anno regni nostri decimo.—Quare tibi mando, ut istud mandatum
A.D. 1317. "diligenter 1 exequaris,—hujusmodi mandato per omnes
Comitatus Angliee publicato.

De quodam muliere histrionali.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo septimo-de
cimo, Rex versus Clarendonam iter arripuit, ubi solem
nitate Paschali celebrata, Londonias repedavit, anno,
scilicet, Domini millesimo trecentesimo septimo-decimo. 
Cui in Aula Westmonasterii, die Pentecostes, ad men-
sam cum suis magnatibus recumbenti, quodam mulier, 
ornatu histrionali redimita, equum bonum, histriona-
liter phaleratum, ascensa, dictam Aulam intravit, men-
sas more histrionum circuivit, ad descum per gradus 
ascendit, mense regiae audacter appropinquavit, quam-
dam litteram coram Rege posuit, et, retracto freno, 
shalutatis hospitibus, absque strepitu vel impedimento
eques discessit.

Unde tam majores quam minores, se invicem con-
tuentes, ac tanto ausu et illusione foeminea se derisos 
esse perpendentes, janitores et hostiarios super ingressu 
ejus, et egressu, acriter increpabant. At illi, in tanta 
perplexitate constituti, de necessitate virtutem facie-
bant, dicendo non esse moris regii, alicui menestrallo, 
Palatium intrare volenti, in tanta solemnitate aditum 
denegare.

Tandem mulier quaeritur, capitur, et carceri man-
cipatur; cur sic fecerat requisita, a quodam milite se 
informari ad hoc, et mercede conduci, intrepide fatetur. 
Miles capitur, coram Rege deducitur, super praemissis 
conventitur. Qui litteram ipsam audacter advocavit; 
cujus tenor talis erat;—quod Dominus Rex milites 
suos, qui tempore patris sui et secum diversis bellis et 
periculis fecerant, minus curialiter respexit, et alios

1 Apparently exequeres in orig.
qui nec pondus diei vel aestus secum portarant, nimis A.D. 1317. abunde ditavit. Unde dictus miles gratiam et promotionem a Rege promeruit, et dictam muliem a carcere liberavit.

De Cardinalibus applicantibus.

2 Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo septimo-decimo, applicuerunt in Anglia duo Cardinales, videlicet, Dominus Gaucelinus, Domini Papæ Vice-Cancellarius, et Dominus Lucas de Flisco, nunci Domini Papæ; ad petitionem tamen Domini Regis, ut pacem inter regna Angliæ et Scotiæ, ac etiam inter Regem et Comitem Lancastriae, diu titubantem, reformarent.

Qui cum ad partes Boreales, ut prædicta perficerent, nimirum festinarent, et apud Dunelmum, ut Dominum Ludowicum de Bello Monte ( cui Dominus Papa, ad instantiam Regis, Episcopatum Dunelmensem, sproeto ejusdem loci electo, contulerat), in Episcopum consecrarent, accedere deberent, quidam fatui de Northumbria, qui dicebantur “Savaldores,” ( quorum duces fuerunt Gillbertus de Midiltone, miles, et Walterus de Seleby,) cum magna multitudine fatuorum, de quadam valle ex inopinato prorumpentes, irruebant in eos: manibus injectis, Dei timore postposito, violentis, ab equis et thesaurum ipso spoilabant. Electum vero Dunelmensem, cum fratre suo carnali, scilicet, Domino Henrico de Bello Monte, cum equis et thesauris, capiebant, et in Castro de Mitforde usque ad gravem redemptionem detinebant. Sed Cardinales, equis suis et thesaurum pro parte restitutis, Dunelmum, cum suis familiis, illeos abire permisserunt; ubi per aliquot dies perendinantes, infectis negotiis pro quibus venerant, Eboracum sub salvo conductu revertuntur, ubi horribilem sententiam

1 In allusion to Matthew xx. 12.  
2 Omitted in orig.  
3 Anglice in orig.  
4 perendinantes in orig.
A.D. 1317. in suos transgressores, et omnes eius quocunque modo adhaerentes, promulgabant.

Qua executioni per totam Angliam demandata, Londonias repedarunt. Octo denarios de marca, pro damnis et expensis, a clero sibi dari postulabant, ad quatuor denarios, quos prius habuerant pro primo anno morae suae in Anglia, respectum nullum habendo. Habito igitur super hujus petitione longo tractatu in clero, respondetur eis quod contemptus et damna eis, ut praemittitur, illata, irrogata sibimet imputare, cum locum, sibi a clero limitatum, Eboracem scilicet, favore regio et avaritiae stimulo exccecati, transgredi præsumpe-runt. Quare octo denarios a marca, sic petitos, habere non poterant; sed quatuor denarios a marca, pro secundo anno morae suae, vix optimere valebant.

De quodam milite facinoroso, Gilberto de Middeltone.

Accidit interea, quod ille Gilbertus de Middeltone antedictus, post multos insultus et gravamina, vicinis suis et etiam Prioratui de Tynemuta per ipsum et suos complices sæpius illata, cum multos de convicinis suos captivos in dicto Castro usque ad gravem redemptionem detineret, quidam nobiles de patria, eorum detentionem moleste ferentes, similemque injuriam futuram sibi fore metuentes, quasi prò ipsorum liberatione ad ipsum sub salvo conductu accedebant; et, post multa verba et cavillationes hinc inde factas, certo pretio pro eis constituto, quosdam tunc liberabant, et quosdam usque ad plenam pecuniae solutionem in hostagio dimittebant.

Finalis igitur solutionis die adveniente, et tempore expectato, quo satellites ejusdem Gilberti, pro prædis et rapinis agendis, diversis locis vagarentur, venerunt, qui solutionem facere debuerant, cum eo locuturi; dicentes, se pecuniam in villa secretius habere, pro qua

1 eis in orig. | 2 Sic in orig.
ANNALES. 101

querenda liberum exitum et introitum sibi concedi A.D. 1317. 
petebant. Quibus concessis, cum ad 1 portas Castri, quasi 
exituri, accederent, janitoribus in momento jugulatis, 
2 multitudinem armatorum, foras latentium; induce-
bant; qui subito irruentes in eum, nil tale cogitan-
tem, et plagis impositis, vinculis ferreis eum acriter 
constrinxerunt. Caeteri vero iniquitatis filii, qui sibi 
gratum in sua nequitia famulatum impendebant, cum 
praedis hominum 3 [et] animalium ad Castrum redeuntes, 
et dominum suum captum esse perpendentes, ad Wal-
terum de Seleby, totius malitiae consortem, qui in pelo 
de Horton latuit, similem injuriam ejus vicinis infe-
rens, fugiebant.

Dictus vero Gilbertus, cum fratre suo carnali, vincus 
apud Novum Castellum deducitur, ubi, juxta merita, 
ab incolis admittitur, et post dies paucos in quadam 
navi in portu de Tyne positus, ventum congruum ex-
pectans, pro damnis et injuriis Sancto Oswino et suis 
per ipsum frequenter irrogatis, veniam invitus postu-
lavit. Vento tandem Boreali fortiter flante, et mari 
horribiliter intumescente, Grimmesby, vix vita comite, 
perducitur; ubi, pedibus sub equino ventre copulatis, 
Londonias, mercedem pro meritis suscepturus, deducitur, 
et, judicio in eum lato, caudis equorum funibus innexus, 
fureas usque 4 distrahitur; et totum jus, cum dominio, 
quod ipse vel fratres sui in Comitatu Northumbriae 
habere clamitabant, suspendio eorum terminatur.

De congressu contra Scotos.

5 [A]nno Domini millesimo trecentesimo octavo-decimo, A.D. 1318. 
Anglia pro discordia inter Regem et Comitem mota, 
aliisque diversis causis, pereditante, Scotisque partes 
Boreales usque 6 Eboracencem, et Occidentales fere usque 
peace between

1 portam in Hearne.  
2 multitudine in orig.  
3 Omitted in orig.  
4 distraitur in orig.  
5 Omitted in orig.  
6 Eboracum in Hearne.
A.D. 1318. Lancastriam, absque obstaculo in igne et gladio con-
sumentibus, et uterius ire comminantibus, Deus, sua
benigna miseratiane, cordibus prælatorum instillavit, ut, 
una cum Cardinalibus, Regem adirent, et inducerent, 
quatenus Articulos, totiens pro statu Ecclesiae et regni 
petitos et concessos, bona fide confirmaret, et in usu 
et opere stabiles esse permitteret, ne sibi et regno gra-
vius periculum immineret. Ad quod faciendum, dies 
circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ apud Leicestriam 
assignatur; ubi pace inter Regem et Comitem quodam-
modo reformata, Articulisque pristino more concessis, 
Cardinales licenciati ab Anglia recesserunt.

Anno Domini miliesimo trecentesimo octavo-decimo, 
et ad Parliamentum quod ad festum Sancti Michaelis 
proximo sequens tenebatur, ordinatum erat, quod ha-
beret in auxilium, contra Scotorum aggressus, homines 
electos de qualibet bona villa Angliæ. Qui quidem 
cum apud Eboracum in magno apparatu et nobili ar-
matura venissent, exortis ibidem quibusdam impedimen-
tis, infecto negotio ad propria licenciati repedarunt. 
Et ut posteris iuget de numero eorum, a civitate Lon-
doniarum exierunt ducenti juvenes, ad ungues armati, 
de Cantuaria vero quadraginta, et de villa Sancti Al-
bani decem. Et sic de singulis villis Angliæ, juxta suum 
valorem.

De filia Regis nata. 

Birth of 
the Prin-
cess 
Alianor.

1 [E]odem anno nata est Domino' Regi filia tali die 
apud Wodestoke, et vocatur 2 [Alianora].

De terræ-motu. 

An earth-
quake.

3 [E]odem anno accedit terræ-motus in crastino Sancti 
Bricii—unde multi terrebantur—post gallicinium.

1 Omitted in orig. | 3 Omitted in orig. 
2 Omitted in orig.
ANNALES.

De occisione Edwardi le Brus. A.D. 1318.

1 [E]odem anno per fideles homines Regis in Hibernia Edwardus le Brus decollatur; qui triennio elapso auctoritate propria in eadem coronabatur.

De obsidione Berewici.

2 [E]odem anno, qui fuit annus Regis duodecimus, Rex tenuit Curiam suam apud Beverlaeum, et in autumno sequente de exercitu copioso sibi providebat, ut superbiam Scotorum refrenaret, et civitatem Berwicensem, per seditionem cujusdam Petri de Spalding eisdem, pecunia mediante, nuper redditam, in manu fortii recuperaret. Qui dum circa dictae civitatis captionem operam daret, Scoti, collecto grandi exercitu, ad viginti millia hominum, Angliam intraverunt, et Reginam in quadam villa parvula juxta Eboracum, minus caute quam decuit, perhendinantem, per quosdam falsos Anglicos, accepta pecunia, sibi venditam, clam occupare studuerunt. Sed benedictus Deus, qui non dedit eam in captionem dentibus eorum, per exploratores præmunita, a laqueo venantium ocius fugiebat. Dicti quidem Scoti, cum se delusos esse perpenderent, contristati sunt nimis, quod tam caro mercimonio, prædaque tam pretiabilis et tantum concupita, caruerant: ad vindictam se accingebant, et discurrentes per patriam, quaque sibi obvia in igne et gladio consumebant.

De confusione Anglicorum apud Mitone.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo decimo-nono, A.D. 1319. Scotis in Anglia sævientibus, exierunt a civitate Eboraci, cum paucis de patria, qui ab exercitu Regis remanuerant, Defeat of the English by the Scots to capture the Queen frustrated.
A.D. 1319. ad decem millia hominum, et juxta villam de Mitone
Scots, at
Mitton-on-
Swale.
super Swale ad prœliandum cum eis se obtulerunt. Scoti quidem, quorum duces feroces erant, et in militari
conflictu a longo tempore experti, et quorum cunei die
et nocte ad bellandum erant dispositi, irruebant in eos,
inordinate et sine duce attendentes; ad tria millia ho-
minum in ore gladii in momento trucidarunt, quosdam
vero, per fugam elapsos, in flumen de Swale fugave-
runt, et qui a gladio fugerant, in aqua perierunt.
Commissum fuit hoc proelium in locis praedictis in
Vigilia Sancti Matthæi Apostoli, anno Domini millesi-
mo trecentesimo decimo-nono; et, ut quidam assere-
bant, multi viri religiosi huic nefandae congressioni
armati interfuerunt.

Cumque hujusmodi rumor auribus Regis et aliorum,
qui circa obsessionem Berewyci solliciti fuerant, incre-
besceret, exinde recesserunt, ut Scotis in terra Angliae
obviare possent, non segniter advolantes. Et cum eis
per partes Orientales, juxta Novum Monasterium, occur-
rere disponerent, ecce ! Scoti, cum laude pomposa, præ-
daque hominum et animalium non modica, per aliam
viam reversi sunt in regionem suam, favillas et cineres,
cum vapore fumi, et corpora occisorum inhumata in
omni villa per quam transierant, in sue perversitatis
memoriam, post se relinquentes.

Sequitur de Treugis.

Post multa igitur bella, damna, et homicidia utro-
bique illata, nec sciri potuit, cui finaliter victoria per-
veniret, captæ sunt inter eos treugæ biennales; intra
quod tempus si pax non fuerit plenius reformata, ad
experientiam gladii revertantur.

De Peste Animalium.

A murrain in Eng-
land; and, as reported, in France.
bile, quod de pecorum mortuorum cadaveribus etiam A.D. 1319. canes et corvi qui vesceabantur, illico intimuerunt, et infecti obierunt. Unde nullus erat hominum, qui carnes bovinas gustare præsumebat, ne forte de morticiinis eorum intoxicatus succumberet. Tempore quidem Paschali in Essexia incepit, et per annum integrum duravit. Dictum est etiam, quod tota Gallia eadem labe per idem tempus extitit coïnninata.

De Consecratione Episcopi Wintoniensis.

1[Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo, cum ad aures Summi Pontificis pervenisset, quod ecclesia Wintoniensis per decessum Domini Johannis de Cenedele, Wintoniensis Episcopi, pastore careret, ejusdem ecclesie dignitatem suo collationi protinus reservavit. Sed monachi dicti loci, reservatione prædicta non obstante, obtenta a Rege licentia, ad electionem procedentes, virum quidem eminens litteraturæ, multarumque virtutum insigni redimitum, de suo Monasterio monachum, unanimi consensu elegerunt. Sed rumore super electione sic facta in aures Domini Papæ tinniente, electionem illam nullam esse pronuncians, cassato electo, Domino Rigaudo, clerico suo speciali, Episcopatum conferebat antedictum; qui, tanto honore adepto, cum Domini Regis gratiam, post longas relucationes, obtinuisset, nec ab Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi consecrari voluisset, in Monasterio Sancti Albani, ad Romanam Ecclesiam pertinente, munus consecrationis, juxta facultatem a Domino Papa sibi concessam, accipere præelegit.

Obtenta igitur ab ejusdem loci Abbate et Conventu licentia, per manus Episcopi Londoniensis, in præsentiæ Eliensis 2[et] Rofensis Episcoporum, ad majus altare Sancti Albani, in die Sancti Edmundi Archipresulis,

---

1 Omitted in orig. 2 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1320. anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo, dignitatem episcopalem suscepit; et, ne ipsius consecratio futuris temporibus privilegiis Sancti Albani aliquod prejudicium asserre posset, litteras super indemnitate privilegiorum sub hac forma confecit.—

Littera Episcopi Wintoniensis.

“[R]igaudus, permissione divina, Episcopus Wintoniensis, venerabilibus et religiosis viris, Abbatì Monasterii de Sancto Albano, Sacrosanctae Sedis Apostolicae immediate subjectis, et ejusdem loci Conventui, saltem in gratia Salvatoris. Cum nos, juxta facultatem nobis per sanctissimum in Christo patrem, Dominum Johannem, divina Providentia, Papam, Vicesimum-secondum, ad consecrationis munus recipiendum a quocunque Episcopo Catholico, gratiam Sedis Apostolicae obtinente, ad idem munus nobis impendendum concessam, munus consecrationis die Dominica Sancti Edmundi, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopi, anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo, in exempto Monasterio vestro de Sancto Albano, recepissemus, vestra benevolentia speciali; nolentes quod in dubium posset revocari, quod vos a vestrorum privilegiis effectu, vobis a Sede Apostolica indultorum, dici valeat recessisse, tacite vel expresse, aut per hoc privilegiis vestris aliqualiter derogetur, vel derogari posset in futurum, protestamur et confitemur, haec omnia acta et immunitate vobis expresse salvis. In quorum omnium testimonium, has litteras nostras, sigillo nostro signatas, fecimus fieri patentes. Data apud Sanctum Albanum, die et anno supradictis.”

1 Omitted in orig. | 2 Repeated in orig.
De gravi 1 dissidio inter Regem, Comites et Barones.


Praeterea, Dominus H[ugo] Dispensator, Junior, videns illam terram sibi fore utilem, et terris suis undique vicinam, quia Domini Regis Camerarius erat, ampliorem gratiam a Rege de illa terra comparanda præ cæteris obtinuit, et, speciali a domino dictae terræ adepto favore, illam maledictam, omnibus aliis exclusis, fina-liter comparavit.

Praefati quidem magnates, se per eundem Hugonem circumventos, et a suo proposito penitus fraudatos esse, perpendentes, ad Thomam, Comitem Lancastriae, qui inimicus Hugonis Senioris a longo tempore fuerat, ac-cedebant, prædictum casum ex ordine referentes. Qui simul confœderati, et juramento astricti, multitum Barones et totius Angliæ fere nobiliores, apud Schireborne in Elemedone ad suum consilium evocabant; ubi quibus-dam articulis in proscriptionem dictorum Hugonis

---

1 dissidio in orig. | 2 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1321. et Hugonis compositis, vias tamen juris æquitatis omittentes, impetus animorum furiose exequentes, terras eorum, et omnium eis aliquo fœdere vel affinitate conjunctorum, violenter invadébant, manerias eorum comburentes, castra capientes, custodes occidentes, et multa enormia, quæ in processu judicii, contra eos lato, distincte et aperte recitabant, contra regni et coronæ pacem committebant; in hoc tantummodo dolentes, quod personas eorum invenire minime potuerunt.

Prædicta furia adhuc durante, versus Sanctum Albanum iter suum armati, cum vexillis explicatis, dirigebant, victualia, invitis possessoribus, ubique capientes; in quo quidem itinere, quidam, malo spiritu ducti, vovebant quod Monasterium Sancti Albani, et ejus monachos, gravare pro viribus, et damnicare, deberent.

Sed ille, qui hujus maliæ auctor fuerat, et incensor, apud Aylesbury hospitatus, tam gravi morbo subito percutitur, quod, in furia conversus, propriis manibus seipsum discerpendium, post bídum expiravit. Caeteri vero, ipsius exemplo perterriti, casum hunc pro miraculo reputantes, ab executione voti, magis timore quum caritatis fervore, se subtrahebant.

Quidam tamen Sathanæ satellites, ul tionem Dei non formidantes, in camera Abbatis secretiori seipsum discerpendium, quorum capitaneus erat quidam miles, “Robertus Walkefare” nomine, — seris et repagulis ferreis diruptis ostiorum, loca secretiora dicæ camerae furtive sunt ingressi; loricæ ferreas etæ arma Abbatis, quibus servitium suum pro baronia sua in gueran Regis faceret, ad custodiendum ibidem deposita, asportarunt. Quorum omnes, præcipue qui de tanto facinore non satis secerent, ul tor Beato Martyre, cui tanta injuria fuerat irrogata, miserabilem vitæ feecerunt consummationem.

1 convicinorum in Hearne.  
2 satellites in orig.  
3 hostiorum in orig.
Iidem igitur magnates, cum maxima pompa et strepitu armorum per triduum apud Sanctum Albanum existentes, solemnes nuncios, videlicet, Londoniensem, Sarisbirensem, Eliensem, Herefordensem, et Ciestrensem, Episcopos, qui ad pacem formandam venerant, Domino Regi, Londoniis commoranti, destinabant; postulantibus quatenus dictos Hugonem et Hugonem, per communitatem terrae in multis articulis condemnatos, exilium subire permitteret, ac sibi ipsis, et omnibus qui in eorum comitiva fuerant, ne pro transgressionibus praemissis a Rege, seu quovis alio, futuris temporibus, punirentur, litteras indulgentiatis concederet.

Rex, super hiis consultus, respondit, quod eorum petition tam juris quam rationis fundamento carebat; cum dicti Hugo et Hugo omnibus de se querelantibus, in forma juris respondere, et, si in aliquo articulo contra Statuta terrae probari queat eos offendisse, satisfacueros, legitime se offerunt cum effectu; ulterius adiciens, quod juramentum quod de legibus terrae et statu coronae manutenendis fecerat, nullo modo permitteret, quod pro tot offensis, in personae suae contemptum, regni et coronae suae laesionem, tam notiori commissis, litteras indulgentiæ eis exhiberet.

Ipsi igitur magnates, vix responsum expectantes, diversa indumenta super arma, ad cognoscendas turmas sibi providentes, videlicet, pro militibus cotucas, Anglice, "quartleys," pro armigeris vero "bendes;" quibus quidem indumentis, sicut diploide, confusione sua, in judiciis suis sunt induti, diversis penis et postea judicati. De responso nimis indignati, Londonias pomposa adeuntes, in suburbio pacifice manebant, donec licentiam civitatem ingrediendi a Rege obtinerent. Ingressu tandem eis a Rege concesso, magnates in sua petitione fortiter steterunt; unde, adjuvante Regina,
A.D. 1321. praedicti nuncii Regem inducebant, quatenus, propter guerre periculum evitandum, pacisque securitatem in regno suo nutriendam, rancorem cordis sui emolliret, petitionibus eorum aurem benevolam inclinaret.

Rex autem, praedictis ex causis motus, et importunitate nunciorum magnatumque totius regni instantia devictus, cum alia via evadendi non suberat, nisi quod oportuit vel eis satisfacere vel in manus eorum incideret, minus malum elegit, et petitiones eorum plene concessit. Edicto super hiis per Comitem Herefordiae in Aula Westmonasterii publicato, Hugo Senior exul subiit; sed Junior, diversis locis latitans, in Anglia et in mari permansit. Litteris autem pacem Domini Regis continentibus, acceptis, magnates recesserunt, de securitate pacis et Domini Regis benevolentia in parte diffidentes: armati semper incendentes, loca tuta quaerabant.

De ob eidione et snapshot Castri de Ledes in Cancia.

Accidit interea casus, eisdem magnatibus nimis damnosus, et totius angustiae subsequentis motivus.

Domina siquidem Regina, quae semper nutrix pacis et concordiae inter dominum suum, Regem, et Barones fuerat, versus Cantuariam tendens, in Castro de Ledes hospitari et pernoctare disposuit. Quod quidem Castrum Dominus Bartholomeus de Batlesmere, dum Senescal-lus Regis fuerat, ab eodem Domino Rege in excambium pro aliis terris sibi et suis heredibus impetravit; in quo uxorem suam, cum parvulis et magna thesauri copia, dimisit, dum, fide Regis deserendo, Baronibus adhaesit. Præmississ is igitur Dominae Reginae marescallis, ut contra ipsius adventum in dicto Castro necessaria providerent, respondit domina Castri, vel alius pro ea, quod alibi providentias suas facerent, quia sine litteris domini sui, Reginæ vel aliis ingressum dicti Castri nullo modo concederet. Hoc ad aures Reginæ ocius
perlato, personaliter illuc accessit, ut videret, an verum esset in opere, quod divulgatum erat ex multorum clamore et relatione.

Sed cum nulla spes de ingressu habendo in responsis, extra Castrum sibi missis, inveniri poterat, vetitum sibi factum domino suo plenius nunciabat. Rex autem, ex hoc graviter provocatus, collectis pluribus armatorum, cum multis Londoniensibus, ad dictum Castrum personaliter accessit, et Castrum sibi reddi præcepit; dene- gatum obsedit; obsessum tandem in manu forti accepit. Mulieres in eo inclusas ad Turrim Londoniarum man- davit, milites vero et servientes, contra ipsum rebellantes, diversis penis multavit. Thesauros ibidem inventos copiosos, et arma, sibi retinuit; milites et servientes, pro dicto Castro ad opus suum custodiendo, certos deputavit. Hiis igitur victoriosae finitis, versus Cirecestriam, (ubi tenuit Natale suum,) Castra multa Baronum in itinere capiendo, iter maturavit.

De morte Comitis Lancastriæ et cæterorum nobilium.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo se- cundo, solemnitate Natalis Domini nostri apud Cireces- triam ibidem, quo decuit, celebrata, exercitum tunc grandem, contra Comites iturus, colligere Rex incepit; quod multi adversariorum suorum videntes, perterriti, ad gratiam ejus, et pacem, festinabant. Inter quos duo Rogeri de Mortuo Mari, viri utique strenues et bellicosi, per aliquos intermeantes induti, qui aciores in principio fuerant, et quasi totius discordiæ incentores præcipui, ipsius gratiae præ cæteris penitus se supponebant. Qui redditi, ad Turrim Londoniarum, donec consideratum esset quid de eis Rex ageret, sunt trans- missi:—quorum vitam quam duxerant, et quam finem fecerant, diligens in sequentibus reperiet indagator.

\(^{1}\) perteriti in orig.

Comites quidem et Barones residui, hæc perpendentes, ad partes Golverniæ se diverterunt, et sicut in recordo et processu judicii, apud Pontem Fractum contra eos lati, manifeste recitatur, per omnia se habuerunt. Qui quidem processus sic incipit.—

De Recordo contra Thomam de Lancasteria.

"Edwardus etc., omnibus ad quos praesentes litteræ pervenerint, salutem. Inspeximus recordum et processum judicii, in presentia nostra contra Thomam, nuper Comitem Lancastriae, et quosdam alios inimicos nostros et rebelles, redditi, in hæc verba.—‘Placita

‘Coronae coram Domino Edwarde Rege, filio Domini

‘Edwardi Regis, tenta, in presentia ipsius Domini

‘Regis, apud Pontem Fractum, die Lunæ proxima

‘ante festum Annunciationis Beatæ Mariæ Virginis,

‘1 regni quinto-decimo. Cum Thomas 2 [Comes] Lan-

‘casciae, captus pro prodictionibus, homicidiis, 3 ro-

‘beriis, incendiis, et aliis diversis deprædationibus,

‘feloniiis, ductus esset coram ipso Domino Rege, pre-

‘sentibus Edmundo Comite Kent, 4 H[ugone] Comite

‘Wyntonise, Adamaro Comite Penbroke, Johanne de

‘Warenna Comite de Suthreia, Edmundo Comite

‘Arundelise, David Comite Athesel, Roberto Comite

‘de Anegos, Baronibus, et aliis magnatibus regni,

‘Dominus Rex recordatur, quod idem Thomas, homo

‘ligeus ipsius Domini Regis, venit Burtone super

‘Trentam, 5 scilicet cum Humfrido Boun, nuper Co-

‘mite Herefordiae, proditore Regis et regni invento,

‘cum vexillii explicatis, apud Pontem Burgi, in bello

2 Omitted in orig. Supplied from the Federæ.
3 incendiis, deprædationibus, in the Federæ.
4 Johanne Comite Richemundiae, in the Federæ.
5 simul cum in the Federæ.
contra 1 Regem, et ibidem interfecito; et Rogero A.D. 1322.

Dammory proditore adjudicato, et quibusdam aliis
proditoribus et inimicis Regis et regni, cum vexillis
explicatis, ut de guerra, hostiliter resistebat, et impe-
divit ipsum Dominum Regem, homines, et familias
suos, per tres dies continuos, quominus pontem dictæ
villæ de Burto transire potuerunt, 2 ut debuerunt,
et quosdam homines ipsius Domini Regis felonice
interfecto. Ob quod, Dominus Rex, propter prædic-
tam malitiam et resistentiam prædicti Comitis et
aliorum 3 reprimendas, et pro tranquillitate et pace
populi sui et regni, et juris coronaæ suæ manu-
tenenda, et ad repellendum et amovendum vim præ-
dictam, 4 seditiose congregatam, transitum quæsivit
aliunde ultra aquam de Trente, et potenter exinde
equitavit versus prædictos 5 Comites et alios. Et
prædictus 6 Thomas, hoc perpendens, 7 simul cum aliis
prædictis proditoribus, 8 [ut proditor et inimicus
Regis et regni, posuit ignem in villa de Burto-
praedica, et partem domorum et honorum ejusdem
villæ felonice combussit; et extunc prædictus Comes,
simul cum aliis prædictis proditoribus,] exiit villam
prædictam usque in campum ibidem, vexillis expi-
catis, et acies suas bellicosas direxit hostiliter ad
debellandum ipsum Dominum Regem, contra homa-
gium, fidelitatem, et ligeantiam suam, quibus eidem
Domino erat astrictus, expectando adventum ipsius
Domini Regis in eodem campo. Et super hoc, cum
dictus Thomas Comes perpendisset ipsum Dominum

1 Dominum Regem in the Fadera.
2 prout in the Fadera.
3 reprimendas in the Fadera.
4 regni et populi in the Fadera.
5 juris coronæ suæ regiæ manu-
tenendo in the Fadera.
6 seditione taliter congregatam in
the Fadera.
7 Comitem in the Fadera.
8 Thomas Comes, hoc, in the
Fadera.
9 scilicet in orig., corrected from
the Fadera.
10 Omitted in orig., by inadver-
tence. Supplied from the Fadera.
11 Domino Regi in the Fadera.

 1 simul cum alis comproditoriis suis predictis, confusus posuit se in fugam, et fugit, in the Federa.
 2 in omitted in the Federa.
 3 depradationes et roberias in the Federa.
 4 simul cum predictis proditoriis, cum equis et armis, ac vexillis, in the Federa.
 5 Omitted in orig. Supplied from the Federa.
 6 a Domino Rege habentes in the Federa.
 7 scilicet in orig.; corrected from the Federa.
 8 predictos fideles in the Federa.
 9 fidelibus Domini Regis felonice in the Federa.
 10 proditoriis in the Federa.
 11 et omitted in the Federa.
 12 notoria et notae in the Federa.
 13 et populo regni in the Federa.
Comes pro 

dictis homicidiis, deprædationibus, incendiiis pro 

roberiis suspendatur, et pro prædicta fuga in hac 

parte decapitetur. Et super hoc, licet prædictus 

Comes temporibus retroactis nequiter et malitiose, 

contra homagium, fidelitatem, et leogantiam suam, 

pluries male se gesserit et habuerit versus Dominus 

Regem, scilicet, cum Dominus Rex habisset apud Novum Castrum super Tynam victualia, 
equos, armaturas, jocalia, et alia diversa bona, 
ad magnam summam et quantitatem; que quidem 

bona prædictus Thomas Comes, cum equis et armis, 
et magna multitudine armatorum, cepit, et de-

prædavit, et asportavit; quam quidem depræda-
tionem et transgressionem ejusdem Dominus Rex, 
de gratia sua speciali, remisit et perdonavit præ-
dicto Thome Comiti et aliis malefactoribus ejus-
dem deprædationis, ad trahendum propositum ipsius Thomæ in melius. Ac insuper, prædictus 

Thomas Comes, colligatis sibi diversis hominibus, 
vi armata venit ad diversa Parliamenta Domini 
Regis, et pluries impedivit ipsum Dominum Regem 
tenere Parliamenta sua, prout decuit ad ipsum 
et coronam suam tenere; et pluries ad hujusmodi 
Parliamenta, juxta mandata Domini Regis, venire 
non curavit; sed inobedienter contempsit, ac etiam 
diversas congregationes et conventiculas illicitas, 
contra Dominum Regem, sepius fecit per loca: 
diversa, et contra prohibitionem Domini Regis. 

Item, cum plurès malefactores, et pacis Domini

---

1 prædicta prodizione in the Fædera.
2 Supplied from the Fædera; omitted in orig.
3 Thomas Comes in the Fædera.
4 ipsum Dominum in the Fædera.
5 et armaturas in the Fædera.
6 et omitted in the Fædera.
7 attrahendum in the Fædera.
8 Thomas Comitis in the Fædera.
9 prout ad ipsum et tenere pertinebat in the Fædera.
ANNALES. 117

" 1 Thomæ Comitis; ac etiam idem Thomas Comes A.D. 1322.
  " regalem potestatem diversimode sibi usurpavit, et
  " usurpare nitebatur, ad *exhaeredandum pro posse
  " suo 3 Dominum Regem in hac parte. Item, cum
  " Dominus Rex, nuper existens apud Eboracum,
  " mandasset diversis magnatibus, et aliis regni,
  " cum quibus consilium voluit habuisse, quod venis-
  " sent apud Eboracum ad tractandum de professione
  " ipsius Domini Regis 4 in Scotia; dictus Thomas
  " Comes, tunc existens in Castro suo apud Pontem
  " Fractum, cum magna multitudine armatorum, misit
  " homines suos ad impediendum transitum juxta
  " Pontem Fractum, tam per vias quam per pontes,
  " quominus consiliarii Domini Regis, ad 5mandatum
  " ejusdem, venire potuerunt apud Eboracum, ad
  " 8proximandum Dominum Regem; et cum Dominus
  " Rex a partibus Eboraci se divertisset versus partes
  " Australes, et venisset cum familia sua 7juxta Pon-
  " tem Fractum, dictus Thomas Comes et homines
  " sui exierunt Castrum, et, ad despciendum Do-
  " minum Regem, 8acclamaverunt in ipsum Dominum
  " Regem viissime et contemptibiliter cum magno
  " tumultu, in maximum contemptum ipsius Domini
  " Regis, acsi Dominus Rex eorum fuisset inimicus, et
  " non Rex, neque eorum dominus. Item, 9cum dictus
  " Thomas Comes 10simul cum 11Comite Herefordiae et
  " aliis comproditoribus suis, nitebatur habuisse et
  " fecisse confederationem et alligationem cum Roberto
  " 12Brus, Thoma 13Randolf, 14Jacobo Duglas, et aliis

1 Omitted in the Fœdera.
2 exhaeredandum in orig.
3 ipsum Dominum in the Fœdera.
4 ad partes Scotia in the Fœdera.
5 dictum mandatum Domini Regis in the Fœdera.
6 approximandum ipsum Dominum in the Fœdera.
7 transeundo juxta in the Fœdera.
8 declamaverunt in the Fœdera.
9 cum omitted in the Fœdera.
10 scilicet in orig.; corrected from the Fœdera.
11 predictis, Comite, in the Fœdera.
12 de Brus in the Fœdera.
13 Randolf, in orig.
14 et Jacobo in the Fœdera.
A.D. 1322. " 1 inimicis Domini Regis et regni, et de modo et
forma ipsius confederationis 2 inventa fuit quedam
indentura penes dictum Comitem Herefordicion, quando
occisus fuit, in haec verba.—

" 1 La creance, qe Johan 3 Denom deit dire a Robert,
Roy de Eschoce, et a Monsire Thomas Randulfe,
Counte de Morrif, Seneschal de Eschoce, et a Mons-
sire Jamis Duglas, ou a 4 queux de ceux, qui serra
plus tost trove, de part 5 le Countes de Lancastre
et de Hereford, et lur alliez. Ceo est a saver, qe
le dit Roy de Eschoce, et le dit Counte de Morrif,
le Seneschal, et Monsire James Duglas, ov lour
poer, vendrount a ditz Countis de Lancastre et de
Hereford, et a lur aliez, quel hour qil serrount
garniz, au certein lieu, ou il 6 puissent assembler;
et damagerunt touz izzx qe le dit Counte de

[Translation.]

" 1 The commission which John Denom ought to com­
municate to Robert, King of Scotland, and to Messire
Thomas Randulfe, Earl of Moray, Seneschal of Scot­
land, and to Messire James Duglas, or to such of them
as shall be the soonest found, on behalf of the Earls
of Lancaster and of Hereford, and their allies. That is
" to say, that the said King of Scotland and the said
Earl of Moray, the Seneschal, and Messire James Duglas,
with their forces, shall come to the said Earls of Lan­
caster, and of Hereford, and to their allies, at what­
ever hour they shall be warned thereto, at a certain
place, where they may assemble; and they shall injure
all those whom the said Earl of Lancaster and [Earl]
Lancastre et de Hereforde, et lur aliez, voillent A.D. 1322.

... damager; et sur salver toz icheaux de damage, qil voillent aver savez, a lur poer. "Ensement, ven-
drount as ditz Countes de Lancastre et de Here-
forde, en touz lieus "la ou il voillent qil veing-
ient, en Engletere, en Galis, et en Irland, a "vivre et morir en maintenaunce de lur querele
oveques eaux, saunz clamer conqueste ou seyng-
'-' terres. E si le dit Roy de
Escoce, ou ses autres avaunt nomes, pur eux et
pur lur poair, voillent ceste chose assureer et faire;
ou si le "Roy de Escoce seit destourbe meimes
par maladie, ou par autre enchesoun graunt, par
"'11 quei il ne puisse en propre persone venir, qe les
avaunt ditz, Counte de Morrif le Seneschal, et

... of Hereford, and their allies, may wish to injure; and
save all those from injury, whom they may wish to have
saved, to the best of their power. Also, they shall come
to the said Earls of Lancaster and of Hereford, in all
places where they may wish them to come, in England,
in Wales, and in Ireland, to live and die with them in
maintenance of their quarrel, without claiming conquest
or lordship in the said lands. And if the said King of
Scotland, or his other persons before named, for them
and for their resources, may wish to assure this thing
and do it; or if the King of Scotland be prevented
himself by illness, or by other great cause, by reason
whereof he cannot come in his proper person, then the
before-named, Earl of Moray the Seneschal, and Messire

1 aver damages in the Fadera.
2 sayverent in the Fadera.
3 Et esment in the Fadera.
4 la omitted in the Fadera.
5 et ovesque eux vivre et morir in the Fadera.
6 oveques eux om. in the Fadera.
7 terres d'Engleterre, de Gales, et d'Irland, in the Fadera.
8 Et le dit in the Fadera.
9 d'Escoce, et les ditz Countes de Morrif le Seneschal, et Monsieur James, pur eux, in the Fadera.
10 dit Roy, in the Fadera.
11 qil qil ne in the Fadera.
A.D. 1322. " 'Monsire James Duglas, ov lour poair avaut dit, 'asseurent et facent cco 1qest de sur dist; les 'avaunt ditz Counte de Lancastre et de Hereforde, 'asseurersunt qe jammes ne chivacherunt sur eaux 'en eide le Roy de Engletere. 4E quel houre qe 'les 5avaunt ditz Counte d[e] Lancastre et de Here- 'forme, et lur alliez, eint lur querele finit, il met- 'tront 6lele peine, qe bon pes se fra entre les deu 'terres de Engletere et de Escoce, a lur poair; issint 'qil tendront lur tere dEscoce ausi peisiblement, 'com eux 7front 8lur terre de Engleterre.'

" 'James Duglas, with their forces aforesaid, assure and 'do what is before said; the aforesaid Earls of Lan- 'caster and of Hereford shall give assurance that they 'will never make raid upon them in aid of the King 'of England. And at such time as the aforesaid Earls 'of Lancaster and of Hereford, and their allies, shall 'have brought their quarrel to an end, they shall use ' [all] lawful pains, that good peace be made between 'the two lands of England and of Scotland, to the best of 'their power; so that they shall keep their land of Scot- 'land as peaceably, as they shall do with their land of 'England.'

" 'Et demum, cum predicti proditores ipsius Thomæ 'Comitis 9de Lancastria castrum et villam Domini 'Regis Gloucestriæ, cum exercitu suo, vi et armis 'nuper ingressi fuissent; et eadem castrum et villam 'contra voluntatem Domini Regis occupassent, 10et 'apud villam de Brigenorth depredationes, incendia,
homicidia, et alia 1 enormia perpetrassent, 2 ac iidem A.D. 1322.

proditores, timentes approxinquantem adventum Dom-
mini Regis super 3 eos, dicta castrum et villam 4 re-
liquerunt. 5 Deinde diverterunt se in fugam, ad præ-
dictum Thomam Comitem festinanter, tanquam ad
principal refugium suum et capitaneum 6 manuten-
torem accesserunt; qui quidem Thomas Comes 7 sedi-
tionem suam et manutenentiam 8 in hac parte notorie
manifestans, ipsos 9 proditores receptavit, et eis se
10 injunxit, ad debellandum 11 ipsum Dominum Re-
gem, et ad guerram movendam in regno 12 suo, ut
prædicitur. Et misit homines suos, una cum præ-
dictis comproditoribus, 13 ad obsidendum Castrum
Domini Regis de Tykulle, et quedam 14 in genua, ad
projiciendum petras grossas super Castrum prædic-
tum, et homines in eodem Castro ex parte Domini
Regis existentes. Qui quidem proditores Castrum
illud per tres septimanas continue insultando et
debellando, obsederunt, et quosdam homines Regis
ibidem interecerunt; et postmodum, prædictus
Thomas Comes, præfatis iniquitatibus, sceleribus,
et criminibus, sicut prædictum est, perpetratis, præ-
dictam fugam fecit, iter arripiendo versus 15 Scotos,
inimicos Domini Regis et regni, quousque pervenit
ad 16 Pontem Burgi, ubi captus fuit, 17 ut prædictum
est. Unde Dominus Rex, habito respectu ad tanta
dicti Thomæ facinora et iniquitates, et ejus maxi-

1 facinora perpetrassent in the Fadera.
2 Apparently, ne isdem in orig. Corrected from the Fadera.
3 ipsos in the Fadera.
4 de Gloucestria reliquerunt in the Fadera.
5 Et exinde divertentes se in fugam, ad prædictum, in the Fadera.
6 manutenentem in Hearne.
7 proditionem suam in the Fadera.
8 suam in in the Fadera.
9 comproditores suos receptavit in the Fadera.
10 junxit in the Fadera.
11 contra Dominum in the Fadera.
12 suo om. in the Fadera.
13 suis ad in the Fadera.
14 ingenia in the Fadera.
15 dictos Scotos in the Fadera.
16 prædictum Pontem in the Fadera.
17 sicut prædictum in the Fadera.
A.D. 1322. "c nam ingrati tudinem, nullam habet causam ad ali-
quam gratiam eidem Thomæ Comiti, de poenis præ-
dictis, super ipsum 1 judicatis, perdonandis, in præ-
missis faciendum. Quia tamen idem 2 Comes de
parentela excellenti et nobilissima procreatus est,
Dominus Rex, ob reverentiam dictæ parentelæ,
remittit, de gratia sua speciali, prædicto Thomæ
Comiti executionem duarum poenarum 3 sibi adju-
dicatarum, sicut prædictum est; scilicet, quod idem
Thomas Comes non trahatur neque suspendatur,
sed quod executio tantummodo fiat super ipsum
4 quod decapitetur. Item, cum Warinus de Insula,
Willelmus Tochet, Thomas Maudut, Henricus de
Bradebourne, Willelmus filius Willelmi, et Wille-
mus Cheine, similiter capti 5 cum Comite, pro pro-
ditionibus, homicidiis, incendiis, et deprædationi-
bus, et aliis diversis feloniis, per Marescallum ducti
fuissent coram ipso Domino Rege, præsentibus Co-
mitibus 6 et Baronibus, et aliis magnatibus regni,
Dominus Rex recordatur quod prædictus Warinus
et alii prædicti venerunt cum prædicto Thoma
7 Comite, et alii proditoribus et inimicis Regis et
regni, apud Burtone super Trentam, cum vexillis
explicatis, ut de guerra, et hostiliter resistebant;
et impedierunt ipsum Dominum Regem, homines
et familiares, 8 per tres dies continuos, quo minus
pontem dictæ villæ de Burtone transire poterant,
et quosdam homines 9 Regis ibidem vulneraverunt,
et quosdam interfecerunt felonice. Et cum vidis-
sent ipsum Dominum Regem transire ultra aquam
de Trente versus eos, cum magna potentia, ipsi

1 adjudicatis in the Federa.
2 Thomas Comes in the Federa.
3 sibi om. in the Federa.
4 Thomæ Comitem quod in the Federa.
5 cum Comite om. in the Federa.
6 prædictis Baronibus in the Federa.
7 Comite om. in the Federa.
8 nos, per, in the Federa.
9 dicti Regis in the Federa.
ANNALES.

" proditores ignem in prædicta villa de Burtone posu- A.D. 1322, erunt, et partem domorum et bonorum ibidem felo-

ciæ combusserunt; et in comitiva prædicti Thomæ et aliorum prædictorum, ad campum se traxerunt;
et ibidem, cum vexillis explicatis, in aciebus ejus-

dem Thomae et aliorum prædictorum se posuerunt,
ad expectandum adventum Domini Regis, ad ipsi-
sum hostiliter debellandum, contra homagium, fide-

litatem, et ligeantias suas; et exinde fugerunt, cum prædicto Thoma et aliis, usque ad Pontem Burgi,
homines ligeos Domini Regis, et patriam, ante eos felonice deprædando; et ad Pontem Burgi prædic-
tum in homines ligeos ipsius Domini Regis, ha-
bentes potestatem a Domino Rege ad resistendum præditoribus, cum equis et armis, et vexillis ex-

plicantibus, hostiliter insultum fecerunt, et quosdam felonice vulneraverunt, contra homagium, fidelita-
tem, et ligeantias suas. Et sic non remansit in prædicto Warino et aliis, quin ipsi, simul cum prædicto Thoma et aliis comprædictoribus, Dominum Regem superassent et devicissent. Quæ quidem præditiones, homicidia, combustiones, depræ-
dationes, et debellationes hostiles, cum armis et vexillis explicatis, manifestæ sunt, et notorìæ, et notæ Comitibus et Baronibus, et aliis magnatibus regni, et populo. Ideo consideratum est, quod præ-
dicti Warinus et aliis pro prædictis præditionibus, homicidiis, incendiis, deprædationibus, roberiis, tra-

1 et inimici Regis et regni ignem, in the Fœdera.
2 proditorum in the Fœdera.
3 et inimicorum Regis et regni se in the Fœdera.
4 aliis præditoribus, ad in the Fœdera.
5 et inimicis Regis et regni, cum in the Fœdera.
6 et om. in the Fœdera.
7 Om. in the Fœdera.
8 scilicet in orig. ; corrected from the Fœdera.
9 suis ipsum in the Fœdera.
10 et om. in the Fœdera.
11 equis et armis ac in the Fœdera.
12 et om. in the Fœdera.
13 et roberiis in the Fœdera.
A.D. 1322. "'hantur et suspendantur.' Nos autem, ad majorem
notitiam inimicitiae et rebellionis prædicti Thomæ et
aliorum inimicorum prædictorum nostrorum, et ut
alii subditi nostri in futurum magis timeant talia
facere, prædicta recordum et processus tenore præ-
sentium duximus exemplificandum. In cujus rei tes-
timonials, has litteras nostras fieri fieri fecimus patentes.
'Teste meipso, apud Eboracum, secundo die Maii, anno
'regui nostris quintodecimo.'

De congressu contra Scotos, anno regni Regis Edwardi
quinto-decimo.

Humfrido de 1 Boun, Comite quondam Herefordiae,
apud Pontem Burgi, ut praemittitur, interfecto, Thoma-
que, Lancastriæ Comite, actu et natione gloriose, 2 [per]
judicium decollato, Rogero Dammori ante judicium de
medio sublato, alisque multis in ipso conflicti 3 captis,
Domino, videlicet, Johanne de Moubray, Domino Ro-
gerio de Clifford, cujus pater, in bello de Baumkesburne
contra Scotos dimicans, occupuit, Domino Garino de
Insula, Domino Willelmo Tuchet, Domino Johanne
4 Giffard, Domino Thoma Maudut, Domino Henrico de
Bradeburne, Willelmo filio Willelmi, Domino Willelmo
Cheyne, Domino Bartholomæo de Batlesmere, Domino
Gocelino dEyvile, Domino Henrico Tyeis, diversis
Angliæ partibus tractis et suspensis, quibusdam etiam
carceribus mancipatis, cæterisque potentissimis viris de-
victis et superatis, diversisque poenis traditis et aiflic-
tibus. Rex, de tanta gaudens victoria, retentis quibusdam
armis et potentia præmunitis, exercitum magnum et
grandem, quantus a longo tempore non est visus, con-
tra Scotos prefecturus, congregavit. Quibus absque
victualibus in gravi et pomposa multitudine in parti-

---

1 Sic in orig., for "Boun.
2 Omitted in orig.
3 capitis in orig.
4 Giffard in Hearne.
bus Borealis ad unatis, et ad Novum Castrum super A.D. 1322. Tynam congregatis, Rex cum suis regnum Scotiae hos-
tiliter est ingressus.

Peragratis igitur dicti regni quibusdam partibus, lentis cum passibus et 1 dietis, Scotis cum bonis suis a facie eorum ad loca tuta confugientibus, praeter patrias penitus devastatas, et loca omnibus vacuata bonis, Anglii, per seditionem vel per fata sic ducti, nullos sibi resistentes invenerunt. Expenditis siquidem victualibus per terram, et per mare ubique deficientibus, maxima copia exercitus fame tabefacta, numerosaque multitudine praec varios inopia, ² proh dolor! penitus extincta—unde Vegetius, De Re Militari, sic ait,—" Saepius enim penuria quam pugna consumit exerci-
tum, et ferro saevior fames est,"—Rex tandem, plebi suei dolenter pereunti pie compatiens, quocunque ne-gotio commendabili infecto, ad regnum Angliae dolens et anxius est reversus.

Omnibus igitur cito dispersis, Rex in confinio de-moratus est regnorum. Et nonnulli, cum ad propria venerate, copiamque ciborum hauserant, aut cito, di-
ruptis visceribus, moriebantur, aut, natura penitus con-sumpti, quasi inermes semper, et imbecilles vixerunt, viresque naturales præhbitas nunquam recuperare valuerunt.

De miserabili casu Regi contingente.

Accidit non multo post, quod cum Rex, cum qui-
busdam Comitiis, in partibus Borealis, in loco qui dicitur "Realis Vallis," per aliqua tempora minus caute demoraretur, ecce! nefandi Scoti, exploratores habentes cautos, Angliam subito sunt ingressi. Regem, cum suis, usque Abbathiam de Byland, quæ vicina est, viriliter insequebantur. Supervenientibus igitur adeo repente

1 dictis in Hearne. | ² proth in orig.
A.D. 1322.
The Earl of Richmond is taken prisoner by the Scots.

Scotis, quod, vix assumptis armis paucis,thesauro suo et omnibus victualibus et utensilibus ibidem relictis, Rex usque Eboracum in fugam est conversus. Patriam siquidem, cum habitatoribus suis, gladio et flammis Scoti undique devastantes, multosque captivatos, inter quos nominatissimus erat Dominus Johannes de Britayne, Comes Richemundiae, secum ducentes, cum spoliis multis, qui tam sanguinis quam divitiarum famelici venerant, et sitibundi, ad sua sunt reversi, onusti et saginati.

De morte Andreae de Hercele.

A.D. 1323.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo tertio, inter caetera, quae hujus Regis tempore acciderant admiranda, post illam, quam apud Realem Vallem Rex passus est ruinam, quod de quodam nobili milite, Andrea de Hercele vocabulo, probitatem in ignobilitatem proh dolor! commutando, anno regni ejusdem Regis sexto-decimo, estimo memoriae fore commendandum.

Cum igitur praefatus Rex suos Barones, de quibus supra diximus, insequeretur, accepto a Rege sufficien te mandato, hostilem exercitum virorum Orientalium congregavit, et Comitibus Lancastriæ et Herefordiæ, cæterisque Baronibus, quasi totius regni potentioribus, a facie Regis, quasi a facie leonis post catulos perditos rugientes, apud Pontem Burgi intrepidus obviavit, et eos viriliter expugnavit. In cujus pugnae congressu Humfridus de Boun, Comes Herefordiæ, seditiose, videlicet, per hastarum et lancearum confessionem, erat interfactus. Comes vero Lancastriæ, videns populum dispersum, et se a suis proditum et derelictum, praefato Andreæ se reddebat; cæterosque Barones, miserabiliter in fugam

\footnote{divitiis in orig.} \footnote{proth in orig.} 

\footnote{Not improbably this is an error for some other word, or words.}
ANNALES.

conversos, quasi inermes, capiebat; captos etiam ad Re-

gem apud Pontem Fractum, cum præfato Comite,
catenatos deducebat. Adductisque prædictis captivatis,
Rex de tam simplicis viri magnanimitate, et de tam
gratiosa admirabatur et congratulabatur victoria, extunc
immensum sibi facere statuit honorem.

Nam non multo post propriis manibus cum gladio
pretioso cinxit militari, et ei Comitatum de Carleolo,
cujus civitatis et castri dui steterat Constabularius et
custos, cum multis prædiis et terris, liberaliter confer-
bat. Quo honore recepto, pro rancore quem habuit
erga Hugonem Dispensatorem, Domini Regis Camer-
rium, contra suam ligeantiam, Domino suo Regi debi-
tam fidelitatem, iniquis Scotorum consiliis se junxit,
et adhesit; qui mox cum tanta hilaritate et gaudio
receptus est, pro eo quod semper eis fuerat infestus,
et, in confinio regnorum continuus expugnator, quod
Regis Scotorum soror sibi nominabatur in ducendam
uxorem.

Quibus compertis et ad aures Regis perventis, a He is
quodam famoso milite, "Antonino Lucy" nomine, apud
Carleolum, in suo dominio, captus est; et cito post,
se dentibus ibidem pro eo judicibus, depositis insigniis
gradatim militaribus, sub quadruplici poena, videlicet,
tractationis, suspensionis, decapitationis, et demum
capite Londonias delato, in futurum exemplar pro-
ditorum, in quatuor partes divisus, vitam suam mise-
rabiliter consummavit.

Hucusque scripsit Frater Johannes de Trokelowe.

1 cum in Hearne. | 2 Sic in orig., for tractionis.
HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA.
HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA.


Incipiantur Chronica Fratris Henrici de Blaneforde.

Sequitur de Treugis inter Scotos et Anglos.

Summa Dei providentia, ex innata bonitate, in omnium primordio creaturarum suam ostendit, suam potentiát, nostrum protoplastum in imaginem et similitudinem suam conformavit, omniaque sub celestia suis usibus et dominio potenter subjugavit, eumque prælatum omnibus terrigenis in Paradisi amœnitate collocavit. Cujus felicitati hostis humani generis mox invindens, per tortuosum serpentem, caeteris animantibus callidiorem, diras tentationis immittens aculeum, eum de facili superavit, suasionibus consortis suæ dolenter inclinatum; prævaricatorem divini præcepti, et transgressorem, cum tota posteritate sua usque ad finem mundi propaganda, adeo commaculavit, quod ab immortali effectus mortalis, justo Dei judicio a jocunditate deliciarum expulsus, perpetuae servituti obnoxius, laborebus, ærumnis, et doloribus, tribulationibus variis, et angustiis, miserabiliter meruit subjugari, testante Scriptura, quæ ait;—5 "In sudore vultus tui vesceris pane tuo;" et alibi,—6 "Homo ad laborem, avisque nascitur ad volatum."

1 prothoplaustum in orig. to Genesis i. 26.
2 ymmaginem in orig. In allusion to Genesis i. 29, 30.
3 Genesis iii. 19.
4 Genesis iii. 1.
5 Genesis iii. 19.
6 In allusion to Job v. 7; which is differently translated in our version.
Sed justus et misericors Dominus super omnia opera ejus, licet hominem corporaliter puniri permiserit, non-lens mortem peccatoris, sed ut magis convertatur et vivat, ideo punit corporaliter, ut æternum corporaliter, ut æternum non condennet. Juste visitat et misericorditer affligendo castigat, percutit et sanat, deprimit et sublevat, ut convertatur ad eum, et non perseunt, peccatores: languores et pestilentias immitit, quandoque et famæ; bella oriri permittit, dissensiones, et guerras, peccatis nostri exigentibus, quibus impugnamur.

Inter quas mundi tempestatés, regnum siquidem Angliæ—("Albion Insula" primitus vocata, et a Gigantibus præoccupata; quibus devictis a Bruto et Corineo, caeterisque suis complicibus, Diana consulente, applicantibus, nomen "Britannia," quasi a triumphasore, sortita,)—Pictos, Danos, Romanos, et Scotos, caeteras mundi nationes, contra ipsum dimicantes, pluries superare et gloriose triumphare solebat. Nunc vero novis guerris, dissensionibus, et bellis, multipliciter est affictum temporibus istis, et miserabili desolatum. Nimirum,quia 2 omnem regnum in se divisum desolabitur. Quia non solum contra Scotos, superbos et rebelles, (quorum terræ dominium et principatus, ex distincto examine majorum et probatissimorum virorum utriusque regni, tempore excellentissimi Principis, Domini Ewardi, Primi a conquæstu, Regis Angliæ illustrissimi, sibi et successoribus suis jure hereditario quandoque fuerat adjudicatum,) jam in diversis congressionibus hostilibus putibunde succumbimus, verum etiam vicinus in vicinum, proximus in proximum, et, quod amarius est, consanguineus in consanguineum, frater in fratre, A truce for truculenter saevientes; unde in præcedentibus miserabilis, et in sequentibus mirabilis, subsequitur processus tractatus; ad remedium treugarum, quorum subsequuntur

1 In allusion to Ezekiel xviii. 23. | Mark iii. 24, Luke xi. 17.
2 In allusion to Matt. xii. 25,
Articuli, per tresdecim annorum curricula, ex assensu utriusque regni, concessarum, Anglici convoluntur, licet invitati.

Sed quia in eisdem Articulis continetur, quod medio tempore de pace perpetua tractandum est, et concordia finali, immensam exinde speramus futuris temporibus consolationem; ut cum ipse Deus noster pro peccatis nostris juste iratus fuerit, consuetae suae misericordiae quandoque recordetur, pestilentis et malis cessantibus, afflictis consolationem tribuat, et maxime discordanti-bus unitatem; quam pacem et unitatem Deus pacis et dilectionis, converso fureore suo, largiatur, regnorum et terrarum ipsarum et gubernacula dirigat, Anglicis tranquillitatem concedat et restituat, concordiam conti-nuuet et reformet, ad laudem et gloriam nominis sui, et ad incrementum ecclesiasticorum juris et regni Anglicani.

1 Sequitur de Treugis, et earum Articulis.

2 Edwardus, Dei gratia, Rex Angliæ, Dominus Hiberniæ, et Dux Aquitaniae, omnibus presentibus litteras visuris vel audituris, salutem. Noveritis quod cum Dominus Robertus de Brus per litteras suas nos nuper requisivit, per Dominum de Suly, de treugis ha-bendis et pace finali super guerris motis inter nos, ex parte una, et dictum Dominum Robertum de Brus, et sibi adhaérentes, ex altera; et super hoc, dilecti et fide-les nostri, Adomarus de Valentia Comes Penebrochiae, dilectus consanguineus noster, Hugo le Despenser filius, Magister Robertus de Baudake Archidiaconus Middelsexiæ, Willelmus de Herle miles, Willelmus de Ayrmine Canonicus Eboraci, et Gaufridus de Scrop, nuncii nostri; et Venerabilis Pater, Dominus Willemus, Dei gratia, Episcopus Sancti Andreae, Thomas Randulfe Comes de Morrif, Johannes de

1 This document is given, in p. 521, from the Patent Rolls. French, in the New Fadera ii. 2 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1323. „Menthez, Robertus de Lowether, pater, milites, et
Magister Walterus de Twinham, clericus, nuncii dicti
Roberti de Brus, convenissent ad villam nostram de
Novo Castro super Tynam, et super pace finali dicta-
rum guerrarum ibidem tractassent, et propter diversas
difficultates ad pacem finalem tunc temporis non po-
terant concordare, iidem nuncii, habentes respectum
quod tam arduum et excellens negotium infra tam
breve tempus commode non posset expediri, ulterius
tractarunt tantummodo de treugis, hac intentione,
quod infra dictas treugas posset tractari super nego-
tio memorato, videlicet, de pace finali. Et ventilatis
ibidem eisdem negotiis inter Consilium nostrum ex
parte una, et dictos nuncios Scotiae ex altera, tricesi-
mo die Maii, anno Gratiae millesimo trecentesimo vice-
simo tertio, et regni nostri sexto-decimo, ex assensu
Archiepiscoporum, Episcoporum, Comitum, Baronum,
et procerum, regni nostri, inter nos concordatum est
pro nobis et terris nostris Angliae, Walliae, Wasconiae,
et Hiberniae, cum suis pertinentiis, pro subjectis
nostris et nobis adhaerentibus et suffragantibus ex
parte una, et dictos nuncios Scotiae, pro dicto Do-
mino Roberto de Brus, suis subjectis, et sibi adha-
erentibus, et pro terra Scotiae, cum pertinentiis, ex
altera, induciae guerrarum et treugarum concessae
sunt usque ad duodecimum diei Junii proxime futurum
duraturae; et ab hac die pro tredecim annis
sequentibus plene completis, ultima die dictorum tre-
decim annorum infra dictas treugas inclusa, et in-
ducias, ad plenius tractandum interim de pace finali,
sicut superius dictum est, juxta consuetudines quae
sequuntur.—

Primus Articulus.—Videlicet, quod dictae induciae
et treugae bene teneantur et plene custodiantur inter
nos, subjectos nostros, nobis adhaerentes et suffragantes, ex parte una, et dictum Dominum Robertum
de Brus, sibi subjectos, adhaerentes et suffragantes,
CHRONICA.  135

"ex altera.  Et si de nobis, aut de dicto Domino Ro-
berto, sive de altero nostrorum, interim humanitus
contingat, dictae induciæ nihilominus, et treugæ, per-
severabunt inter terras Angliæ, Walliæ, Wasconiæ,
et Hiberniæ, et populum illarum partium, ex parte
una, et dictam terram Scotiæ, et populum suum, ex
altera, usque ad finem dictorum tredecim annorum
plene completorum.

"Secundus Articulus.—Item, concordatum est, quod
omnes purpresturæ, simul et occupationes omnimodæ,
in dictis terris nostris Angliæ, Walliæ, Wasconiæ, et
Hiberniæ, seu in aliquibus suis pertinentiis, per dic-
tum Dominum Robertum, seu per suos, et, modo con-
simili, in dicta terra Scotiæ, ac in suis pertinentiis,
per nos, aut per nostros, factæ, amoveantur et peni-
tus deleantur intra duodecimum diem Junii supra-
scriptum.

"Tertius Articulus.—Item, si ullus punctus aut ar-
ticulus, qui ad observationem dictarum inducierum
seu treugarum pertineat, sint obscuri, bona fide et
sine dilatatione per custodes dictarum treugarum con-
junctim clarificentur et elucidentur ex utraque parte.
Et si per eos fieri non possit, nobis aut dicto Ro-
berto celeriter referatur, et per nos et per Consilia
nostra, aut per aliquos per nos ad hoc deputatos, ex-
pediatur hujusmodi negotium, dictis treugis et indu-
ciis semper in suo perseverantibus vigore.

"Quartus Articulus.—Item, quod nullum castellum,
aut municipium, reædificetur ex aliqua parte, videlicet,
in terris contentis inter Scotiam et introitum Tyñæ
in mari, et insuper, super aquam Tyñæ, usque ad
Suthe Tyne, neque in terra de Tyndale, aut in terra
de Cumberland, infra libertatem aut extra; et versus
Scotiam in Comitatibus Berewike, Rokesburghæ, et
Doumfriz, infra libertatem aut extra; illis tantum-
modo exceptis, quæ modo fiunt, aut sunt in faci-
endo.
A.D. 1323. "Quintus Articulus.—Item, quod nullus unius partis, vel alterius, ad invicem communicet, nisi per licentiam et conductum; custodibus treugarum exceptis, qui communicare poterunt in confiniis terrarum, ubi eos transire continget, sua officia executuri, absque licentia seu conductu petitis vel petendis.

"Sextus Articulus.—Item, si contingat aliquas naves Scotiae, per marinas tempestates fugatas, in potestate nostra rumpi et inveniri, et bona earundem ad nos, sive ad nostros, ratione juris maritimi, quod 'Wrek' dicitur, pertineant; extune, hujusmodi naves, sic fugatae et ruptae, pariter cum omnibus suis bonis, hominibus de Scotia quorum sunt, plene liberentur, sine impedimento aut vendicatione corporum aut bonorum navium prædictarum. Et si aliqua navis non de Scotia, in qua tamen homines Scotiae fuerint, cujuscumque conditionis extiterint, vel aliquis Scotus bona in eadem habuerit, sive mercimonia, fugetur, aut in potestate nostra rumpatur, vel super mare per aliquem de nostris capiatur, homines et cataula, quæ de Scotia rationabiliter fuerint, absque impedimento liberentur, licet ad nos aut nostros lege maritima pertinere dissociantur, sicut praedictum est. Et fiat modo consimili de mercatoribus, in Scotia forte residentiibus, cujuscumque nationis fuerint, et de bonis eorundem; videlicet, quod hujusmodi mercatores licite possint officia sua exercere, et salvo morari donec commode abinde possint transire.

"Septimus Articulus.—Item, quod nullus mercator alienus impediatur cum suis mercimonii venire in una terra sive in altera, nisi de hujusmodi terra fuerit, quæ repugnans an guerrans fuerit contra terras Angliae vel Scotiae.

"Octavus Articulus.—Item, si nullus gravetur ex aliqua parte ad exequendam querimoniam suam,
quod salvo possit ibi morari et redire; et hujusmodi A.D. 1323.
transgressionis fiat lex communis, sicut in tempore
pacis.

"Nonus Articulus.—Item, quod de omnibus consue-
tudinem mercatorum tangentibus, fiat sicut in tem-
pore pacis fieri consuevit. Item, sine impedimento
permittemus, quod dictus Dominus Robertus de Brus
et caeteri de regno Scotiae erga Dominum Papam
instare possint, pro absolutione obtinenda super sen-
tentiis excommunicationis, et processibus, super eos
et contra eos factis, latis toto tempore induciarum et
treugarum duraturo. Ita quod non cedat in damnum
aut praecipue nobis, aut nostris, post dictas treu-
gas transactas, minime vergatur; sed quod extunc
dictae sententiae et dicti processus suum habeant in
omnibus, sicut in praesenti, vigorem, si pax interim
non ineatur finalis, salvo tune tempore jure cujus-
cunque.

"Decimus Articulus.—Item, durantibus treugis pra-
dictis, si ulla persona, cujuscunque conditionis fuerit,
dictum Robertum, aut sibi adhaerentes, hostiliter pro-
sequatur, hujusmodi personae n ullum consilium aut
auxilium prestemus, nec in aliqua parte potestatis
nostri eum recipiemus, nec aliquem partis dictum
Robertum, aut sibi adhaerentes, infestantem; conjunc-
tione inter nos et Regem Franciae tantummodo
excepta.

"Undecimus Articulus.—Item, sic dictus Robertus
de Brus transmittat nuncios, transituros per medium
dominii nostri regii, transeant per conductum nos-
trum; et in isto casu volumus et concedimus, quod a
nobis salvum et sufficiens habeant conductum, quando-
cunque fuerimus requisiti. Item, si dictus Robertus
transmittere velit nuncios ad nos, nobiscum tractaturos,
primo veniant ad custodes treugarum, et verifcent,
A.D. 1323. "et doceant se fore nuncios dicti Roberti; volumus et concedimus, quod per dictos custodes sufficiens conductum eis tribuatur veniendi et redeundi salvo et secure. "Duodecimus Articulus.—Item, bonos et sufficientes custodes pro dictis treugis et induciis assignabimus observandis; et omnes articulos videbimus, et sine dilatatione corrigemus, et omnes excessus et prae- sumptiones ultra dictas treugas reparabimus, per nos aut nostros quoquomodo factas. "Tertius-decimus Articulus. — Item, ad tenendum, conservandum, et perficiendum, omnia praescripta, et quamlibet partem eorum, dilectus consanguineus noster, Comes Pembrochiae, praecetto nostro, in anima nostra ad sacra Dei Evangelia corporale praestitit sacramentum; in eodem modo alios Comites et Barones fecimus jurare. "In quorum omnium testimonium, has litteras fieri fecimus patentes, sigillo nostro signatas. Data apud Thorpe, juxta Eboracum, tricesimo die Maii, anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo tertio, et regni nostri sexto-decimo."

De fractione Castri Walingfordiae.

Conspiracy Anno regni Regis ejusdem sexto-decimo, inopinabilis in regno casus, sive actus, contigit præsumptuosus. Nam multis, tam de majoribus quam mediocribus, qui in conflictu cum Baronibus nuper steterant, in vinculis carceralibus per diversa castella regni detentis, quidam dictorum benevoli captivorum ad invicem conspirabant, ut omnes per totum regnum hujusmodi incarceratos una eademque nocte eripiissent, et de suis vinculis exsolvis- sent. Cujus societatis aliqui Castrum Walingfordiae, in quo viri nominatissimi detinebantur, videlicet, Domini Mauricius de Berkeley et Hugo d'Audele, pater, per

1 This word is indistinct.
posticum versus Tamisiam aquam latenter sunt ingressi A.D. 1323. ut quod prius ordinarverant, opere complevissent.

Quibus sic intratis, statim clamor factus est immoderatus, et tumultus, per totam villam, et commota est tota patria ex rumore eminus divulgato, et in obsessum ejusdem congregata est 1 armatorum non modica multitudo. Tandem cum vidissent se hujusmodi obsidium non posse diutius sustinere, suo proposito penitus impediti, ante adventum Comitum Cantiae et Wintoniae, qui ad obsidium cum maximo exercitu properabant, cuidam militi Castrum reddebat, et pro refugio habendo ad Capellam dicti Castri unanimiter confugiebant. Et licet decanus et cæteri dicæ Capellæ ministri, ob libertatem sanctæ Ecclesiae, in quantum valuerunt, eos defendebant, modicum, immo nihil, eis profecit eorum defensio; violenter abstracti sunt ab eadem. Et quibusdam, qui majores hujus praescriptionis fuerant incidentes, Domino Regi postea transmissis, omnes diversis poenis 2 defecerunt, cæterisque per diversa castra captivitatis causam facientes ut tenerentur artius compediti.

Sequitur de festo Natalis et Parliamento.

Sub hoc tempore, post treugas inter Anglos et Scotos firmiter roboratas, Comitatus Eboraci et Lancastriæ villas et civitates versus Marchiam Walliae, Rex perlustrans, omnes pacis perturbatores, et maxime ductores patriæ communem populum opprimentes, juxta sua merita pravitatis punivit, et, antiquis erroribus exulatis, legem terræ praepit in locis omnibus observari. 3 Deinde apud Castrum de Kenelesworthe eodem anno, videlicet, anno regni sui septimo-decimo, sua Dominæ Nativitatis solemnia celebravit; et in Quadragesima sequenti omnes regni proceres apud Westmonasterium,

---

1 armorum in Hearne. 2 Qy. if not an error for affecerunt. 3 Or perhaps, demum; it being somewhat indistinct.
A.D. 1323. ad tractandum super utilitate regni, edicto publico convocavit.

Discussion Quibus tunc collectis, inter cætera regni negotia, tractatum est de transitu Regis in Francia; qui pluries vocatus fuerat ad faciendum homagium Regi Franciae pro Vasconia, et cæteris terris suis constitutis in regno predicto; super quo, ex consensu procerum omnium, et prælatorum, decretum fuerit, et provisum, solemnes nuncios prius fore mandandos, si quod per eos hac vice de non comparendo Rex habere posset excusationis remedium, sive dilationis.

A subsidy Rex insuper tam de clero quam de populo, pro redemptione nobilis viri Domini Johannis de Britayne, Comitis Richemundiae, nuper capti in congressu Scotorum apud Bilande, et in Scotiam deducti, infinitam pecuniam exegit. Quas quidem exactio monstrabatur multis rationibus non esse complenda; sed demum, quasi voce publica, et communi, extitit penitus denegata; cum tantummodo pro Rege, Regina, et filio eorum primogenito, redimendis, si quo captivitatis laqueo inciderint, esset ab omnibus contribuenda pecunia.

De Episcopo Herefordensi.

Accidit et alius casus in dicto Parliamento, Ecclesiae sanctæ Dei libertati, suisque prælatis, sive ministris, damnosus, nimiumque prejudicialis. Nam venerabilis pater, 1 Episcopus Herefordensis, coram Rege et cunctis regni proceribus constitutus, arrannatus extitit, et examinati, de prædictione, quasi de crimine læsæ majestatis. Cui quidem impositum fuerat, quod quosdam inimicos Regis et regni, sciens eorum præcogitam malitiam, hospitasse, fovisse, copiam armatorum, auxilium, et consilium, debuit impendisse. Super quibus et aliis conviciis irrogatis pulsatus, ut erat vir maturus et

---

1 Adam de Orleton, by name.
litterali scientia excelleenter ornatus, aliquando hujusmodi opprobria patienter sustinuit, obmutescens; tandem Altissimo Judici, cujus se fatebatur fore ministrum, causam committens, in hujusmodi responsum prorupit:
—"Domine Rex, vestra regiae majestatis reverentia in omnibus semper salva, ego, Ecclesiae sanctae Dei milis minister, membrum ejus, et Episcopus consecratus, licet indignus, ad tam ardua nobis imposita, nequimus, sicut nec debemus, absque Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, cujus sumus Suffraganeus, post Summum Pontificem mei directi judicis, auctoritate, et aliorum parium meorum, Episcoporum, consensu, aliqualiter respondere."

Quo dato response, Archiepiscopi caeterique Suffraganei, mox surgentes, regiam, clementiam humiliter implorarunt. Sed Rege exinde in nullo placate, aut de iracundia mitigato, tanquam membrum Ecclesiae consecratum totus clerus dictum Episcopum vendicavit. Et sic Archiepiscopo extitit liberatus usque ad aliud tempus, pro libito Regis, super objectis et alias objiciendis responsurus.

Certo siquidem adveniente die non multo post, Rex alias, ut prius, Episcopum prædictum convenit. Quo rumore ad aures Episcoporum perlato, mox Cantuariensis, Eboracensis, Dublinensis, Archiepiscopi, concomitantibus aliis Suffraganeis decem, cum crucibus elevatis, ad locum judicii cum omni celeritate unanimeri accedereunt; et confratrem eorum, Episcopum, stantem solum, et nimis, ut premissitur, desolatum, in protectionem eorum sumentes, et absque ullo dato response, eum illico ad ducterunt, omnibus qui aderant, ex parte Dei firmiter injungentes, et sub interminatione anathematis, ne quis in eum manus praesumeret injicere violentas.

Quo abducto, Rex, iratus de tanta cleri audacia, graviter et commotus, quasi ex officio judicis, super

---

1 prædictum Episcopum, in Hearne.
A.D. 1323. objectis fieri præcepit inquisitionem. Patria vero illico 
convocata, plus regis terreni quam æterni. indignatio-
em præcaventes, sive ultionem, absentem Episcopum 
reum fuisse de omnibus sibi impositis præsentarunt 
jurati. Quibus peractis, Rex omnes terras suas et re-
ditus confiscavit: nec hiis contentus, sed quod amarius 
est, omnibus suis victualibus et utensilibus in vico pro-
jectis et dispersis, pluribusque abductis, eum permisit 
truculentam spoliari. Et sic, exemplo beati Job, nudus 
effectus, et omni solatio destitutus, omnia pertulit pa-
tenter: cum Archiepiscopo remansit Cantuariensi, Regis 
expectans gratiam uberiorem.

Episcopus vero Lincolniensis, cujus per biennium, et 
amplius, in manu Regis mobilia tenebantur, adepta 
Regis benevolentia, suis erat integre tunc temporis re-
stitutus. Quidam insuper, cautela injecta excellenter 
instructus, videns confusionem cleri, et perturbationem 
non modicum praebatorum, hos veridicos versus protulit, 
in haec verba:—

"Nostri cornuti sunt consilio quasi muti,
"Et quia non turi, nequeunt sermoni-
"bus uti."

"Sunt quasi confusi, decreto legis abusi.
"Sic perit Ecclesia, juris et ipsa via."

Versus optimi.

The Bishop of Lincoln is restored to his pos-
sessions.

The posses-
sions of the 
Templars are granted to the Hos-
pitalers.

De injuria irrogata Archiepiscopo ² Eboracensi.

The Archbishop of York persists in

Archiepiscopus insuper Eboracensis, Angliæ Primas, 
Regis fultus præsidio, simulataque pace inter ipsum 
et Cantuariensem Archiepiscopum, Primatem Angliæ

1 Terra in Hearne. indeed, it is intended for an abla-
2 Qy. if not Cantuariensi? unless, tive.
totius, in dicto Parlamento et aliis locis, per quæ A.D. 1323. ipsum fore contingeret transiturum, suam crucem patenter et manifeste gestavit. Quod a longo tempore non est visum, præsertim cum Cantuariensis Primas sit totius, erectio crucis Eboracensis in maximum videatur verti prejudicium libertatis, et manifestam Cantuariensis Ecclesiæ lectionem, Scriptura, qua dicitur, penitus oblita,—¹ "Nemo mittere falcem debet in mes-
" sem alienam."

---

**Sequitur de processu Wasconiae.**

Peractis plurimis in supradicto proximo Parlamento articulis, eliguntur viri generosi assensu communi. Comes, videlicet, Cantiae, germanus Regis, Dominus Edmundus de Wodestoke, (ætate juvenis, magnis tamen viribus praepotens,) et Archiepiscopus Dublinensis, ad excusationem Regis super passagio suo in Francia faciendam, sive dilationem ² aliquidem super dicto negotio impetrandum. Transfretatis igitur dictis proceribus, et ad præsentiam Regis Franciae omni, qua poterant, celeritate properantibus, dictus Comes, cum esset magnificus, cum suis, receptus est summo, quo decebat, honore. Post vultis vero placabiles, familia- riaque colloquia impensa mutuis partibus, tandem explicata sunt negotia pro quibus venerant, pro loco et tempore opportunis. Quibus explicatis, Rex Franciæ minime adquievit petitionibus nunciorum, donec de quadam transgressione in Aquitania regno suo et sibi facta, juxta decretum Curiae Francorum, sibi foret ple- narie satisfactum. Et ne in eventu lateat hujusmodi transgressionis materia, inde veridicam expediat facere mentionem.

¹ Deut. xxiii. 25. ² aliqua in orig.

Super quibus dictus Seneschallus, et ceteri hujus rei transgressores, vocati ad Curiam, et citati sunt, Francorum, coram paribus et sapientibus regni super praemissis transgressionibus responsuri, et juxta eorum decreta, et juris exigentiam, satisfacturi. Quibus hujusmodi citationi minime parentibus, praefatus Seneschallus pro omnibus refertur taliter respondisse;—se nihil aliud in hac parte egisse, quam quod sui officii de-

1 in elationem in orig. 2 tum in Hearne. 3 nulli in orig. 4 consummavit in Hearne.
bitum exigebat. Super quo vero responso Franci, multo A.D. 1323. plus quam prius commoti, contra eos processum egerunt, vocatosque et non comparentes, exules, et extra regnum Franciæ proscibendos in perpetuum, decreverunt.

Præfatus siquidem Senescallus ex hujusmodi decreto vim sibi timuit inferri, ad quoddam Castrum, "Monpe- sade" nominatum, sufficienterque munitum, fugit cum suis, Francorum insidias præcavendo. Rex vero Francorum præfatum Senescallum, et cæteros hujusmodi sceleris præsertim actores, una cum Castro ad quod confugerant, a supradictis nuncius instanter petivit sibi liberandos, et juxta decretum Curiae Francorum plec-
tendos. Sed præfati nuncii laici, in assensu praebendo nimis praecipites, Regis Francorum petitionibus in multis articulis assensum praebant. Archiepiscopus vero, nuncii clerici, vitium irregularitatis timentes forsitan incurrisse, si consensus facilem tribuissent, quatenus eos negotium contingebat, de liberandis corporibus minime consentiebant, Rege Anglorum super præ-
missis, et regnolis, inconsultis. Mittuntur igitur nuncii The de-
eni quid egerant in præmissis; super quibus Rex Angliæ consultus, impetuosum eorum consensus penitus revocavit.

De evasione cujusdam extra Turrim Londinæarum.

Anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo quarto, A.D. 1334. in festo Sancti Petri quod dicitur "Ad Vincula," nobilis vir, Dominus Rogerus de Mortuo Mari, Dominus de Wigemor, in eminentiori et arctiori loco Turris Lon-
doniarum, cum Domino Rogero, avunculo suo, et cum cæteris regni nobilibus, qui a conflictu inter Regem et Barones supra memorato redeuntæ gratiæ Regis se submiserant, minus civiliter quam decuit, detentus et

1 vacatosque in orig.  |  2 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1324. detrusus, a sæculis inaudibilem et inexcogitabilem, ex profundissimo cordis ingenio, suam ordinavit clandestinam liberationem.

Nam intempestae noctis silentio dicæ festivitatis, tam custodibus castri quam caeteris multis, per quendam pestiferum potum eis ministratum, nocturno quieti ac sopori deditis, repentine, non per 1 ostium camerae suæ, quod multis seris et repagulis fuerat obseratum, sed aliunde, per ruptionem muri, venit in coquina palatio Regis annexa; per cujus summittatem exiens, 2 ad unam castri devenit custodiam; deinde per cordas, ad modum scale ingeniose compositas, per quendam amicum suum suum provisas, et sibi secrete prius allatas, ad aliam castri custodiam cum non modo timore pervenit. Et, sicut Beatus 3 Petrus, in vinculis Neronis detentus, Angelo ducente, primam et secundam transivit custodiæ, cum maxima difficultate tandem venit ad aquam Tamisias; ibi quendam fragilém cymbam reperiens, quam, cum adjutore suo, et aliis duobus de consilio suo, intravit, et dictam aquam, Deo volente, concito transmearunt. Et cum omni festinatione ad mare properantes, publicas stratas semper in itinere devitarunt; nec cessare voluerunt, donec ad quendam portum unanimes pervenirent. Quo vero in loco, ab omnibus ignoti, navem, aliquando eos ibidem expectantem et prope portum 4 promptam ibidem reperientes; quam cum omni festinatione intraverunt, et, prosperam auram eis Deo ministrante, ad Gallicanæ regna concito pervenerunt.

In quibus vero partibus quorundam regni procerum, consanguinitate vel affinitate sibi conjunctorum, fultus praesidio, vitam ducens diutinam, reconciliationis domino suo, Regi Angliæ, gratiam expectavit.

1 hostiam in orig.
2 per in Hearne.
3 In allusion to Acts xii. 10. It was Herod, not Nero, who on this occasion had thrown him into prison.
4 promptum in Hearne.
Rogerus vero, avunculus, fere per quinquennium squalore carcerali ibidem, minus civiliter quam decuit, maceratus, tandem, anno Domini millesimo trecentesimo vicesimo sexto diem clausit extremum, apud Brístolliam delatus, et patribus suis appositus est ibidem. Roge­rus vero junior, cum per biennium et amplius moram traxisset in partibus transmarinis, octavo Kalendas Octobris, anno Incarnationis Domini superdicto, cum Domina Regina et aliis exulibus, rediit, suis plene terris et prædiis restitutus.

De Episcopo Wintoniensi.

Sub hoc tempore obiit in Curia Romana Dominus Rigaudus de Asserio, Episcopus nuper factus Wintoniæ, et in ecclesia Sancti Albani, auctoritate Papali, per Londoniensem Episcopum consecratus. Erat enim, ante susceptionem illius dignitatis, Canonicus Aurelianensis, et per quatuor annos, vel amplius, Domini Papæ in Anglia Nuncius; modico tempore in gradu episcopali superstes, vix tres complevit annos, ad geniale solum, et ad Curiam Romanam, pro exequendis regni, ut credatur, negotiis, transfretavit; in qua non diu vivens, sed ante ætatìs debitam maturitatem viam universæ carnis, prout Deo placuit, est ingressus.

Cui vir magnæ auctoritatis et prudentiae, juris civilis Doctor eximius, Magister Johannes de Stratforde, Anglicus natione, successit. Qui cum Decanus Londoniensis existens in artibus, inter omnes clericos hujus facultatis regni Anglicani reputaretur, et esset, excellentissimus, pro quibusdam regis negotiis exequendis ad Curiam Romanam extitit destinatus. Sub quo tempore, dicta sede Wintoniensi, per mortem praefati Domini Rigaudi, vacante, perpendens Dominus Papa Johannes Vicesimus-secundus scientiam et valorem tanti viri et Regis Angliae nuncii, non prece

---

1 geneale in orig. | 2 domini praefati in Hearne.
aut pretio, prout per litteras suas testificavit bullatas, præfato Magistro Johanni, suo pleno jure, memoratum contulit Episcopatum, intuitu caritatis.


Quibus omnibus rite peractis, litteras Papales, tam Regi quam Cantuariensi Archiepiscopo et aliis, quorum intererat, de ipso suscipiendo et omnibus sibi liberandis quae ad dictam sedem spectabant, recipiens exhibendas, ad regnum se divertit Anglicanum, ut prædicitur, expeditus. Quo pervento, ab Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi reverenter admissus est, et suis spiritualibus restitutus. Sed Rex, suo proposito in hac parte frustratus, diversos articulos proponens contra eum, cum in rei veritate nihil horum reus fuerat, aut conscius, eum non admisit; sed omnibus temporalibus Episcopatui pertinentibus confiscatis, in omnibus collegiis procerum et prælatorum multo tempore a sua presentia sequestravit, nec eum videre aut audire curavit. Sed cum pluries accidat in effectu, quod per Sapientem nobis refertur in metro,

“Post inimicitias clarior est et amor,”

But finally tandem, gratia respirante Divina, ipsoque pacis auctore cor Regis visitante, Episcopum gratanter admisit.

¹ Middelsexic in orig.
admissum temporalibus suis restituit, restitutum de (A.D. 1323.) Consilio suo Privato juratum, caeteris de caetero tenuit cariorem.

_Sequitur de processu Wasconia._

1[Sub hoc tempore digreditur interim 2Comes: cum omni qua poterat velocitate, versus Aquitanniam gressus suos indubitanter, cum suis militibus, dirigebat. Quo cum pervenisset, et ecce! Aquitannici, timentes Francigenis subjugari, ad Comitem, tanquam ad capitaneum expugnatorum, unanimitere confluebant. Retractis pluribus in maximam dilectionem, patriam perlustrando castella munivit, urbium et civitatum muros dirutos reedificavit, et, quomodo Francigenis potenter resisteret, vi, arte, et ingenio, velut magnificus deliberavit bellator.  


---

1 Omitted in orig.  
2 The Earl of Kent is meant.  
3 invadentes in orig.  
4 quibusdam in Hearne.
De morte Comitis Penebrokiae.

Durante igitur inter Reges et regna prædicta hujusmodi dissidio diuturno, diversi diversis temporibus procres hinc inde, ad tractandum super forma pacis, nuncii diriguntur. Inter quos nominatissimus vir, Dominus Adomarus, Comes Penebrokiae, ad Regem Franciæ nuncius destinatus, causa legationis suæ concessa, sed minime confirmata, in quadam villula sua, juxta Sanctum Richerium, inopinato languore detentus, in Vigilia Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, inter brachia domesticorum subito expiravit; cujus terræ et possessiones, juxta legitimam successionem 1 illorum ad quos pertinent de jure, de regni consuetudine sunt divisiæ.

Sequitur de albis Nunciis.

Erat siquidem alius alio tempore transmissus nuncius, natione Francus, "Dominus Johannes de Suliaco," nominatus, qui inter Reges et regna se miscuit pro pace formanda. Qui cum ad praesentiam Regis se offerret, suspenso penitus legationis officio, super quadam transgressione notabili protinus accusatus; pro qua, nisi Regina Francorum pro eo rogasset, mortem miserabilem subire fuisset compulsus. Collegero vero suos, quidam clericus, impetrato usque ad mare salvo conductu, litteris non admissis, infecto negotio, repedare jubetur indemnis.

De diversis injuriis, pluribus irrogatis, durante guerra.

Negotiatores utriusque terræ mutua feritate adeo premebantur, quod neque Franci in Anglia, seu Anglii in Francia, sua permittebantur venalia exercere. Et,

1  illorum in orig.
quod magis dolendum est, universi et singuli familiae
Reginæ Anglorum, cujuscunque conditionis, status, aut
sexus extiterant, sine spe revertendi, exulare sub eodem
tempore, in Francorum odium, cogeantur. Terræ etiam et castella ejusdem Reginæ in manibus Regis
fuerant integraliter seisita, certis stipendiis diatim
dictæ Reginæ ex bursa regia parte concessis. Et ut
erovor iracundiae, qua Anglorum animus torquебatur,
cruelius adversus universam gentem Francorum se-
viret, et ecce! viri ecclesiastici tam religiosi quam
ceteri extranei beneficiati, sub tanta diffiCultate dege-
bant, quod omnibus terris eorum, redditibus, et possessi-
onibus confiscatis, Omni ministerio sequestrate, preter
exilem victum et vestitum, per magnum tempus de
suis domininis nihil penitus reportarunt.

Sequitur de processu.

2[Hi]æc, propter hujusmodi oppressiones, mutuis par-
tibus irrogatis, Galli et Anglici, in Vasconia commo-
rantes, a continuo bellorum dissidio nequaquam ces-
sabant, donec Galli, guerrarum periti, viderent 3
opportunitatem 4 hyemis appropinquare; quo adveniente,
concessa est treuga a Gallicis, attamen impetrata,
usque ad proximum Pascha inviolabiliter observanda.
Et positis custodibus in omnibus locis per eos 5 equi-
tatis, et remanentibus Anglicis in villis majoribus, licet
paucis, Gallici ad propria remearunt.

Interim Dominus Papa, pacis zelator, Archiepiscopum
Vien[n]ensem et Episcopum Auriacensem ad utriusque
regnii principes destinavit, ad tranquillitatem pacis pro
viribus reformandam. Qui minime in suis propositis
proficientes, facto tallagio in clero, videlicet, de singulis

1 et in Hearne.
2 Omitted in orig.: correctly, His.
3 inde opportunitatem in Hearne.
4 hyemis in orig.
5 equitatis in Hearne.
6 A truce made between the French and English.
marcis quadrantibus, pro expensis eorumdem, infecto negotio revertabant.


Applicatis igitur præfatis nunciiis, diversisque causis, rationibus, excussionibus, hinc inde prolatis, pluribusque gravaminibus, injuriis, oppressionibus, mutuis partibus irrogatis, hujusmodi in fine a Gallicis recepere responsum, videlicet, quod Rex Anglie à omni juri suo quod in Comitatu de Puntyfe se habere aliquiliter conten­debat, suo perpetuo renunciaret. 

1 infesto in orig., by inadvertence.  
2 ••• Hillarii in orig.  
3 regna in Hearne.  
4 propio in Hearne.  
5 At this word the Chronicle ends abruptly, the portion to follow fol. 215 b. being lost.
ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI
ET
HENRICI QUARTI,
REGUM ANGLÆ.
ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI, REGIS ANGLÆ.

[MS. Coll. Corp. Christi, Cant. No. VII.]

Annalis Conclusio.

TRANSIT annus iste [A.D. 1392] frugifer abundantem, A.D. 1392. ut modius frumenti pro quatuor denariis venderetur, sed fructuum raritate notabilis; pacificus Angliis, Francis, et Scotis; regionibus ultra Danubium et Mare Magnum inquietus.

Anno gratiae millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo A.D. 1393. tertio, qui est annus regni Regis Ricardi, a Conquestu Secundi, sextus-decimus, tenuit Rex Natale ad manerium suum, in magnificentia et gloria magna valde.

Hoc anno tenuit Rex cito post Natale Parliamentum Wyntoniae; ex quo nullus omnino fructus evenit, praeterquam quod exegit dimidiam decimam et mediam quintam-decimam, ad expensas Ducum Lancastriae et Gloveriae, pro tractando de pace profecturorum.

Eodem tempore fuere rumores in regno quod Rex Franciæ, dum tripudiaret in aula sua cum quatuor militibus de familia sua, et esset disfiguratus in sylvestrem hominem, habens strictum vestimentum resina et pice refertum, ut linea stipula, quae fixa erat in vêstimento, haeret fortius et tenacius, et representaret sylvanum evidentius, nisi gratia affuisse, in cineres combustus fuisse; factione fratis sui, qui a tempore suae infirmitatis aspiravit ad regnum. Nempe
A.D. 1393. illo cum sociis ducente choream, quidam, ad hoc subrogatus, ex industria torticii submisit ignem in stipula; qui, ardens usque ad vestimentum, quod constrictum et consutum erat corpori, ubi invenit materiam picis et resinae, inextinguibiliter arsit usque ad corpus. Videns tantum periculum, quaedam domina occurrit, et Regem rapuit de chorea. Rex vero hoc modo salvatus fuit, sed quatuor socii nullo ingenio potuerunt salvari, donec semiustis pellibus atque carnibus exprassent.

Translatio Banci et Curiarum Regiarum ad Eboracum.

Hoc anno Bancus Regius et Cancellaria transferuntur de Londoniis ad Eboracum, vel odio Londoniensium, ut fertur, vel favore Eboracensium; eo quod Cancellarius, qui fuit Archiepiscopus Eboraci, cuperet profectum civitatis suæ. Sed non longo tempore duravit haec novitas; quia eadem facilitate qua transportabantur Eboracum, eadem Londoniis reportabantur.¹

Obitus Johannis Devers, Regis Senescalli, et aliorum loco ejusdem substitutorum.

Isto anno, in festo Cathedrae Sancti Petri, obiit repente Dominus Johannes Devers, miles, Regis Seneschallus et Doveriae Constabularius, dum parasset se ad maris transitum cum Ducibus Lancastriae et Gloversiae, pro tractatu pacis praecunct. Cui successit, in officio Senescalli, Dominus Thomas Percy, qui fuerat prius Subcamberlanus regius: in Constabulariam Doveriae Dominus ² de Bemond successit eidem, et Willelmus Scrop Regis Subcamerarius est effectus.

¹—non tamen sine damno communem; qui dicitur quod munimenta multorum, tam publica quam privata quae in pipis vel dolis claudabantur, inguentibus tempestatibus sunt demersa; added in Faustina B. ix. ² The name "Thomas" is omitted here.
Creatio Novi Comitis Oxoniae.

Eodem tempore, Dominus Albredus De Veer factus est Comes Oxoniae, quippe qui fuit proximus in consanguinitate Roberto De Veer, qui in Lovania desiit superesse.

De Insula de Man, a Comite Sarum Domino Willelmo Scrope vendito.

Circa tempus præsens, Dominus Willelms Scrope, miles providus et prædices, emit de Domino Willelmo de Monte Acuto, Comite Saresbriae, insulam Euboniæ, cum corona. Est autem jus illius insulae, ut quisquis illius fuerit dominus capitalis "Rex" vocetur; cui etiam fas est corona aurea coronari. Hæc insula vulgari vocabulo "Insula Man" vocatur.

Profectus, apparatus, et effectus tractatus, Anglorum et Francorum.

Hoc anno Duces Lancastriæ et Gloverniæ profecti sunt in Franciam, tractaturi de pace finali totiens praecocata; sed tamen nondum finis, quia Rege Franciæ firmato iterum, non potuit finis esse: nec etiam Rex Angliæ ad quasdam conditiones quas Franci imposuerant, licet Rex Franciæ sanus affuisse et incoluisse, voluit consensisse. Apparatus tamen non minor fuit in præparatione et ostentatione divitiarum, et in tentoriis mirabilis operis et amplitudinis utrobiæ. Nam etsi Franci magnifice sua tentoria in campo ultra Calesiam extendisset, quia et in campo tractatus futurus erat, Ducis tamen Lancastriæ apparatus omnium aliorum vicit incomparabiliter apparatus; ita ut aulam praerandem, cum funiculis et campana notante diurnas horas et nocturnas, capellam et camera, varia quoque claustra, et plateas diversas, pro reliquo suo populo hospitando, in quibus cotidie exercetantur fora et mer-
A.D. 1393. cimonia, causæque curiales, non tam magnifice quam mirifice erexisset.

Fecerunt itaque Duces in illo loco longam moram, dona donantes varia, et recipientes, plurima convivia facientes opipara; sed non tamen reportantes pacis gaudia, nisi quod treugas reportaverunt tractatus tempore duraturas.

_Henricus Percy, Junior, fit Custos Aquitanniae._

Per idem tempus, Dominus Henricus Percy, junior, constitutus Custos Burdegaliæ loco Ducis Lancastriæ, profectus est in Aquitanniam; sed tamen artatus est ab ingessu Burdegaliæ, quia venit vice Ducis Lancastriæ, cui Rex dudum donaverat Ducatum Aquitanniae. Burdegalenses nempe, et primores illius patriæ, detrectabant ferre dominium cujusquam nisi Regis Angliae, vel certe filii sui, si filium genuisset; et idcirco, nunc Henrico negabant ingressum, donee asseverasset se non vice Ducis Lancastriæ, sed vice Regis Angliae, advenisse.

_Visitatio Monasterii Sancti Albani, auctoritate Provincialis Capituli._

Eodem anno venerunt ad Sanctum Albanum duo monachi de Ramescia, commissarii Abbatis sui, cui visitationis officium fuit injunctum nuper in Capitulo Generali. Qui ostendentes commissionem, reverenter admittebantur ad visitationis officium exercendum; perfeceruntque visitationem omnium personarum in Vigilia festi Corporis Christi, post dictum sermonem ante prandium, in duabus horis, et mane in Capitulo facta brevi collatione in laudem religionis et personarum Monasterii, Capitulum dimiserunt.

_De tempestatibus mirabilibus et insuetis._

Mense Septembris in multis locis fulgura et coruscationes, cum tonitruis horribilibus, plurimos terruerunt, et gravia damna quibusdam intulerunt; nam ut praetermit-
tamus loca plurima quae damna senserunt, villam de A.D. 1393. Lollysworth, in Comitatu Cantabruggiæ, vehementius invaserunt, ita quod quamplures domos in eadem villa, cum frugibus ibi collectis, et in campo blada acervata, cremaverunt, et tanto foetore cineres infecerunt, ut proprius possedores accedere timuerunt.

Subsequenter, mense Septembri apud Novum Merca-
tum, et juxta villam de ¹ Barwe, inundationes aquarum	Great in-
tantæ de nubibus ceciderunt, ut bina vice domos diru-
rent, et viris et mulieribus periculum demersionis pene inferrent.

Circa præsens tempus multa miraculorum signa fecit Miracles Divinitas circa corpus Baldewyni, quondam Abbatis
de Bury, quæ merito et devotionem augerent provincialium, et affectum ad illius reliquias venerandum.

Eodem anno, in Estsexia, mensibus Septembris et	Pestilence Octobris, multitacti pestilentia moriebantur.

Hoc anno, dum adhuc tractatus inter regna in part-
tibus transmarinis perdurasset, orta fuit seditio max-
ima in Comitatu Cestriæ contra Duces Lancastriæ et
Gloverniæ, et Comitem Derbiæ, instinctu quorundam
malevolentorum illius patriæ, qui populum inibi informa-
everant dictos Dominos dominium regni Franciæ a
suo ligio domino, Rege Angliæ, et Comitatum Cestriæ
pro eorum privato commodo abstulisse, avitasque eorum
libertates ² afferre voluisse. Hæc non solum inter se
privatim nunciabant, verum etiam in scriptis redacta
in valvis parochialium ecclesiæm affigentes, etiam ad
Comitatus contiguos undique transmiserunt, eorum
auxilium mutua vicissitudine postulando. Quorum fac-
tio in brevi taliter invaluit, ut multitudo armatorum
et arcitenentium, in diversis locis et conventiculis con-
gregata, ad plusquam viginti millia hominum, ut dice-
batur, excrevit, tunc non solum affirmantium dictos
dominos, si advenirent, velle occidere, verum etiam et

¹ Barghwe, in Faustina B. ix.; ² afferre in orig.
Bury in Walsingham.
A.D. 1393, alios regni proditores per medium regni undique per-
scrutari, quorundam ¹ collateralium Regis, ut falso as-
severant, animati. Quorum quidem rumor, sicut regni
fideles ex malitia insurrectionis ultimae sufficerent ex
parte plurimum perterrit, sic malevolos ad vindictam,
et inopes promptos ad rapinam, non mediocriter ² exh-
ilaravit; cum populus illarum partium, ex sui capitis
levitate, ad similia perpetranda ex consuetudine sit
pronior, ex pristinis etiam bellis et mutuis inter se
³ decepationibus armis instructior, et caeteris regni gen-
tibus ad compescendum difficilior.

Rex itaque, et ejus Consilium, licet de praemissis
aliquotiens certificatus, ne tractatus predictus effectu
careret, distuit remedium apponere, vel ejus amiculos
The Dukes
being in-
formed of
certain
charges,
return
home.

The Duke
of Lanca-
ster, with a
commission, visits the North
of England.
The Dukes
being in-
formed of
certain
charges,
return
home.

The Duke
of Lanca-
ster, with a
commission, visits the North
of England.

Deinde, Regis licentia et permissione, Dux Lancas-
triae ad partes Eboraci, cum commissione et Justiciariis
regiis, et ipse tanquam Justiciarius principalis, pro
patria et rebellibus pacificandis, se transtulit. Deinde
ad partes Lancastriæ et Cestriæ, cum manu armata
satis valida, diversurus fuerat; namque in partibus
Eboraci grandis ⁴ decepationis inter valentem militem R.
Rokele et quemdam animosum valettum, "Bekwythe" 
vocitatum, magna undique parentela suffultos; unde
primo dictus miles interfactus extitit. Dictus vero va-
lettus, ⁵ rigori juris ⁶ parere renuens, cum plurimos sibi
in dicta factione adhaerentibus, victum suum in manu
forti quaeritans, indictatus et utlegatus diutius extitit.

¹ A word seems to be omitted here. ² exhileravit in orig. ³ decepationibus in orig. ⁴ decepationis in orig. ⁵ rigore in orig. ⁶ parerere in orig., by inadvertence.
Tandem vero per amicos dicti militis, et ipse, postmo- A.D. 1393, 
dum interfectus fuit; unde maxima perturbation facta 
uerat in patria, ita ut in se videtur quodammodo 
divisa. Auxit insuper eorum insolentiam Cestrensicum 
pertinacia, eisdem alterutrum sub mutua vicissitudine 
confederata.

Pacificata itaque ad votum dicta patria sua solita 
prudentia, adeptaque postea Lancastrensicum fortitudi-
dine, simul et benevolentia, contra Cestrenses divertit, 
ut eos sub debita ligentia redigeret, alias in manu 
valida viriliter castigaret. Statuit tamen primitus 
suam innocentiam eisdem exponere, et eos a praedicta 
sua insolentia et sanguinis effusione ad debitam sub-
jectionem quoquomodo revocare. Unde quosdam de 
sapientioribus suis militibus ad eosdem transmisit, et 
de sibi impositis sufficienter satisfecit, ita quod popu-
lum, de sua insolentia satis peneitentem, ad propria 
remitteret. Majoribus vero qui dictam seditionem ex-
citaverant de sua malitia peneitentes non solum con-
donavit, sed ad familiarem communioinem, contra plu-
rimorum spem et consilium, gratiose admisit; rebelles 
vero regio judicio prudentissime reservavit. Pauperes 
vero dictarum partium, pacis patriæ impatientes, qui 
dictam seditionem excitaverant, et ob hoc inter ceteros 
expectare nequiverant, non solum ad gratiam recepit, 
verum etiam ad armorum exercitium, pro suo commodo, 
ad partes Gasconiae, et alias suæ ditioni subditas, lar-
giter stipendiatos transmisit. Videntes itaque non solum 
regnico, sed etiam extranei, et praecipue quidam va-
leniores milites Francorum, eo tempore propter ardua 
negotia ad ipsum destinati, tantum principem in tanta 
sua potentia contra suos captales inimicos tam mise-
ricordem, et in ceteris suis actibus tam felicem, fanam 
ejus merito commendabilem multipliciter dilabatant, 
asserentes regnum nulli discrimini subjici, dummodo 
tali regimen contingere gubernari.

Dux interim Gloucestriæ ad sua divertit, et ad se The Duke 
of Glou-
A.D. 1393, defendendum, et suo fratri, si necesse foret, succurrendum, suam retinentiam conerretavit. Comes vero Arundelii in suo castro de Holt, magno armatorum numero stipatus, rei eventum interim expectavit, ad dictorum dominorum defensionem, seu faciliorem forsitan sedationem seditionis praesertam. Delatus tamen erga dictos dominos de eorum proditione existit; quod tamen; ob sanguinis sui propinquitatem, et benevolentiam, et fidelitatem pristinam; sane sapientibus incredibile fuit.

De Regina Hispaniae, filia Ducis Lancastriæ et Constantiæ, filie Petronis, quondam Regis Hispaniae, filio Bastardi, intrusoris ejusdem regni, ex suorum parentum consensu, legitime maritata, factum memorabile præsentibus duximus inserendum.—

Cum enim, inter cæteras conditiones in dicto maritagio praæcutas, concordatum existeret ut dicta domina, absque molestia sui conjugis et cæterorum patriæ Antipapæ adhaerentium, nostro vero Papa obdire licuisset, et ex injunctione paterna, simul et devotione propria in sua capella, schismaticis excludis, illud idem observasset, nec ad loca solemnia accedere, vel divino servitio in eorum solemniis, licet multipliciter incitata, quovis modo interesse voluisset, statuerunt domini praænotatae patriæ ejus proprium propositum taliter enervare: unde quemdam fratem Carmelitam, de sua Capella, promisso simul et pretio corrupuerunt, ita ut eodem primum Episcopatum vacaturum promitterent, si eorum propositum ad effectum perduere potuissent. Qui litteras fictas, tanquam a suis parentibus, eidem dominæ per peregrinos ad Sanctum Jacobum accedentes, transmissas, composit, et eas sue dominæ, tanquam verisimiles, presentavit. Quorum tenor erat, ut dicta domina, non obstante aliqua conditione praemissa, consiliis sui conjugis et magnatum patriæ ad-

¹ Hispanie in orig. See this narrative repeated in pp. 169, 170.
quiæsceret, et eorum ritibus se per omnia conformaret. A.D. 1393,  
Quibus tamen credere noluit, donec per alios fide- 
digniores nuncios, famulos videlicet sui patris, quibus 
pro tam arduo negotio mittendo, ut asserret, abun-
dabat, eidem amplius certificatum fuit. Venerunt in-
terim nuncii sui patris, cum litteris sibi directis, quæ 
nihil omnino de dicta materia continebant, sed nec 
nuncii aliquid inde viva voce referebant; unde fraudis 
conjector cum opprobrio a suo consortio est ejectus. 
Paulo tamen post, ad instantiam Ducis Boventanae, 
patrui Regis, et ejus primi consiliarii, et dictæ fraudis 
auctoris praecipui, prodigione dicti fratri, interventione 
sui domini et dominae, tanquam proximi haeredis ad 
regnum nequiter aspirantis, suo gradu pristino fuerat 
restitutus. Quorum dolus ante operis effectum detec-
tus extitit, dictusque Dux, cum suo comproditore cap-
tus, fortissimo carceri mancipatus fuit. De predicto 
tamen carcere, auxilio capitani ejusdem, postmodum 
evavit, et in quadam rupe inter vineas, non procul ab 
eodem, per biduum latitavit, industria dicti fratri et 
cujusdam rustici vinearum, suorum secretorum consci, 
de civitate proxima victualibus recreatus. 

Interea, recessu dicti Ducis cognito, publice procla-
matum fuerat, ut quicunque dictum Ducem interci-
pere potuissest, si rusticus, liber fieret, et nihilominus 
condignam remunerationem recipieret, si generosus, cen-
tum libratas terræ pro perpetuo possideret. Qua pro-
clamatione dictus rusticus exhilaratus, instinctu sue 
uxoris, proditores prodidit, pœnam meritam subituros. 
Sic itaque fides et filialis obedientia, cum eleemosyna 
parva, largiflua omnium gratiarum praerogativa pro-
meruit; quod, juxta sententiam Apostoli, vir infidelis 
per mulierem fidelem salvatus fuit, paterque in Anglia 
non solum dignatus est, pius omnium retributor, sic

1 dictis in orig.  
2 consci in orig.  
3 cognita in orig.  
4 exhilaratus in orig.  
5 1 Cor. vii. 14.
A.D. 1393, suam eleemosynam rependere, verum etiam se et suos, ut praemittitur, procul positos, a malis quasi inevitabilibus mirabiliter præservare.


Circa festum Sancti Michaelis, polluta fuit ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniis humano sanguine; sed cito reconciliata per Episcopum, solutis prius feodis consuetis episcopalibus familiaribus et ministris.

Per idem tempus, Scoti praedones irruperunt in Northimbriam, per partes Estmarchiae, quas servavit Dominus Henricus Percy, pater, Comes Northumberiae, et, ablatis quibusque rebus optimis, occiderunt octo probatissimos viros illarum partium, qui fuerunt illius provinciæ efficacissimi defensores. Ob quam causam magnum murmur excревit contra Comitem; quod ille, qui cepit pro defensione illius Marchiæ de fisco regali per annum septem millia marcarum, sinebat impune sic Scotos ingredi, et ibidem inferre incolis tanta damna. Radulphus, filius ejusdem Comitis junior, eo tempore custodivit Westmarchiam, percipiens de Rege per annum quatuor millia marcarum; qui, nihil agens desidiose, non sinebat Scotos impune per patriam debachari. Quapropter, e diverso, ipse laudabatur, dilegabatur, et ore omnium praedicabatur.

Eodem anno, Dominus Johannes de Roos, miles honorabilis, dum revertitur ab Ierosolymis, in insula de Cypro, civitate Papho, tactus aeris illius regionis

---

1 accomoda in orig.  
2 reconciliata in orig.  
3 milia in orig.  
4 debachari in orig.
incommodo, diem clausit extremum, totius Angliae grandis A.D. 1393.

danno.

Anno praebenti, quidam sutor de Sancto Albano, Munificavit vocatus "Germanus," obnubuit ab Abbate et Conventu 1 quamdam placeam vacuum, juxta Forum; in qua construxit fontem, quem voluit nomine communitatis construxisse; sed negatum fuit ei. Et ideo cepit locum ad usum populi pro octoginta annis; quem et ædificavit nobiliter, supra fontem, reddendo per annum quatuor denarios.

Transiit annus iste frugifer, fructifer, sed frugalibus; quietus Anglis et Francis, et ultramarinis provinciis, excepto quod Scoti mala intulerunt aliqua genti nostræ; miraculorum patrationibus valde celebris, devotionis popularium excitativus.

Anno gratiae millésimo trecentésimo nonagésimo quarto, A.D. 1394. qui est annus Regis Ricardi, a Conquestu Secundi, septimus-decimus, tenet Rex Natale magnificum in magno palatio suo apud Westmonasterium; ubi dum quidam, Rege vidente, scidisset quorundam domorum tripudiantium zonarum pendulos, captus est jussu Regis, 2 [et] morti judicatus, ut ejus ineptum vertetur in luctum, qui in tanto festo manus sceleratas a furto non poterat continere. Et revera,—

"Quae tam festa dies, ut cesset prodere furem?"

In ipsis vispiliones, latrones, loculorum abscissores, fures, et 4 quoque perditi, maxime maleficia sua exercere solent.

Fiebant interea, more solito, 5 hastiludia præcipua, Tournament by certain nobles, clothed in monastic habits. inter quæ duodecim de majoribus regni, an levitate sui capitis, seu dedecore habitus monachalis, Abbatem et Conventum sibi facientes, contra omnes adventientes in hastiludiiis, dicto habitu induti, prævaluerunt; unde se eidem in posterum delaturos firmiter devoverunt.

---

1 quendam in orig. 3 Possibly intended for inceptum. 4 Probably intended for quiue. 5 astiludia in orig.
A.D. 1394. Circa [hoc] tempus, 2 Moretus de Turkeya cinxit
obsidione civitatem Constantinopolitanam; sed eam in-
trare non potuit, repulsus probitate obsessorum.

Hoc anno polluta fuit ecclesia Lincolniensis, in die
Sancti Stephani, propter superbiam et discordiam cleri-
corum.

In Octavis Sancti Hillarii, convocati sunt regni pri-
mates ad Parliamentum Londoniis celebrandum; ubi
post paucis tractata commodis generalis, postulata sunt
incommoda, subsidia videlicet Regi, volenti in Hiber-
niam transfretare; perductumque fuit eo negotium, ut
Regi daretur de Ecclesia medietas decimae, si non
laboraret; si vero laborare contigeret, integra decima
solveretur. Ceetara presentis Parliamenti nullius mo-
menti fuere, praeter famosam discordiam inter Ducem
Lancastriæ et Comitem Arundelæ; qui imposuit Comiti,
quod circa festum Exaltationis Sanctæ Crucis, et parum
ante, jacuerit stipatus multo militie 4 in partibus Mar-
chiae Cestriæ, eo tempore quo patria illa contra eum
surrexit, ducibus Nicholao Clifton, etc., in subsidium
rebellantium, ut putavit. Quod Comes animose satis
evidenter excusavit, et egit insuper, ut Rex eum ad-
quietaret de accessu de cætero ad Parliamentum vel
Consilium, ubilibit convocandum. Recessit itaque cum
istam libertatem 5 ad propria; sed cito post, mutata sen-
tentia, revocatur.

Eo tempore, miles egregius, Dominus Thomas 6 Stro-
hir, custos Castri de Gedworthe, circumventus est per
quendam militem Scotiae, dictum "Willelmum En-
gysch," qui juraverat dicto Thomæ, quod nihil mali
machinaretur sibi nec suis, vel suo castello, durante
treuga. Sed Scotus perfidos, nocte quadam captata

---

1 Omitted in orig.
2 Bajazet is the sovereign meant.
3 profeisci in Faustina B. ix.
4 in castro suo de Holt, quod alio
nome vocatur "Castrum Leonis,"

situata in partibus, in Faustina
B. ix.

5 latus ad propria in Faustina
B. ix.

6 Strothyr in Faustina B. ix.
opportunitate, dum famuli Thomae fuerunt in villa, A.D. 1394. furtive castellum per scalas ingressus est, cum turba centum Scotorum. Cujus adventu percepto, Thomas qui vix octo servientes secum habuit, turrim, in quae ipse et uxor sua fuere, defendit viriliter, et Scotos ab ingressu arcuit, donec venirent famuli qui in villa fuerant, et Scotos fugam capere cogerent, cum pudore. Postea dictus Thomas appellavit dictum perfidum de perjurio et falsitate, offerens se pugnatum in causa praemissa. Scotus vero, licet multum formidaret con- gressum Thomae, per suos tamen fuit animatus ad pugnam. Adveniente die dato, duello pugnatum est, et Thomas, qui justam fovit causam, victus, occulto Dei judicio, Scotorum tripudio, Anglorum confusioni et opprobrio manifesto.


Per totum annum praesentem fuit tanta vini copia, de Wasconia vel Aquitannia, Rochelia, cum Rheo,

---

1 opportunitate in orig. 2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. 3 exceptus in orig. 1 Apparently Æ in orig.; sive Reno adventa, in Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1394. ut lagena quatuor denariis venderetur; et erat vinum optimum atque sanum. Modius quoque frumenti per tempus istud quinque denariis venderetur; modius vero salis grossi 1 haberi potuit pro tribus denariis et obolo 2 hiis diebus.

4 Treugae per quadriennium, et obitus Dominarum.

Circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, rediit e Francia Dux Lancastriae, qui profectus ad tractandum fuerat Maiore mense, quatuor annorum reportans treugas inter regna Angliae et Franciae. In quibus et Scoti comprehendi debebant, si vellent subjici Regi Anglicorum.

Quo quidem profectionis tempore, obiit Domina Constantia, Ducissa Lancastriae, filia Domini Petronis, quondam Regis Hispaniæ; fœmina mirabiliter Deo devota.

Obiit eo tempore Comitissa de Derbye, conjux Domini Henrici de Derbye, filii Ducis Lancastrias. Quorum exequiae factæ sunt apud Leycestriam duobus diebus continuatis, scilicet, Dominica et feria secunda sequente, cum magnis sumptibus et solemnitate.

Obiit Anna, Regina Angliae.

Eo anno obiit Domina Anna, Regina Angliae, septimo Idus Junii, et sepulta est apud Westmonasterium; mulier, ultra multorum opinionem, Deo dedita, amatrix eleemosynæ, fœtatrix pauperum et Ecclesiae, cuætrix æreæ fidei et justitiae, executrix fortivæ poenitentiae; sed tamen multorum obloquiis infamata. Cujus exequiae 7 quanto celebriores fuerunt expensis, ita ut

---

1 haberi in orig. 2 obulo in orig. 3 vendebatur hiis, in Faustina B. ix. 4 This, which is properly a rubric, is inserted as part of the text in orig. 5 Comitis de Derby, in Faustina B. ix. 6 die Lunæ sequente in Faustina B. ix. 7 quante in orig.
omnes antecederent nostri temporis, tanto famosiores A.D. 1394. fuere infamiis, Regis factis, qui polluit ecclesiam \textsuperscript{1} sanguine Comitis Arundelliae, in principio officii funeralis.\textsuperscript{2}

Eodem anno, obiit Ducissa Eboraci, soror uterina Ducissae Lancastriæ; domina carnalis et delicata, mundialis et venerea: sed tamen in fine, Christi Death of the Duchess of York, et burials at Langley. proditorum.

Circa festum Assumptionis Beatæ Virginis, paravit se Dux Lancastriæ ad transfretandum in Aquitaniam, et accipiendum Ducatum dictæ regionis, sibi nuper per Regem Angliae in Parliamento collatum. Qui post varia maris pericula, quæ expertus fuerat, satis adversa, tandem post tractatum habitum, intravit villam de Leybourne, ibidem praestolaturus responsa civitatum provincie, utrum cum pace illum vellent admittere, vel ingressum negare, et sibi resistentiam praeparare. Protestati quippe fuerant Burdegalenses et Baionenses, et homines aliarum villarum Regi Anglae subjectarum, tam ibidem quam in Parliamento Londoniis, satis libere, quod nullum vellent admittere dominum, nisi Regem vel Regis hæredem; et si Rex decerneret alium dare illis dominum, huic nullo modo parerent.

Eodem tempore, filia Ducis Lancastriæ et Ducissæ Constantiae, quæ copulata fuit filio Bastardi, intrusoris Hispaniae, graviter per schismaticos affligebatur. Hæc namque, consensu parentum juncta dicto juventi, sanguinis in orig.

\textsuperscript{2} An account of this, given more at length, will be found in a future page.

\textsuperscript{3} mundialis, ut furtur, et, in Faustina B. ix.

\textsuperscript{4} apud Langelee, in Ecclesia Fratrum Praedicatorum, prope Sanc-

\textsuperscript{5} The context is here continued in a different, and much inferior, handwriting, though still intended for modern Gothic. The narrative here given has been already related; see pages 162, 163, ante.
ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI, A.D. 1393, inter cæteras conditiones dicti maritagii, obtinuit, ut sine molestia sui conjugis et reliquorum patriæ adhaerentium Antipapæ, posset nostro vero Papæ licite obedire, et in sua Capella, exclusis schismaticis, divinum audire servitium, divinaque percipere Sacramenta. Cumque sic, juxta parentum monita, qui haec monuerant recedendo, ¹ diu fecisset, nec ad loca solemnia schismaticorum accedere, nec eorum caeremoniis interesse, licet multiplicantur incitata, ² voluisset, statuerunt proceres illius patriæ ejus pium propositum enervare.

³ Pacti sunt ergo cuidam fratri Carmelitæ, de Capella ipsius dominæ, et grandem summam pecuniae et proximum vacantem Episcopatum, si eam avertere potuisset a vero Papa. Qui mox finxit litteras, tanquam a parentibus suis missas eidem, per peregrinos ad Sanctum Jacobum accedentes, et eas fecit dominæ praesentari. Quarum fuit tenor ut, non obstante conditione qualcumque praemissa, consilis sui conjugis et magnum daret manus, et se eorum ritibus conformaret. Ila tamen istis dare fidem se nolle asseruit, donec per fide-digniores nuncios patris sui, vel matris suæ, recepisset litteras iterato. Interim, Deo volente, venrunt nuncii patris sui, deferentes sibi litteras, quæ nihil de dicta materia continebant, sed nec legati quidem aliquid inde viva voce referebant. Comperit ergo se dolose fuisse decipiendam, et mox fraudis commentatorem cum opprobrio de suo consortio sequestravit. Sed tamen, Ducis ⁵ Bonventanae mediatione, domina fratrem perfidum revocavit. Qui Dux expost, cum dicti fratris consilio, meditatus est dominum suum et dominam prodidisse, eo quod erat in linea post dominum suum hæres proximus, utpote patruus ejus, et ad regni regimen aspiraret. Sed detecta fraude, Dux pro-

---

¹ certum fecisset in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
² filisset in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
³ See page 162, ante.
⁴ patriæ daret in Faustina B. ix.
⁵ Bovenlana in Faustina B. ix., and p. 163, ante.
ditor, cum fratre comproditore, carceri mancipatur. A.D. 1393, Non multo post, auxilio castri capitanci, fugere sunt permissi. Latuit ergo Dux non procul ab eodem loco, inter vineas, per tempus aliquod, cum dicto fratre, quodam rustico, cultore vineae, eis victualia de civitate cotidie deferente.

Interea fuga Ducis cognita, publice proclamatum est, ut quicunque Ducem capere potuisset, si nativus servus foret, liber fieret, et condignam nihilominus recuperet remunerationem; si vero generosus, centum libras terre pro labore perciperet, perpetuo possidendas. Qua proclamatio dictus rusticus animatus, instinctu uxoris suae praecipue, prodidit proditores; sicque factum est ut hii poena plecerentur merito, et domina 1 permittetur libere vero Papae obedire de cætero. Quin et Rex ipse, delectatus de devotione conjugis suæ, se subtraxit ab 2 Antipapam, et Catholicis adhaerere decrevit; ut impleteretur illud Apostolicum—3 “Salvabitur vir “ infidelis per mulierem 4 fidelem.”


Circa 7 Gulam Augusti, proclamatum fuit per totam Angliam, ut omnes ex Hibernia oriundi reverterentur ad terram propriam citra festum Nativitatis Sanctae Mariæ, sub poena capitis; præstolaturi in Hibernia Regis adventum. Dicebatur nempne, quod venerat in try.

---

1 permittere in orig. and Faustina B. ix.
2 Antipapam in orig.
3 1 Cor. vii. 14.
4 infidelem in orig.
5 Johannes Haukwode, in Walshingham;
6 temptata molimina, post consummata præclara prælia, post incredibilia, in Faustina B. ix.
7 The First of August.
A.D. 1394. Angliam, spe lucri, tanta multitudo, ut illa terra et cultoribus et defensoribus pene vacuaretur; unde contigit quod mere Hibernici, Anglicorum adversarii, partem insulse quae Regi Anglorum paruit fere vastaverunt, et suo infando dominio subjecerunt.

Nempe cum quondam Rex Angliae illustris, Edwardus, Tertius a Conquestu, illic posuit Bankum suum, atque Scaccarium, recepisset ad fiscum regium annuatim triginta millia librarum, modo per absentiam personarum, et inimicorum irrefrenatam potentiam, nihil inde venit; quinimmo Rex per annos singulos de suo marsupio solvere cogit tur terrae defensoribus triginta millia marcarum, ad sui non solum dedecus, sed fisci gravissimum detrimentum.

Hec ergo dicebatur fuisse causa quare Hibernici ad patriam regredi cogebantur. Quidam dicebant hoc factum esse consilio Cancellarii, considerantis quod multi divitiis abundabant, et citius paterentur summa maxima, quam a limitibus Anglias sequestrari; sicque cresceret Regis commodum pro licentia remorandi, et Cancellarii marsupium pro frequentia sigillandi. Sed huic opinioni non respondit effectus; praecipue cum Hibernici sint avari naturaliter, et æquaminius tolerarent corporales molestias quam pecuniales emunctiones. Recesserunt igitur plures ab Anglia, et in suo recessu multa furti, multa latrocinia, perpetrarunt.

Rex Angiae, circa festum Nativitatis Beatae Virginis, cum Duce Glovernie et Comitibus Marchiae, Nottymhiamæ, et de Ruthland, ac familia multa valde, in Hiberniam transfretavit. Hibernienses nimirum, de tanto apparatu territi, quia palam non audebant occurrere, clandestinis irruptionibus frequenter Regis exercitum fatigarunt. Coacti sunt tamen, Anglis prævalentibus, se Regi submittere plures reguli illius terræ; quorum quosdam Rex secum detinuit, ne nova aliqua molirentur. Erant autem qui se submiserant, Power, cum filio suo, juxta Waterford, Ocel' Oueloñ, cum filio
suo, ¹ Abron ² Makmouth, cum presbytero Powerensi, A.D. 1394. Dymyl, Dangwyth, ³ Dymysyn, et ⁴ Archi.

Tenuit autem Rex Natale Domini apud Dubliniam, cum magna solemnitate, et morabatur in Hibernia usque post festum Paschae.

Per id tempus venerunt ad Regem in Hiberniam The King Archiepiscopus Eboracensis et Episcopus Londoniensis, et alii nuncii missi per clerum regni Angliae, rogantes at Dublin, ut quantocum repatriare dignaretur, ad succurrendum The King fidei et Ecclesiae; ⁵ quoniam per Lollardos, et eorum fatores, incredibiliiter affligebatur. Nam ad hoc vacabant tum solummodo, ut imaginarentur qualiter clerum inhaberent, possessiones Ecclesiae tollerent, et cunctas canonicas destruerent sanctiones. His auditis, Rex inflammatus divino spiritu, quam cito potuit, reversus est in Lollards. Angliam, arbitrans magis necessarium fidei periclitante succurrere, quam circa regna temporalia decertare. Sed hæc in sequentibus diffusius erunt tractanda.

Anno gratiae millesimso trecentesimo nonagesimo A.D. 1395. quinto, et regni Regis Ricardi Secundi octavo-decimo, tenuit Rex solemne Parliamentum in Hibernia, ad quod convenerunt tam ligei sui quam illi qui submissuerunt se eidem.

Eodem tempore, post Octavas Epiphaniæ, vocante Custode regni Angliae, Domino Edmundo, Regis patruo, Duce ⁶ Eboraci, factum est Parliamentum Londoniis; ad quod accessit, missus de Hibernia, Dux Glovneriæ, qui coram cunctis exposuit Regis necessitatem, qui jam exhauserat thesauri sui inter Hibernicos facultatem. Cujus legatio tantum valuit, ut clerus decimam Regi concederet, et quintam-decimam plebs communis; facta prius protestatione, quod ad hoc concedendum Regi

---

¹ This word is very indistinct. The names here given are anything but reliable. ² Makmourn in Faustina B. ix. ³ de Dymisyn in Faustina B. ix. ⁴ Araly in Faustina B. ix. ⁵ quæ jam per in Faustina B. ix. ⁶ boraci in orig.
A.D. 1395, non tenebantur ex stricto jure, sed affectione solummodo sui regis.

Lollardi in hoc Parliamento, nacti occasionem ex Regis absentia, cum suis fautoribus, in omnem malitiam efferebantur, figentes publice super ostia Sancti Pauli et Westmonasterii abominabiles cleri accusations, et hactenus inauditas Conclusiones, quibus nitebantur destruere personas ecclesiasticas et cuncta Ecclesiae Sacramenta; animati, ut fertur, favore quorumdam procerum, et instigatione militum aullorum. Inter quos fuerent campi-ductores, Ricardus Stury, Thomas Latymer, Lodewicus Clyfford, et Johannes Moun tagu. Et ut evidentius demonstrem pessimos illorum conceptus, Conclusiones hic inseram, quas fixerunt super ostia supradicta, sub isto proecmio.—

"Nos, pauperes Christi homines et thesauri, Apostolorumque suorum, denunciamus dominis ac communibus Parliamenti certas Conclusiones et veritates, pro reformatione Ecclesiae Angliae, quae fuit cecas et leprosa multis annis per manutenentiam superbas prelatiae; supportatae per adulationem privatarum religionum, quae multiplicantur ad magnum nocumen tum et dolorosum periculum hic in Anglia.

"Prima Conclusionis veritatis est.—Quod quando Ecclesia Angliae incepit delirare in temporalitate per appropriationem in diversis locis, ac secundum novum, cam suam magnam, Ecclesiam Romanam, et ecclesiae fuerunt amortizatae per appropriationem, diversis locis, fides, spes, caritas, inceperunt fugere de Ecclesia nostra; quia superbia, cum sua dolorosa genealogia mortalium peccatorum, hoc vendicat titulo haereditatis.—Ista Conclusionio est generalis, et probata per experientiam, consuetudinem, ac maneriem, seu modum, sicut postea audietur."

---

1 Story in Faustina B. ix.
2 For another text of these Conclusions, see Fasc. Zizaniorum (printed in this Series), pp. 360-369.
3 This and the next five words are omitted in Fasc. Zizan. and Faustina B. ix.
4 veritatis in Fasc. Zizan.
Secunda Conclusio est:—Nostrum usuale sacerdotium, quod Christus instituit suis Apostolis.—Conclusio ita probatur; quia sacerdotium Romanum fictum est cum signis, et ritibus, et pontificalibus benedictionibus modicè virtutis, nullibi exemplatis in Sacra Scriptura; quia Ordinale Episcopi et Novum Testamentum modicum concordant; et nos nescimus videre quod Spiritus Sanctus propter aliqua talia signa confert aliquod donum; quia ipse et omnia sua nobilia dona non posse sunt stare cum mortali peccato, in nulla persona.

Corollarium istius est;—quod est dolorosum interludium hominibus sapientibus, videre Episcopos ludere cum Sæculo Spiritu, in collatione suorum ordinum; quia ipsi dant coronas in characteribus, loco alborum corporum Regis; et haec est liberata Antichristi introducta in Sanctam Ecclesiam ad colorandam otiositatem.

Tertia Conclusio, et dolorosa, est:—Quod lex continentiae injunction sacerdotibus, que in prejudicium mulierum fuit primo ordinata, inducit sodomiam in totam Sanctam Ecclesiam. Sed nos excusamus nos per Bibliam, quia suspectum decretum dicit quod non nominaremus illud. Ratio; et experientia probat istam Conclusionem. Ratio; quia delicata cibaria virorum ecclesiasticorum volunt habere necessarie purgationem, naturalem vel pejorem. Experientia; quia secreta probatio talium hominum est, quod non delectantur in mulieribus; et cum probaveris talem, nota eum bene, quia ipse est unus ex illis. Corollarium istius est:—private religiones, inceptores, seu origo, istius peccati, essent maxime dignae...

"Quarta Conclusio.—Quæ maxime damnificat inno-centem populum est, quod fictum miraculum Sacramenti panis inducit omnes homines, nisi sint pauci, in idolatriam; quia ipsi putant quod corpus Dei, quod nunquam erit extra coelum, virtute verborum sacerdotis includeretur essentialiter in parvo pane, quem ipsi ostendunt populo. Sed vellet Deus quod ipsi vellent credere quod Doctor Evangelicus dicit in suo Triologo, quod panis altaris est habitudinaliter Corpus Christi. Quia nos supponimus quod per istum modum potest quilibet fidelis homo aut mulier, in Dei lege existens, facere sacramentam istius panis, sine aliquo tali miraculo. Corollarium istius Conclusionis est;—quod licet Corpus Christi sit dota-tum sempiterno gaudio, servitium de Corpore Christi factum per Sanctum Thomam est non verum, et pictum plene falsis miraculis; et non est mirum, quia frater Thomas, illo tempore tenens cum Papa, voluit fecisse miraculum de ovo gallinæ. Et nos cognoscimus bene, quod quodlibet mendacium, aperte prædicate, vertit ad dedecus Illius qui semper est verax, et sine defectu.

"Quinta Conclusio est hæc.—Exorcismi et benedictiones factæ in Ecclesia super vinum, et panem, et aquam, et oleum, sal, ceram, incensum, et lapidem altaris, et muros ecclesiae, super vestimentum, mitram, et crucem, et baculos peregrinorum, sunt vera practica nigromantiae, potius quam Sacrae Scripturæ.—Ista Conclusio probatur sic:—quia per tales exorcismos creature onerantur esse altioris perfectionis quam fuit in natura propria; et nos non videmus aliquid

---

1 Quæ—est, omitted in Fasc. Wyclif, Tri. iv. 7. 3 Theologiae in Fasc. Zizan. 4 Zizan. 2 erat in orig.; corrected from honorantur in Fasc. Zizan. Faustina B. ix.
mutationis in aliqua creatura, quae est sic exorcizata, A.D. 1395.

nisi per falsam fidem, quod est principale artis diabolicae. Corollarium est;—quod si liber exorcizandi aquam benedictam, lectus in Sacra Ecclesia, esset totus fidelis, nos cogitamus veraciter quod aqua bendicta, usitata in Sancta Ecclesia, foret optima medicina pro omnibus languoribus, videlicet, sors; cujus contrarium de die in diem experimur.

"Sexta Conclusio.—Quae manutenet multipliciter superbia est, quod Rex et Episcopus in una persona, prelatus et judex in temporalibus causis, praetatos et officiales in mundiali servitio, facit quod libet regnum extra bonum regimen. Ista Conclusio probatur; quia temporale et spirituale sunt duae partes activae, et ideo ille qui posuit se ad unum, non intromitteret se de alio; quia—Nemo potest duobus dominis servire, etc.' Videtur nobis quod hermaphrodita vel ambidexter essent bona nomina pro talibus hominibus duplicis status. Corollarium est;—quod ideo nos, procuratores Dei, in causa ista prosequimur erga Parliamentum, quod omnimodi curati tam superiores quam inferiores, sint plene excusati de temporali officio, et occupent se cum cura sua, et cum nullo alio.

"Septima Conclusio, quam nos potenter affirmamus, est.—Quod speciales orationes pro animabus mortuorum factae in Ecclesia nostra, praeferentes unum per nomen magis quam alium, est falsum fundamentum eleemosynae, super quod omnes eleemosynarum domus nequiter sunt fundatae. Ista Conclusio probatur per duas rationes: una est, quod oratio meritoria, et

1 plenum in orig.; corrected from Fasc. Zizan. and Faustina B. ix.
2 The word atis is inserted here, in orig., by mistake.
3 Scriptura in orig.; corrected from Fasc. Zizan. and Faustina B. ix.
4 Quae—est, omitted in Fasc. Zizan.
5 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
6 curatus et officiarius in in Fasc. Zizan.
7 Ecclesia in Faustina B. ix.; totius Ecclesiae sanctae, in Fasc. Zizan.
8 Matt. vi. 24.
ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI,

A.D. 1395. " alicujus valoris, debet esse opus [procedens] ab alta
caritate. Et perfecta caritas nulla personam excipit,
quia—Diliges proximum tuum, sicut seipsum;'
quapropter apparat nobis, quod donum boni tempo-
rales collatum sacerdotibus, et eleemosynariis domibus,
est principale consilium specialis orationis, quae non
est longe a symonia. Alia ratio est, quia speciales
orationes factae pro hominibus damnatis ad sempiter-
nam penam, est Deo multum displicens; et quamvis
sit dubium, verisimile est Christiano populo, quod
fundatores eleemosynarum domus, propter suam ve-
nenosam dotationem, sunt pro majori parte pertran-
siti latam viam. Corollarium est;—oratio valoris
procedens ex caritate perfecta, amplexaret in gene-
rali omnes illos quos Deus vellet habere salvatos, et
dimittere[t] jam usitatam markandiam pro speciali-
bus orationibus factam mendicantibus, possessionatis,
et aliis sacerdotibus conductitiis; qui sunt populus
magni honoris toti regno, manutentus in otiositate
sua; quia fuit probatum in uno libro quem Rex
audivit, quod centum domus eleemosynarum suffi-
ciunt toti regno; et ex hoc proveniret maximum
incrementum [possibile temporali parti].

Octava Conclusio.—Ad narrandum populo decepto
est, quod peregrinationes, orationes, oblationes, factae
certis crucibus sive rodis, et surdis imaginibus de
ligno et lapide, sunt prope consanguinei ad idolatri-
iam, et longe ab eleemosyna; et quamvis ista inhibita
imageria sit liber erroris populo laicali, adhuc imago
usualis de Trinitate est maxime abominabilis. Istam
Conclusionem Deus aperte ostendit, praecipiens ele-
mosynam fieri hominibus indigentibus; quia ipsi sunt

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Fasc. Zizan. and Faustina B. ix.
2 Matt. xix. 19; xxii. 39.
3 specialis oratio, in Fasc. Zizan.
4 operis in Fasc. Zizan.
5 habuit in Fasc. Zizan.
6 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Fasc. Zizan. and from Faustina B.
ix., possibile being there written for possible.
7 et imaginaria sint in Fasc. Zizan.
"imago Dei in majori similitudine quam lignum vel A.D. 1395. 
lapis. Quia Deus non dixit,—‘Faciamus lignum, vel
‘lapidem, ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram,’
sed—‘Faciamus hominem ad imaginem, etc.;’ quia
supremus honor, quem clerici vocant ‘latriam,’ per-
tinet ad divinitatem solum; et inferior, quem clerici
vocant ‘duliam,’ pertinet ad hominem et angelum,
et nullam creaturam inferiorem. Corollarium est ;—
quod servitium de cruce, factum bis in anno quo-
libet, est plenum idolatria; quia si illud lignum, clavi
et lancea, deberet ita alte honorari, tunc ²[essent]
labia Judæ magna reliquiae, si quis posset illa ha-
bere. Sed nos rogamus te peregrinum, ad narrandum
nobis, quando tu offers ossibus mortuorum sanctorum,
in scrinio positis in loco aliquo, utrum relevas tu
sanctum qui est in gaudio, vel istam pauperem do-
mum eleemosynæ, quæ est ita bene dotata? Quia
hombres sunt canonizati, Deus scit quomodo; et ad
loquendum magis plene, fidelis Christianus supponit
quod puncta istius nobilis hominis quem homines vo-
cant ‘Sanctum Sæ Thomam,’ non fuerunt causa martyrii.

"Nona Conclusio.—Quæ tenet populum tam basse
est, quod auricularis confessio, quæ dicitur necessaria
pro salvatione hominum, cum facta potestate abso-
lutionis, exaltat superbiam sacerdotum, et dat illis
opportunitatem secretarum vocationum aliarum quam
nos volumus dicere. Quia domini et dominnæ attes-
tantur, quod pra timore confessorum suorum non
audent dicere veritatem; et tempore confessionis est
opportunum tempus procationum, scilicet, "wouwyng,
et aliarum secretarum conventionum ad mortalia pec-
cata. Ipsi dicunt, quod sunt commissarii Dei ad

1 Genesis i. 26. 
² Omitted in orig.; supplied from
³ Saint Thomas of Canterbury
(Becket) is meant. 
⁴ Quæ—est, omitted in Fasc.
Zizan. 
⁵ Sic in orig. and Fasc. Zizan.;
wouwyng in Faustina B. ix.; probably
meaning “wooing.”
A.D. 1395. "judicandum de omni peccato, et perdonandum et mundandum quemcunque eis placuerit. Dicunt etiam quod habent claves coeli et inferni, et possunt excommunicare et benedicere, ligare et solvere, ad voluntatem eorum; in tantum quod pro bussello frumenti, vel duodecim denariis per annum, volunt vendere benedictionem Dei per chartam et clausam de warantiza, sigillata sigillo communi. Ista Conclusio sic est in usu, quod non indiget alia probatione. Corollarium est;—quod Papa Romanus, qui fingit se altum thesaurarium totius Ecclesiae, habens illud insigne jocale passionis Christi in custodia, cum meritis omnium Sanctorum in coelo, per quod dat fictam indulgentiam a poena et a culpa, est corollarius praescriptus [maxime] extra caritatem; ex quo potest liberare omnes prisonarios in inferno existentes, ad voluntatem suam, et ipsum in fine nunquam venire ibidem. Sed hic quilibet Christianus potest videre, quod multa secretas falsitas est condita in Ecclesia nostra.

Decima Conclusio est haec.—Quod homicidium per bellum vel praetensam legem justitiae, sine spirituali revelatione, est expressa contraria Novo Testamento; quod quidem est lex gratiae, et plenum misericordiae. Ista Conclusio est aperta probata per exemplum punitionis Christi, hic in terra; qui docuit hominem ad diligendum inimicos et miserandum eis, et non ad occidendum eos. Ratio est haec, quia pro majori parte ubi homines pugnant, post primum ictum sunt extra caritatem, et quisquis moritur extra caritatem vadet altam viam ad infernum. Et ultra hoc, nos cognoscimus bene quod nullus clericus scit fundare se per Scripturam, vel per rationem legitimam, punitionem mortis Christi pro uno peccato mortali, et non

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Fusc. Zizan. and Faustina B. ix.
2 The word is ipmiuz apparently, or closely resembling it; it is ipminez in Faustina B. ix.: ipmos
3 abscondita in Fusc. Zizan.
4 liberare, per Scripturam . . .

facere nunquam, in Fusc. Zizan.
pro alio. Sed lex misericordiae, quæ est Novum A.D. 1395. Testamentum, inhibuit omnimodum homicidium; in
1 Evangelio dictum est—'Non occides, etc.' Corollaria—est sancita expoliatio pauperis populi, quando
domini adquirunt indulgentias a peena et a culpa,
illis qui juvant exercitum eorundem congregatum
ad interficiendum Christianum populum, in longin-
quis terris, pro temporali lucro, sicut nos videmus:
et milites qui currunt ad ethnics—2 into hethenesse
—ad acquirendum sibi nomen in occasione homi-
um, acquirunt multum plus malas grates a Rege
pacis; quia per humilitatem et patientiam nostram
fides fuit multiplicata, et pugnatores ac interfectores
Ihesus Christus odit et minatur, dicens,—3 'Qui gladio
' percutit, gladio 4 percutitur.'

Undecima Conclusio.—5 Est miserabile ac verecunda
loqui, quod votum continetiae factum in Ecclesia
nosa per mulieres, quæ sunt fragiles et imperfectae
in natura, est causa inductionis maximorum peccat-
torum possibilium humanae naturae; quia licet inter-
fecit puerorum antequam baptizentur abortivorum,
et destructio naturæ per medicam, sint turpia
peccata, ahduc communicatio cum seipsis, vel irra-
tionabilibus bestiis, vel creatura non habente vitam,
transcendit indignitate, ut puniatur pennis inferni.
Corollarium est;—quod viduæ et tales quæ acceperunt
mantellum et annulum, delicate pastæ, vellemus quod
essent desponsatae; quia nos nescimus excusare eas
a privatis peccatis.

Duodecima Conclusio est.—Quod multitudo artium
non necessariarum in nostro regno, nutrit multum
peccatum in wast, curiositate, et inter disguising, et
istud ostendit aperte experientia, et ratio probat;
quia natura cum paucis artibus sufficit ad necessi-

1 Mark x. 19; Luke xviii. 20. 2 in hethenesse in Faustina B. ix.
3 Matt. xxvi. 52. 4 peribit, etc. in Fasc. Zizan. and | Faustina B. ix.
5 Est . . . loqui, omitted in Fasc. Zizan.

Hæ Conclusiones prælibatae sunt manutentæ, sup- " portatae, ac defensatae, per diversos dominos Angliæ, " necnon instanti Parliamento propositæ, ut præfertur, per Dominum Thomam Latimer et Dominum Ricardum 3 Stury, aliosque plures; unde 4 operte scripserunt, sicut patet per versus sequentes, quod nisi apponeretur " remedium in praedictis, ipsimet, non tanquam insurrec- " tores aut pacis destructores, sed vitia enormia corri- " gentes, in manu forti remedium apponerent. Qua- " propter timentes Episcopi et alii viri ecclesiastici, miserunt Eboracensem Archiepiscopum et Londonien- " sem Episcopum ad Regem, ut diximus, in Hiberniam, qui Regi referrent insolentias Lollardorum.

Hii versus qui sequuntur, affixi fuere ostio Sancti Pauli;— " Plangant Anglorum gentes crimen sodomorum; " Paulus fert, horum sunt idola causa malorum.

---

1 Tim. vi. 8. 2 Repeated in orig. 3 Story in Faustina B. ix. 4 operte in Faustina B. ix.
"Surgunt ingrati Giaziæ, Simone nati, A.D. 1395.
Nomine praetuli, hoc defensare parati.
Qui reges estis, populus quicunque praestis,
Qualiter hiis gestis gladiis prohibere potestis?"

Rex, ut audivit praemissa, per legatos sibi missos in Hiberniam, commotus est valde; juravit quod tam Lollardos quam fautores eorum trahi faceret ad suspendia, nisi relinquerent opiniones suas. Complevitque, mox ut terram attigisset, quod juravit, comminatus mortem publice potentioribus qui 2 faverant eis, nisi resipiscerent, asseverans eos esse prodiatores tam Regis quam regni, et omnes qui nitebantur destruere fidem patrum. A Ricardo autem 3 Stury exegit juramentum, quod non manuteneret opiniones hujusmodi, tacto Evangeliorum libro. Quod cum fecisset, licet invitus, Rex e vestigio, apposita libro manu propria, dixit,—"Et ego juro tibi, si tu unquam juramentum tuum violaveris, ego te faciam morte, scilicet turpissima, interire."

Audientes cæteri hujusmodi vocem tubæ, contraxerunt cornua, et, velut testudines, intra casellas suas deuterunt. Hae Regis animositate in brevi reddita fuit pax Ecclesiae Anglicæ; nec multo post haec, oblit Ricardus 5 Stury, fautor maximus perfidorum.

Sub eisdem diebus, quidam armiger de Comitatu Staffordiae, gerens signum Regis in pectore, id est, cervum argenteum, incertum utrum dono Regis an fallaci presumptione, adjuncto sibi quodam de Northfolchia, vocato "Johanne Colby," falsissimo ganeone, qui imaginatus fuerat quamdam patentem litteram Magni Sigillio insignitam, ad decipendum incautos, circuivit per patriam, primo Estsexiae, deinde Northfolchiae, Abbathias et Prioratus ingrediens, tam mona-

---

1 Probably for Gehazita.
2 favebant in Faustina B. ix.
3 Story in Faustina B. ix.
4 This word is doubtful; it is omitted in Faustina B. ix.
5 Story in Faustina B. ix.
6 insertum in orig.
7 quoam in orig.
8 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
9 regillo in orig.
10 detinendum in Faustina B. ix.
chorum quam canoniceorum et monialium, et expetens virutem predictae patentis regiae inspectionem et examinationem libertatum eorumque chartarum quas de amortizatione omnium nuper prius statas ad manum mortuam aquisitorum; unde multi, timentes temporis presentis malitiam, composuerunt [cum] eo, offerentes pecuniae magnas summas, ut esset favorabilis, et hujusmodi perquisita ratificaret. Ille vero se quasi benevolent in omni loco exhibebat, simulans se dolere de injuncto sibi officio; et eorum libertates gratanter ratificavit, et a pluribus grandes summas pecuniae reportavit, et praecipue de locis illis qui pro tempore accessus sui destituti fuerant praesentia jurisprudentiorum. Hanc ergo fraudem exercuerunt longo tempore, multis obloquentibus, sed pactis contradicentibus, donec Gilbertus de [Debnham], Vicecomes Northfolchiae et Southfolchiae, assumptis secum viris ad persequendum eos, cepisset illos, et in custodia posuisset. Hic nempe, comprehensione illis, deprehendit fraudem, examinando patentem litteram, cui reperit sigillum non [more] appensum debito, sed occulte consutum. Misit igitur utrumque ligatum, more proditorum, Londonias, recepturum pro demeritis dignas pecuniae; sed armiger statim, vel verecundia facti vel metu improperii indelebilis, in carcerem finem fecit. Alter vero remansit in custodia, donec Regis Consilium decrevisset quid de eo faciendum foret.

The King orders the body of Robert de

Hoc anno, mense Septembrio, Rex Angliae, appor-
tato corpore de Lovania quondam dilecti sui Roberti de Veer, Oxoniensis Comitis, (felicis quidem si se inter

---

1 Sic in orig.; statum in Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
3 Repeated in orig.
4 pactis in Faustina B. ix.
5 pactis contradicentibus, donec Gilbertus de [Debnham], Vicecomes Northfolchiae et Southfolchiae, assumptis secum viris ad persequendum eos, cepisset illos, et in custodia posuisset. Hic nempe, comprehensione illis, deprehendit fraudem, examinando patentem litteram, cui reperit sigillum non [more] appensum debito, sed occulte consutum. Misit igitur utrumque ligatum, more proditorum, Londonias, recepturum pro demeritis dignas pecuniae; sed armiger statim, vel verecundia facti vel metu improperii indelebilis, in carcerem finem fecit. Alter vero remansit in custodia, donec Regis Consilium decrevisset quid de eo faciendum foret.

---

6 Septembrio, Rex Angliae, appor-
tato corpore de Lovania quondam dilecti sui Roberti de Veer, Oxoniensis Comitis, (felicis quidem si se inter

---

7 Lovania in orig. ; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
se continuasse statuisset, sed propter excellendiam in-
facilitate subactus,) fecit apud Prioratum de Colne in
Estsexia solemnes exequias, exhibens ibidem suam pre-
sentiam, et modis quibus potuit magnificans officium
funerale; curavitque thecam cypressinam, in qua corpus,
balsamo delibutum, jacuit, aperire, faciæ considerare,
digitos contrectare; qui, ut fertur, ditati fuerunt annulis
aureis pretiosis, cum corpore terræ tradendis. De-
monstravitque dilectionem defuncto publice, quam im-
penderat prius vivo.

Erant ibi, cum Rege et matre defuncti, Archiepi-
coscopus et alii plures Episcopi, cum Abbatibus et Pri-
oribus, alisque viris religiosis. Sed pauci interfuerunt
proceres; quia nondum digestum fuerat odium quod
conceperant contra illum.

Eodem anno, imago Crucifixi, cum stigmatibus san-
guinalentis, appaueil in Gallia, supra campanile eccle-
siae Laudunensis, per mediam fere horam, cernentibus
Episcopo, et clero, et populo, manifeste.

Quo anno, Morettus ille barbarus, cum trecentis
quinquaginta millibus paganorum, conflixit contra Pri-
orem Sancti Johannis de Roodes, aliosque Christianos.
Sed Dei virtute victus est; centum millibus de suo
exercitu interfectis. Et quia fortuna sibi defuit in
campestri prælio, navali bello Ἐρμης inemperiri
perrexit. Sed Qui terræ marisque dominatur, ejus
conatus enervavit, et cum confusione maxima Ἐρμης
fugere compulit iterato. Civitas quoque Constantinopolitana,
quam supra diximus obsessam per ejus exercitum,
veluti infinitum, superveniente Imperatore Constanti-
nopolitano, cum parvo Christianorum Ἐρμής numero, liber-
ratur, quingentis millibus miraculo se gente Paganam
peremptis.

---

1 A side-note has extollentiam, as in Walsingham and Faustina B. ix.
2 Somewhat indistinct in orig.; proceris in Faustina B. ix.
3 Ῥαμνίσια in orig.; the goddess Nemesis is meant.
4 Bajazet was not defeated at the Battle of Nicopolis (A.D. 1396), to which allusion is here made.
5 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Walsingham and Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1395. Obituary for the year.


Obiit etiam Thomas Brantyngham, Exoniensis Episcopus; cui successit, Regis instantia, Magister Edmundus de Staffor[d], Portitor Privati Sigilli.

Obiit et Henricus de Wakefeld, Episcopus Wygorniensis; cui successit, ad preces Regis, per provisionem, quidam Cisterciensis monachus, Regis physicus, dictus “Tydyman,” spreta et cassata electione legitima Magistri Johannis Grene.

Hoc anno sensit Anglia damna gravia per piratas Regine Danemarchiae, qui nautas et mercenarios sepius deprædabantur, precipe tamen qui erant de Norfolk; qui ausi sunt, collecta multitudine, congrendi cum eisdem. Quibus prævalentibus barbaris, multi perempit, plurimi vero ad redemptionem gravissimam sunt servati, amissis viginti millibus librarum quas comportaverant ad marcandizandum.

Eodem anno, Dominus Willelmus Courtnay, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, non considerata depressione ecclesiastica qua jugiter premebatur per regia taliagia, plus spectans suo privato commodo quam communitatis incommodo, impetravit ab Apostolico Bullas, sibi met gratiosam, eet ris odiosam; ut levare posset per totam suam Provinciam quatuor denarios de libra qualibet omnium bonorum ecclesiasticorum, tam ex-

---

1 This name is omitted in Faustina B. ix.; it is supplied in a later hand in orig. Bishops Brantingham and Wakefield died in A.D. 1394.
2 Oxoniensis in Faustina B. ix.
3 Sic in orig.
emptorum quam non exemptorum, nulla pretensa causa A.D. 1395.
vera, vel legitima. Cujus gratiae constituti sunt ex-
ecutores Archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Dominus Thomas
Arundel, et Magister Braybrok, Episcopus Londoniensis.
Multi igitur, censuras metuentes tam sublimium execu-
torum, maluerunt summam petitam continuo solvere,
quam 1 dubii litibus, cum jactura forsitan, subjicere,
Nonnulli ad Sedem Apostolicam, tanquam a grava-
mine, appellantes, causam suam nitabantur defendere,
et dictum subsidium, tanquam illegitimum, quomodo-
libet revocare. Quorum animosiores et præcipui fuere
Lincolnienses; sed tantis motibus finem imposuit mors
Archiepiscopi, cito postea subsecuta.

Anno gratiae millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo sexto, A.D. 1396.
et regni Regis Ricardi Secundi nono-decimo, direxit
Dominus Papa litteras Regi Angliae supplicatorias, ut
assisteret favorabiler prælatis Ecclesie in causa Dei
contra Lollardos, quos declaravit non solum proditores
Ecclesie, sed et ipsius Regis, 2 multiplicibus argumen-
tis; rogans obnixius ut quos prælati declarassent 3 [hae-
reticos], Rex capi juberet, si in pravitate perseverare
decerrent, et juxta jura, ut proditores et haereticos,
condemnatos puniri.

Aliasque misit Bullas, ad revocandum religiosos qui
capellanias obtinuerant, vel ab ipso Papa, vel quoquam
alio, nuncio vel legato; quas amplexati sunt Ordines
Mendicantium, quasi munus deificum, sed Fratres Mi-
ores præcipue, qui confestim confratres suos, qui per
capellanatum ab eorum ccetu segregati fuerunt, rapere,
cpare, et domum reducere, satagebant; sicque factum
est, ut quidam putant, ut quam breve sit exemptorum
gaudium, longum convertetur in luctum.

Per idem tempus, Dominus Johannes, Dux Lancas-
triae, cui Rex donaverat Ducatum Aquitaniae, cum jam

---

1 duabus in Faustina B. ix.  
2 multipluribus in Faustina B. ix.  
3 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1296. inæstimabilem summam thesauri profudisset in illis partibus pro adipiscenda patriatarum benevolentia, subito per mandatum revocatur. Qui mox reverentia debita vocanti paruit, et cito post Natale in Angliam transfretavit, pervenitque Langleym, ubi Rex Natale Domini tenuit isto anno. Susceptusque est a Rege, prout decuit, debito cum honore; sed, ut quidam asserunt, non amore. Licentiat us proinde a Rege, recessit a Curia, et properavit Lincolniam, ubi Katerina de Swynforde eo tempore morabatur; quam post Octavas Epiphaniae, cunctis admirantibus factum miraculum, despensavit; quia fortuna talis feminae tantæ sublimitatis heroi minime competebat.

He marries Katherine de Swynford.

Interview between the Kings of England and France.

Oath made by the King of France.

"Nos Karolus, Rex Franciae, juramus in verbo regali, super Evangelia, pro nobis et omnibus nobis subjectis, amicis, et affinitate conjunctis et benevolentibus, quod non faciemus, nec patiemur fieri, per nos nec per supra nominatos, damnum, impetitionem, molestiam, arestationem, nec disturbancem, ullo modo per tempus nostræ conventionis, nec per octo dies ante conventionem, et septem dies sequentes, nostro dicto filio Regi Angliae, nec alicui de suis subjectis, amicis, affinibus, nec benevolis, ante dictum tempus. Et si casu aliquo insolentia vel litigium per aliquem de nostris supradictis,—quod absit,—emerserit, nos promittimus verbo regali et per securitatem prædictam, quod faciemus habe debite emendari, et sine dilatatione reformari; et juramus ulterius, super securitate prædictæ, quod si aliquis vel aliqui

1 profudisset in Faustina B. ix.
"de qualicunque statu vel conditione extiterint, volu-
"erit vel voluerint contraire dictæ nostræ securitati,
"nos erimus in auxilium nostri prædicti filii, pro
"nostro posse, ad resistendum malitiae malefactorum
"prædictorum, et conservandum nostrum dictum filium
"et suos, per modum quem nos et nostri scimus, et
"ad tenendum omnia, et prosequendum, sine fraude vel
"malo ingenio. Et ad hoc juramus, et promittimus,
"sicut supra."

Idem juramentum edidit Rex Anglorum.

Die vicesima sexta mensis Octobris, Rex Angliae
equitavit de Calesia versus castrum suum de Gynes,
et cum eo Dux de Berry, qui missus [fuerat] ex parte
Francorum Calesiam, ad reciproctum juramentum Regis
Anglie, et securitatem pro gente Francorum accedente
ad colloquium duorum Regum. Et in equitatione ver-
sus Gynes, obviavit ei Dux Aurelianorum, cum quin-
gentis nobiliter adornatis. Coenaverunt ergo Duces de
Berry et de Orleon eanecte cum Rege; et post coenam
donavit Rex Duci de Berry monile pretii quingentarum
marcarum, et Ducie de Orliones cyphum aureum, cum
olla aquaria, pretii ducentarum marcarum.

In crastino, qui fuit dies Veneris, mane proclamatum
fuit, ne quis portaret gladium, dagardum, neque bacu-
lum, exceptis quadringentis generosis, qui fuerunt as-
signati specialiter ad assistendum Regum colloquio et
obviationi.

Rex Anglie, indutus gouna longa de velveto rubeo,
derens in capite sertum plenum pretiosis lapidibus,
quod receperat de dono Regis Franciae, et in pectore
ferens cervum de liberata propria, cum suis, processit
regaliter; qui omnes induebantur talaribus gounis de
rubeo, cum una benda alba de liberata Reginæ Anglie
nuper defunctæ; pervenitque quasi cum centum ad
tentorium sibi preparatum.

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from

[Faustina B. ix.]

2 Oronones in Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1396. E vestigio venit Rex Franciae, cum suis, de castello de ¹ Aarde, et maxima melodia, ad castra sua. Et cum ingressus fuisse papilionis suae cameram, mox misit Comitem Sancti Pauli ad Regem nostrum, ut nunciaret sibi adventum suum, et quæreret qua hora erant pa-riter locuturi. At Rex Angiae misit Comitem North-umbriae, pro eadem causa, ad Regem Franciae, ut requireret super hoc Regis Franciae voluntatem. Qua cognita, missi sunt ad Regem nostrum de parte Francorum, ad conducendum cum ad papilionem suam de Consilio, Duces de Berry, de Burgoyne, de Orleones, et de Borbon, Comes de Sancer, et Vicecomes de Meleyn, et Episcopus de Vylainos, Dominus²[que] de Bossy.

De parte nostra missi sunt ad conducendum Regem Franciae ad suam papilionem de Consilio, Duces Lancastriae et Gloversiae, Comites de Derby et de Ruthland, Marescallus, et Northumberlond.

Ornabatur autem Rex Franciae gouna de velletto ³[rubeo], cum benda engrelata de albo et nigro, usque ad genua attingente. Habebatque ocreas et calceas nigra, calceos albos et rubeos, et circa collum torquem de liberata propria, et cervum in pectore, de liberata Regis Angliae, et sertum in capite de panno nigro, plenum gemmis. Duces ejus et Comites, domini sive milites, vestiti fuerunt in secta Regis, sed armigeri pannis de say fuerunt induti, de colore rubeo et bendis similibus, nigrisque capuciis.

Hora igitur assignata colloquio, processerunt Reges, quisque de suo tentorio, pedetentim, ita ut nullus alium in passu praeveni, usque ad allocutiois locum, quod erat situm inter papiliones; portante ⁴gladium coram Rege Angliae, fratre suo, Comite de Huntyn-gdone, et coram Rege Franciae Comite de Harecourt.

¹ Arde (Ardres) in Faustina B. ix.
² Omitted in orig. ; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
³ Supplied from Faustina B. ix.
⁴ gladio in orig. ; corrected from Faustina B. ix.

Die Sabbati, in festo Apostolorum Simonis et Judae, mane, Angliae Rex vestitus est gouna de albo et rubeo 
velvetto (id est motile), quæ medias tibias attingebat; quem præcedebant, et sequebantur, quadringenti milites et armigeri; erantque milites in una secta de pannis aureis, et armigeri de pannis de say de liberata Regis. Rex vero Franciae indutus est per omnia hesterno apparatu. Conveneruntque Reges ad papilionem Francorum, ubi colloquebantur de articulis tractatus sui, qui redacti fuerunt in scripta, et firmati assensu

A Chapel to be erected on the site of the interview.

Dress of the King of England, on the second day’s interview.

Particulars of the second day’s interview.

1 velveto polimito in Faustina B. | 2 motile in Faustina B. ix.; our ix.
"motley."
A.D. 1396. Regum. Quo facto, Reges, cum suo Consilio, jurati fuerunt super Evangelia, quod pacta servarent 1 [fideliter] sine fraude; et tunc species et vinum sunt alata. Ea hora, Rex Franciae dedit 1 [regi] nostro duos grandes utres aureas, insertas lapidibus pretiosis; item, unam tabulam cum imagine Trinitatis, auream, plenam pretiosisissimis margaritis; item, tabulam cum imagine Sancti Michaelis, ornatam margaritis et lapidibus pretiosis; item, tabulam auream cum imagine Sancti Georgii, refertam margaritis et lapidibus magni valoris; item, tabulam cum cruce et imagine Domini nostri Ihesu Christi, geniculante ad pedem Crucis, auream, plenam lapidibus pretiosis. Rex autem Angliae redonavit Regi Franciae quamdam torquem, de margaritis et pretiosis factam lapidibus, quam dederat sibi Anna, quondam Regina, pretii quinque millium marcarum; quam Rex Franciae gratanter apposuit collo suo; et invitavit Regem Franciae ad prandendum cum eo die Lunae sequente, quod Rex Franciae leto vultu concessit.

Dominica sequente, Reges non convenerunt, sed Dux de Berry et Vicecomes de Melone comederunt cum Rege Angliae, in castello suo de Gynes. Post prandium, Rex dedit Duci de Berry quoddam monile pretii trecentarum librarum. Eodem die, coenavit cum Rege Dux Aurelianensium; cu[i] Rex dedit post cenam cyphum et aquarium de auro puro; et mox Dux redonavit Regi alterum cyphum, cum aquario, pretii multo majoris quam fuerat cyphus Regis.

In crastino, id est, die Lunae, 2 [Rex Angliae], induitus gouna de panno aureo blodeo et talari, equitavit ad tentoria, cum gente sua; et Rex Franciae, in apparatu pristino, cito postea pervenit illuc, habens in

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 These words are evidently omitted, by inadvercence, in orig. and in Faustina B. ix.

Ea hora adducta fuit Regina novella ad papilionem Consilii Gallicorum; cum qua venerunt Ducissæ Lancastriae et Gloverniæ, et Comitissæ Huntingdoniæ, cum suis domicellis. Duces vero de Berry et de Burgoyne, vestiti velutello rubeo, portaverunt Reginam ad locum "colloquio limitatum; quæ fuit vestita stricta tunica de modo antiquo de blodeo velutello, pulverizato cum floribus liliorum, et habebat in capite coronam valde pretiosam. Quam Rex Francæ dedit Regi Anglæ, sub hiis verbis;—"Fili carissime, commendo "vobis hanc creaturam, mihi super omnes mundi dilect-"tam creaturas, præter Dolphinum, nostrum 4[filium], "et uxorem nostram." Quam Rex Anglæ cepit per manum, et regratibatur Regi Francæ pro dono tam honorabili et gratioso, promisitque 4[se] eam accipere sub conditionibus factis inter eos; et ut per istam affinitatem utriusque Regis subjecti vivere possint pacifice, et ipsi Reges pervenire ad bonum finem et conclusionem faciendæ pacis perpetuae inter regna, et ad evitandum effusionem sanguinis Christiani, quæ posset verisimiliter evenire, si hæc affinitas non fieret ista vice. Commendata est proinde Regina Ducissis Lan- The new castriae et Gloverniæ, et Comitissis Huntingdoniæ et Staffordiæ, aliisque dominabus quæ aderant; quæ con- to Calais.

---

1 'crystallinam plenum' in orig. and Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig. ; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 " colloquii in Faustina B. ix.
4 Omitted in orig. ; supplied from Faustina B. ix.

N
A.D. 1396. duxerunt 1 [cam] Calesiam in maximo apparatu homi-
num et equorum; habuitque cum ea duodecim currus
2 onustos dominabus et domicellis.

Quibus ita gestis, Reges consederunt ad prandium in
tentoria 3 Regis nostri. Rex Franciae consedit in dextra
parte aulae; cui servitum fuit regaliter modo suæ
patriæ, id est, de omnibus cibariis primi cursus simul
in magna parapseide, et de secundo cursu eodem modo.
Regi vero Anglæ servitum fuit patriæ suæ more.
Post prandium, Reges, osculati pariter, ascenderunt
equos. 4 Duxit Rex Anglæ Regem Franciae in viam
suam; et tandem, junctis manibus, super equos ab
invicem discesserunt. Rex Franciae equitavit ad Arde,
Rex autem Anglæ ad Calesiam se convertit, ubi
filiam Regis Franciae duxit uxorem, pusiolum non
oc-tenném.

Fuerat autem iste Regum apparatus grandis et
sumptuosus in 6 donariis et expensis; nam præter dona
quæ Rex Anglæ dedit ibidem, quæ supergressa sunt
summam decem millium marcarum, Rex, 6 [ut] dicitur,
trecenta millia marcarum expendit. Rediit ergo cito
postea salvus in Angliam, et uxor sua; sed tentoria
sua perdidit, aversa tempestate, et magnam partem
supellectilis domus sua.

Hoc anno, Magister Willelmus Courtenay, Cantua-
riensis Archiepiscopus, sæculo valescit; cui successit,
postulatione Capituli, Dominus Thomas Arundele, frater
Comitis Arundeliam, 6 [Archiepiscopus Eboracæ] regni-
que Cancellarius; qui mox Cancellariae dimisit officium,
et illius sollicitudinem, per assensum regium, Magistro
Edmundo de Stafford commendavit, Episcopo, videlicet,
Exoniensi; successitque in Archipràsulatu Eboracensi

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 onustas in orig.
3 Repeated in orig.

---

1 Duxitque in Faustina B. ix.
2 denariis in Faustina B. ix.
3 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
Frater de Ordine, provisione A.D. 1396. Papali, contra vota totius cleri Eboracensis.

Eodem anno, decessit totius monasticae religionis pater et speculum, Dominus Thomas, Abbas Monasterii Sancti Albani, qui "Monachorum Patriarcha" merito vocabatur; cui successit, per electionem, Dominus Johannes Mot, Prior ejusdem loci; qui, juxta nova privilegia de Curia impetrata, ut, videlicet, eo ipso quo foret rite electus, esset et confirmatus, primus omnium eo privilegio usus fuit; suscepitque munus benedictionis ab Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, Domino Thoma de Arundel, in praedio suo de Saltwode; non quia sic oportuit, sed quia per manus ejus benedici praefelix.

Anno gratiae trecentesimo nonagesimo septimo, et A.D. 1397. regni Regis Ricardi Secundi vicesimo, post Natale Domini factum fuit Parliamentum Londonii, in quo Dux Lankastriæ legitimari fecit sobolem quam suscepserat de Katerina Swynford. In quo etiam Benford, filius Ducis Lankastriæ et dictæ Katerinae, (nam sic censuit Dux cognominari filios ejusdem Katerinae, quos sibi genuerat), creatus est Comes de Somerseete.

In eodem Parliamento fuit ordinatum, ut Justiciarii de cætero non habeant assessores.

Eo tempore concessa fuit Regi medietas unius decinæ, And grant. solvenda ad duos terminos ipsius anni.

Per idem tempus, Rex, contra juramentum quod The King recalls the banished Justiciaries from Ireland.

1 These omissions occur in orig., and in Faustina B. ix.: "Robertus Waldeby" is the name.
2 Thomas de la Mare.
3 Moot in Faustina B. ix.
4 "Thomas" is the name omitted; it being also omitted in Faustina B. ix.
ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI,

..D. 1397. eorum defectus notabiles, revocavit. Quorum nomina fuerunt ista, Robertus Belknap, 1

Circa tempus Quadragesimale, prope villam Bedford, quidam vagabatur spiritus in villa de 2 invisibiliter tamen, et pene cotidie, circa solis occasum. Accessit autem ad domum cujusdam viduae, cui dixit quod filia sua fuerat, improperans quod per ejus incuriam mortua nata fuit, et ab eadem sepulta sub quadam arbore in gardino suo; adjungens quod eadem mulier, quam asseruit fuisse matrem suam, damnanda esset pro commisso.

Mater vero, licet laica et ruralis, replicat quod non erit ita, eo quod confessa sit de peccato, et fecerit dignos fructus penitentiae, secundum discretionem et arbitrium sacerdotum. Spiritus, e contra, quod mater mentitur asserit, et eam damnandam affirmat pro peccato. Mater, e diverso, respondet quod spiritus mendax est, et omnino fallax, qui mendaciter inducere velit eam in desperationem; sicque super hac 3 [re] fit contentio saepius inter eos.

Erat autem 3 [viduae] quidam filius, gradu presbyter, sed occupatione, pro modulo suo, magnus venator. Huic spiritus valde superciliosus improperavit de sua frivola occupatione, preceptiens ut plus divino servitio indulgeret; dicensque quod valde male legebant Matutinas 3 [suas], et pessime Missam suam. Eratque tam frequens talis colloquio, tamque familiaris, quod mater nec filius timuerunt communicare cum spiritu supra dicto. Inter multa talis colloquio genera, dixit spiritus sacerdoti,—"Tali igitur die venabaris cum Johanne Hervy, sed nihil prehendistis. Et tu," inquit, "cur nutris canes, quos exhibere non potes de proprio, sed, pro rei familiaris inopia, pene fame

1 The other names are omitted in orig.; as also, in Faustina B. ix.
2 The name of the locality is omitted in orig.; as also, in Faustina B. ix.
3 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
4 "inquit in Faustina B. ix."
"perimis? Qui ideo sunt ita debiles, quod vix valent A.D. 1397.
"currere super pedes. Et ego, crede mihi, tali die
"talem de tuis interfeci canem, quia fuit tam debilis
"et macilentus, tamque miserabilis apparebat."


Aliud valde grande mirabile contigit in parochia de Tudynhtune eo anno, et eodem pene tempore quo narravimus apparuisse primo spiritum supradictum. Mulier quaedam de villa praefata, nequam spiritu agitata, se suspendit, sed dum adhuc vitalis spiritus hæret in corpore, supervenit ejusdem mulieris maritus. Qui, videns infortunium, abscidit cordam qua suspenderatur femina, et corpus fovit, refocillavitque, donec spiritum resumpsisset. Confortans eam, monuit ut confidenter ageret, et officia matrisfamilias gereret, ut solebat; que fecit sic per tempus aliquod. Sed post Pascha, iterum daemonio superata, se suspendisse voluit, sed reste rumpente, illa corruit 3 semiviva; cum-

---

1 John i. 1. 2 miserere in Faustina B. ix. 3 Apparently seminca in orig.; it is semiviva in Faustina B. ix.; but possibly, semineca may be the word intended.
A.D. 1397. *que flatum recuperasset, cucurrit ad lacum situm in pomerio, aqua lutoque profundissimum, utpote sex vel septem pedes habentem in profunditate; in quam cum impetu desiliens capite deorsum, semet mergere conabatur. Quae licet trina vice caput immersisset in profundum, nec tamen mergi contigisset, pro voto, ascendit de lacu, et veniens intravit domum sororis suae; quae, tantis ejus infortuniiis condolens, monuit ut confiteretur, et tantam vesaniam depelleret mente sua. Praeparavit lectum, in quem fecit eam nudam ingredi, quia pene pro frigore fuerat exanimata; in lectoque collocatam monuit ne surgeret, donec illa exisset ad domum dictae mulieris, et quaesisset sibi novos pannos de propriis, atque siccos.

Cumque soror exisset, ut ad domum sororis pergeret pro pannis deferendis, illa, se solam conspiciens, surgit, et universa perlustrat in camera. Quae casu videns gladium, qualem vocat vulgaris "baselardum," pendentem super murum, apprehendit et incurvavit se super eum, semetique per ventrem transverberavit, et dorsum, trina vice. Sed cum cerneret se nec sic mori posse, laboravit extrahere cor de loco suo; putans si cor fuisse extractum, quod ultra vivere non valeret. Cumque pro strictitudine vulneris nequiret ad cor manus inferre, sumpto mucrone gladii cum quo se vulneraverat, ampliavit vulnerum pristinum ad quantitatem semipedalem, impressaque manu, extraxit intestina, quae cultello praedicto secuit et comminuit super quoddam scabellum, et in aream domus partes sparsit.

Interea supervenit soror ejus; supervenerunt et alii, cum sacerdote parochiae, et factum videntes tam horribile, stupefacti nimirum primo, et nimis attoniti, horruerunt. Illa siquidem, inter hae scelera mente efferata, tam terribiliter rotavit oculos, qui quasi ful-

* suos in Faustina B. ix.  |  * ingressaque in Faustina B. ix.
minei apparebant, quod diu dubitabant quid facere A.D. 1397.
oporteret. Tandem, post longam cunctationem, sacerdos
ingressus, cum esset spiritum redditura, monuit
eam de Deo cogitare, et omnem abjicere desperationem;
utque confiteretur hortatus est, pollicens sibi indubie
remissionem peccatorum, si jam converti vellet
ad eum qui pendebat in cruce pro ea et pro Judæis:
peroravit et, sumens argumentum quod Deus eam salvare
decrevit, qui totiens de tam abominabili morte præserveservaverat eandem. Tunc concepta fiducia, confessæ est
satis poenitens, suscipitque viaticum in fide recta, et
supervixit postea tribus horis. Tandem defuncta est,
magnam spem relinquens mortalibus de Dei misericordia,
quod semper petentibus sit parata.

Circa festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, venerunt nunceii de Alemannia, Praepositus Coloniensis et alii
qui, Regis levitatem et ambitionem cognoscentes, sug-
gesserunt ei quod electus, vel certe eligendus, erat in
Imperatorem. Qui mox fidem adhibens, eundem Prae-
positum remuneravit, et ejus socios, muneribus excess-
sivis; misitque illie ambassatores ad cognoscendum si
vere foret electus, vel saltem eligendus, ut præsenteur.
Qui redeuntes renunciaverunt maximam partem elec-
torum in ejus personam consensisse; solum duos aut
tres minime consentium præbuisse, quia si in terra pro-
pria non potuit suos subditos castigare, quomodo pos-
set omnes longe lateque subjectos gubernare imperio?
Et ideo suggererunt munerandos eos qui dissenserunt,
blanditiisque in partem Regis alliciendos. Hoc autem
utrum finxerunt ad commovendum Regis in
dominos, Ducem Gloverniæ, Comites Arundeliæ et
Warwici, et cæteros, vel reportaverunt pro vero responso,
ignoratur; unum certe scitur, quod ab illo tempore
coepit tyrannahizzare, populum apporiare, grandes sum-
mas pecuniæ mutuari, ita quod nullus prælatus, nulla

1 qui diu in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1397. civitas, nullus civis, nullus omnino notatus dives, per totam Angliam, sic se potuit occultare, quin oportuit de sua pecunia mutuum Regi dare. Habebant executores hujus negotii secum litteras regali sigillo signatas, intus quidem continentes summam quam volebant petere, sed non indorsatas, donec invenissent tales a quibus petere aliquid voluerunt: Qui, venientes ad urbes et villas, inquisierunt occulte qui praestabant divitiis, et mox accepto cujusque [nomine], indorsaverunt litteras, tanquam specialiter talibus destinatas. Sicque infinitam pecuniam callidi procuratores Regis regio marsupio comportabant.

Circa dies istos, vel ambitione Comitis Huntyngdoniae, vel avaritia, ut quidam putant, Papæ, concessi sunt sequentes Articuli dicto Comiti:—Quod dictus Comes sit Capitaneus et Consiliarius Ecclesiae Romanae, et libere recipiatur, cum gente sua, solvendo debita pro victualibus, infra omnes villas, oppida, civitates, castra, munitiones, regna, territoria, de Patrimonio Beati Petri et Pauli, usque Romam, cessantibus quibuscunque curis inferiorum praelatorum, durante antedicta.

Item, quod possit vocare omnes praelatos Ecclesiae ad residentiam continuam.

Item, habeat plenarie potestatem inquiringdi judicia-liter de haeretica pravitate.

Item, quod possit dispensare cum toto Ordine Cister-ciensium, infra regnum Angliae, de esu carnium.

Item, quod habeat plenam potestatem de inquiringdo judicialiter de singulis appropriationibus ecclesiariurn, quibuscunque et qualitercunque factis, et ipsas appropriationes annullare et approbare, secundum quod justum sibi videtur.

Item, quod possit judicialiter cognoscere de omnibus testamentis, et potissime usurariorum.
REGIS ANGLIÆ. 201

Item, quod possit procedendo inquirere de singulis A.D. 1397. simoniace adeptis, et ipsa conferre.

Item, quod possit cognoscere de omnibus privilegiis, statutis, libertatibus, consuetudinibus, tam cleri exempti quam non exempti.

Item, quod habeat Cruciatam, in omnibus, sicut Dux Lankastriæ vel Henricus Northwicensis.

Item, quod habeat decimam, debitam Domino nostro Papæ, tam a clero exempto quam non exempto.

Item, quod habeat annun Jubilæum omnibus laborem corporalem sumentibus cum dicto Comite; sumentque pro judice spirituali in præmissis articulis Abbatem Nonantulanum, qui sit judex in spiritualibus, acsi Papa præsens esset.

Hoc anno, Thomas, Comes Notynghamiæ, per billam erroris, quam tulit contra Thomam, Comitem Warwici, recuperavit terras de Gowyr.

Post festum Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, incipiente anno vicesimo primo regni Regis Ricardi, a Conquæstu Secundii, cum jam videbatur Anglia in summa pace quiescere, et omnia prospera sperabantur aßutura, propter regalem magnificentiam, qui jam duxerat Regis Francorum filiam, et divitias ex pacto per tales nuptias acumulatas ipsi Regi, et treugas triginta annorum firmatas, et præsentiam tot et talium dominorum, quod et quales nulla extera regio poterat exhibere, repente et inopinate, Regis astutia, levitate, et insolentia, regio tota turbatur.

Sexto nempe Idus Julii, statuit celebrare convivium, quod suis infamis fuisse famosius, si malitia respondisset votis suis, 2quam fuit olim Herodis conventiculum. Revera fecit ad illud invitari Ducem Glowcestriæ, Comites Arundelii et Warwici, et plures alios quos odivit, ut occasione tali, tot proceres adunatos, sine turba

1 seu laborem in orig.  |  Faustina B. ix.  
2 quale in orig.; corrected from |  3 Matt. xiv. 6.
A.D. 1397. vel strepitu, capere potuisset; sed Dux, graviter infirmatus, se excusavit. Comes Arundelius, cujus melius fuit nota Regis malitia propter ipsa experimenta quae serat, venire ad convivium supersedit, expectans in castro suo de Reygate, bene munito. Solus Comes Warwick venit ad convivium ex invitatibus omnibus. [Cui] ipso die, ante prandium, Rex, ut erat simul; simularium dissimulatis, tam bonum vultum exhibuit, tam bona verba fecit, quod Comes nihil minus quam de Regis infidelitate dubitabat. Monuit nempe Rex, apprehensa manu Comitis, ut esset bono animo, et non tristaretur pro terrarum de Gower amissione; jurans quod etsi perdisset eas, ipse sibi terras ad tantum valorem provideret. Sed tamen cum finitum fuisse convivium, fecit Comitem arestari; quem cito postea misit ad , custodiendum usque ad tempus Parliamenti, quod statuit, in multorum perniciem, celebrare.

Eadem nocte, monuit Archiepiscopum, ut induceret fratrem suum, Comitem Arundelie, se sponte sibi reddere, jurans suo solito juramento, per Sanctum Johanne Baptistam, quod nihil mali pateretur in corpore, si se pacifice reddere voluerit. Quod dum Archiepiscopus intimavit fratri suo, Comiti, distulit consensisse, et fallacias, et ad hoc intenderet totis conatibus, ut eum posset tenere et occidere. Archiepiscopus tamen, in verbo Regis habens fiduciam, instituit importunius ut se redderet, promittens omnia haec nisi nebula, qua citissime dissolvenda fuit; et nisi se redderet, se et suos posteros forsan exhaerendos; dicebatur enim a plurimis, et opinio multorum fuit, quod ad nihil alium voluit tenere dictos

1 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
2 Apparently om in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
3 The name is omitted in orig. and in Faustina B. ix.
4 malitas in orig.
5 The context seems imperfect here.
6 nebula in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
dominos sub aresta, nisi ut monstraret nunciis Ale-
manis quod tali modo potuit suis dominis impe-
rare. qui inprimis de eo dixerint, quod illud solum
impedivit electionem, quod super suos proceres non
habuit potestatem; et cum per tempus aliquod detinu-
isset eos, donec eorum detentio nota fuisset Alemannis
et exteris, propositus eos pristinis dignitatis restituisse.

Itaque, monente Archipiscopo, Comes se reddidit, in-
fausta hora; qui missus est, custodiendus, in insulam
de Wecta, donec Parliamento proximo sitteretur.

Sub ejusdem noctis vespera, Rex misit ad Majorem
Londoniarum, jubens ut armaret quotquot inveniri
possent habiles ad arma in civitate, ut parati forent,
sub duarum aut trium horarum spatio, sequi Regem
quocunque vellet. Rex proinde, et Comes de Ruthlond,
de Kancia, de Huntingdonia, et de Notyngham, et quo-
quot erant de familia Regis, armati, cum Londonien-
sibus et auxiliariis quos contraherent pro tune potue-
runt, processerunt versus Plashi in Essexia, ubi Dux
Gloucestriffi morabatur; ignorantibus pro majori parte,
quorsum tenderent apparatus [iste]. Cumque propin-
quassent loco prædicto, Rex recensuit populum qui eum
secutus fuerat, in quodam campo; quorum numerus
autemabatur ad quindecim millia per præcones.

Tunc Rex allocutus est eos, dicens;—"Quicquid me
videritis facere, consimiliter etiam vos facere studete;
si me ad pugnam preparavero, ad proeliandum vos
præparete; sin alias, conquiescite, nemini damnum
vel læsionem quomodolibet inferentes." Præmisit
igitur Comitem de Rutland et ad castellum,
ut viderent quam summam defensorum Dux haberet
in castro. Timuit enim Ducis virtutem et pruden-

---

1 Indistinct and doubtful in orig.;

sub in Faustina B. ix.

2 qui prius in Faustina B. ix.

3 detentio in orig.

4 frater suus, infausta, in Faus-
tina B. ix.

5 Pleyschy in Estsexiam, in Faus-
tina B. ix.

6 Omitted in orig.; supplied from
Faustina B. ix.

7 An omission in orig., and in
Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1397. tiam; et idcirco non audebat eum aggredi, donec red-deretur securus de suorum numero defensorum. Sed accidit eo tempore, quod major pars familiae suae, accepta licentia, de castro recesserat, ad visitandum domos proprias et uxoribus. Cumque Rex audisset pene nullum intus remansisse cum Duce, mirabatur maxime; quia dictum sibi fuerat a susurrubus, quibus semper cre-debat, quod Dux paraverat se ad defensionem, adunatis occulte millibus bellatorum. Securior ergo factus, accessit ad locum, sequentibus eum, et præcedentibus, armatis et arcitenentibus, quos contraxerat, ut præ-fertur. Cui occurrit Dux, cum processione solenni presbyterorum et clericorum de suo collegio, quamquam infirmaretur gravissime; praefertens omnem reverentiam et humilitatem, prout decuit, Regi suo. Rex vero, mox ut Dux appropinquavit ad eum, et incurvavit se, flexo genu, injecta manu in humerum Ducis, arestavit eum. Cui Dux humiliter respondebat, quod libenter pareret, non solum suae aestationi, sed etiam aestationi minimi de regali familia quem ad hoc Rex direxisse voluisset. Tunc Rex ait,—"Et multis "ita," inquit, "belle patru?" Sic enim solebat suos patruos honorare. Dux respondit, in veritate quod ita. Tunc Rex praecessit, sequens processionem versus Capellam, et Dux a retro sequebatur, nullo interposito inter Duce et Regem; et dum praecessisset Rex paululum, respiciens Ducem, ait,—"Per Sanctum Johannem "Baptistam, belle patru, quod actum est, erit [pro "meliori] pro me et vobis." Ingressusque Capellam, adoravit corpus Dominicum, honorifice in medio reli-quiaram collocatum, quæ illie erant in numero grandi, de pretio valde magno. Cumque vidisset reliquias tam ordinate dispositas, et in medio corpus Christi inter duo candelabra auræ, cereosque accensos, tam re-verenter collocatum,—"Quam bene," inquit, "belle "patru, scitis facere, quando multis;" tuncque sub-

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
junxit,—“Ite jam, et cibum sumite, quia isthic manere A.D. 1397. non potestis; sed transibitis ad locum ad quem vos destinabo, postquam sumpseritis cibum.”

Procidens ergo, Dux rogavit ut limitaret personas quæ cum eo forent in obsequio. Cui respondit, quod renunciaret sibi, priusquam de prandio surrexisset, quot de suis familiaribus irent cum eo. Dux ergo divertit in hospitium, prope Capellam situm. Rex vero se, cum suis, contulit ad castellum, ubi Dux fecerat præparari, pro Rege magnaque familia, cibaria generis diversi sufficientia, videlicet, de carnibus atque piscibus, quia feria quarta fuit; preoccupatus namque fuerat de Regis proposito, et ideo necessaria præparavit pro Regis adventu subito: unde Rex mirabatur, et qui cum eo erant, quod in promptu talia repererunt.

Dum Rex sederet in jentaculo, misit ad Ducem, limitans numerum personarum quæ cum eo essent, monens ut non diu expectaret in loco. Post jentaculum, Rex, cum magna turba, recessit; relinquens, ad Ducis custodiam, Comitem Kancie, et Dominum Thomam Percy, domus regiae Senescalum. Cumque Dux, post jentaculum, esset recessurus, colligatis sarcinulis quas oportuit secum haberi, valefecit uxori suas primum, mulieri, inter omnes regni dominas, prudenti, pudicae, sanctæ vitæ, et cui nulla par posset uspiam reperiri. Monuitque eam, ut preces faceret Regi suo, confidenterque juraret, quod nunquam fuit proditor, volens malum sibi. Ascensurusque caballum, licet graviter infirmaretur, vultu laetissimo dixit ad dominos qui eum præstolabantur,—“Quo,” inquit, “ibimus? Quis autem erit ducor [noster], ego, vel vestrum aliquis?” Respondentibus illis, cum reverentia,—“Vos eritis ducor nostor, vos deecet nos ducere,” jocunde subjunxit,—“Vadamus ergo, in Dei nomine, quocunque me ducere menti sedit.” Sicque ductus est ad Calesiam, sub arta

---

1 jentaculo in orig. | Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from
A.D. 1397. custodia conservandus; eo tempore captus, arestatus, et abductus, quo Regem sibi amicissimum fuisse putabat, quippe qui parum ante muneribus, et honoribus, et dominiis magni valoris, eum ita cumularat, ut merito posset aestimare nullum magis [carum] Regi fuisse, ex omnibus qui in terra fuerant.

Impletaque fuit tunc propheta 2 comminatoria, metrica composita, 3 [et] per decennium ante vulgata; quae talis est:—

"Vulpes cum cauda caveat, dum cantat alauda,
"Ne rapiens pecus simul rapiatur, et equus."

"Vulpem cum cauda" vocavit Duce, quia semper ferebatur super hastam, in ejus praesentia, cauda vulpis. "Dum cantat alauda" dixit, quia mane ad cantus alaudae, prout contigit, capiendus fuit; quo capto, imminebat et raptus pecudis rapientis, id est, Comitis Warwici; et equi, id est, Comitis Arundelae; quia alter pro signo ferebat 6 ursum, alter equum.

Auditis dictorum dominorum captionibus atque detentionibus, in universitate communi per totum regnum, factus est luctus publicus, non secus quam si jam regnum esset per manus hostium destruendum. Tanta spes omnium in illis fuit reposita, et praecipue in Duce Glovemiae, quod, illo vivente et valente, putabant feliciter regnum posse interius gubernari, et exterius ab hostibus preservari. Cernens igitur Rex tantam afectionem plebis erga dictos [dominos], et metuens insurrectionem communium, qui jam amaro fuerunt animo, proclamari fecit per totum regnum, quod haec captio dominorum non fuit facta pro quibusquum offenditionibus commissis antiquitus, sed pro novis transgressionibus, factis contra Regem, postquam de veteribus delictis

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 comminatoria in Faustina B. ix.
3 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
4 equus in orig. and Faustina B. ix.
5 Repeated in orig.
6 This word is partly blotted out in orig.
7 Omitted in orig. and Faustina B. ix.
8 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
obtinuerunt chartas perdonationis de eodem; prout A.D. 1397, monstraretur publice toti populo, in proximo Parliamento futuro;—sed hac proclamatio fuit omnino falsa, prout rei exitus comprobavit.

Interea fiebant per omnia regni loca orationes et processiones pro dictis dominis, et pro Rege; ut Deus Omnipotens faceret eum [eis] placabilem, et converteret cor ejus ab odio in amorem procerum praeceptorum. Audientes Rex tales devotiones factas, et faciendas, pro dictis dominis, metuens ne saevitiae sua damnatione pateretur, si impediretur a suo proposito malevolo per supplicationes Ecclesiae, inhibuit districte Pontificibus, aliisque prelatis, ne processiones facerent pro causa praemissa; tamen cupiens impedire Dominum, ne converteretur, et sanaret eum a morbo suae pessimae voluntatis.


Rex, ut jam diu conceptum propositum confirmare posset, et de dictis dominis vindicari, citari fecit omnes

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 sana in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
3 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
4 Omitted in orig. and Faustina B. ix.; “Thomas” is the name.
5 The word dom (dominus) is inserted here, by mistake, in orig. and Faustina B. ix.
D. 1397. regni status ad Parliamentum Londoniis, post Octavas Nativitatis Sanctæ Mariæ, celebrandum; ad quod convenire jussit omnes dominos adherentes sibi, cum sagittariis et viris armatis, tanquam fuissent ad bellum, et contra hostes, omnino processuri. Ipse vero Rex, ut efficaci perficere posset nequam conceptus, congregari fecit malefactores de Comitatu Cestriae, ad vallandum latus suum, quorum tutelae totaliter se commisit, ad numerum magnum valde: qui, natura bestiales, parati erant ad omnem nequitiam perpetrandam; ita ut ex-post tanta surrexit eis insolentia, ut Regem reputabant in socium, et alios, quanquam valentes et dominos, haberent in despectum. Et hii non erant de generosis patriæ, sed tracti vel de rure, vel sutoria, vel alia quavis, arte; ut qui domi vix digni reputati fuerant detrahere calceos magistrorum, hic se reputabant pares et socios dominorum. In tantum crevit eorum importuna superbia, fastus, et crudelis audacia, ut ex-post, cum Rege transeuntes per regnum, tam infra hospitium Regis quam extra, fideles Regis ligeos impune verberarent, vulnerarent, et occiderent, nimis crudeliter, et bona populi predarentur, nihil pro suis victualibus solvere statuientes; uxores etiam, aliasque mulieres, raptentes; nemine audentes contradicere, violaverunt.

Nec expedebat quenquam contravenire tantis impietatibus, crudelitabus, vel oppressionibus; quia, si quisquam se conquestionem Regis protestaretur, mox sine misericordia trucidabatur indilate. Si quis resistere parvisset, a superveniente multitudine oppressum batur, et cultello vel gladio necabatur. Fuit nempe talis eorum conditio, quod soli nunquam præsumerent obviare soli, non quidem virorum minimo; sed cum placeret malefacere, et in aliquem vindicari, glomeratim currerent ad opprimendum unum solum hominem, et suam malitiam exercendum.

1 surrepit in Faustina B. ix. 2 nisi in Faustina B. ix. 3 repubant in orig. 4 solo in orig. and Faustina B. ix.
Erexit autem Rex quandam domum amplissimam in Palatio Westmonasterii, quae pene totum spatium Palatii occupavit; in qua sibi thronus parabatur altissimus, et pro cunctis regni statibus locus largus, atque pro appellantibus in uno latere locus specialiter depatus, et in alio latere locus reis pro responsis assignatus; seorsum vero pro militibus Parliamenti, qui non fuerunt electi per communitatem, prout mos exigit, sed per regiam voluntatem. Quorum primicerius fuit Dominus Johannes Bushy, vir crudissimus, ambitiosus supra modum, et rei alienae cupidus; et qui, pro terrena substantia vel consequendis honoribus, fidem et conscientiam deserere parvipendit. Erat tamen saeulari prudentia plenus, et astutia, pollens eloquentia super cunctos ejus fortunae milites; unde Rex constituit eum Prolocutorem praesentis Parliamenti. Associatique sibi fuere, Regis conniventia, plures alii, qui nihil dicere vel petere proponebant, nisi quod placet regi voluntati; et e contra, quicquid jussum foret eis ex parte Regis, proponere, petere, et importunis clamoribus extorquere, parati fuerunt. Sed horum principalium fuerunt Dominus Thomas Grene et Dominus Wilhelmus Bagot, in nullo dispares Johannis Buschi in vitius aut peccatis.

Lecta igitur causa Parliamenti, in qua continebatur quod Rex illud ordinaverat pro reformatione diversarum transgressionum, et oppressionum, et equitationum, contra pacem factarum, ac contra Regem, per Duci Gloucestriss, Comites Arundelliae et Warwici, proditore, et contra regiam majestatem; mox Johannes Bushy subjunxit suum prologum, diu ante repetitum, orans celsam Regis excellentiam, ex parte totius communitatis, ut tam graves defectus, tam nocivi, tam ardui
A.D. 1397. proditores, ad condignum punirentur; et praecipue Ar-
chiepiscopum Cantuariensem, qui juxta Regem sedit, quem appellabant proditorem maximum; qui cum fuisse multis de causis fidelior Regi ceteris debuisset, eum per malum consilium, proditiosoque suggestionem, callide circumvenit, inducendo Regem ut concederet chartas perdonationis suo maximo proditori, Comiti Arundelliae, fratri suo.

Ad haece cum Archiepiscopus respondisse voluisset, Rex noluit dare ei locum respondendi, sed manu sibi indicens silentium, jussit ut resideret in loco suo, promittens quod satis bene foret illi, si taceret, ut Rex jussisset, ea vice. Consequeuter, Johannes Bussy, urgens negotium, rogavit ne concederetur Archiepiscopo tempus ad respondendum;—"Quia," inquit, "ejus ingenium tantum est, tamque nostrae sensus praecellit, quod timemus quod ejus astutia nos omnes circumveniret, atque lederet." Igitur Archiepiscopo non dabatur respondendi copia, sed modo a Rege promittebatur spes optima, praesentisque perturbationis bonus finis.

Johannes Bussy in cunctis suis propositionibus non humanos honores exhibuit Regi, sed divinos, adinveniens verba adulatoria et insueta, mortalibus minus congruentia; ita ut quotiens Regem alloqueretur, in throno sedentem, extentis brachis, supplicibus manibus eum adoraret, deprecans suam, ut eum adorandam, majestatem, ut haec vel illa concederet. At Rex juvenis, honores ambiens, adulationes diligentissimae, non repressit, ut decuit; sed in his nimium delectabatur.

Cum igitur, ut praediximus, Rex exclusisset Archiepiscopum a response, Johannes Bussy, assumpto more adulandi solito, rogavit ex parte communium, ut

---

*1 man in orig., manum in Faustina B. ix.*
*2 circumveniet atque lederet, in Faustina B. ix.*
*3 tamen a, in Faustina B. ix.*
chartae perdonationum factarum dictis proditoribus, Ducis A.D. 1397. Gloverniae, Comitibus Arundelliae et Warwici, revocarentur per consensus omnium qui huic presenti Parliamento affuerunt. Rex inprimis protestabatur hujusmodi chartas extortas ab eo fuisse, et nutibus, gestuque corporis, demonstrabat illas parvipendendas. Proinde jussu Regis quærebatur a singulis, tam prælatis quam dominis temporalibus, ut quæ sentirent super hujusmodi revocationibus dicerent singulatim. Respondunt igitur prælati, timore terreno perterriti, chartas tales esse revocabiles ad Regis beneplacitum; donec perventum fuit ad Archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, — nam moris est talium responsa ab inferioribus primo petere, tam de temporalibus personis quam de spirituallibus, donec perveniatur gradatim ad personas gradus supræmi.—Cum ergo petetur a Cantuariensi, si tales chartæ forent revocabiles ad Regis voluntatem, respondit quod persona Regis tam sublimis fuit, et tam ardua, a qua talis perdonatio emanavit, quod non debebat dicere fore revocabiles tales chartas. Nihilo minus determinatum est finaliter, contra Deum et justitiam, atque personam regiam, chartas hujusmodi revocandas. Nempe contra Regis personam quam maxime resultabat hujusmodi gratiae revocatio, cum misericordia sit solii regalis confirmatio, et qui tollit a Rege misericordiam, tollit regalis solii firmamentum.

Johannes Bussi, obtenta ista generali revocatione, dixit Comitem Arundelliae habere et aliam chartam specialem pro persona sua, concessam sibi per Regem, post primæ chartæ concessionem; quam postulavit, ex parte communisatis, premisis inenarrabilibus verbis adulationis, sicut aliam, revocari. Quærebatur ergo de prælatis, quid sentirent de prædicta charta, si foret revocabilis. Qui, vel jam timore perterriri, vel sensu fraudem ostendit, in quibus rerum non satis fuit;

---

1 talium qwestionum responsa, in Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
3 tam in Faustina B. ix.
ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI,

A.D. 1397. vacui, censuerunt et hanc chartam, sicut et aliam, revocandam. Qui si constantes in veritate stetissent, sicut perante legisperiti, scilicet Justiciarii, steterant in hoc casu, qui dixerant eos esse manifestos Regis prodiiores, qui tollere vellent a Rege quod est suum prerogativum specialissimum, scilicet, suam misericordiam et gratiam erga subjectos delinquentes, non utique tali morte fuisse adjudicatus Comes Arundelii supra dictus. Dederunt ergo locum prelati judicio sanguinis in hoc facto, ita quod dubitat tur 2 [a pluribus] si incurrent irregularratatem pro negottio memorato; unde contigit quod propter istud minus peccatum inciderent in alium majus peccatum consequenter; nam exactum est ab eis, vellent, nollent, ut laicam personam constituerunt procuratorem pro eisdem, qui illorum vice consentiret ad judicium sanguinis dandum in dicto Parliamento, si necessa foret, et occasio emersisset. Qui licet hoc concedere minime voluissent, urgentem tamen Rege et quibusdam dominis temporalibus, sed præcipue Johanne Busshi suadente, ut auferrentur a prælatis sua temporalia, nisi vellent facere procuratorem; — "Quia ipsi," inquit, " suas habent curias, in quibus judicium sanguinis exercetur, ad eorum jussum et arbitrium; et justum est, ex quo possideant temporia, et pro parte sint domini temporales, convenientque ad Parliamentum pro suis temporalibus, quod ad temporalia judicia consensum præbeant, vel in personis pro priis vel alienis."

Compus sunt igitur facere litteram procuratoriam pro dicto negottio. 4 Consilio Archiepiscopii sic concluserunt,—"salvis Ecclesiae Sanctae privilegiis et liberta- tres quis quibusuncunque." Quam clausulam Rex runcanti naso, torvoque respiciens vultu,—"Non erit ita," inquit, " per Sanctum Johannem Baptistam, sed simpliciter,

1 causu in orig. 2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. 3 incurrent in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. 4 quam consilio in Faustina B. ix.
"et sine conditione, procuratorium vestrum fiet." A.D. 1397.

Interea Archiepiscopus, confusus in Regis amicitia, de consilio ipsius Regis se absentavit de Parliamento, sperans de Regis promisso, prout idem Rex ante jura-verat, quod nihil attentaretur in præjudicium dicti Archiepiscopi in ejus absentia; et quod ista subtractio foret pro meliori, commodoque Archiepiscopi manifesto. Sed tamen contrarium hujus promissi contigit; dum ad instantiam dicti Johannis Busshi, dum absens, adjudicatus fuit in perpetuum [exilium] et quod non ultra sex hebdomadas remaneret in regno.

Confestim Archiepiscopo Cantuariensi in exilium condemnato, Rex misit ad Curiam pro translatione ejus, et ordinatione Rogeri de Walden, Thesaurarii regni su. Cui mox Papa providit de Archiepiscopatu; viro penitus insufficienti et illiterato, sed quia præsumpsit ascendere cubile patris sui, justo valde Dei judicio, post bienium reprobatus est, et abjectus, immo, dejectus fuit, auctoritate Papæ predicti.

---

1 urum in Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig., and in Faustina B. ix.
3 contigerit in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
5 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.

Johannes Bussy et sui complices, hiis auditis, procederunt, et importune clamaverunt, ut fieret judicium de proditore,—"Hoc," inquit, "nos, vestri fideles com—" munes, petimus fieri, et oramus." Ad quem satis

1 Omitted in orig., and in Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Paustina B. ix.
3 vocatusque in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
modeste convertit vultum, nihil omnino turbatum, Comes, A.D. 1397. 
et dixit,—“Non fideles communes hoc petunt, sed tu quis 
“sis, novi satis bene.” Tune appellantes octo, stantes His ac- 
ex opposito, projectis chirothecis, prosequebantur appel- 
lationem suam, parum ante lectam, et offerentes se battle. 
duello pro assertione appellationis suae, corporisque ges-
ticationibus et indecoris saltationibus, se magis repre-
sentabant tortores theatrales, quam milites vel viros 
sobrios. Sed ultra omnes, Comes Canciæ, sororis sue 
filiius, ridicule se commovit. 

Tunc Comes dixit ;—“Si,” inquit, “liber esset, et 
“placeret domino meo ligeo, non refugerem duello 
“probare vos mendaces de appellatione vestra.” Senes-
callus Angiæ dixit ei,—“Quid,” inquit, “respondere 
“vis ad ea quæ tibi objiciuntur ab hiis ?” Comes re-
respondit, quod habuit de gratia Regis, in qua speravit 
quam maxime, chartam generalem perdonationis, quam 
sibi petiiit allocari. Dux respondit, quod charta illa 
fuit revocata per prælatos omnes, et proceres, et opor-
tebat ut alius responsum pro se requireret congruum ; 
quia charta illa non poterat sibi suffragari. Comes 
dixit, quod adhuc habuit et chartam aliam specialem, 
diu post primam chartam sibi concessam, ex mera 
motiva Regis, et gratia ; quam supplicavit se posse 
juvare. Dux inquit, et hanc esse similiter revoca-
tam. Cumque post hæc Comes non haberet quod re-
pondere potuisset, Rex, assumpto sceptrro manu sua, 
inuit Ducii ut proferret judicium contra Comitem 
memoratum. 

Dux igitur verbis hujuscemodi usus est ;—“Quia,” 
inqvit, “convictus es etc., tu eris tractus ad furcas, et 
“ibidem suspensus et exenteratus, et exta combusta, 
“et decapitatus, et quarterizatus.” Cumque, post hoc 
judicium, parum conticuisset, subjuxit ;—“Rex, de sua 
“gratia, quia sibi junctus es consanguinitate, et unus 

---

1 dixit in Faustina B. ix.  
2 est in orig., by inadvertence ;  
3 ei consanguinitate in Faustina B. ix.  
corrected from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1397. " de regni paribus, remittit has poenas tuas usque ad " ultimam, ita quod tantum poenam subeas capitalem."

1 Mox abductus fuit de loco judicii, et sine dilatatione coactus iter carpere versus Montem Turris. Præcessit eum, et subsequebatur, satis feralis turba Cestrensium; quibus in hoc Parliamento solis licuit, ex edicto Regis, arma ferre. Eduxerat autem eum ad mortem ejus affines, sed in isto perfidi, Comes Notynghamiae, qui duxerat ejus filiam, et Comes Cancæ, nepos suus ex sorore, et Comes Huntyngdoniæ Johannes Holande, ²[equis] vecti sublimibus, stipati viris insolentibus, armatis securibus et gladiis, arcubus et sagittis. Sed Comes, nec cum responsis astitit, nec cum sententiam tristem subiit, nec cum de loco judicii ad locum mortis transit, neque cum jam, flexo poplite, præstolabatur ictum gladii, vultu concidit; sed servans semper faciei colorem uniformem, non plus palluit quam si fuisset ad epulas invitatius.

Egressus ³ primo de Palatio, rogavit ut, laxatis manibus, illa libertate posset perfrui, ut propriis manibus liberaret erga pauperibus, sedentibus ab eo loco usque ⁴ad Le Charyng Cros, aurum quod in bursa gerebat. Qua libertate sibi concessa, pecunia cum summa devotione distributa, prout ei placuit, brachia sua durissime constringuntur a tergo. Ille vero nexus ⁵[gradiens] confitebatur cuidam fratri Augustinensi devote satis, et expost incepit dicere cum eodem fratrem Officium Mortuorum; sicque constrictus incessit, impellentibus eum satis inhumaniter dictis Cestrensibus, per celebres vicos Londoniarum, cunctis gementibus et miserantibus fortunam tanti viri, qui parum ante inter Christianorum proceres tam famous, tam dives, tam

---

¹ Moxque in Faustina B. ix. ² Omitted, with an hiatus, in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. ³ vero de in Faustina B. ix. ⁴ ad Charingge Cros, in Faustina B. ix. ⁵ Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
nobilis, habebatur, ut etiam gentes remotae eum pro A.D. 1397.
sua probitate et militia, cæterisque dotibus, prædicarent; cernentes, inquam, talem, et qui saltem intulerat perante patriæ, hostibus contritis et devictis, more latronis vinciri, pungi, dehonestari, et ad mortem cogi turpissimam. Lamentabatur, et eo maxime tristabantur, quod nequibant eum eripere de manu fortiorum ejus. Utque pervenit ad locum supplicii, juxta Turrim, urgebant eum supranominati Comites, qui ejus cepere custodiam, 1 [ut] vel saltem nunc fateretur se proditorem. Negavit ille plane se hoc facturum,—
"Quia nunquam," ait, "fui Regi proditor, verbo vel "facto; hoc unum confiteor, quod ratione 2 meæ "ruditatis nescivi, vel non potui, placere Regi, prout "desideravit. Quamobrem multotiens fuit offensurus "mihi; et de hoc tantum doleo et pœnito, et veniam "ab eo peto." Conversi ergo ad fratem, qui ejus confessionem audierat, in superbia et abusione justerunt, ut ipse fateretur pro Comite crimen prodictionis in Regem,—"Tibi," inquit, "sua secreta revelavit." Quibus frater,—"Secreta," 3 inquit, "mihi confessus "est, sed quod fuit proditor minime fabeatur. Qui "licet hoc fassus fuisset, credatis quod hoc vobis nulla "ratione revelarem."

Conversus Comes, cum jam genua flexisset ad per-
cussionem, et intuens attentius suos affines, Comites Notynghamiae atque Cancæ, ita ferventes ut acceleraretur ejus decollationis—"Vere," inquit, "vos decuisset "absentes fuisset in isto negotio. Ego vos nempes edu-
cavi, ditavi, et extuli, et vos dedecus rependitis "mihi, velut ingrati. Certe tempus, Deo dante, veniet, "et in brevi, quando tot mirabuntur de vestris in-
"fortunis, quot de meis casibus modo mirantur." Deinde data iudicii venia, atque pacis osculo, rogavit

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 me in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
3 quidem mihi in Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1397. ne eum torqueret diutius, sed unico ictu caput ejus amputare studeret. Tentavitque digitis propriis aciem gladii quo fuerat feriendus;—“Satis,” inquit, “acutus est. Facito quod facturus [es].” Qui ictu unico decapitavit eum; at corpus truncum se erexit in pedes, stetisque, nullo sustentante, per tantum spatium temporis quo Oratio Dominica posset dici: tandem corruit in terram pronum. Fratres Augustinenses tulerunt caput et corpus [ejus], et in sua ecclesia, prope majus altare, honorifice sepelierunt.

Executores ergo præmissae sententiae, revertentes ad Regem, nunciaverunt ei, quasi gaudentes, de morte Comitis memorati. Sed Rex, licet tunc lætaretur de perpetrato negotio, mox sub brevi temporis spatio indicibiliter turbabatur in somnis et in somnio; videbatur nempe umbra Comitis, mox ut dormire coepisset, ante ejus oculos volitare, minari sibi, et horribiliter deterrere eum, quasi diceret sibi illud poeticum quod habetur in Ibin:—

“Me vigilans cernes, taciturnæ noctis in umbris
Excutiam somnos, visus adesse, tuos.
5Denique quicquid ages, ante os oculosque videbor,
Et querar, et nulla sede quietus eris.
Tunc quoque, factorum veniam memor, umbra,
Tuorum;
Insequar et vultus, ossea forma, tuos.”

Rex proinde tantis conterritus in somnis imaginibus, cum præ timore medios somnos rumperet, male-dixit dici in quo novisset Comitem memoratum. Jamque dormire non ausus sine vigilibus, conduit trecentos de Cestrensibus, qui nocturnas vigilias inter se dividerent, et servarent eum. Alteratusque est ab

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 In allusion to the poem of Ovid, so called, lines 155–158, 141, 142.
4 tacitis ego notos in in Faustina B. ix.; tacitis ego noctis being the correct reading.
5 Deinde in Faustina B. ix.
hoc tempore tantum mente, ut jam nihil cogitaret de
bono regimine, sed plus se tyrannum quam regem de-
inceps moribus exhiberet. Auxitque sibi mentis insa-
niam, quod audivit vulgus commune Comitem reputare
pro Martyre, peregrinationesque fieri ad corpus ejus, mi-
raculaque declarari; et, inter cætera, quod caput ejus,
quod fuerat de corpore separatum, miraculose foet
conjectum. Igitur insanus et furibundus jussit Duci
Lancastriæ, Comitibusque Northumbriæ, Ruthlandiæ,
Canciæ, Notynghamiæ, aliisque, quorum nomina non
tenemus, ut sub noctis opacæ tempore properarent ad
ecclesiam Fratrum Augustinensium, et viderent si vere
caput Comitis, prout dicebatur, corpori foet unitum.
Qui, jussa compleentes, nocte fere media excitatis ter-
ribiliter fratibus, fecerunt corpus de terra extrahi, ca-
putque, quod filo consutum fuit corpori, cum jam decem
dies fuisset in sepulcro, de corpore divelli iterato. Qui-
bus sic conspectis atque patratis, renunciaverunt Regi
quæ fecissent et vidissent. Regis tamen non ita con-
quievit animus, sed jussit ut fratres locum sepulturae
tegerent pavimento, ne sciretur in vulgo ubi requi-
esceret corpus ejus; et deponerent panni, vel signa,
quæ fixa fuerant ad ejus memoriam in ipso loco.
Jussit etiam ad sex vel septem fratres, qui de introdutione fuerunt fratri[s] Thomæ de Ascheburne,
Doctoris in Theologia, et Confessoris dicti Comitis, in
diversis patris exulare.

Post mortem Comitis Arundeliiæ, Comes Warwici, Dominus Thomas de Bello Campo, productus est ad
astandum Parlamentali judicio. Qui, constitutus in
loco reorum, cum audisset appellationem lectam contra
eum, in qua notatus fuit de pridione, respondit
quod nunquam fuit in mente sua pridiose facere
contra Regem, nec putabat illas equitationes et con-

1 *fore* in orig. and *Faustina B. ix.*

2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from *Faustina B. ix.*

3 Omitted in *Faustina B. ix.*

4 *nominatus* in *Faustina B. ix.*
A.D. 1397. gregationes potuisse referri ad proditionem. Requisitus
igitur quid nunc vellet dicere, postquam jurisprudenti factum illud 1proditionem interpretati sunt, evidentibus argumentis; ille vero petiti misericordiam 2 de Rege pro comissis: Rex autem quaesivit ab illo, nunquid vellet diffideri se sic equitasse etc., cum Duce Gloverya et Comite Arundelae, ut audiverat legi in appellacione praefata. Comes dixit se ininciari non posse quod equitaverit cum eisdem,—"Qui utinam, 'inquit, "nunquam visissem oculos eumdem." Tunc Rex;—

---

1 Apparently, proditionis in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
2 a Rege in Faustina B. ix.
3 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
5 ubi in Faustina B. ix.
6 promissionem postea, in Faustina B. ix.
7 penuria protrahere vitam, in Faustina B. ix.
SUB HIIS DIEBUS, REX, UT OMNEM SUAM POSSET COM-PLERE MALITIAM IN DUCEM GLOVERNAE, MISIT CALESIAM QUEMDAM JUSTICIARIUM, DICTUM WILLELMUM DE RIKILLE, HIBERNICUM NATIONE, QUI REQUERRET A DICTO DUCE, NONQUID FECISSET EQUITATIONES CONTRA REGEM ETC., ET SUFFOCATAM QUÆCUNQUE DUX IN HAC MATERIA FATERETUR, REGIQUE REFERRET, ET PARLIAMENTO, QUÆCUNQUE DE DICTIS VERBIS DUCIS GLOUCESTRIÆ COMPERisset. 1 Factum fuit quod ipse renunciaret verba Duci, sed in alia sententia quam Dux intenderat, nec esset conveniens testificatio sua. Rex itaque, 2 nitens Ducle viis omnibus quibus valebat occidere, et putans hoc non posse fieri publice, propter communes regni, qui diligebant eum tenerim, mandavit Comiti Notynghamiae, Marescallo, et Domino Thomae Moumbray, qui custodiam Ducis habebat Calesiam, ut occulte Ducem faceret jugulari. Ille vero, primo metuens tantum scelum committere, distulit pernicere jussa Regis. Quamobrem fertur quod Rex tantum commovebatur contra dictum Comitem, ut juraret ipsum occidendum, nisi celerius Ducem perimere matutasset. Qui tandem, tali modo coactus, Ducem evocatum nocte media, quasi ad redeundum in Angliam, duxit ad quoddam hospitium in villa Calesiae; ubi, amotis suis familiaribus, dictum Ducem suffocari fecit per quosdam valectos, ad dictum facinus perpetrandum primitus praeparatos. Qui, injectis culceitis, vel lectis pluma refertis, super ejus faciem, tam diu incumbentes super eum jacuerunt, eundem violenter opprimentes, et ejus halitum strangulantes, donec suffocatus spiritu privaretur.

Sicque mortuus est miserabiliter ille vir optimus, qui pro Regis commodis et honore, totiusque regni proventibus, semper insudarat, donec ei pro meritis beneficiis tam perfida compensatio reddetur.

---

1 Factumque in Faustina B. ix.
2 mittens in orig.; corrected from prorectibus in Faustina B. ix.

3 Assumpsit Rex sibi nomen Principis Cestriæ, ob amorem Cestrensis; Comes Derby, Henricus, creatus est Dux Herefordiæ; Comes Marescallus, Dux Northfolchiae; Comes Ruthlond, Dux Albemarie; Comes Canciæ, Dux Southreyæ; Comes Huntyngdone, Dux Excestriæ; Comitissa de Northfolchia, Ducissa de Northfolchia; Comes Somersete, Marchio de Somersete; Dominus Despencer, Comes Gloucestriæ; Dominus de

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 This hiatus occurs in orig., and | in Faustina B. ix.
3 Assumpsitque in Faustina B. ix.
Nevyle, Comes Westmerlandiae; Dominus Willelmus A.D. 1397.

Scrop, Camberlanus Regis, Comes de Wiltshire; Dominus Thomas Percy, Seneschallus domus regiae, Comes Wygorniam constituebatur.

Rex vero, quasi jam triumphasset ex infestissimis hostibus, sic superbivit, sic efferebatur vanis cogitationibus, ut jam respueret omne medium, et sic se supra se extolleret, ut mutaret arma sua, quae pater, et avus, et patrui sui, gestaverant, et adderet scuto suo arma Sancti Edwardi; sic ut anterior pars arma Sancti plena forent, et pars reliqua esset recognitio armorum parentum ejus.

Volens Rex magnificare personas quas dudum nominibus Ducum, Marchionis, vel Comitim, honoraverat, (quos vulgares derisorie vocabant, non “Duces,” sed “Dukettos,” a diminutivo,) contulit eis maximam partem terrarum Ducis Gloverniae, Comitum Arundelliæ et Warwici, &c [et exhaereditavit omnem eorum sobolem de haereditatibus quae eos continguerent ex parte patris]. Nec audebat quisquam pro veritate stare, vel fateri quod verum fuit, propter Regis tyrannidem atque malitiam; nempe quilibet eo majori timore percelsabantur verum loqui publice, quo cernebat Fratres Johannes Parys et 3, Doctores in Theologia, viros famosos, detineri in carcere, et usque ad summas pecuniarum, importabiles etiam locupletibus, multari et emungi, quia predicaverant de malo Regis regimine, et consiliariis ejus nequam. Erant 4 præcipui de Consilio, viri, juxta opinionem vulgi, pessimi, Dux de Almarle, Dux Northfolchiae, Dux Excestriæ, Comes de Wiltshire, Dominus 5 [Johannes] Bussy, Dominus 5 [Willel-

A.D. 1398. Anno graticæ millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo octavo, et regni Regis Ricardi 2 vicesimo secundo, tenuit idem Rex Natale solemniter apud Lichefeld; quo peracto, transtulit se Solopiam, ubi Parliamentum interrumpendum reiciitutur. Dominus 3 Cobham responsis adducitur, et damnatur, sed indulgentia vita sibi donatur; 4 invito, quia libenter voluit in causa sibi objecta fuisse mortuus, affirmans se tunc futurum felicissimum, si pro justitia vel innocentia 5 contigerit eum 6 [gladio] vitam finisse. Objiciabatur nempe sibi, quod post Parliamentum tentum anno Regis nunc undecimo, cepisset curam, cum aliis, ad regendum Regem, qui pro tunc, et parum ante, habuerat pessimos gubernatores. Et quia 7 jam declaraverat illud factum contra voluntatem suam, suis irrationalibus ratunciulis probare voluit dictum dominum proditorem. Condemnatus est perpetuo carceri, et missus ad insulam de Gerneseye, assignato sibi per Regem exilium, sicut prius assignatus 8 [fuit] Comiti de Warwico; sed tamen Rex neutri eorum postea satisfecit in promisso.

Ad imponendum terminum praesenti Parliamento, quia nondum finis futurus fuerat, Rex, cupiens videri gratiosus populo regni sui, concessit generalem perdonationem omnibus et singulis qui cum dictis dominis equitaverant contra eum, exceptis quinquaginta

---

1 communita in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
2 adhuc vicesimo primo, usque ad festum Sancti Albani tenuit idem Rex Natale valde solemniter apud, etc.—variation in Faustina B. ix.
3 This hiatus occurs in orig., and in Faustina B. ix.: "Johannes" is given by Walsingham (II. p. 227) as the name.
4 Apparently, invite in orig.
5 contigisset in Faustina B. ix.
6 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
7 rex declaraverat in Faustina B. ix.
8 Omitted in orig.; assignabatur in Faustina B. ix.
personis, quorum nomina noluit patefacere quovis modo; A.D. 1398.

1 nec erat quisquam [tam] secretus cum eo, qui potuit
scire dictarum nomina personarum. Dicebatur tamen,
quod illud secretum sibi met reservavit ex assueta
cautela, ut cum contigisset cum offendi contra aliquem
dominum vel magnatem, hunc pronunciaret extitisse
de numero quinquaginta; quem extunc liberius pos-
set ad mortem judicare, et ejus bona diripere; quia
tali nulla perdonationis charta suffragaretur. Aliis vero
qui cum dictis dominis equitaverant, vel illis adha-
serant quovis modo, jussum fuit, ut pro chartis a per-
donationis prosequerentur, citra festum Purificationis
proximo extunc sequens; alias scirent sibi præmissam
gratiam minime vaUeram. Qui timentes Regis iram
vindicem, cum festinassent pro chartis suis prosequi,
ad faciendum fines Regi gravissimas sunt coacti, ut
prodiatores.

Ut autem robur perpetuæ firmitatis obtinerent or-
dinationes et judicia facta, lata in præmisso Parlia-
mente, impetravit Rex litteras Apostolicas, in quibus
graves censurae proferebantur contra obloquentes quos-
cunque, qui dictis Statutis in aliquo contravenire præ-
sumerent. Quas censuras promulgari fecit Londoniis,
ad Crucem Sancti Pauli, et in aliis celeberrimis regni
locis.

Ricardi Regis anno vicesimo secundo, orta est dis-
sensio inter Duces Herefordiae et Northfolchiae, pro
quibusdam verbis quæ Dux Northfolchiae dixisset Duci
Herefordiae, sonantibus in dedecus ipsius Regis. Quæ
cum Dux Herefordiae Regi narrasset, et coram Duce
Northfolchiae advocasset, et idem Dux Northfolchiae dicta
verba se protulisse negasset, ex Regis ordinatione
uterque se ad duellum præparavit. Locus conflictus
apud Coventre, coram Rege regnique nobilibus, fuit
ordinatus, feceruntque dicti Duces apparatus sibi valde

---

1 vel erat in Faustina B. ix. | Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from | 3 perdonationum in Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1398.

The King interferes, and banishes the Duke of Hereford for ten years.

The Duke of Norfolk is condemned to perpetual banishment.

John de Buckingham, deprived of the See of Lincoln, and succeeded by Henry Beaufort.


Ducem vero Northfolchiae perpetuo damnavit exilio, immisericorditer statuens, sub pecenis gravibus, quod nullus rogaret, vel apud ipsum Regem intercedere praesumeret, pro gratia facienda Ducibus supradictis. Acta dixerunt haec eodem die ad annum, quo idem Dux Northfolchiae Ducem Gloverniae fecerat suffocari.

Per idem tempus, Papa, quorundam persuasione, Johannem de Bukyngham, Lincolniensem Episcopum, cum jam senex esset, et valetudinarius, Episcopatu suo privavit, pretendens ejus imbecillitatem et senectutem, quibus reddebatur 3 [impotentem] ad 4 regendum tantam Diocesis atque plebem. Transtulit tamen eum ad Episcopatum Cestriæ, tunc vacantem, non attendens quod, propter mores illius gentis, Episcopatus ille fuit difficilior ad regendum, quam ille quem ante rexerat optime et discrete: contulitque Episcopatum Lincolniæ Henrico Beuforde, cuidam de filiis Domini Johannis, Ducis Lancastriae, et Katerinae de Swynford, admodum

\[1\text{ Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.} \]
\[2\text{ Omitted in orig. and in Faustina B. ix.} \]
\[3\text{ Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.} \]
\[4\text{ regem in orig.} \]
puero, sed ob Ducis reverentiam et amorem. Episcopus A.D. 1398.
vero veteranus Lincolniae noluit hanc translationem acceptare, sed, illa spreta, contulit se Cantuariam, et in Ecclesia Christi, inter monachos finem vite, in cordis contritione, laudabiliiter expectavit. Regis ergo precatu, Confessor Regis, quidam Frater de Ordine Praedicatorum, de Episcopatu Landavensi translatus est ad Episcopatum Cestrensem.

Sub eodem tempore, Rex, ut erat simulator callidus, et dissimulator expertissimus, grates habere de clero cupiens, fecit convocari clericum generaliter ad respondendum certis questionibus per ipsum Regem propnendis, apud Londonias, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli. Cumque convenissent illic tam exempti quam non exempti, quæstio fuit ex parte Regis, si liceret Papæ tales translationes Episcoporum facere pro voto suo, et si liceret eum de talibus translationibus faciendis quomodolibet impedire. Clerus, in arto positus super hæc quæstione, plurimum mussitabat; quibusdam dicentibus, sed tamen in privato, quod tales translationes essent destructionis causa totius Ecclesiae Anglicanae; eo maxime, quia cum aliquid Episcopus jam præfecisset per longum tempus in temporalibus et spiritualibus, et in suo Episcopatu, cum jam promoturus esset ecclesiam vel personas ecclesiae, per talem translationem impediretur a bono proposito, manum contraeret a beneficio, cum cogeretur secum ferre collectas decimas ad ecclesiam cui mittendus erat; et sic per consequens, ecclesiam, cui præfuit, redderet spoliatam, et personas promovendas a spe promotionis penitus destitutas: personæque tales reddentur desides et inertes, cum spe remunerationis atque promotionis eernerent se privandos. Finaliter tamen, quia nullus pro tunca au-

1 vero precatu in Faustina B. ix.
2 John Burghill, by name.
3 faciendiendi in orig., by inadver-
tence.
4 destructiones tam totius, in Faus-
tina B. ix.
5 et omitted in Faustina B. ix.
6 inheres in orig.
A.D. 1398. debat verum fateri, vel libere verum dicere, rogaverunt omnes Regem, ut Papæ dignaretur scribere quod a talibus translationibus temperaret; per hoc inclusive fatentes omnia talia Papæ licere. Quod cum audisset Rex, velut offensus tante licentiae, juravit quod si clericus constanter restitisset Papæ in presenti negotio, ipse manus apposisset ad auxilium eorumdem.

Eo tempore, Petrus de Bosco, Episcopus Aquensis, directus est in Angliam ex parte Papæ, ad rogandum et monendum Regem, ut permitteret ligeos suos provisiones adquirere de manu Papæ, et revocandum Statutum editum contra Provisores, et illud breve "Quare impedit," multaque similia per quæ Curia nimium gravabatur. Perhendinavit ergo dictus Petrus in Anglia longo tempore, expectans responsa legationis suæ. Et quia ante Natale Domini 2 accessit Rex, jussit eum ipso Natali in sua Curia hospitari. In die vero Purificationis, celebravit Missam solemniter coram Rege; cui dedit Rex omnia ornamenta altaris in quo celebraverat, quæ prævaluerant mille libris. 3 Collegit tot dona, tot divitiæ, per tempus moræ suæ, de prælatis Anglie, de dominis, aliisque nobilibus, et communie plebe, quia cum potestate magna advenerat, quod accepit materiam regnum istud præ cunctis mundi regionibus collaudandi.

Eo anno, dum Romæ dirueretur quoddam vetus ædificium, ut novum construeretur, inventus est lapis marmoreus, longus octo pedum, suppositus altero lapidi ejusdem longitudinis, qui cavatus fuit ad modum sarcophagi, sub muro veteri; sic quod structura veteris ædificii posita fuit super lapides supradictos. Inventus est igitur in dicto cavato lapide thesaurus, velut infinitus; moneta, videlicet, aurea, variis imaginibus impressa et notata; sed una moneta præcipeue, signata imagini-

---

1 Papa in orig. corrected from Faustina B. ix.
2 ad Angliam Rex in Faustina B.
3 Collegitque in Faustina B. ix.
bus Helenæ, matris Constantini, quondam Imperatoris, A.D. 1398, prout scriptura peroptime declarabat. Et valebat quælibet pecia dictæ monetae viginti solidis, cum reliquæ partes monetae non excederent quadraginta denarios nostræ monetae. Dicebaturque thesaurus Helenæ a Romanis.

Anno gratiae millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo nono, A.D. 1399, et regni Regis Ricardi [vicesimo secundo]—hoc anno, repente, quasi per totam Angliam, lauri arbores aruerunt, et expost in multis locis reviruerunt; præsignant tes forsitan, quod licet quidam domini humiliati et incarcerati fuerant, et quidam relegati, restituerentur tamen in proximo pristinae dignitati.

Item, aliud portentum die Circumcisionis prope Bed fordiam videbatur; nempe aqua profundissima et rapacissima, quæ decurrerat inter villas de Suelleston et Harleslowe, repente restituit de loco superiori, et reliqua fluidii decurrerat ad alia loca decliva, ita quod per tria milliaria remansit siccus, cujus profunditas nunquam ante visa fuit; significans, ut significatur, divisionem populi atque regni, et defectionem a Rege Ricardo, quæ contigit eo anno.

Hoc quoque tempore, Comes Marchiae, Rogerus, The Earl of March is slain in Ireland, subito circumventus per Hibernicos, miserabiliter occiditur ab eisdem. Cujus morte cognita, Rex The King resolves to avenge his quandoe mortem vindicare Comitis, Hibernicosque domare, non attendens quantum odium sibi accumulaverat suorum ligeorum per totam Angliam,

---

1 tamen relique in Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 Harleswode in Faustina B. ix.
4 de omitted in Faustina B. ix.
5 Hiatus in orig.; reliqua locus

---

The laurels wither, throughout England, and revive.
A.D. 1399, et quam amarum animum vulgus omne gerebat contra eum. Sed urgebant eum fata sua, quae ¹ irrevertibiliter texuerant ejus ruinam, hoc anno futuram. Fecit ergo præparationem maximam per omne tempus Quadragesimæ, et deinceps pecunias extorquens, equos et quadrigas exigens, victualia frumenti, carnium, atque piscium, ubique pro sua profectione rapiens, nilque solvens; non attendens quod—

"Non habet eventus sordida praeda bonos,"
et quod quantum sibi accumulavit de bonis subditorum suorum injuste, tantum eorum odium incurrìt satis juste.

Eo tempore venit in Angliam Episcopus Chaldænensis, de Graecia, ferens litteras Apostolicas deprecatorias ad hujus regni incolas, ut manus adjutrices apponerent ad subveniendum Imperatori Constantinopolitano, qui ² jam opprimendus erat per illum Tartarum vocatum "Morettum," nisi per Latinos Christicolas sibi maturius subveniretur. Et ut ³ prontiores efficerentur fideles ad illuc proficiscendum, vel saltem de suis pecuniis huic negotio conferendum, concessit Papa conferentibus ⁴ quibuscunque de sua substantia, juxta consilium et arbitrium confessorum suorum, et secundum vires vere contritis et confessis, plenam remissionem peccatorum; involvitque magnis et amaris censuris omnes qui presumerent ⁵ [impedire] devotiones vel collationes negotio supradicto, notificans cunctis Christi fidelibus, quod licet dictus Imperator Constantinopolitanus esset schismaticus, Christianus tamen fuit, et licet non pro se, pro commodo tamen totius Christianitatis, foret expediens et meritorium sibi subvenire; quia dictus Morettus jam magnam partem Christiani-

¹ irrevertibiliter in orig.; imper-vertibiliter in Faustina B. ix.
² am in orig.
³ prontiores in Faustina B. ix.
⁴ Omitted in Faustina B. ix.; qui in orig.
⁵ Omitted in orig.; suppli ed from Faustina B. ix.

Rex Angliae, interpellatus per dictum Episcopum ad mittendum armatum manum in Graeciam, respondit quod jam fuit in procinctu itineris versus Hiberniam, et hostes ferocissimos; et ideo non valebat suis carere bellatoribus, nec in opus dictum de suis aliquos destinare. Contulit tamen, prout erat laudis cupidus penes extraneos, et forinsecis liberalis et prodigus, in opus praefati negotii, ut dicitur, multe marcas. Offerebant et cives et rurales, pro indulgentia obtinenda, grandes summas; ita ut praefatus Episcopus fateri posset veracissime se non frustra Angliam advenisse.

Tempore Quadragesimali, quidam heremita, vocatus "Willelmus Norham," accessit ad Archiepiscopum, Rogerum Waldene, dicens se missum ad eum ex parte ejus, cui non est tutum non obedire; ad commonendum eum ut Archiepiscopatui cederet, quem occupavit injuste, et Regi consuleret ut vitam suam corrigere; et Comitem Warwici, Dominumque de Cobham, aliosque exlegatos injuste, ad sua dominia revocaret; exhaeratos in Parlamento ultimo, illorum filios quos male peremerat, restituere paternis hæreditatibus; vel certe supervenirent utrique, tam Regi quam Archiepiscopo, tam dira nova sub brevi tempore, ut qui-
A.D. 1399. cunque audiret, tinnirent ambæ aures ejus. Archiepiscopus, offensus ¹ viro pro tali nuncio, suspendit eum a celebratione Missarum, et per temporum ² [aliquod] reclusit eundem. Tandem misit eum ad Regem, qui nihil minus audire voluit quam verba correctionis, et quæ dicturus sibi fuerat heremita. Qui cum venisset ad Regis preséntiam, et dixisset se a Deo missum, ut moneret eum de vita correctiori sumenda, et cæteris que prius dixerat, ut præsuntur, Archiepiscopo, Rex cuncta parvipendens, et paupertatem, simplicitatemque personæ, despiciens,—“Si,” inquit, “tam familiaris existis Deo, vade et curre pedibus super aquam, ut habere possimus certitudinem quod verus es Dei nuncius.” Cui heremita,—“Non sum,” inquit, “similis Sanctis talibus qui hujusmodi fecere miracula, nec aquam ingrediæ cum voluntate mea; sed hoc stanter assero, nisi parueritis meis monitis, occurrent vobis in brevi tam dira nova, qualia nunquam legistis vel vidistis.” Rex, offensus tantae Ubertati viri, jussit eum ad Turrim Londoniarium duci, ibique sub custodia detineri. Qui mansit ibi donec videret impleri suum vaticinium, Rege capto, prout patebit in sequentibus, loco suo.

Death of the Duke of Lancaster.

The hermit is imprisoned.

The King commutes the sentence of the Duke of Hereford to perpetual banishment.

Parum ante præsens tempus, obierat Dominus Johannes, Dux Lancastriæ, in crastino, scilicet, Purificationis Sanctæ Mariæ; cujus corpus, Rege interessente, solemnissimis exequis sepultum est Londoniis, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli. Ex cujus morte Rex sumens occasione malignandi contra Dominum Henricum, Ducem Herefordiæ, filium et haeredem dicti Ducis Lancastriæ, quem dudum relegaverat ad decennium, exulare decrevit in perpetuum; revocans patentes litteras quas sibi prius concesserat, quod in ipsius absentia, dum fuerat relegatus, generaìes attornati sui possent pro-

¹ vero in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. ² Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
sequi pro liberatione sibi facienda de quibuscumque A.D. 1399. hæreditatibus, sive successionibus, ipsum extunc contingentiis, et quod homagium suum respectari possit, pro fine rationabili faciendo. Quibus litteris sic revocatis, evidenter apparet Regem dictum Dulent vehementer odire, et eum prius relegasse, non pro dissentionibus, discordiis, vel tumultibus, quæ possent verisimiliter oriri inter familias et liberatas dicti Ducis et Ducis Norfolchiae, ut cautelose pretenderat; sed ut, occasione relegationis hujusmodi, in exilium posset eum trudere per vitam suam, et sic manus injicere suis possessionibus, quæ fuerant satis amplæ, et ea sibimet appropriare.

Circa tempus præsens, obiit nobilis foemina, Domina Margareta, Ducissa Nortfolchiae, apud castellum suum de Framyngham; cuius corpus delatum est Londoniis Norfolk. cum honore grandi, et sepultum in ecclesia Fratrum Minorum.

Rex interea, licet abundaret divitiis ultra omnes prædecessores suos, continue tamen sibi pecunias accumulare sategit, nihil omnino curans quo titulo illas possit adquirere de manibus [subditorum]. Decipiebatur nempe cotidie per quosdam pseudo-prophetas, suggerentes sibi quod Imperatoris dignitate procul dubio foret sublimandus, et maximus esse deberet inter principes totius mundi; et mentientes eidem, quod ipse esset taurus quem versus validici præsignabant, qui thesauris abundatus fuerat; et quandoque cogendus erat ad thesaurum recuperare præcollectum, juxta versum illum,—

"Tunc opus est tauro proprio confidere stauro;"
dementabant eum, praeterea, fingentes quod ipse esset gallus de quo cadem tetigit prophetia, quod

"Ad gallum nomen tauri transibit, et omen,"

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1399, et quod in mundo talis \textsuperscript{1}nullus gallus volatilis; per taurum fingentes eum fortem futurum, audacem, \textsuperscript{2}[taurum], vindicem, et victorem, et per gallum, quod velociter triumphairet. Et ut concludam brevibus, cuncta quae prophetis antiquis favorabilia possent \textsuperscript{3}elicere, suæ personæ mendaciter applicabant.

Fuerunt etiam quidam, qui, adulantés eidem, dixerunt eum merito conquéstorem gloriosissimum nominandum, eo quod sic sine bello, sine incendio, sine æde, suorum communium, sua sapientia hostes suos infestissimos oppressisset; eo quod Ducem Glovneriae et Comitem Arundelæ, ut præfatur, jugulasset, et cæteros carcerebus mancipasset. Et hii fuerunt de Ordinibus Mendicantium, qui, spe promotionum, adulationes hujusmodi compingebant.

Horum mendaciis incitatus, recepit grandes pecuniarum summas mutuo de quampluribus dominis, tam temporalibus quam spiritualibus, aliusque personis regni, promittens eisdem bona fide, sub patentibus suis litteris, quod pecunias illas, sic mutuatas, \textsuperscript{4}tempore limitato resolveret; quas tamen nunquam postea reddidit creditoribus supradictis.

Cito post Pascha adiuvenit at alias occasiones, velut incredibiles, quibus et gravius subjectis noceret, et grandiores summas pecuniarum exigeret metu mortis. Imposuit nempre septemdecim Comitatibus regni, quod contra eum fecerant cum Duce Glovneriae etc., quare paratus erat super eos equitare, tanquam super publicos hostes suos. Et primo quidem recepit a dictis Comitatibus securitatem, tanquam non auderet ingredi Comitatus illos sine exercitu, nisi prius accepisset securitatem quod nihil mali sibi nec suis quomodolibet molirentur. Deinde misit cer[tos] Episcopos, cum

\textsuperscript{1} Repeated in orig. \hfill \textsuperscript{3} licere in orig.; corrected from Paustina B. ix.

\textsuperscript{2} Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. \hfill \textsuperscript{4} termino in Faustina B. ix.
REGIS ANGLIÆ. 235

aliis honoratis personis, ad eosdem Comitatus, qui A.D. 1399. monerent tam dominos spirituales quam temporales, et illorum Comitatuum personas mediocres omnes, ut se Regi suo submittant, et se profideres sibi fuisse faterentur per litteras sub sigillis eorumdem confectas, cum hii nunquam sibi male fecissent dicto vel facto. Qua occasione coacti sunt sibi concedere, tam clerus, quam commune vulgus et domini, importabiles summas pecuniae, pro Regis benevolentia recuperanda. Vocabantur itaque tales summas, sic levatae de singulis Comitatibus, "Le Plesaunce," quia ad placendum Regi levatae fuerint, et oblatae sibi. Expost vero, professoratus in Hiberniam, placere volens personis eorumdem Comitatuum, fecit illis restituit litteras suas obliatorias, vel submissorias; non tamen eo pacto ut liberarentur ab obligationibus quibus se obligaverant; quia coegit ipsius populi procuratores, habentes plenam potestatem eis concessam per commissates dictorum Comitatuum, se obligare, et haereses suos, sibi, sub sigillis eorumdem, nomine et auctoritate populi superdicti. Sicque semper meditatus est quovis pacto suos subditos illaqueare et suppeditare, ne unquam de cætero facultas eis emergeret redeundi ad pristinam libertatem.

Aliud quoque, non minus exitiale, machinatus est in hoc procinctu versus Hiberniam, genti suæ. Quia cum ipse Rex populum suum, quovismodo deliquerit, valeat, secundum consuetudines et jura regni sui, corrígere et punire; nihilominus cupiens omnimodo populum suppeditare et opprimere, direxit patentes litteras ad omnes regni Comitatus, et per terrores induxit, ut ligei sui quicunque, tam spirituales quam temporales, quedam juramenta insueta præstarent in genere, quæ verisimiliter causare possent destructionem plebis suæ finalem; coegitque ligeos suos ipsa juramenta, sub lit-

---

1 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.  |  2 eundem populum, in Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1399. teris eorum, et sigillis, roborare. [Ad] chartas etiam albas eodem suos ligeos apponere sigilla sua compulit; ut quotiens grassari vellet in plebem, facultatem haberet, licet illicitam, opprimendii quamcunque personam, prout dicitur, maleisset. Quidam tamen dicunt eum tales albas chartas machinatum, ut in eis ostenderet consensum totius populi Anglicani Regi Franciae, ad venditionem Calesiae et terrarum ultramarinarum, quas Rex Franciae dicebatur voluisse comparasse, si constisset sibi quod populus Anglicanus noluisset eum in futurum, pro terris sibi sic venditis cum consensu communitatis, nullatemus molestasse.

Cum Rex per hujusmodi facta, execrationes et odia, maledictionesque, super caput suum, quasi totius populi, aggerasset, atque proinde jam de fide vulgi dubius red-deretur, jussit ut Viccomites per totum regnum suum nova juramenta præstarent ultra solita, quod obedirent omnibus mandatis regiiis, quotiens eis directa fuerint sub Magno, Privato, Sigillo, etiam litteris illis directis sub signeto suo. Et in casu quo idem Viccomites scire possent aliquos de ballivis, cujuscunque conditionis essent, aliquod male dicere, sive loqui, publice vel occulte, quod cedere posset in dedecus aut scandalum personæ Regis, ipsos imprisonarent, donec aliuad de Rege susciperein mandatis.

Unde contigit quod quamplures ligeorum suorum, malitioso accusati quod debuissent dixisse quicquam publice vel occulte, quod cedere posset in vituperium, scandalum, sive dedecus, personæ Regis, capit fuerunt, et imprisonati, et ducti coram Constabulario et Mares-callo Angliæ, in curia militari; in qua taliter accusati ad aliuad responsum admittere nequbant, nisi in respon-

---

1 Omittit in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 sigilla sua, omitted in Faustina B. ix.
3 censum in Faustina B. ix.
4 directe in orig., and Faustina B. ix.
5 Vicomites in orig.
dendo se in nullo fore culpabiles, et per eorum cor-
pora, et non aliter, se justificarent et defenderent, non
obstante quod accusatores et appellatores eorum essent
juvenes fortes et sani, et illi sic accusati, senes impo-
tentes, mutilati, vel infirmi; unde non solum de-
structio magnatum regni, sed etiam omnium [et]
singularum personarum communitatis ejusdem regni,
verisimiliter timebatur.

Rex igitur sentiens, propter gesta tam scelerata, se
invisum populo, Cestrensibus sui corporis commisit tute-
lam. Qui glomerati circa eum in numero excessivio
suggesserunt ei quod neminem vereri deberet, dum tot
et tales ad sui custodiam retinerentur; se dixerunt
eum posse contra totam Angliam contutari, immo,
contra totum mundum, dummodo sperare vellet in
eorum fide, fortitudine, et probitate. Hii nihilominus
onerosi videbantur cunctis caeteris Regis familiaribus,
propter eorum superbiam et arrogantiam, et maxime,
quia Rex caeteros, eorum intituit, parvipendit.

Eo tempore volvebatur quaedam prophesia in ore
multorum, quae continetur in hoc versu,—

"Vix binis annis durabit pompa Johannis."—

Unde cum Rex, ut erat sedulus talium perscrutator,
versus sententiam intra se volveret et revolveret, mira-
batur de quo Johanne prophesia taliter praedixisset.
Non enim poterat referri Domino Johanni, quandam
Duci Lancastriæ, quia jam defunctus erat, et sepultus;
et in regno non erat relictus quisquam hujus nominis,
qui tantam obterneret auctoritatem, ut prophesia referri
posset ad eum. Tandem post multam sollicitudinem
indagations hujus rei, dictum est sibi, quod ipse foret
Johannes de quo prophesia præmissa tetigisset; quia,
cum natus fuisse in Burdega[lia], et immineret ei

---

1 mutilati in orig.  
2 Omitted in orig. and Faustina B. ix.  

---

The King entire to his guard of Cheshire men.

An alleged prophecy, and explanation thereof.

---

* in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1399. mortis periculum, obstetrices, turbatae, baptizaverunt eum in camera, vocantes eum, pro temporis distinctione, "Johannem;" sed cum melius habere cœpisset, in adventu Ricardi, Regis Majoricarum, quem Dominus Princps Edwardus accersiverat, ut esset ejus compeer, confirmatus fuit per Episcopum, vocatusque "Ricardus."

Rex itaque, cum hoc audisset, turbatus est nimium, et velut jam de semetipso desperare, cepitque diffidere; et in tantum cordi fixit haec præmissa, ut quadam die deambulans in sua camera, alta traheret ab imo suspiria, ita ut notaretur ab aliquo circumstante. Requisitus igitur cur ipse, qui praecessit in gloria et honore cunctos mundi reges, et jam de dominis, ut præservlet, triumphasset omnibus, quos verebatur, et populum regni subjectum possideret ad vota, divitiis supra cunctos prædecessores suos amplius abundaret, tam profunda suspiria produxisset, cum mœstitia magna respondit;—"Ego," inquit "jam proficiscor in Hiberniam, contra hostes meos feroœissimos habituros for sitan bellum, mox ut advenerim, nec seio quis exitus erit belli; et relinquuo post me regnum totum turbatum, populum exasperatum, magnæ seditioœis habentem materiam: qui, si calculus pejorem repor tavero, paratus erit occurrere mihi revertenti cum bello, et sic nullibi tutus ero; unde non tibi videatur mirum de meo suspirio, qui sum inter mala inevitabilia constitutus."

Circa festum Pentecostes, Rex navigavit in Hiberniam, cum suis Cestrensibus et quibusdam dominis, videlicet, Ducibus de Almarle et de Excestria, aliiisque quampluribus; sed hoc cavít precipue, ne omnes domini, sive profiscientes cum eo, multitudinem tantam ducent bellatorum, quæ comparari posset suis propriis conductitiis; ut si quando placuisset eos oppri-

1 tristatus est in Faustina B. ix. 2 Repeated in orig. 3 quibus in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
mere, ut fertur, fuisset continue satis potens. Nam A.D. 1399. qui quingentos, ut dicitur, solem cere, modo per-
missi sunt ducere vix viginti.

Dux Southerevae, ante faciem suam missus, multa in Hibernia probe gessit. Quidam etiam Almannicus
[ natione ], nomine "Ranyeo," per idem tempus,
[ Hiberniensium multos ] prostravit, multos cepit, mul-
tos ad deditio nem coegit. Rex ipse, tandem cum suis
adveniens, prius territos magis terruit, prostratos pro-
trivit, afflicto s a afflilxit. Duxerat autem nobiles How
puiros, filios Du cum Gloverniae et Herefordiae, quorum
affines praecepue verebatur; Episcopos cum eo coegit, profisci, vel spontanea vel invite, qui
quando vellet Parliamenta facere, prout prius consti-
tuerat, cum consensu octo personarum, praesto forent,
ut dicitur, statuere que forent statuenda. Thesaurum
quoque, coronas et reliquias, aliaque jocaha, regni quo-
que divitas, ab antiquo dimissas in archivis regni pro
honore regni, secum abstulit, in Hiberniam prefecturus,
sine consensu statuum et regni sui. Et cum, ut pra-
fertur, requireretur cur ita faceret, dicitur respondisse
quod haec fecisset, ne si quis in ejus absentia superve-
nisset, reperire [posset] profiscere opulentias et divitas
regni sibi paratas. Timuit nempe tantum suos actus,
quod semper putabat vindictam superventuram pro
esidem.

Cum Rex moram protelaret in Hibernia, communitas regni Angliae totis votis Dominum precabatur, ne
unquam sponses reverteretur; nempe in ore omnium
volvetar, quod jam terram Angliae idem Rex habe-
bat invisam, et nunquam propositus eam revisere cum

---

1 prout in Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 Janicho in Faustina B. ix.
4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
5 quoque complures in Faustina B. ix.
6 fertur in Faustina B. ix.
7 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1399. favore; sed in Hibernia quandoque commorari, quandoque in Wallia, et bona regni Angliae in hiis regi-onibus non expendere, sed vastare.

His alleged designs against his subjects.

Proceres vero, et valentiores terrae, in quibus posset esse communibus confidentia, vel sibi resistentia, dice-batur in Walliam vel Hiberniam per blandas litteras evocasse voluisse, et ibidem judicio Parliamentali morti tradisse, et bona talium diripuisse sibi, et eorum liberos exhaeredasse. Dicebatur praeterea, quod Wille-mus le Scrop, [Regis Camberlanus], et Comes de Wiltshire de novo creatus, omnes escaetas regni Angliae de Rege cepisset ad firmam per triennium; et ob hoc imaginabatur mortes plurimorum procerum et aliorum valentium, ut uberem faceret firmam. Invallescentibus hiis rumoribus, nullus dominus qui remanserat post egressum Regis, fuit tutus, nec de substantia nec de vita, nec ullus popularis fortuna sua gavisus [est], dum se putaret cotidie propter suas divitas accusandum, et occasione levissima morti tradendum; et ideo maxime, quia noti, proximique pauperiores tunc proni fuerunt ad accusandum pro verbo levissimo ditiores, ut favorem possent obtinere, vel remunerationem, tunc regnantium tyrannorum.

Fears of the more wealthy of his subjects.

Igitur cum Rex aigeret in Hibernia, Hibernicosque per insultus varios deterret, essetque magnus in oculis propriis, repente Deus illius superbiam decrevit humilire, et populo Anglicano succurrere, qui jam miserabiliter opprimebatur, et de spe relevationis et remedii omnino exciderat, nisi Deus manus porrigeret in adjutorium eorundem.

Immisit igitur in cor Domini Henrici, Ducis Herefordiae, sed nunc, per mortem patris, Ducis Lancastriæ, quem prius diximus relegatum ad decennium, sed ex-

---

1 blandas in orig.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 firmam suam in Faustina B. ix.
4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
5 miraculoce porrigeret in Faustina B. ix.
post injuriose nimis exhaeredatum, ut 1 reverteretur in A.D. 1399.
terram nativitatis suæ, et jura paterna repeteret, Ducat-
tum, scilicet, Lancastriae, cum suis pertinentiis; vel certe, si Rex se præbuisse 2 in hac sibi parte difficilem, ut
nollet illi reddere dominia sibi debita, collectis auxi-
liariis, ea vi viriliter recuperaret. Constabat nempe
sibi quam invisus Rex erat toti populo Anglicano, nec
immerito; unde sperabat quod si vel ipse, vel alius
quicunque, advenisset in Angliam, plebs communis 3 ad-
haerere sibi vellet, pro pristina libertate recuperanda
et jugo importabili depellendo. Confortabant eum quo-
que et presentia Domini Thomæ de Arundellia, Can-
tuariensis Archiepiscopi, qui jam injuste exulaverat duo-
bus annis apud Trajectum, et adventus nepotis illius,
filii, videlicet, Domini Ricardi, Comitis Arundellæ, et
hæredis, qui latenter fugerat de calore 4 domus Rechab;
de domo, videlicet, Ducis Exoniae, cui commissa fuit
custodia dicti juvenis, ubi notabiliter dehonestatus fue-
rat per quemdam J. Schevele, multum dicti Ducis, qui
eum tractaverat velut vile mancipium, et servire sibi
coegerat, magis more captivi quam ingenui, dum dictus
Dux illi ipsius custodiam commississet.

Instigabant etiam eum Gallici, inter quos moram
traxerat, ut reposceret jura sua, a quibus, contra jus-
titiam, exclusus fuerat; promittentes ei, si opus esset,
adjutorium in hoc negotium militare. Ille vero Gallicis
pro benevolentia grates rependit innumeræ; non tamen
voluit secum trahere de illis partibus manum militarem,
asserens se tantum confidere in fide et favore suorum
5 [patriotarum], quod non indigeret ad præsens auxi-
lium Gallicorum. Rogabat tamen, si secus accideret
quam sperabat, ut, videlicet, destitueretur suorum suf-
fragiis, parati forent ad suffragandum ei in negotio

1 reveretur in orig.  
2 sibi tam difficilem ut, in Fanstina B. ix.  
3 adhere in orig.  
4 Apparently in allusion to Joshua ii. 1.  
5 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.


---

Verebantur, si Rex rediret de Hibernia, et Ducem A.D. 1399.
superare, vel circumvenire, contingeret, se gravius opprimendos, qui Duci in modico, palam vel occulte, faverent. Timebant praeterea, quod si contingeret Ducem Regi pacificari facile tenus, quod juxta morem resilire vellet, et expost Ducem opprimere, cum adhaerentibus sibi. Erat ergo magna plebis expectatio, desiderantis bonum videre finem de Ducis proposito inchoato.

Dux Eboraci, cui commissa fuit regni custodia in Regis absentia, cum esset Londoniis cum regni Cancellario, Magistro Edmundo de Stafford, Episcopo Cicestrensi, atque Thesaurario, Domino Willemo le Scrop, Comite de Wiltschire, ac militibus de Regis Consilio, Johanne Busshi, Willemo Bagot, Thoma Grene, Johanne Russel, et alii, et audisset quod Dux Lancastriæ jam mare teneret, atque paratus esset terram ingredi, praemissos Regis consiliarios, qui relictì fuerant ad consulendum sibi in negotiis magis arduis, si foret opus, convenit super hac re quid esset agendum. Illi vero, conturbati et conterriti, utpote quos intus accusavit conscientia,—de dictis loquor militibus, non de Pontifice, qui fuit irreprehensibilis et sine querela,—disquisierunt ingenio suo toto quomodo resistere possent præsato Duci, et eum arcere ab ingressu regni. Consuluerunt ergo, ut Dux Eboraci se transferret ad Sanctum Albanum, præstolaturus ibidem manum belli quam posset Duci resistere venienti.

Constitutus itaque ad Sanctum Albanum, misit The Duke of York patentes litteras, nomine Regis Ricardi, ad omnes Comitatus Angliæ, ut Vicecomites, collectis armatis quos poterant, et arcitenentibus, sub omni celeritate pro-
A.D. 1399. perarent ad eum; et eo libentius et animosius, quo de Regis marsupio remunerandi erant uberius. Occurrent ergo sibi plures domini et valentes, cum suis retinentiis; nullus tamen animo nocendi Ducis Lancastriæ, præter Episcopum Nortwicensem, qui conduxerat pro posse manum validam pugnatorum. Nam caeteris dominis et communibus videbatur hec quasi jocus; ita quod palam fatebantur se nolle damnun inferre Ducis Lancastriæ quovismodo. Ipse vero Dux Eboraci protestabatur publice Ducem injuriose exhaereditatam; neque velle se molestare qui in justa causa venerat, ad repetendum haereditatem debitam sibi jure.

Interea, circa festum Translationis Sancti Martini, Dux Lancastriae, nullo contradicente, cum suis, applicuit prope locum ubi quondam fuit villa de Ravensehre; ad quem confessim venerunt plurimi de familia patris sui, et sua propria retinentia; sic quod in brevi, exercitu velut invinciblei vallatus fuit. Quod cum audissent dicti Regis consiliarii, scilicet, Willelmus Scrop, Johannes Bussy, Thomas Grene, Willelmus Bagot, Johannes Russel, timuerunt maxime, ita quod videbantur spiritum non habere. Quos notans Episcopus Nortwicensis, dixit;—"Isti," inquit "modo sunt præmortui, nec sperare possimus in horum resistentia" qui tam cito vultu concidunt, atque mente." Ipsi vero, quia jam non sperabant in benevolentia villanorum Sancti Albani, fecerunt Ducem Eboraci, cum illis copiis quæ advenerant, Oxoniis se conferre; feceruntque proclamari publice, ut armati, cum sagittariis, nil morantes, occurrerent, et præ manibus soldam recipient supererfuentem de thesauro Regis, qui satis esset, et abundans divitiis, ad remunerandum quoscunque

---

1 *si in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.*  
2 *videbatur quasi,* in Faustina B. ix.  
3 *qui in orig., and in Faustina B. ix.*
volentes pro Rege stare contra hostes: profitebatur que Regem satis divitem, qui parum ante meditati fuerant, ad cumulandas illi divitias, divitem et omnes [et] pauperem apporrasse. Multi ergo pecunias accipientes praemunibus, ut congregarent fortitudinem regionis, statim collecta multitudine se ad Ducem Lancastriam contulerunt, militaturi sibi stipendiis Regis Ricardi. 

Predicti Regis consilarii, cum venissent Oxonias, et jam pro vero commiserissent quod Dux contraxerat manum bellicam, et de fide vel stabilitate vulgi nulla spes esset, consternati sunt, eo quod nuncii redierant, qui ad Ducem missi fuerant ex parte Ducis Eboraci, ut paterent ab eo causas cur terram tali modo ausus sit ingredi; et reportaverunt quod Dux noluit ad hec illi respondere, sed se velle venire, et Ducem Eboraci personaliter certificare de causis adventus ejus. Conoverunt praeterea quod Comes Northumbriae, Dominus Henricus Percy, et filius suus ejusdem vocabuli, (quem Scoti quondam vocaverant “Henry Hatspure,” quia ferventer eos infestaverat), et alii plures domini, qui timebant Regis versutias atque doles, ad eum converserant, ita quod exercitus numeraretur ad sexaginta millia; mox missis in Hiberniam ad Regem nunciis, The members of the Council communicare com, excus erunt ut, omnibus omissis aliis, redire festinaret ad Angliam, a qua jam fuerat per Ducem Lancastriam excludendus, nisi celerius advenisset. Scripsissent quoque sibi, quod ipsi expectarent [eum] cum exercitu viginti millium juxta mare, ut ei possent esse suffragio in ascensu suo.

Hiis itaque gestis, dicti milites, W[illelmus] Scrop They flee etc., cernentes se invisos patriae et patriotis, et metuentes quod si diutius starent cum Duce Eboraci,
A.D. 1399. caperentur fortassì per manus communicum, fugerunt ad villam Brys tolliæ sub magna festinatione, et munierunt castellum victualibus et armatis conductis largiter, ad numerum quingentorum.

Dux Lancastriae, cognoscens dictos milites, quos plebs communis reputaret hostes publicos, Castrum intrasse Brystolliae; sine mora convertit exercitum versus Bristoliam, parans obsidere castellum, si qui forent in eo illud nollent sponte reddere, cum personis dictorum militum quos persequebatur. Jamque rector regni, Dux Eboraci, sibi occurrerat cum favore, multique nobiles, cum dicto Duce Eboraci venientes, manus dederant Duci Lancastriae, et cum eo voluntarie equitabant. Soli Nortwicensis Episcopus et Willelmus Elmham, miles, contra Ducec venere ferciter; non attendentes quod totus mundus post eum abiiit, et putantes pueriliter caeteros deterrere, qui Duci, ut praemittitur, adhaesere. Sed hii sine difficultate capti, et omnibus bonis quae contraxerant spoliati, carceribus sunt mancipati, donec Dux, misertus eorum, jusserat eos solvi.

tam repentinam sententiam clamor importunus com-
munitatis, quae voluiisset eos in frusta decerpsisse, si
quomodolibet potuisset; et nova que eo die venerunt
de Regis applicatione in Walliam, qui cum exercitu de
Hibernia venerat numerosos; quos non reputabant
tutum vivos circumducere, dum instaret tanta sol-
licitudo; et idcirco, ut præfertur, ad plebis impor-
tunam instantiam, tristem exceperunt sententiam,
laetantibus cunctis regni mediocribus, quod tam cito,
tam gratiose, prout eis videbatur, de infestissimis libe-
rabantur hostibus.

Inter hæc, cum Rex audisset in Hibernia rumores
molestissimos de Ducis applicatione, pariter et equita-
tione, atque favore procerum et regni communitatum,
primo quidem, quasi dissimulans conceptam tristitiam,
vocavit ad se filium Ducis Lancastriæ seniorem, vix ad
annis adolescentiæ pertingentem, et dixit ei;—"Ecce," ait, "Henrice fili, quid pater tuus fecit mihi. Reversa
" terram meam ingressus hostiliter equitat, guerrarm
" more, captivans et perimens meos ligeos sine miseri-
" cordia et pictate. Certe, pro persona [fili,] pro persona [tua]
" doleo, quia pro patris hoc infortunio privandus eris
" tuo fortassis patrimonio." Cui ille, licet puer, non
tamen respondit pueriliter, sub hiis verbis;—"Vere,
" gratiose Rex, et Domine, de istis rumoribus multum
" doleo; sed et constat vestrae dominationi, prout
" aestimo, quod ego sum innocens de patris facto." Cui Rex,—"Novi autem quod nihil ad te pertinet per
" patrem tuum perpetratum negotium; et ideo te de
" facto teneo excusatum." Rex igitur dictum puerum, The youth
cum filio Ducis Gloucestriae, jussit recludi in Castro de
Trym; nam et ipsum secum Rex duxerat in Hiber-

1 voluit in Faustina B. ix.
2 numerosos in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
3 dissimulans in orig.
4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
5 hiis rumoribus, in Faustina B. ix.
6 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
Many children of the nobles taken into Ireland with him.

Loss of time through hesitation on the part of King Richard.

He sails for England.

Stands in dread of the lower classes.

He takes to flight.

niam, sicut et plures aliorum dominorum filios; ut si eorum patres, amici, vel affines, aliquid machinari voluissent contra Regem, dum in remotis ageret, saltem intuitu puerorum manum contraherent, et desisterent a conceptis.

Constituto ergo terræ gubernatore, Rex jussit parari naves, ut cum summa celeritate venire posset in Walliam, et Ducis Lancastriæ adventum in patriam prævenire. Sed Dei voluntate contigit, ut incideret Regi diversum propositum, eo certe tempore, quando fuerunt omnia parata ad navigandum; ita ut juberet equos et cætera necessaria, que jam in ratibus erant constituta, extrahi, et ad alium portum trahi. Sicque factum est, ut completerur dies septem, priusquam iterum equos et instrumenta reliqua in navibus collocasset; quasi Deo disponente, ut Dux Lancastriae tam fortis efficeretur, et instructus, ut Rex minime sibi nocere posset. Itaque Rex, tandem ascensis navibus, cum Ducibus Exoniæ, Albemarle, et Southereyæ, quos creaverat, aliisque multis proceribus, quos secum traxerat, Episcopis quoque Londoniensii, Lincolniensi, Karleolensi, aliisque nonnullis Pontificibus et praëtatis, quorum unus extitit Abbas Westmonasteriensis, apud portum de\(^1\) applicuit; ubi audiens de numerosa turba collecta cum Duce Lancastriae, contra eum primo quidem pugnasse propositum; sed quia meticulosus erat, et timidus, mutavit propositum, pro certo tenens quod plebs, contra eum conjurata, citius mallet mori quam cedere, propter odium quod conceperant contra eum. Commissa quæque commotione familiæ facienda Domino Thomsæ Percy, Senescallo, fugit cum paucis ad Castrum de\(^2\) Dominus Thomas

---

1 Omitted, with an hiatus, in orig. and in Faustina B. ix.  
2 Omitted, with an hiatus, in orig. and in Faustina B. ix.  
3 proinde in Faustina B. ix.
Percy, adunata familia in aula apud ¹ notifi- A.D. 1399. cavit eis fugam Regis, et ut Rex se illis commenda- His flight verat, et regratiabatur eis de diurno bonoque ser- announced to vitio, remuneraturus omnes et singulos, cum fortuna servitio, pro meritis, Deo dante. Et ideo prosperior arrisisset, pro meritis, Deo dante. Et ideo monuit omnes ut se salvarent, et temporis huic cedere- rent, et pro semetipsis disponerent, ut possent et sci- rent melius, ac noscerent opportunum; fractaque virga sui officii, flevit amarissime, optans quod nunquam se tali sollicitudini miscuisset.

Sicque disjuncta est illa familia, quæ dudum reputa- miscuisset. vit impossibile talem mutationem fieri potuisse. Regis Mis- thesaurus, quem asportaverat inconsulte de regno, cum the King fortunæ fortunæ equis et aliis ornamentis, et universa supellectili, in his befalling manus Ducis venit; familiares Regis, magnates, domini, the King and his et mediocres, cujuscunque conditionis existerent, per supporters. Wallicos et homines de Northumbria, sive Westmer- londia, deprædati sunt. Non evasit ullus fere qui cum Rege, vel post Regem, venerat, qui non ² [amisit] arma, and quidquid praeterea claudebatur in bursa.

Rex interea, huc illucque se conferens, quandoque The King continuæ fugit Anglieiam, quandoque ad Castrum de Conewey, his flight. de Beumarreys, de Flynt, ³ [et] de Holt, in quo magna pars fuerat thesauri sui. Sed tandem, cum nulla spes esset subterfugiendi, misit Ducem Exoniae, fratrem suum, ad Comitem Northumbriæ et Dominum Archiepiscopum Cantuariæ, (sed tamen privatum per eundem, ut præ- mittitur, Episcopatu,) petens habere colloquium cum eis- dem. Qui, a Duce missi, collocuti sunt cum eo apud Conewey, ⁴ [in] Nortwallia. Quibus Rex intimavit He offers to resign suum propositum, quod, videelicet, desideravit cedere, et the crown, on certain sollicitudine gubernandi carere, ita ductaxat, ut non conditions. occideretur, sed victus sibi honorificus provideretur, vitae-

¹ Omitted, with an hiatus, in orig., and in Faustina B. ix. ³ Omitted in orig. ; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
² Omitted in orig. ; supplied from Faustina B. ix. ⁴ Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1399. que securitas sibi et octo personis qui cum eo erant, fide interposita, donaretur; e quibus feruntuisse Duces Exoniae, Albemarle, Southerayæ, et Comites Sarum [et] Gloucestriae, Episcopum Karleolensem Thomam Meerk, Johannem Magdelene, clericum, etc.

Stipulates for the lives of certain of his followers.

He surrenders to the Duke of Lancaster.

He facta itaque [sibi] securitate concupita, colloquium habitum cum Duce Lancasteriae apud Castrum de Flynt; breve tamen. Et max ascensis equis, venerunt ad Castrum Cestriae, bonum vultum invicem ostendentes; ubi Rex mansit ea nox, permittebantque cenare cum eo predictæ personæ prææceptæ, pro suo solatio, pariter et pernoctare. Rogaverat nempe Dux Lancasteriae, cognatum suum, ne vulgares aut [plebeii] permittentur locum intrare ubi mansurus erat, ne, irreverenter irruentes, eum per insolentias molestarent. Concessit Dux gratissimæ quod petiit in hac parte, et Regem tractavit reverenter et honeste; non permittens quemquam insultare sibi publice vel occulte. De Castello Cestræ continuaverunt dietas, donec pervenerent Londinias, ipse Rex et Dux Lancasteriae, Comes Northumbriæ, filius ejus Henricus, et qui cum Rege capti fuerant; dominique plures, qui in hac expeditione fuerant, et electa turba militum, armigerorum, et domicellorum, ad numerum quindecim millium; nam exercitus reliquus, Regi reddito, remissus fuerat ad partes proprias, ne gravaret patrias per quas esse transiturus oportebat. Redditus nempe fuit Rex vicesimo die mensis Augusti, quadragesimo sexto die, vel septimo, postquam Dux terram intraverat. Et mirum quod totum regnum tantillo tempore sic pacificatum et stabilitum fuit, unanimi voluntate, ut nihil magis desiderarent incolæ, quam Henricum, Ducem Lancasteriae, in regem suum, dejecto Rege Ricardo; praeter Cestrensæ,

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 Omitted, with an hiatus, in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
4 transiturus in Faustina B. ix.

Continuatis igitur dietis a Cestria, perductus 3 Rex, cum predicta familia, usque ad Sanctum Alba-num, quo pervenit ultimo die mensis Augusti; ubi, sicut et in locis reliquis, excubiae copiosae nocte qualibet positae sunt circa eum, circiter mille virorum; perhendinavit autem ibi a die Sabbati usque in diem Lunæ, post prandium; quo die ductus fuit Londonias, ad Palatium Westmonasterii, quia rogaverat ne Londoniis videretur a civibus, quos credebat lætari maxime de sua dejectione. In crastino ducebatur ad Turrim, per Tamisiam, in qua custoditus fuit usque ad tempus Parlamenti futuri, quod sub nomine Regis Ricardi fuerat 4 summonendum.

Dux ipse Lancastriæ, qui Regem conducebat a Cestria usque Londonias, fecit processiones solemnes Regi occurrere, in cunctis locis ubi religiosi fuerunt, impen-dens illi honores regios, prout solebant sibi in dignitate constituto regia exhiberi; nullum honorem, in thurificationibus 5 et hujusmodi caeremoniis, permittens sibimet a prelatis sic obviantibus tribui vel offerri; sed Regem ubique præponens, ipse retro stetit, armatus pulchre, expectans donec honor solitus fuisset Regi factus.

6 Post hæc, missa sunt brevia, sub nomine Regis Ricardi, ad omnes status regni qui Parlamento interesse debebant, ut 7 [ad] Parlamentum Londoniis celebrandum in crastino festi Sancti Michaelis occurrerent; eo studiosius, quo in dicto Parlamento ardua regni nego-

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 patriotas in orig.
3 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
4 submovendum, apparently, in orig.
5 sibi et, in Faustina B. ix.
6 Per hoc tempus, missa sunt, in Faustina B. ix.
7 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
Letters directed to the Monasteries, for the examination of their Chronicles.

Various persons, banished by King Richard, are recalled.

King Richard is formally called upon to resign the crown.

Letters præterea missæ sunt ad omnes Abbathias regni, et majores ecclesias, ut prælati dictarum ecclesiarum perscrutari facerent cunctas Chronicas regni Anglie statum tangentes, et gubernationem, a tempore Willelmi Conquestoris usque ad tempus præsens; et ut mitterent certas personas instructas in Chronicis, secum ferentes hujusmodi Chronicas, sub sigillis communibus dictorum locorum, qui scirent respondere competenter, et docere, de Chronicis supradictis. Et hæ quidem apices missæ fuerunt sub nomine Regis Ricardi, et Privato Sigillo suo.

Ut autem Dux declararet se esse aprum commercii qui dispersos greges ad amissa pascua revocaret, curavit dominos, aliasque personas, relegatas per Regem Ricardum, de custodiis quibus tenebantur relaxare, et in regnum reducere, et judicio Parliamenti futuri restituere rebus suis. Tunc Comes Warwick reedit de insula Euboniae, ubi tractatus fuerat satis inhumane per ministros Willelmi Scrop, cui pertinuit regnum illud; et Dominus de Cobham reedit de Gerneseya, et ali plures de diris custodiis sunt soluti.

Die Lunæ, in festo Michaelis Archangeli, anno regni Regis Ricardi Secundi viæsimo tertio, Domini spirituales et temporales, et alie personæ notabiles, vide-licet, Ricardus le Scrop, Archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Johannes Herefordensis Episcopus, Henricus Comes Northumbriae, Radulphus Comes Westmerlandiae, Hugo Dominus de Burnel, Thomas Dominus Berkele, Prior Cantuariae et Abbas Westmonasterii, Willemus Ther-

\[1\text{ prædictæ in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.}
\[2\text{ secum . . . Chronicas, omitted in Faustina B. ix.}
\[3\text{ Such are these two abbreviated words, and as such they are written, in an early hand, in the margin; the allusion is involved in obscurity, if the words are correct.}
\[4\text{ The context, from this place down to page 286, closely resembles the text given in Twysden's Decem Scriptores (1652), cols. 2743–2762.}
\[5\text{ Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.}
\[6\text{ Westmelandiae in orig.}
nyng, miles, et Johannes Markham, Justiciarii, Thomas A.D. 1399. Stowe et Johannes Burbache, [Legum] Doctores, Thomas de Erpingham et Thomas Gray, milites, Willelmus de Ferby et Dionisius Lopham, notarii publici, de quorum- dam Dominorum spiritualium et temporalium, et Justiciariorum, et aliorum, tam in jure civili et canonico, quam regni legibus, peritorum, apud Westmonasterium, in loco consueto Consilii congregatorum, assensu et avisiamento ad actum subscriptum primitus deputati, ad præsentiam dicti Regis Ricardi, infra Turrim Londoniarum existentis, circiter nonam pulsationem horologii, accesserunt; et, recitato coram eodem Rege per prædictum Comitem Northumbriae, vice omnium prædictorum, sibi, ut praemittitur, adjunctorum, qualiter idem Rex alias, apud Coneway in Nortwallia, in sua libertate existens, promisit Domino Thomas, Archiepiscopo Cantuarie, et dicto Comiti Northumbriae, se velle cedere et renunciare coronae Angliae et Franciae, et suæ regiæ majestati, ex causis per ipsum Regem ibidem de sua inhabilitate et insufficientia confessatis, et hoc, melioribus modo et forma quibus facere poterit, prout peritorum consilium melius duxerit ordinandum; idem Rex, coram dictis Dominis et aliis superius nominatis, ad hoc benigne respondit, dicens, se velle cum effectu perficere, quod prius in hac parte promisit. Desideravit tamen habere colloquium cum Henrico, Duce Lancastriæ, et præfato Archiepiscopo, consanguineis suis, antequam promissum suum hujusmodi adimpleret. Petivit tamen copiam cessionis, per eum faciendæ, sibi tradi, ut super illa posset interim deliberare; qua quidem copia sibi tradita, dicti domini et alii ad sua hospitia redierunt. In presence of certain parties,

Postea, eadem die, post prandium, dicto Rege plurimum affectante prædicti Ducis Lancastriæ adventum.
A.D. 1399. et illum diutius præstolante, tandem idem Dux Lancastriae, Domini et personæ superius nominati, ac etiam Dominus Archiepiscopus Cantuaræ, venerunt ad præsentiam dicti Regis in Turri prædicta, Dominis de Ros, de Wiluby, et de Bergeveney, et pluribus aliis, ibidem præsentibus. Et postquam idem Rex cum dictis Duce et Archiepiscopo Cantuaræ colloquium habebat, ad partem, vultu hilari inter eos tunc inde exhibito, prout circumstantibus videbatur, tandem dictus Rex, accersitis ad eum omnibus ibidem præsentibus, dicit publice coram illis, quod paratus erat ad renunciandum et cedendum, secundum promissionem per eum, ut praemittitur, factam. Sicque incontinenti, licet potuisset, ut sibi dicebatur ab aliis, cessionem et renunciationem, in quadam cedula pergameni redactam, per aliquem deputatum organum vocis suæ fecisse, pro labore tam prolixæ lecturae vitando, idem tamen Rex gratanter, ut apparuit, ac hilaris vultu, cedulam in manu sua tenens, dicit semetipsum velle legere, et distincte perlegit eandem. Necnon absolvit ligeos suos, renunciavit, et cessit, juravit, et alia dixit et protulit in legendo, et se subscripsit manu sua propria, prout plenius continetur in dicta cedula; cujus tenor sequitur in hac verba.—

"In Dei nomine. Amen. Ego, Ricardus, Dei gratia, Rex Angliæ et Franciæ, et Dominus Hiberniæ, omnes dictorum dominiorum et regnorum Archiepiscopos, Episcopos, et alios quoscunque ecclesiarum, secularium vel regularium, prælatos, cujuscunque dignitatis, gradus, status, seu conditionis existant, Ducesque, Marchiones, Comites, Barones, Vassallos, et Valvasores, ligeos homines meos quoscunque, ecclesiasticos vel seculares, quocunque nomine censeantur, a juramento fidelitatis et homagii, et aliis quibus-

1 prolixæ lecturae, in Faustina B.  | 2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
"cunque mihi factis, omnique vinculo ligeantifì et re-

A.D. 1393.

galìæ, ac dominii, quibus mihi obligati fuerint, vel

sint, vel alias quomodolibet adstricti, absolvo; et

eos, et eorum hærèdes et successores in perpetuum,

"ab eisdem obligationibus et juramentis, et aliis qui-

buscunque, relaxo, libero, et quieto, solutos, quietos,

et immunes, quantum ad personam meam attinet,

dimitto, ad omnem juris effectum qui ex prémissis

sequi poterit, seu aliquo prémissorum; omnique re-

giæ dignitati et majestati, et corona, necnon dominio

et potestati dictorùm regnorum et dominii, aliisque

domiiniis et possessionibus meis, seu mihi quomodo-

libet competentibus, quibuscunque, quocunque nomine

censeantur, infra regna et dominia praédicta, vel alibi

ubilibet constitutis; omnique juri et colori juris, ac

titulo, possessioni, et dominio, quæ unquam habui,

habeo, seu quovismodo habere potero, in eisdem, seu

eorum aliquo, vel 1 [ad] ea, cum suis juribus et perti-

nentiis universis, seu dependentibus qualitercunque,

"ab eisdem, vel eorum aliquo; necnon regimini, guber-

nationi, et administrationi regnorum et dominiorum

hujusmodi, omnibusque et omnimodis mero et mixto

imperio, ac jurisditioni, in eisdem regnis et dominiis

mihi competentibus, vel competituris, nominique et

honori, ac regalitè et celsitùdini regis, pure, sponte,

simpliciter, et absolute, melioribus modo, via, et forma,

"quibus poterit, in hiis scriptis renuncio, et ea in

2 totum resigno, ac re et verbo dimitto, et eisdem

cedo, 3 et ab eisdem recedo, in perpetuum; salvis

successoribus meis, Regibus Angliæ, in regnis et do-

miniis, et cæteris omnibus prémissis, 4 juribus in

"eisdem, seu eorum aliquo, competentibus, et compe-

tituris quibuscunque. Meque 5 ad regimen et guber-

1 Omitted in orig.
2 toto in Faustina B. ix.
3 et . . . recedo, omitted in Faustina B. ix.
4 in perpetuum, juribus in Faustina B. ix. and Twyddens text.
5 et in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. and Twyddens text.
A.D. 1399. " nationem dictorum regnorum et dominiorum, cum suis pertinentiis universis, fator, " recogno, repute, " et veraciter, ex certa scientia, judico fuisse, et esse, " insufficientem penitus, et inutilem, ac propter me a " demerita notoria non immerito deponendum. Et " juro ad haec Sancta Dei Evangelia, per me corpor- " aliter tacta, quod nunquam premissis resignationi, " renunciationi, dimissi, et cessioni, contraveniam, " seu ea quomodolibet impugnabo, facto vel verbo, " per me vel alium, seu alios, seu contraveneri vel im- " pugnari permittam, quantum in me est, publice vel " occulie; sed easdem renunciationem, resignationem, " dimissionem, et cessionem, ratas et gratas habebo, et " firmiter tenem et conservabo, in toto, et in omni " sui parte, sicut me Deus adjuvet, et haec Sancta Dei " Evangelia. Ego Ricardus, Rex antedictus, propria " manu me subscribo."

Et statim idem Rex renunciationi et cessioni pra- dictis, verbo tenus adjunxit, quod si esset in potes- tate sua, dictus Dux Lancastriae succederet sibi in regno; sed " quia hoc in potestate mea minime depen- " debat," ut dixit, dictos Eboraci Archiepiscopum et Episcopum Herefordensem, quos pro tunc suos constituit procuratores, ad declarandum et intimandum cessionem et renunciationem hujusmodi omnibus statibus dicti regni, rogavit, ut intentionem et voluntatem suam in ea parte populo nunciarent; et, in signum sua intentionis et voluntatis hujusmodi, annullum aureum de signeto suo patente de digito suo tunc ibidem extraxit, et digito dicti Ducis apposuit; desiderans hoc ipsum, ut asseruit, omnibus regni statibus innotesci. Quo facto, valefacientes hinc inde, omnes Turrim predictam exierunt, ad sua hospitia reversuri.

1 recogno in orig. 2 habebo in Faustina B. ix. 3 observabo in Faustina B. ix. 4 sua in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text. 5 Omitted in orig. 6 aur i in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
In crastino autem,videlicet, die Martis in festo Sancti Teronimi, in Magna Aula Westmonasterii, in loco ad Parliamentum 1 honorifice preparato, dictis Archiepiscopis Cantuariæ et Eboraci, et Duce Lancastriæ, alisque Ducibus et Dominis, tam spiritualibus quam temporali- bus, quorum nomina describuntur inferius, populoque dicti regni 2 propter 3 Parliamentum in maxima multi- tudine congregato, præsentibus; ac præfato Duœ Lancastræ locum statui suo debitum, et solitum, occupante, ac sede regali, cum pannis auri solemniter præparata, tunc vacua absque præsidente quocunque, supradictus Archiepiscopus Eboraci, 4 Herefordensis 5 Episcopi nomine, juxta dicti Regis injunctum, cessionem et renunciationem per eum sic fuisse, ut præmittitur, factam, etiam cum subscriptione regiae manus, et traditio- ne signeti sui, publice declaravit; eandemque cessionem, et renunciationem, per alium, primo in Latinis verbis, et postea in Anglicis, legi fecit ibidem; et statim, ut fuerat interrogatus a statibus et populo tunc ibidem præsentibus, primo, videlicet, ab Archiepiscopo Cantuariæ predicto, (cui ratione dignitatis et prærogativae ecclesiae sue Cantuariæ, metropolitae, in hac parte competit, primam vocem habere inter cæteros prelato- tos et procuradores regni,) 6 si pro eorum interesse, et utile regni, vellent renunciationem et 7 cessionem easdem admi- ttere; status idem et populus, reputantes ex causis per ipsum Regem in sua renunciatione et cessione predictis specificatis, 8 fore multum expediens, renun-
A.D. 1399. His renunciation is accepted. Proposition that certain articles of accusation against King Richard shall be read.

Sequitur juramentum etc., ut in fol. —

The Oath taken by King Richard, at his Coronation.

1 redacta in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden’s text.
2 erant in orig.
3 See next page.
4 This passage, down to "sequitur," which is annexed as belonging to the erasure above noticed, does not appear in Twysden’s text. It is inserted in the margin of Faustina B. ix.
5 Isaiah li. 16.
6 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
ab Archiepiscopo Cantuariæ erat receptum; et illud A.D. 1399, idem juramentum dictus Rex postmodum iteravit, prout in rotulis Cancellariae plenius reperiri poterit de recordo.

**Juramentum.**

"Servabis Ecclesiae Dei, cleroque et populo, pacem ex integro, et concordiam in Domino, secundum vires tuas?"—*Respondebit,—"Servabo."

"Facies fieri in omnibus judicis tuis aequam et rectam justitiam, et discretionem in misericordia et veritate, secundum vires tuas?"—*Respondebit,—"Faciam."

"Concedis justas leges et consuetudines esse tenendas, et promittis per te eas esse protegendas, et ad honorem Dei corroboranidas, quas vulgus elegerit, secundum vires tuas?"—*Respondebit,—"Concedo et promitto."

Adjicianturque praedictis interrogationibus quae justa fuerint; pronunciatisque omnibus, confirmabit Rex se omnia servaturum, sacramento super altare praestito coram cunctis.

*Sequitur objectus contra Regem pro depositione ejusdem.*

Inprimis, objicitur Regi quod propter malum regimi- men suum, videlicet, bona et possessiones ad coronam suam spectantia etiam personis indignis donando, et alias indiscrete dissipando, et ob hoc collectas, et alia gravia onera, et importabilia, populo sine causa imponendo, necnon alia mala innumerabilia perpetrando, alias de assensu et mandato suis, per totum Parliamentum, ad gubernationem regni certi Praelati et alii

---

1 *clero* in Faustina B. ix.
Domini temporales erant electi et assignati, qui viribus suis circa gubernationem justam regni propriis sumptibus suis fideliter laborarent; tamen Rex, facto per eum conventiculo, cum suis complicibus, dictos Dominos, tam spiritualibus quam temporales, circa regni utilitatem occupatos, de alta proditio ine impetere proponebat, ac Justiciarios regni ad suum nefandum proposito roborandum, metu mortis et cruciatus corporis, violenter attraxit, dictos Dominos destruere satagendo.

Itæm, idem Rex nuper apud Solopiam coram se, et alis sibi faventibus, venire fecit quamplures, et majorem partem Justiciariorum cameraliter, et eos per minas et terrores varios, metus, qui possunt cadere in constantes, induxit, fecit, et compulit singillatim, ad respondendum certis quaestionibus pro parte ipsius Regis factis ibidem, leges regni sui, praeter, et contra, voluntatem eorum, et aliter quam respondissent, si fuissent in libertate sua, et non coacti. Quadrum responsionum colore, proposuit idem Rex processisse postmodum ad destructionem Thomæ, Duci Gloucestriae, et Comitum Arundelliae et Warwici, et aliorum Dominorum; contra quorum facta et gesta predictus Rex erat quamplurimum indignatus, maxime quia desiderabant eundem Regem esse sub bono regimine. Sed divino nutu obstante, resistentia et potentia dictorum Dominorum, Rex propositum suum hujusmodi perducere non potuit ad effectum.

Item, cum dicti Domini temporales suis malitia et dolositati, seipsos defendendo, restitissent, dictusque Rex diem Parliamenti sui pro justitia eis, et aliiis regnicolis, in hac parte ministranda præfixisset, dictique Domini temporales in suis domibus sub spe et fiducia Parliamenti praedicti quiete et pacifice resedissent, Rex clanculo Ducem Hibernie, cum suis litteris et vexillo, ad

---

1 tot in Faustina B. ix.
2 ad in Faustina B. ix.
3 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
4 et etiam metus in Faustina B. ix.
partes Cestriæ destinavit, ibique nonnullas gentes ad arma commovit, et contra dictos Dominos et magnates regni, et reipublicæ servitores, fecit insurgere, vexillum ejus contra pacem per eum juratam publice erigendo; unde homicidia, captivitates, dissensiones, et alia mala infinita, per totum regnum secuta fuerant; quare perjurium incurrebat.

Item, licet dictus Rex omnem offensam dictis Duci Gloucestriae, et Comitibus Arundelliae et Warwici, et omnibus aliis sibi in hujusmodi factis assistentibus, et aliis, in pleno Parliamento, de assensu ejusdem, perdonasset, pacisque et amoris signa per plures annos eisdem Duc et Comitibus, et aliis, vultum hilarem et benignum, exhibuisset; idem tamen Rex, semper et continue fel in corde gerens, tandem, opportunitate captata, dictum Ducem Gloucestriae, ipsius Regis avunculum, necnon bona memoriae Edwardi, nuper Regis Angliae, filium, et Constabularium Angliae, dicto Domino Regi cum processione solemni humiliter occurrentem, dictosque Comites Arundelliae et Warwici, capi et arestari fecit, et ipsum Ducem extra regnum Angliae usque villam Calesiae duci fecit, et ibidem incarcerari, et sub custodia Comitis Notynghamiæ, unius ipsum Ducem appellantium, detineri, et, sine responsione et processu quocunque legitimo, occulte suffocari, strangulari, et murdrari, inhumaniter et crueliter fecit, Comitemque de Arundelle, tam chartam de dicta perdonatione generali quam chartam perdonationis, postea sibi concessam, allegantem, et justitiam sibi fieri petentem, in Parlamento, viris armatis et sagittariis immensi vallato, per impressionem populi, per eum ad hoc collecti, dannabiliter decapitari fecit; Comitemque Warwici et Dominum de Cobham perpetuis carceribus mancipavit,
ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI,

A.D. 1399.

Articles of
accusation against
King Richard.

eorum terras et tenementa, tam in feodo simplici quam
in feodo talliato, de se et haeredibus suis, contra jus-
titiam et leges regni sui, et juramentum suum ex-
pressum, nequiter confiscando, et eorum appellantibus
concedendo.

Item, tempore quo idem Rex in Parliamento suo
fecit adjudicari Ducem Gloucestriae et Comites Arun-
delliae et Warwici, ut liberius posset exercere crudeli-
tatem in eosdem, et voluntatem 1injuriosam in alii
dimplere, sibi attraxit magnam multitudinem malefac-
torum de Comitatu Cestriae; quorum quidam, cum Rege
transuenientes 2per regnum, tam infra hospitium Regis
quam extra, ligeos regni crudeler occiderunt, et quos-
dam verberaverunt, et depraedarunt bona populi, et pro
suis victualibus solvere recusarunt, et uxores et alias
mulleres rapuerunt et violaverunt; et licet super eorum
hujusmodi excessibus graves querimoniae deferebantur
ad audientiam dicti Domini Regis, idem tamen Rex
super hiis justitiam, seu remedium, facere non curavit;
sed favebat eisdem gentibus in 3malitiis eorundem,
confidens in 4 eos, et eorum præsidio, contra quosque
alios regni sui; propter quod fideles regni sui magnam
commotionem et indignationis materiam habuerunt.

Item, licet dictus Rex per brevia sua proclamari fecerit
per totum regnum suum, quod avunculum suum, Ducem
Gloucestriae, et Comites Arundelliae et Warwici, capi
4 fecit, et arestari, non pro aliquibus congregationibus
et equitationibus per eos infra regnum Angliae factis,
sed pro quampluribus extorsionibus, 5oppressionibus, et
aliis contra regaliam suam, et regiam majestatem, post-
modum factis et perpetratis per eos; quoque non erat
intentionis ipsius Regis quod aliquis de familia præ-

---

1 suam injuriosam, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 in regnum, in Faustina B. ix.
3 maleficiis in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
4 fecerit in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
5 et oppressionibus, in Faustina B. ix.
dictorum Ducis ac Comitum, seu illorum, qui in comitia sua, tempore congregationis et equitationis predictarum fuit, ea occasione molestetur aliquiaiter, seu gravetur; idem tamem Rex tandem in Parliamento suo dictos Dominos, non pro extorsionibus, oppressionibus, et aliis predictis, impetiit, sed pro congregationibus et equitationibus supradictis eos adjudicavit ad mortem, et quamplures de familia eorum Dominorum, et illorum qui in comitiva sua tempore congregationis et equitationis fuerant, metu mortis, compulsit fines et redemptiones facere, utpote proditores, ad gravem destructionem quamplurium de populo suo; sic quoque dictos Dominos, et eorum familiares hujusmodi, et populum regni sui, callide, fraudulenter, et malitiose decepit.

Item, postquam quamplures de personis illis, facientibus fines et redemptiones hujusmodi, impetraverunt a Rege litteras suas patentes perdonationis plenariae in praemissis, nullum commodum ex hujusmodi litteris perdonationis poterant reportare, donec novos fines et redemptiones pro eorum vita conservanda fecissent, unde fuerunt quamplurimum depauperati; pro quo nomine et statui regio fuerat plurimum derogatum.

Item, in Parliamento ultimo celebrato apud Salopiam, idem Rex, proponens opprimere populum suum, procuravit subtiliter, et fecit concedi, quod potestas Parliamenti, de consensu omnium statuum regni sui, remeret apud quasdam personas, ad terminandum, dissoluto Parliamento, certas petitiones in eodem Parliamento porrectas, pro tunc minime expeditas; cujus concessionis colore, personae sic deputatae processerunt ad alia generaliter Parliamentum illud tangentia, et de voluntate Regis, in derogationem status Parliamenti,

1 regis in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.
2 ad in Faustina B. ix.
et in magnum incommodum totius regni, et perniciosum exemplum. Et ut super factis eorum hujusmodi aliqualem colorem et auctoritatem viderentur habere, Rex fecit Rotulos Parliamenti pro voto suo mutari et deleri, contra effectum concessionis prae dictae.

Item, non obstante quod dictus Rex in Coronatione sua juraverit, quod fieri faceret in omnibus judiciis suis æquam et rectam justitiam, et discretionem in misericordia et veritate, secundum vires suas, dictus tamen Rex, absque omni misericordia, rigorose, inter caetera, statuit et ordinavit, sub penibus gravibus, quod pro Henrico, Duco Lancastriæ, relegato, pro aliqua gratia sibi facienda, nullus rogaret, aut intercederet, apud eundem Regem; in quo facto idem Rex contra caritatis vinculum operabatur, juramentum praeditum temere violando.

Item, quamvis corona regni Angliæ, et jura ejusdem coronæ, ipsumque regnum, fuerint ab omni tempore retroacto adeo libera, quod Dominus Summus Pontifex, nec aliquis alius extra regnum, se intromittere debeat de eisdem; tamen praefatus Rex, ad roborationem statutorum suorum erroneorum, supplicavit Domino Pape, quod Statuta in ultimo Parliamento suo edita confirmaret; super quo "dictas litteras Apostolicas impetravit, in quibus graves censuras proferuntur contra quoscunque qui dictis Statutis in aliquo contravenire praesumpserint. Quæ omnia contra coronam, et contra dignitatem regiam, ac contra statuta et libertates dicti regni, tendere dino seuntur.

Item, licet Dominus Henricus, nunc Dux Lancastriæ, billam suam, statum et honorem Regis concernentem, ad ipsius Regis mandatum, contra Thomam Duce Northfolchiae proposuisset, et eam fuisset debite pro-

1 dictus Rex litteras, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden’s text.
2 Omitted in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden’s text.
secatus, adeo quod juxta Regis ordinationem se ad A.D. 1399, duellum in omnibus paratum exhibuisset; præfatusque Rex ipsu...
A.D. 1399. aliorum commodo singulari, ad magnum gravamen populi sui, 1 perjurium notorie incurrendo.

Item, tempore illo quo Rex predictus petivit et habuit a 2 quampluribus Dominis, et aliis de regno, plures pecuniarum summas ex causa mutui; certo 3 tempore persolvendas, non obstante quod idem Rex per singulas litteras suas patentes promisit bona fide singulis personis a quibus mutuo recepit pecunias illas, quod eis limitato termino predicto resolveret hujusmodi pecunias mutuatatas, promissionem suam hujusmodi non adimplevit, nec de pecuniis illis est haecetus satisfactum; unde credores hujusmodi valde gravantur, et non tam illi quam plures alii de regno Regem reputant infidelem.

Item, ubi Rex Angliae de proventibus regni sui, et patrimonio ad coronam suam spectante, possit honeste vivere absque oppressione populi sui, dummodo regnum non esset guerrarum dispensio oneratum, idem Rex, quasi toto tempore 4[suo], durantibus treugis inter regnum Angliae et adversarios ejus, non solum magnam, immo, maximam partem, dicti patrimonii sui donavit etiam personis indignis, verum etiam propterea 5 onera concessionis subditorum imposuit, quasi annis singularis in regno suo; quod valde et nimirum excessive populum suum oppressit, in depauperationem regni suj; bona, sic levata, non ad commodum et utilitatem regni Angliae convertendo, sed ad sui nominis ostentationem ac pompam, et vanam gloriam, prodige dissipando; et pro victualibus hospitii sui, et aliis emptionibus suis, maximae summæ pecuniarum in regno suo debentur, licet divitiis et thesauris plus quam 6 aliiquis progenitorum suorum, de quo recolitur, abundavit.

1 et contra leges regni sui, perjurium, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 quamplurimus in Faustina B. ix.
3 termino in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
4 Omitted in orig; supplied from Twysden's text and Faustina B. ix.
5 tot onera, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
6 aliis in Faustina B. ix.
Item, idem Rex, nolens justas leges et consuetudines regni sui servare seu protegere, sed secundum arbitrium suæ voluntatis facere quicquid desideriis occurrerit, quandoque et frequentius, quando sibi ex positæ et declaratæ fuerant leges regni sui, per Justiciarios et alios de Consilio suo, ut secundum leges illas petentibus justitiam exhiberet, dixit expresse, vultu austero et protervo, quod leges suæ erant in ore suo, et aliquotiens, in pectore suo; et quod ipse solus posset mutare et condere leges regni sui; et opinione illæ seductus, quam pluribus de ligeis suis justitiam fieri non permisit, sed per minas et terrores quam plurales a prosecutione communis justitiae cessare coegit.

Item, quod postquam in Parliamento suo certa Statuta erant edita, quæ semper ligarent, donec auctoritate aliquius alterius Parliamenti fuerint specialiter revocata, idem Rex, cupiens tanta libertate gaudere, quod nulla hujusmodi Statuta ipsum adeo ligarent, quin posset exequi et facere secundum suæ arbitrium voluntatis, prout non potuit, procuravit subtiliter talem petitionem in Parliamento suo, pro parte communitatis regni sui, porrigi, et sibi concedi in genere, quod posset esse adeo liber sicut aliquis progenitorum suorum extitit ante eum; quarum petitionis et concessionis colore, frequentius mandavit, et fecit idem Rex quamplura fieri contra statuta hujusmodi, minime revocata; veniendo expresse et scienter contra juramentum suum in Coronatione sua præstitum, ut praefertur, prout inferius declaratur.

Item, licet statutum fuerit et ordinatum, quod nullus Vicecomes officium suum occuparet continue ultra annum unum, sed triennium laberetur antequam ad illud officium admitteretur de novo, idem Rex, quandoque pro suo commodo singulari, et quandoque ad pro-

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 quodque et frequentius omitted in Faustina B. ix.
3 prosecutionem in Twysden's text.
A.D. 1399.

Articles of accusation against, King Richard.

ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI, curationem aliorum, pro eorum commodo et utilitate, quosdam Vicecomites stare et perseverare permisit, et fecit, in eorum officis continue, aliquotiens per biennium, et aliquotiens per triennium; contra tenorem et effectum Statuti prædicti, perjurium incurrindo; et hoc est notorium, publicum, et famosum.

Item, licet de statuto et consuetudine regni, in convocatione cujuslibet Parliamenti, populus suus in singulis Comitabus regni debeat esse liber ad eligendum et deputandum milites pro hujusmodi Comitatibus, ad interestendum Parliamento, et ad exponendum eorum gravamina, et ad prosequendum pro remediis superinde, prout eis videbitur expedire; tamen praefatus Rex, ut in Parliamentis suis liberius consequi valeat sua temerarie voluntatis effectum, direxit mandata sua frequentius Vicecomitibus suis, ut certas personas, per ipsum Regem nominatas ut milites Comitatuum, venire faciant ad Parliamenta sua; quos quidem milites, eidem Regi faventes, inducere poterat, prout frequentius fecit, quandoque per minas varias et terrores, quandoque per munera, ad consentiendum illis quæ regno fuerant prejudicia, et populo quamplurimum onerosa; et specialiter ad concedendum eidem Regi subsidium lanarum ad terminum vitæ suæ, et alius subsidium ad certos annos, populum suum nimium opprimendo.

Item, idem Rex, ut liberius adimplere et sequi posset suæ arbitrium voluntatis, illicite fecit et mandavit quod Vicecomites per totum regnum suum, ultra antiquum juramentum, jurarent quod omnibus mandatis suis, sub Magno et Privato Sigillis, etiam litteris sub signeto suo, quotienscunque eis directe fuerant, obedirent; et in casu quod idem Vicecomites

1 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
2 Et quandoque, in Faustina B. ix.
3 In singulis suæ, in Faustina B. ix.
4 Antiquum juramentum, in Twysden's text.
5 Fuerint in Faustina B. ix.

and Twysden's text.
scire poterant aliquos de ballivis suis, cujuseunque condi-
tionis fuerint, aliquod malum dicere sive loqui publice,
vel occulte, quod cedere posset in dedecus aut scan-
dalum personæ regiæ, ipsos arestarent, vel facerent
arestari, et prisonæ mancipari, in eadem salvo custo-
diendos, donec aliud a Rege habuerint in mandatis;
prout reperiri poterit de recordo. Quod quidem factum
posset verisimiliter tendere ad destructionem quorum-
cunque ligeorum dicti regni.

Item, idem Rex, nitens suppeditare populum suum,
et bona sua subtiliter sibi adquirere, ut divitiis super-
fluis abundaret, induci fecit populum de septemdecim
Comitatibus regni sui ad submittendum se Regi, tan-
quam proditores, per litteras sub sigillis eorum; cujus
colore, obtinuit magnas summas pecuniarum sibi con-
cedi per clerum et populum Comitatum eorum, et
pro benevolentia Regis captanda. Et quamvis ad
placendum populo idem Rex fecerat illis restituir litteras
illas obligatorias, tamen procuratores ipsius populi,
habentes pleniam potestatem eis concessam
ad obligandum se et hæredes suos dicto Regi, idem
fecit obligari sibi, sub sigillis eorum, nomine ejusdem
populi; sicque decepit populum suum, et bona eorum
subtiliter extorquebat ab eis.

Item, quamvis idem Rex in Coronatione sua jura-
verit de servando libertates Ecclesiae Angliæ con-
cessas, tamen dictus Rex, ratione viagii sui in terram
Hibernie faciendi, quampluribus viris religiosis, vide-
licit, Abbatibus et Prioribus regni sui, per litteras
suas districo præcipiendo mandavit, ut eorum aliquis certos
equos, et aliqui eorum non solum equos, sed eis
equadrigas, sive charactas, alioquin magnas pecuniarum
summas, eidem Regi pro dicto viagio transmitterent,

1 regis in Faustina B. ix. and
Twysden's text.

2 suas in Faustina B. ix.

3 Rex fecit, in Faustina B. ix. and
Twysden's text.

4 suis in orig.; corrected from
Faustina B. ix.
in eisdem litteris expressatas; propter quem modum scribendi, plures religiosos hujusmodi, metu ductos, artavit ad compleendum voluntatem et preceptum ipsius Regis; unde graviter depauperati fuerant, et oppressi, in derogationem libertatis ecclesiasticae manifestam. Cujus praetextu dictus Rex perjurium incurrebat.

1 Item, thesaurum, coronas, et reliquias, et alia jocalia, videlicet, bona regni, quae ab antico dimissa fuerant in archivis regni, pro honore Regis et conservatione regni sui, in omnem eventum, præfatus Rex, exiens regnum suum versus Hiberniam, abstulit, et secum deferri fecit, sine consensu statuum regni; unde regnum illud fuisset valde depauperatum, nisi de recepctione bonorum hujusmodi, contra voluntatem dicti Regis, Deus aliter providisset; et præterea rotulos recordorum, statum et gubernationem regni sui tangentium, prædictus Rex delerii et abradi fecit; in magnum prejudicium populi, et exhaeretationem coronæ regni prædicti, et, ut verisimiliter creditur, in favorem et sustentationem sui mali regiminis.

2 Item, Rex consuevit, quasi continue, esse adeo variabilis et dissimulans in verbis et in scripturis suis, et omnino contrarius sibi ipsi, et specialiter in scribendo Papæ et Regibus, et aliis Dominis, extra regnum et infra, et etiam aliis subditis suis, ita quod nullus vivens [qui] habet notitiam suæ conditionis hujusmodi, poterit aut velit de eo confidere; immo reputatur adeo infidelis et inconstans, quod cedit ad scandalum non

---

1 A clause found in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text (col. 2752), is omitted here.—“ Item in pluribus magnis consiliis regni, quando Domini, regni Justiciarii et alii, onerati fuerant, ut fideliter consulerent Regi in tangentibus statum suum et regni sui, idem Dominii, Justiciarii et alii, frequentibus in dando consilium justa discretionem suam, fuerant per “Regem subito et tam acriter in crepati et reprobatyi, quod non essent ausi dicere pro statu Regis et regni, in consiliis suis dandis, veritatem.”

2 idem Rex, in Twysden’s text.

3 quasi nullus, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden’s text.

4 Omitted in orig. and Faustina B. ix.
solum personæ suæ, sed etiam totius regni, et potissime apud extraneos totius orbis inde notitiam obtinentes.

Item, licet terræ et tenementa, bona et catalla, cujuscunque liberi hominis, per leges regni ab omnibus retroactis temporibus usitatas, capi non debeant, nisi fuerint forisfacta, nihilominus dictus Rex, proponens et satagens leges hujusmodi enervare, in præsenta quamplurium dominorum et aliorum de communitate regni ¹ sui, frequenter dixit ²[et] affirmavit, quod vita cujuscunque ligei sui, ac ipsius terræ, tenementa, bona, et catalla, sunt sua, ad voluntatem, ³ absque aliqua forisfactura. Quod est omnino contra leges et consuetudines regni sui.

Item, quamvis statutum fuerit, et ordinatum, ac etiam hactenus confirmatum, quod nullus liber homo capiatur etc., nec quod aliquo modo destruatur, nec quod Rex super eum ibit, nec super eum mittet, nisi per legale judicium parium suorum, vel per legem terræ, tamen de voluntate, mandato, et ordinatione, dicti Regis, quamplures ligeorum suorum, malitiosæ accusati super eo quod debuisserent aliquid dixisse publice vel occulte, quod cedere poterit ad vituperium, scandalum, seu dedecus, personæ Domini Regis, fuerant capti et imprisonati, et ducti coram Constabulario et Marescallo Angliae, in curia militari; in qua curia dicti ligei accusati, ad aliud responsum admitti non poterant, nisi in respondingo se in nullo fore culpabiles, et per eorum corpora, et non aliter, se justicarent et defendentur, non obstante, quod accusatores et appellatores eorum essent juvenes fortes et sani, et illi accusati senes et impotentes, mutilati, vel infirmi; unde non solum destructio dominorum et magnatum regni, sed etiam

---

¹ Omitted in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden’s text.
² Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden’s text.
³ suam, absque, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden’s text.
A.D. 1399. omnium et singularium personarum communinitatis ejusdem regni verisimiliter sequi posset. Cum igitur Rex prædictus hujusmodi regni sui Statuta voluntarie contravenerit, non est dubium quin proinde perjurium incurrebat.

Item, quamvis populus regni Angliae, vigore ligeantiae suæ, satis plene Regi suo teneatur et astringatur, ipse quoque Rex populum suum, si quovis modo deliquerit, per leges et consuetudines regni corrigere valeat, et punire; tamen dictus Rex, cupiens suppeditare, ac nimis opprimere, populum suum, ut liberius exequi et sequi valeret suæ ineptæ et illicitæ voluntatis arbitrium, per suas litteras ad omnes Comitatus regni sui directas, indixit etiam, et mandavit, ut ligei sui quiunque, tam spirituales quam temporales, certa juramenta praestarent in genere quæ eis fuerant nimium odiosa, quæque verisimiliter causare possent destructionem finalem populi sui, et quod sub litteris et sigillis eorum juramentum hujusmodi roborent. Cui quidem mandato regio populus regni sui paruit et obedivit, ne ipsius indignationem incurreret, aut offensam, ac etiam metu mortis.

Item, cum partes in foro ecclesiastico, in causis mere ecclesiasticis et spiritualibus litigantes, prohibitiones regias ad impediendum processum legitimum in eisdem a Cancellario Angliae impetrare laborassent, et idem Cancellarius, ex justitia, ad hoc rescribere reusuasset; idem tamen Rex, per litteras sub signeto suo, judicibus ecclesiasticis hujusmodi frequenter districte prohibuit, ne in causis hujusmodi procederent, libertates ecclesiasticas in Magna Charta approbatas, ad quas conservandas juratus extiterat, nequiter infringendo, perjurium et sententiam excommunicationis, contra hujusmodi violatores a sanctis patribus latam, damnabiliter incurrendo.

1 juramenta in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden’s text.
Item, dictus Rex Dominum Thomam de Arundellia, Archiepiscopum Cantuariae, totius Angliae Primatem, patrem suum spiritualen, in Parliamento, 1 viris armatis hostili more vallato, tunc de callido consilio dicti Regis se absentantem, absque causa rationabili, seu legitima, quacunque, seu alio juris processu, contra leges regni sui, per ipsum, ut praefertur, juratas, in exilium perpetuum adjudicavit.

Item, per inspectionem testamenti dicti Regis, sub Magno et Privato Sigillis suis, et signeto, signati, inter cetera continetur haec clausula, sive articulus:—"Item " volumus, quod auri nostri residuum, solutis tamen nostrorum hospitii, camerae, et garderobae, veris debitis, (ad quae persolvena legamus viginti millia libra- rum, reservatis executoribus nostris quinde vel sex millibus marcarum, quas pro uberiori sustentatione leprosorum, ac capellanorum coram eis celebraturo- rum, per nos apud Westmonasterium et Bermundesey ordinatum, volumus per dictos executores nostros expendi,) nostro remaneat successori; dum tamen om- nia et singula statuta, ordinationes, stabilimenta, et judicia, in Parliamento 2 decimo-septimo die mensis Septembris, anno regni nostri vicesimo primo, apud Westmonasterium inchoato, et in eodem Parliamento usque Solopiam continuato, et ibidem tento, facta, lata, et reddita; necnon omnia ordinationes et judi- cia, ad stabilimenta, decimo-3 septimo die Septembris, anno regni nostri vicesimo secundo, apud Coventre, ac postea apud Westmonasterium, decimo-octavo die Martii, anno praedicto, auctoritate ejusdem Parlia- menti facta, habita, et reddita; ac etiam, omnia alia ordinationes et judicia, quae auctoritate ejusdem Par- liamenti in futurum contigerit fieri, approbet, rati- ficet, et confirmet, teneat, et teneri faciat, ac firmiter

1 suo, viris, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.

2 sexto in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.

3 sexto in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
ANNALES RICARDI SECUNDI,

A.D. 1399. "observet; alioquin, si praedictus successor noster pre-
missa facere noluerit, 1 quod non credimus, volumus
quod Thomas Dux Surreyæ, Edwardus Dux de Al-
marle, Johannes Dux Exoniae, et Willelmus le Scrop,
Comes Wiltshire, solutis prius debitis nostrorum
hospitii, camerae, et garderobæ, reservatis quinque
vel sex millibus marcarum, ut supra, pro hujusmodi
statutorum, stabilimentorum, ordinationum, et judi-
ciorum, sustentatione et defensione, secundum eorum
posse, etiam usque ad mortem, si oporteat, residuum
habeant et teneant membrum; super quibus, 2 et
singulis, eorum 3 conscientias, prout in die judicii re-
spondere voluerint, oneramus."

4 Per quem quidem articulum satis constare poterit
evidenter, quod idem Rex illa Statuta et ordinationes,
quae sunt erronea et iniqua, et omni juri et rationi
repugnantia, pertinaciter manutenere et defendere ni-
tebatur, non tam in vita quam in morte, nec 5 [de]
amine sue periculo, nec de dicti regni sui, seu ligeo-
rum suorum, ultima destructione curando.

Item, anno undecimo dicti Regis Ricardi, idem Rex
in capella manerii sui de Langleye, in praesentia Ducem
Lancastriæ et Eboraci, ac aliorum quamplurium Domi-
norum, personaliter constitutus, cupiens, ut apparet,
ut ejus avunculus, Dux Gloucestriae, tunc ibidem pres-
sens, de ipsius Regis beneplacito plene confideret, ad
venerabile corporis Dominici Sacramentum, super altare
repositum, sua sponte juravit, quoad eundem Ducem
Gloucestriae, pro aliquibus factis suis quæ contra per-
sonam ipsius Regis dicebantur esse commissa, nunquam
extune inferret sibi damnum aliquod, vel gravamen,
sed omnem offensam illius, si qua 6 fuerit, hilariter et

---

1 vel recusaverit, quod, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 omnibus, et singulis, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
3 conscientia in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
4 Propter quem, in Faustina B. ix. Per quem, in Twysden's text.
5 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
6 fuerit in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
ex integro sibi remisit. Postea tamen, juramento hujusmodi non obstante, dictus Rex praefatum Ducem pro sic prætensis offensis horribiliter et crudeliter murdrari fecit, reatum perjurii damnabiliter incurrendo.

Item, postquam unus de militibus Comitatum dicti regni, vocem eorum habens in Parliamento, dictum 1 Thomam, Archiepiscopum Cantuariae, super certis defectibus contra regiam majestatem, ut minus veraciter asserebatur, commissis, impetit 2 coram Rege et omnibus statibus regni, quamquam idem Archiepiscopus statim tune ibidem se paratum ad respondendum 3 exhibuit hujusmodi sibi impositis, et ad hoc petierit se admitti per Regem, satis plene confusus, ut dixit, se posse suam in ea parte innocentiam declarare; idem tamen Rex, machinans viis et modis quibus poterat eundem Archiepiscopum Cantuariae opprimere, et in nihilum redigere statum ejus, prout tandem rei exitus declaravit, benigno et hilari vultu ipsum Archiepiscopum alloquens in sua sede regali, 4 consuluit et attente rogavit eundem Archiepiscopum, quod illa vice taceret, tempus ad hoc magis aptum et congruum expectando. Quo die lapso, de die in diem bene per quinque dies et amplius, Rex praefatus ipsum Archiepiscopum fraudulenter et dolose decepit, consulens et suadens quod non veniret ad Parliamentum, sed apud hospitium suum intrepidus expectaret; quoniam, ut idem Rex fideliter sibi promisit, in absentia ipsius Archiepiscopi nullum sibi deberet inferri dispendium vel gravamen. Veruntamen dictus Rex, in suo Parliamento prædicto, ipsum Archiepiscopum, ut præfertur, absentem, ac ad respondum suum 5 nullo modo vocatum, absque causa rationabili quacunque, adjudicavit in exilium, ad ipsius Regis

---

1 Dominum Thomam, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 publice coram, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
3 obtulit, hujusmodi, in Faustina B.
ix. and Twysden's text.
4 consulit in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
5 nullum in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
A.D. 1399.

ARTICLES OF ACCUSATION AGAINST KING RICHARD.

beneplacitum duraturum, omnia bona sua, contra leges regni, et omnem justitiam, voluntarie confiscando; cujus pretextu perjurium incurrebat. Volens preterea dictus Rex suam in ea parte versutiam palliare, per ipsius blanda colloquia, cum dicto Archiepiscopo frequentius habita, tantam sibi illatam injuriam a se prorsus exutere nitebatur, et ad aliorum facta transferre; unde dictus Archiepiscopus, habens cum eodem Rege et cum Duce Northfolchiae, et alii Dominis et magnatibus dicti regni, colloquium, dixit aliqualiter lamentando, quod ipse non erat primus qui exilium pertulit, nec erat novissimus; quia putabat quod infra breve dictus Dux Northfolchiae et alii Domini ipsum Archiepiscopum sequerentur; et constanter asseruit dicto Regi, quod omnium premissorum asperitas in caput ipsius Regis debet finaliter retorqueri. Ad quod idem Rex, vultu demisso, acsi inde fuisset attonitus, incontinenti respondit, quod bene putabat 1 accidere posse, quod per ligeos suos a regno suo debeter expelli. Et ulterius dixit idem Rex, quod si 2 id forsann 3 acciderit, vellet ad locum ubi idem Archiepiscopus fuerat, se conferre. Et ut dictus Archiepiscopus huic assertioni fidem adhiberet indubiam, ostendit idem Rex Archiepiscopo memorato quoddam magnum auri monile, juxta fimbriam tunicae dicti Regis, subtus vestem ejus exteriorem, miro modo firmatum, intimans eidem Archiepiscopo pro constanti, quod cum illud monile sibi transmitteret pro intersigno, non 4 differret ille venire ubi dictus Archiepiscopus moraretur; et ut idem Archiepiscopus majorem 5 haberet materiam confidendi in eo, misit ipse Rex pra-

---

1 *illa* accider, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 *illa* in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
3 accideret in Faustina B. ix.
4 differre in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
5 At the foot of this page (93) of the volume, the following lines are written, in large characters, in, apparently, almost a contemporary hand:—

"Upon an hylle ys a greene, on
the grene stondeth a busche, up on
fato Archiepiscopo, consulens sibi quod omnia jocalia sua, et alia ad capellam suam spectantia, dicto Regi secrete transmitteret, pro salva custodia eorundem, ne colorem dicti judicii super ipsius exilio redditi, quisquam ad bona predicta manus injuriosas apponeret. Quo sub maxima confidentia facto, præfatus Rex bona hujusmodi, visa per eum, in quibusdam cofris reponit, et cofras illas serari, et per unum de clericis ipsius Archiepiscopi sigillari. Retentisque penes illum hujusmodi cofris, claves earum per eundum clericum Archiepiscopo memorato remisit; et cofras illas postmodum, dicto Archiepiscopo hoc penitus ignorant, frangi mandavit, et de bonis hujusmodi mox disposit pro sua libito voluntatis. Promisit etiam idem Rex dicto Archiepiscopo fideliter, quod si pararet se ad portum de Hampton, ut regnum exiret, saltem intersessione Reginae protinus revocaret eundem; et si contigerit ipsum Archiepiscopum regnum exire, citra Pascha proximo extunc sequens sine fallo rediret in Angliam, neque sum Archiepiscopatum amitteret, ullo modo; et hoc fideliter promisit, jurando super crucem Sancti Thomæ Martyris, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopi, per ipsum Regem corporaliter tactam. Quibus promissionibus non obstantibus, idem Rex dictum Archiepiscopum regnum exire coegit, et statim ad Sedem Apostolicam pro ipsius translatione transmisit litteras speciales: sicque, et alias, per fraudes et dolositates dicti Regis, erat idem Archiepiscopus, ut homo bonae fidei callide circumventus.

"the bussche hangeth a bagge .
[erased].
" The grene ys y move, and the
" bussche over throwe.
" And the bagge yschake, thenne
" yt ys tyme Engelond to wake.—
" Hii tres milites, Buschey, Bagod,
" et Grene, consiluerunt [consuluerunt]
" runt] Regi Ricardo, ut trans-

" fretaret in Hyberniam, ut ipsi regem ad firmam." The Note bears reference to Busshy, Green, and Bagot, the corrupt ministers of King Richard, already mentioned.  
1 hoc omitted in Faustina B. ix.  
2 contigeret in Faustina B. ix.  
3 dudum Sancti, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
A.D. 1399.  

The estates of the realm consent to the deposition of King Richard.

They appoint Commissioners to pronounce sentence.

The Commissioners read the sentence of deposition.

Et quoniam videbatur omnibus regni statibus, super hiis articulis singillatim ac communiter interrogataris, quod illae causae criminum et defectuum erant satis sufficientes et notoriae ad deponendum eundem Regem, attenta etiam sua confessione super ipsius insufficientia, et aliis in dicta renunciatione et cessione contentis, patenter emissa, omnes status predicti unanimitemer consenserunt, ut ex abundanti ad depositionem dicti Regis procederetur, pro majori securitate et tranquillitate populi, et regni commodo, 2 facienda; unde status et communitates predicti certos Commissarios, videlicet, 3 [Episcopum] Assavensem, Abbatem Glastoniensem, Comitem Gloucestrias, Dominum de Berkeley, Thomam Erpyngham, et Thomam Gray, milites, et Willelmum Thernyng, Justiciarium, unanimitem et concorditer constituerunt et deputarunt, 4 publice tunc ibidem, ad ferendum sententiam depositionis hujusmodi, et ad deponendum eundem Ricardum, Regem, ab omni dignitate, majestate, et honore, regis, vice, nomine, et auctoritate, omnium statuum predictorum, proinde in consimilibus casibus 5 de antiqua consuetudine dicti regni fuerat observatum.

Et mox idem Commissaria, onus commissionis hujusmodi in se assumentes, et ante dictam sedem regalem pro tribunali sedentes, præhabita super hiis deliberatione aliquid, hujusmodi depositionis sententiam, in scriptis redactam, vice, nomine, et auctoritate, predictis, tulerunt, et per dictum Episcopum Assavensem, 6 Commissarium, et collegam suam, eandem sententiam, de ipsorum Commissarium voluntate et mandato, legi et recitari fecerunt, in haec verba:—

---

1 etiam communiter, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 Indistinct in orig.; faciendam in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
3 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
4 ab antiqua, in Faustina B. ix.
5 Concommissarium in Faustina B. ix.
6 ipso in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
"In Dei nomine. Amen. — Nos, Johannes Episcopus Assavensis, Johannes Abbas Glastoniensis, Thomas Comes Gloucesteris, Thomas Dominus de Berkley, Thomas de Erpyngham, et Thomas Gray, milites, ac Willelmus Thernyng, Justiciarius, per pares et pro-ceres regni Angliæ, spirituales et temporales, et ejusdem regni communitates, omnes status ejusdem regni representa-tantes, Commissarii ad infra scripta specialiter deputati, pro tribunali sedentes, attentis perjurii multiplicibus, ac crudelitate, aliisque quampluribus crimini-bus, dici Ricardi, citra regimen suum in regnis et dominii supradictis, pro tempore sui regiminis commissis et perpetratis; ac etiam dictis statibus palam et publice propositis, exhibitis, et recitatis; quæ adeo fuerunt, et sunt, publica, notoria, manifesta, et famosa, quod poterant, aut poterunt, tergiversatione celari; necnon confessione praedicti Regis, recognoscentis ac reputantis, ac veraciter, ex certa scientia sua, indicantis, se fuisse et esse insufficientem penitus, et inutilem, ad regimen et gubernationem regnorum et dominii praedictorum, et partium eorundem, ac, propter sua demerita notoriam, non immerito deponendum; ac per ipsum Ricardum prius emissa, ac de voluntate et mandato suis coram dictis statibus publicata, eisque notificata et exposita in vulgari; probabita super hiis et omnibus in negotio actatis coram statibus antedictis, et nobis, deliberatione diligentii, vice, nomine, et auctoritate, nobis in hac parte commissa, ipsum Ricardum, ex abundanti et cautelam, ad regimen et gubernationem dictorum regnorum et dominii, juriumque et partium eorundem, fuisse et esse inutilem, inha bilem, et insufficientem penitus, et indignum, ac pro-ter prae-missa, et eorum praetextu, ab omni dignitate et

1 reni in orig.  
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix., and Walsingham's text, Vol. II. p. 236.  
3 ipso negotio, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
A.D. 1399. "honore regii, si quid dignitatis et honoris hujusmodi in eo remanserit, merito deponendum pronunciamus, decernimus, et declaramus; et ipsum simili cautela deponimus, per nostram definitivam sententiam in hiis scriptis; omnibus et singulis Dominis, Archiepiscopis, Episcopis, et Prælatis, Ducibus, Marchionibus, et Comitibus, Baronibus, Militibus, vassallis, vassoribus, ac cæteris hominibus dictorum regnorum et dominii, ac aliorum locorum ad dicta regna et dominia spectantium, subditis ac ligeis suis, inhibentes expresse, ne quisquam ipsorum de cætero praefato Ricardō, tanquam Regi, vel domino, regnorum aut dominii praedictorum, pareat quomodolibet, vel intendat. Volentes autem preterea dicti status, quod nihil desit, quod valeat aut debeat circa praemissa requiri, superinde singillatim interrogati, personas easdem prius per Commissarios nominatos, statuerunt procuratores suos, comminiter et divisim, ad resignandum et reddendum dicto Regi homagium et fidelitatem prius sibi facta, et ad praemissa omnia hujusmodi depositionem et renunciationem tangentia, si oportuerit, intimandum."

The Duke of Lancaster claims the throne.

"The Duke confestim, cum constabat ex præmissis, et eorum occasione, regnum Angliae, cum pertinentiis suis, vacare, præfatus Henricus, Dux Lancastriæ, de loco suo surgens, stans erectus, quod satis intueri posset a populo, et muniens se humiliter signo crucis in fronte et in pectore, Christi nomine primitus invocato, dictum regnum Angiae, sic ut præmittitur, vacans, una cum corona, ac omnibus membriis et pertinentiis suis, vendicavit in lingua materna, sub hac forma verborum:—

1 quibuscunque ipsorum de cætero inhibentes, in Walsingham's text.
2 Commissarios in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
3 ut constabat, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
5 et stans, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
6 suo, Christi, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
"In the name of God, I, Henry of Lancastre, challenge this reiaume, 1 this the corone, with alle the membirs and the appurnenauce ther to, 2 save the ryght blood comyng of the Kyng Henry, and thorghe that ryght that Gode of hys grace hath sent me, with the help of my kyn and of my frendes, to recovere it; the whiche reiaume was in poynt to ben undon, for defaute of governaunce and undoynge of the lawes."

Post quam quidem vendicationem et clameum, tam Domini spirituales quam temporales, et omnes status ibidem præsentis, singillatim et communiter interro- gati, quid de illa vendicatione et clameo sentiebant, iidem status, cum toto populo, absque quacunque diffi­ cultate vel mora, ut Dux praefatus super eos regnaret, unanimiter consenserunt.

Et statim ut idem Rex ostendit statibus regni sig- netum Ricardi Regis, sibi pro intersigno traditum, suæ voluntatis, ut praemittitur, expressivum, praefatus Archiepiscopus, dictum Henricum Regem per manum dexteram apprehendens, duxit ad sedem regalem praedam. Et postquam idem Rex, coram dicta sede genuflectens, parumper orasset, idem Archiepiscopus Cantuariae, assistente sibi Archiepiscopo Eboraci praedicto, dictum Regem posuit, et sedere fecit, in sede regali prædicta, populo præ nimio gaudio applaudente.

Et mox dictus Archiepiscopus Cantuariae, vix facto silentio propter gaudium omnium astantium, collationem modicam fecit, et protulit in haec verba:—"Vir dominabitur populo.—Reg 90. co. etc." 5

---

1 and the, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 This is a singular variation from the other known copies of this claim. — In Faustina B. ix. it is "apurtie-
3 nans, as be the ryght blood;" and in Twysden,—"ais I that am de-
4 scendit be ryght lyne of the blode "comyng."" In Walsingham (II.

---

1 and the, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 This is a singular variation from the other known copies of this claim. — In Faustina B. ix. it is "apurtie-
3 nans, as be the ryght blood;" and in Twysden,—"ais I that am de-
4 scendit be ryght lyne of the blode "comyng."" In Walsingham (II.

---

1 and the, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
2 This is a singular variation from the other known copies of this claim. — In Faustina B. ix. it is "apurtie-
3 nans, as be the ryght blood;" and in Twysden,—"ais I that am de-
4 scendit be ryght lyne of the blode "comyng."" In Walsingham (II.

---

4 genuflexus in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
5 fortiter applaudente, in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
6 The Sermon is given at length in Twysden's text: 1 Sam. ix. 17, is the text alluded to.
A.D. 1399. Qua collatione completa, dictus Dominus Rex Hen­ricus, ad ponendum subditorum suorum animos in quiete, dixit publice tunc ibidem in haec verba:—

"Syres, I thank yow, espirituelx and temporelx, and alle the estates of the lond, and y do zow to wyte, that it ys nought my wil that no man think that by wey of conquest y wolde desherte any man of hys heritage, fraunchis, or other rythytes, that hem oughte to have, ¹ [ne put hym out of that he hath] and hath had, ² in the gode loves of this reiaume, except hem that han ben ageyn the gode purpos and the commune profyte of the reiaulme."

³ Proposuerat namque vendicasse regnum per Con­questum; sed hoc omnino prohibuit Dominus W[illelmus] Thernyng, Justiciarius; quia tali occasione com­movisset bilem totius populi contra eum; eo quod visum fuisset populo, si sic vendicasset regnum, quod potuisset quemlibet exhaeredasse pro votis, leges mutasse, condidisse novas, et veteres annulassæ; et per consequens nullus securus fuisset de sua ⁴ possessione.

Fecerat nempe Comitem Northumbriae Constabularium Angliae, et Comitem Westmorlandiae Marescallum; et J. ⁵ Scarle præcepit, ut Sigillum recuperet, cum officio Cancellariæ.

Attento igitur quod, prius vacante sede regali per cessionem et depositionem praedictas, cessavit omnis potestas ⁶ Justiciariorum, Vicecomitum, et aliorum officia­riorum, ubique per regnum, ne exhibitio justitiae, in gravamen populi, dilationis incommodo subjiceret, suos officiarios principales, ac etiam Justiciarios, deputavit ibidem, juramento consueto Regi præstito per singulos eorundem.

¹ Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
² Be the, in Faustina B. ix.; by the, in Twysden's text.
³ From this word, to "Attento igitur," the context is omitted in Faustina B. ix. and Twysden's text.
⁴ possessione qualicunque, in Faustina B. ix.
⁵ Scurile in Faustina B. ix.
⁶ quorumcunque Justiciariorum, in Faustina B. ix.
Et fuit illico, de dicti Regis mandato, publice pro-
clamatum ibidem, quod die Lunae proxima post dictum
festum Sancti Michaelis, Parliamentum ibidem teneri
et celebrari deberet; quodque die Lunae extunc proximo
sequente, videlicet, in festo Sancti Edwardi, Coronatio
dicti Regis fieret apud Westmonasterium; et quod
omnes illi qui vendicare voluerint aliquod servitium se
in dicta Coronatione facturos, et eo prætextu aliquid
sibi deberi, venirent ad Albam Aulam Palatii, coram
Senessallo, Constabulario, et Marescallo, die Sabbati
proxima ante diem Parliamenti predicti, quod in ea
parte justum fuerat petiri; quibus plena justitia
fieret in petitis.

Quantum autem ad abbreviationem assignationis, diei
Parliamenti predicti, fuerat ex parte dicti Regis pro-
testatio talis facta, videlicet, quod non erat intentionis
sae ut statibus regni prejudicium afferatur exinde,
neque quod hoc trahtatur de cetero in exemplum;
quimmo, quod abbreviatio illa fiebat tantummodo pro
 commodo et utilitate regni, et specialiter, ut quorum-
cunque ligeorum suorum parcatur laboribus et expen-
sis, quodque super gravaminibus populi celere possit
remedium adhiberi.

Quibus omnibus sic peractis, Rex, de sede regali surgens, et populum vultu hilari et benigno respiciens,
abinde, populo congaudente, recessit, et in Alba Aula
prædicta convivium regni proceribus ac generosis, illuc
in multitudo maxima congregatis, eadem die solem-
nissime celebravit.

Die Mercurii proximo extunc sequente, dicti procuratores, ut præmittitur, deputati, ad præsentionem dicti
Ricardi, nuper Regis, infra dictam Turrim existentis, to Richard.
prout sibi injunctum fuerat, accesserunt; et præfatus Dominus Willelmus Thernyg, Justiciarius, pro se et
dictis sociis suis, et conprocuratoribus suis, nomine

---

1 petis in orig.  | and Twysden's text.
2 sui regali in Faustina B. ix.  | 3 poulo in orig.
A.D. 1399. omnium statuum et populi prædictorum, admissionem dictæ renunciationis, ac modum, causam, et formam, sententiae depositionis hujusmodi ¹ Ricardó notificavit, ac plenius declaravit; et statim homagium et fideltatem eidem Ricardó, nuper Regi, ut præmittitur, factam, resignavit et reddidit, sub hiis verbis:—

"Syre, it ² [is] wel knowe to yow, that ther was a Parlement somonit of alle the states of ² [the] reaumc, for to be at Westminstre, to bygynne on the Teusday, on the morwe of the fest of Seynt Michel the Archaungel, that was zesterday. Because of whiche somons alles the states of this lond were there gadered, the which states have made thise same persones that ben comen hire to zow now, here procatoures, and gaven hem ful auctorite and pleyn power, and chargede hem forto sey the wordes that we schal sey to zow, in here name and on their behalf; that ys to wyten, the Bisshop of Seynt Ass for Erchebyshopes and Bisshopis, the Abbot of Glastingbury for Abbotes and Priorys, and other men of Holy Chirche, seculeres and rewleres, the Erl of Gloucestre for Dukes and Erles, the Lord of Berkeley for Barones and Baronettes, Sire Thomas Erpyngham, Chaumberleyne, for alle the bachelers and communes of the londe be Southe, Sire Thomas Grey for alle the bachelers and communes be Northe, and my felow Jon Marcham and me, to come with hem, for alle these states; and so, Syre, the wordes and the doyng that we schal sey to zow is not one-liche owre wurdes, bute the wurdes and the doyng of alle the states of this lond, and owre charge and in here name."

-answer made by Richard.

¹ Ricardi in Faustina B. ix. ² Omitted in orig. ; supplied from Faustina B. ix. ³ Assa in Faustina B. ix. ⁴ A line occurs here in orig., with an expunctory line beneath:— "Responsio Ricardi, nuper Regis, in vulgari."
Prosecutio Willelmi. — Sire, ye remembre yow wol that on Munday, in the fest of Seynt Michel the Archawngel, right here and in what presence ye renouncedede and cesede of the stat of kyng and of lوردship, and of al the dignite and worschipe that longeth ther to, and asoiled alle zoure liges of al ligeaunce and obeysaunce that longeth to zou, up the forme that ys conteyned in the same renunciation and cession whiche ye redde zour self by zour mouth, and affirmed it be zoure oth, and be zoure owne wriyng; upon wiche ye made and ordeyned zoure procatoures the Erchbishop of Zork and the Bishop of Hereford, for to notifye and declare in zoure name this renunciation and cession, at Westmynstre, to alle the states, and al the peple that was gadered because of the somounes forseyde ; the whiche thus don yesterday be this lorde, zoure procatoures, and wel herd and understonde, this renunciation and cession were pleynliclie acceptid, and fulliche agreed be alle the states and the peple forseyde. And over this, Sire, at the instaunce of alle the states and peple, ther were certeyne articles of defaute in zour governaunce ther red, and tho wel herd, and pleynliclie under- stonde to alle the states forseyde, hem thought hem so trewe and so notorie and knownen, that be two causes, and be mo othere, as they seyde, and havynge consideracioun to zoure owne wyrdes in zoure owne renunciation and cession, that ze were nought wurth ne sufficent, ne able for to governe for zour owne demerites, as it is more pleynliclie contened ther in, hem thoughte that it was resonable and cause for to depose zow. And here Comissaries
A.D. 1399. "that they made and ordeyned, as it is of record
"declared and deerged, and ajuged zow for to be de-
"posed, and deded depose zow, and prived zow of
"the stat of kyng, and of alle the lordschipes con-
teyned in the renunciacioun and cessioun forseyde,
"and off alle the dignites and wurschipes, and of
"al the administracion that longeth ther to. And we,
"the procetoures to alle the states and peple for seyde,
"as we be charged be hem, and be here auctorite
gyven us, and in here name, zelde zow up, for alle
"thise states and peple forseyde, homage, lige, and
"fewte, and al ligeawe and alle other boundes,
"charges, and sorvises, that longeth ther to; and that
"non of alle thise states and peple, fro this tyme
"forward, to bere zow feyth, ne do zow obeissaunce,
"as to here kyng.”

Responsio Ricardi. — And he answerede and seyde,
that he loked nought ther after; bute he sayde that
after al this he hopede that hys cosyn wolde be good
lord to hym.¹

Ubi vero Dominus Willelmus Thornyng dixit ei quod
renunciavit omnibus honoribus et dignitati Regi per-
tinentibus, ² respondit quod noluit renunciare spirituali
honori characteris sibi impressi, et inunctioni, quibus
renunciare nec potuit, nec ab hiis cessare; ubi vero
idem Willelmus Thornyng recitavit sibi quod confessus
 fuerat in suis propriis renunciatione et cessione quod
non fuerat dignus, sufficiens, neque habilis, ad ³ gubern-
nationem, ille dixit,—Non sic, sed quia non placuit
populo gubernatio sua. Tune idem W[illelmus] repli-
cavit sibi, dicens quam simpliciter hoc dictum fuerat
in dictis cessatione et renunciatione, et sub qua forma
ipsa sua confessio, renunciatio, sive cessio, scripta fuit.

¹ The corresponding text, as given in Twysden’s Decem Scriptores, ends here. See p. 252 ante, Note 4.
² ille respondit, in Faustina B. ix.
³ gubernandum in Faustina B. ix.
Ille 1 audiens, vultum ostendit hilarem, rogans ut pro eo A.D. 1399 taliter procurarent, ne 2 victu honorifico destitueretur:

Feria sexta sequente, ordinatum fuit per 3 Episcopum Cantuariæ, in cleri Convocatione, ut Episcopi religiosi, venientes ad Parliamentum, cujuscunque ordinis aut professionis exierent, de cætero in habitu sue religionis incederent, 4 et non in habitu clericali; unde murmur multum inter plures sucrevit; nemo tamen 5 [palam] huic ordinationi contradicere fuit ausus, propter auctoritatem viri, quem 6 [sequi] videbatur, velut ex integro, totus mundus.

Sabbato proximo tunc sequente, Rex Henricus Thomam, secundum filium suum, fecit Seneschallum Angliae, dans ei virgam illius officii; quia tunc affuerunt omnes qui 7 debebant Regi servitium in Coronatione [sua], et illi praecipue pertinebat cuiuslibet allocare officium debitum in Coronatione regia, vel assignare.


Baldewynus Frivyle vendicavit coram Senescallo, Constabulario, et Marescallo, facere officium in aula Regis, pro assertione juris ejusdem Regis in die sua.
A.D. 1399. Coronationis, quod in Coronatione Ricardi fecisse dino-
scitur Johannes Dymmok. Et responsum fuit sibi, 
quod pater suus vendicavit illud officium; et datus erat 
sibi dies a Coronatione Regis Ricardi, videlicet, ultimi, 
usque ad festum Purificationis Sanctæ Mariae tune 
proxime sequens, ut per hoc tempus posset evidentias 
justi requirere, quo non fraudaretur, si eae valeret 
quomodolibet exhibere. Qui ad diem praefixum non 
venit, per se nec per procuratum, etc. Quare visum 
est quod Johannes Dymmok juste vendicaverat illud 
officium, et expleverat, et in pacifica fuit possessione 
officii prænotati.

Ad hæc Baldewynus respondit, quod pater suus fuit 
mortuus infra tempus limitatum, quo tempore ipse 
puer erat, carens discretione; quare non potuit prose-
qui jus paternum. Tandem finem sortitur hujus-
modi, ex responso Vice-Senescalii, Constabularii, et 
Marescalli; quod quia præsens causae sine deliberatione 
majori non potuit terminari, propter vicinitatem regiae 
Coronationis, expectaret diem 1 
quod die veniret ostensurus de jure suo, ac recepturus 
et habiturus quæcumque ratio postularet.

Die Lunæ ex tunc sequente proximo, qui fuit dies 
Sanctæ Fidis, Rex novus presidebat in Parliamento 
regaliter, et Henricus, filius suus primogenitus, secun-
dum locum tenuit inter Dominos temporales. Secundus 
filius, tanquam totius Angliae Senescalus, virgam sui 
officii tenuit, coram patre.

Announce- Archiepiscopus Cantuariæ, pronunciatis causis Par-
ment of the King's 
liament de novo citati, et regia voluntate, addidit 
 wishes, made to 
quod Dominus Rex paratus erat facere rectam justitiam, 
Parliament by the 
et reddere quod suum erat cuicunque petenti. Et 
The Archbishop 
inter cætera, dixit ex parte Regis, quod idem Rex 
Canterbury. 
rogavit Dominos ibidem existentes, ne moleste ferrent

1 Hiatus in orig. and in Faustina B. ix.
2 quæcumque in orig.
3 regia voluntatis, in Faustina B. ix.
4 unicunque in Faustina B. ix.
dilationem Parliamenti, a quo cessandum fuit ab illo A.D. 1399. 

[\[die\]] usque in crastinum regæ Coronationis; quia Rex non proposuit attentare quicquam donec recepisset plenum statum regiminis, per sacramentum unctionis et episcopalis benedictionis, sibi in sua Coronatione, prout res exigit, conferendæ. Dixit præterea Cantuariensis fore voluntatis regiæ, quod interim militæ Parliamenti bene provident de his quæ statum \(^2\) regium concernunt, et regimen; et talem de suis sociis Prolocutorem eligerent, qui seiret et necessitatem communem \(^3\) exponere, et ea præcipue quæ spectant ad honorem Dei et gubernationem commendabilem novi Regis. Et Rex ipse promisit bona fide se nulli velle favere, nulli deferre, ratione gradus aut dignitatis, sed quemlibet juxta jura regni fore sine fictitia judicandum. Voluit etiam quod interim ordinarentur certi Domini spiritualis et temporales, cum Justiciariis, qui billas examinarent, et Parliamento, sic necessæ foret, commendarent.

In crastino fuit Convocatio cleri Cantuariæ apud ecclesiam Sancti Pauli, in Capella Beate Virginis dicti loci; ubi primo celebrato Missa de Sancto Spiritu ab Episcopo Londoniensi ad majus altare, residente Archeipisco Pantuariæ juxta dictum altare in sedibus sacerdotum ibidem, et aliis prælatis, non exemptis, existentibus in choro, Episcopus Roffensis Sermonem fecit; in quo monuit ut clerici curiales redirent ad sua beneficia, et in eisdem de cætero residerent. Contra vero pluralitates habentes vehementer invectus est, assimilans eos monstris in natura habentibus membra multa superflua, conclusum quod tales compellebantur habere corda inter partes divisa quot possidebant beneficia.

Ad hanc Convocationem venerunt missi de parte Regis Comites Northumbriæ et Westmerlandiæ, Regis-Convocation of the Clergy at St. Paul's. The King thanks the Clergy for not returning to their benefices.
que Camerarius, Dominus Thomas Erpyngham, gratias agentes clero, ex parte Regis, pro devotionibus factis ad Dominum pro eodem, et vice deprecantes ejusdem, ut pro eo consimiles orationes continuarent; per quas fatebatur se indubitans adjutum. Et in progressu dixerunt, quod ¹ Rex noluit eos ista vice gravare tallagi, nec in posterum, sine evidentis necessitate, quae constare publice cunctis posset. Et idcirco deprecabantur, ut si quando talis necessitas emergeret, essent sibi liberales et benefici, sicut semper suis bonis antecessoris extiterunt; et ipse se talem ecclesiasticis exhiberet, cum Dei gratia, quod materiam invenirent et colendi eum propensius et orandi devotius pro eodem.

In hac cleri Convocatione, Dominus Cantuariensis significavit ibidem congregatis, de quibusdam militibus Parliamentibus, quod non erant clero benevoli, sed pro magna ² [parte] insidiatores captiosi, et nimis infesti. Et præcipue dixit se vereri Domini Johannis Cheyne sensus et opiniones, qui perante fuit infestus Ecclesiae, et jam factus Parliamenti Prolocutor; quod si quid cognoscercet in clero reprehensibile, non taceret, sed pro posse propalaret, in dedecus clericorum; et ideo docuit expedire, ut ecclesiastici sic se componeant, et ordinarient, ne laici quovis modo possent invehti contra eos. Statuit igitur inprimis ne clerici pluralitates obtinerent, nisi forte forent Sacrae Paginee Professores, aut in Jure Doctores, vel Bacalarii in Jure formati; et ne Episcopi vel clerici beneficiati morarentur in curis Dominorum, sed apud sua beneficia residerent. Consultum fuit insuper, ut ex parte cleri formaretur supplicatio, porrigenda Regi, ut cursus ⁴ [juris] in foro ecclesiastico non ⁵ impediretur de cætero per prohibitiones vel breve “Quare impedit,” et quod illud breve

¹ Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
² Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
³ ecclesiastici in orig.
⁴ Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
⁵ impedietur in orig.
Significavit ab executione debita non A.D. 1399. privaretur. Tractatum fuit ibidem praeterea, sicut et de multis frivolis, de exemptis; quod non portaverunt onus Ecclesiae, cum aliis, in colligendis decem Regi concessis in Parliamentis prioribus, nec portaret hactenus curaverunt; et consultum fuit ut compellerentur ad subeundum, sicut ceteri, onus dictum. Tractatum fuit etiam, satis necessarie, ut privilegia ecclesiastica, quae usque [modo] potentium sæcularium fuerunt intermissa, impedita, vel omissa, cum bona deliberatione notarentur, et in scriptis redigerentur, Regique, renovanda vel confirmanda, porrigerentur; quem putabant libentissime eadem, et voluntarie, confirmaturum.

A.D. 1399. tus, ubi ea nocte pernoctavit. Mane, id est, die Translotionis Sancti Edwardi, facta fuit, prout moris est, processio solemnissima de choro monachorum Westmonasterii usque in Aulam [Palatii], Archiepiscopis, cum suis Suffraganeis, precedentibus Abbatibus multis cornutis et muterillis; inter quos Abbas Westmonasterii tenuit principatum, portans in dextra manu sceptrum Regis, habens in summitate crucem auream, et in sinistra virgam auream cum columba.—Hoc officium fecit Abbas, non quia primus est inter Abbates, sed quia regalium insignium est repositorium locus suus:—[prae-latos, scilicet Abbates, sequebatur] Conventus Westmonasterii revestitus. Cunque pervenissent ad aditum ostii camerae Regis, expectabant omnes, donee Rex occurrisset eisdem. Ibi igitur cum venisset Rex, aspersus [est ab] Archiepiscopis, et thurificatus; et mox processio revertebatur, precedentibus Abbatibus et Conventu, sequentibus Episcopis et Archiepiscopis, atque Rege, qui discalceatus incedebat, indutus tantum caligis, ex antiquo more. Et quia locus hic exigit, describam modum et formam Coronationis regiae, hactenus usitatas, prout in libris comperi Westmonasterii et Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis; quia juvat scire consuetudines in tanta solemnitate debite faciendas.

Die quo Rex coronabitur, debet primitus balneari; deinde, cum processio sibi obviaverit, magnates quattuor eum a Palatio, usque dum venerit in Monasterium, supportare debent, id est, fulcire latera sua, vel brachia, reverenter.

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.

2 *mu, with an hiatus, is only given in orig.: supplied, though somewhat indistinct, from Faustina B. ix.

3 In place of these words, supplied from Faustina B. ix., we find in orig. the words "prae[iii] abbatur " conventus;" evidently the work of an ignorant or sleepy scribe.

4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.

5 Conventi in orig.

6 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
Dominus N. de Bello Campo, olim Bedfordiae, A.D. 1399. Eleemosynarie tenere solebat officium; qui pannum radiatum stratum sub ejus pedibus, Regis incendentis a camera sui Palatii usque ad pulpitum Monasterii, dividere debet cum sacrista Westmonasterii; ita quod pars panni, quae est intra ecclesiam, cedet in usus sacristae, et reliqua pars, quae est extra ecclesiam, per manus dicti Eleemosynarii Regis [pauperibus] distribuetur. Cancellarius regni, si sit Episcopus, indutus pontificibus, ferens regalem lapideum calicem, velut immediate praecedet. Quem antecedet regni Thesaurarius, si sit clericus, indutus dalmatica, tenens patenam, more subdiaconi, et tenens eam in altum, ut subdiaconus consuevit tempore solemnis Missae.

Si Cancellarius et Thesaurarius non sint clerici, alii Episcopi, per eos rogati, haec officia tenentur implere. Duo Comites portabunt duo sceptra, id est, virgam cum columba, et sceptrum, coram Rege, quibus Rex illud officium voluerit assignare. Quos sequuntur tres Comites, induti serico, gestantes tres gladios ante Regem. Comes quidem Cestriæ quondam primatum sibi vendicavit deferendi, et ille portabat gladium qui appellabatur "Curtana;" alium portare solebat Comes Huntyngdoniae; tertium Comes Warwici. Barones de Quinque Portibus gestabant supra Regem, quocunque iverit, pannum de serico quadratum, purpureum, quatuor deargentatis hastis, cum quatuor campanellis argenteis deauratis ad quamlibet hastam—quatuor assignati pro diversitate Portuum, ne videatur Portus praeferri Portui in honore. Et consimiliter portabitur ab eisdem [Baronibus] pannus hujusmodi supra Regina, post Regem incendentem, si ipsa die debeat coronari. Quos pannos iudem Barones suo jure obtinebunt; sed haste,

---

1 Hiatus in orig. and Faustina B. ix. There does not appear to have been an Earl of Bedford of the name of "Beauchamp."

2 in ecclesia, in Faustina B. ix.

3 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.

4 ferens in Faustina B. ix.

5 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1399. cum campanellis, debentur ecclesiae Westmonasterii recto jure. Responsorium quod cantabatur in processione a Conventu, fuit,—“Honor, virtus.”—

Introducto Rege, et incathedrato sede regali super lapidem, qui dicitur “Regale regni Scotiae,” cantabatur antiphona—“Firmetur manus tua, et dextera tua, etc.”

Deinde vertit se Archiepiscopus ad quatuor partes ecclesiae successive, requirens voluntatem populi super novo Rege. Post acclamationem populi, Archiepiscopus, cum aliis praëlatis, duxit Regem ad majus altare, ubi tenetur offerre pallium et libram auri, implendo praefectum,—“Non appareas vacuus coram oculis Dei tui.”

Et continuo debet Rex se prostrernere super pavimentum, tapetis stratum, coram altari, supra quem Metropolitanus, vel alius Episcopus, hanc dicat orationem;—“Deus, humilium visitator, qui nos Spiritus Sancti illustratione consolaris, prætende super hunc famulum [tuum] gratiam tuam, ut per eum tuum nobis adesse sentiamus adventum.” Quo dicto, fieri debet Sermo de praesenti negotio.

Postea, Metropolitanus debet interrogare voce mediocris si leges et consuetudines, ab antiquis justis et Deo devotis Regibus plebi Anglorum concessas, cum sacramenti confirmatione, eadem plebi concedere et servare voluerit; et præsertim leges, et consuetudines, et libertates, a glorioso Rege Edwardo clero, populoque, concessas. Interroganda etiam sunt et alia, quæ, reperies in hoc quaternione ante articulos depositos contra Regem Ricardum. Et si assentire voluerit, exponat ei Metropolitanus de quibus jurabit. Pronunciatisque omnibus coram cunctis, jurare debet super altare; quo facto, cantari debet hymnus—“Veni Creator,” et duci [oratio]—“Te invocamus, Domine,

---

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.  
2 libertate in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.  
3 See page 259 ante.  
4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
"etc." Qua dicta, duo Episcopi, vel duo cantores, A.D. 1399, debent incipere Letaniam. Quam sequuntur quatuor orationes, et alia in modum Praefationis decantanda. Quibus terminatis, residebit Princeps in cathedra^{1} praenotata; ad quem accedet Archiepiscopus, et scindet propriis manibus vestem ejus usque ad umbilicum, ex- tenso interim pallio super eum. Deinde unget manus ejus oleo sancto, dicens,—"Ungantur manus istae, etc;" et interim cantari debet antiphona,—"Unxerunt Salamom, etc."—Oratio,—"Prospice, etc." Postea, ungantur pectus et scapulae, ambæque compages brachiorum, de supradicto oleo, et de eodem fiat crux super caput ejus, et postea de chrismate, sub istis orationibus,—"Deus, Dei filius, etc," "Deus, qui es justorum gloria."—Postea ponatur amictus capitis de sindone, propter unctionem; qui erit ibi per septem dies, donec ablutum fuerit caput ejus octavo die Coronationis, per manus et ministerium Episcoporum.

Deinde poni debent in pedibus ejus sandalia, et calcaria coaptentur. Expost, regalibus induetur, data prius benedictione super regalia ornamenta; et consequenter benedicatur ensis, quem tune accipere debet ab Episcopis, et cum ense totum regnum sibi commissum ad regendum fideliter; quod sciát sibi esse per verba Pontificis commendatum. Accinctus ense, armillas accipiat; dicente Metropolitanus,—"Accipe armillas, etc."—Deinde^{2} datur sibi pallium, Archiepiscopo sic dicente;—"Accipe pallium, quatuor initiis formatum; per quod intelligas quatuor mundi partes divinæ potestati esse subjectas, nec quemquam posse feliciter regnare in terris, nisi cui potestas regnandi fuerit data de coelis." Extunc sequatur benedictio coronæ regalis.—Oratio,—"Deus, tuorum corona fidelium, etc." Post orationem, aspergatur aqua benedicta, corona et

---

^{1} *prænoto in orig.*

^{2} *detur in Faustina B. ix.*  

^{*} *collata de in Faustina B. ix.*
ANNALES HENRICI QUARTI,

A.D. 1399. 

Ceremonial of the Coronation of the Kings of England.

incensetur; et tunc imponatur capiti Regis, dicente Episcopo,—“Coronet te Deus, etc.;” cantetur antiphona "Confortare, et esto vir, etc.” Tunc debet annulus benedici, sub his verbis;—“Deus coelestium, etc.” et ponatur annulus in digito Regis, dicente Episcopo, "Accipe regiae dignitatis annulum, etc.”

Quibus completis, accipiat ensam quo fuit armatus, et eum Domino offerat super altare. Quem Comes, aliis eminentior, redimet, et redemptum deferet coram eo. Deinde dabitur sibi sceptrum in manu, dicente Episcopo,—“Accipe sceptrum, etc.” Postea dabitur ei virga, cum columba, in sinistra manu, Episcopo prosequente,—“Accipe virgam, etc.” Deinde dari debet super eum 1 [benefictio] a Metropolitano; post quam omnes Episcopi debent osculari eum, et ducere eum ad sedem regalem, choro cantante,—“Te Deum laudamus.” Quo finito, dicit Metropolitanus,—“Sta et retine amodo locum, 2 [etc.]; et tunc incipiatur Missae "2 [officium].”—“Protector noster, aspice, Deus, etc.”

Post Evangelium, facere debet Rex oblationem panis et vini Metropolitano, manibus propriis, imitando Melchisedech; et postea offerat marcam auri. Post 4 [quam] oblationem, capite inclinato Regis, dicet Archiepiscopus tres orationes super eundem, et Missae praefationem. Ante—“Agnus Dei,” dicebitur solemnis benedictio super Regem et populum, more solito, et communi—

Rex de manu Metropolitani; et postea finiatur Missa.

In hoc loco, nescio utrum plus admiranda quam praedicanda sit divina pietas; virtus Dei, que sic inopinate deponit potentes de sede, et exaltat humiles, suscitat de pulvere egenum, et de stercore elevat pauperem, ut sedeat cum principibus, et solium gloriae teneat. Iste

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 Genesis xiv. 18.
4 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
nempe Rex Henricus, quem indicibilis malitia relegaverat, falsitas manifesta tota substantia, cunctisque bonis, privaverat, evidenti Dei miraculo, cui nullo modo contradici potest, ipso die anno revoluto quo fuit actus in exilium, mirabiliter reductus, sublimatur in regnum, ut eo die, in laetitia et exultatione, in regem coronaretur magnificæ, quo compulsus exire regnum in tristitia et moerore. Dies utique Translationis Sancti Edwardi fuerat ultimus sibi praefixus, quo eum Angliam oportebat deserere; qui, post anni circulum, reductus est ei ad cumulum grandis honoris et gloriarum.

Et in auspiciis uberioris gratiae sibi futuræ, prout creditur, unctus est celesti ideo unguine, quod olim Beata Maria, mater Domini, commisit Beato Thoma Martyri, cum esset in exilio; quod ille tradidit cui-dam Sancto monacho conservandum, prout sequens capitulum declarabit, sub verbis ejusdem Sancti.—

"Quando ego, Thomas, Cantuariensis Archiepiscopus, exul ab Anglia fugiebam, veni ad Papam Alexandrum, qui tunc Senonis erat; ut ei ostenderem customes quas Rex Anglorum in ecclesiis introducebat. Quadam nocte, dum essem in ecclesia Sanctæ Columbae, in oratione rogavi Reginam Virginum, ut daret Regi Anglorum, et hæreditibus suis, propositorum et voluntatem emendandi se versus Deum, et quod Christus, pro sua misericordia, ampliori dilectione ipsum diligere faceret Ecclesiam. Statim appau- ruit mihi Beata Maria, habens in pectore istam aquilam auream, et in manu tenens istam parvam ampullam lapideam; et accipiens aquilam, cum ampulla, in manu mea posuit, et haec verba per ordinem Story of the sacred ointment of Saint Thomas.

---

1 Omitted in Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 ido in orig.
4 The latter syllable of this word is omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
5 isto in orig.; corrected from Faustina B. ix.

1 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
2 Supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 ita in orig.
Ista scriptura Beati Thomæ Martyris reposita fuisse A.D. 1399. dicitur, cum aquila et ampulla crystallina, in prædicto vaso plumbeo, et absconsa per multa tempora in ecclesia Sancti Gregorii, ut jussaret Beata Virgo.

Tandem revelatione divina, prout creditur, hæc omnia fuerunt nunciata et manifestata cuidam sancto viro, temporibus ¹ [nobilis] et illustris Regis Edwardi, Tertii a Conquestu, dum in illis partibus strenuus dux et belliger Henricus, primus Dux Lancastriae, bellaret incomparabiliter bella Regis. Huic igitur oblata fuit aquila memorata, et ampulla prædicta; qui dedit eam nobilissimo Principi, Edwardo, primogenito dicti Regis, ut ex ea unctione, post mortem patris, ungeretur. Sperabat namque quod ipse erat de quo scriptura Beati Thomæ propheticam fecerat mentionem. Sed fellit eum opinio sua, aliosque multis, dum idem Principes, morte praeventus, obiit ante patrem. In Coronatione vero filii Principis, Ricardi, videlicet, qui successit Edwardo de Wyndeshore, qui fuit avus ejusdem Ricardi, hæ aquila, ¹ [cum ampulla], quæsita fuit, sed nullo modo potuit inveniri, quia nondum venerat cui repositum fuerat tale munus.

Post multis annos transactos regni prædicti Ricardi, ut erat curiosus perscrutator rerum progenitoribus receptarum, dum in Turri diversas cistas aperiret et inspiceret, tandem inventa est una multis seris serata, sed claves ejusdem non poterant reperiri. Jussit igitur confrangi cistam, ut scire posset quidam continebat. Inspexit ergo, et aquilam, continentem ampullam, reperit, et scripturam Beati Martyris Thomæ, repositam in eadem. Cumque cognovisset virtutem talis unguinis, mox, ut erat puerilis in moribus et gloriae cupidus, rogavit Thomam de Arundel, Archiepiscopum Cantuarie, ut eum denuo ungeret hoc unguento; per quod putabat se gloriosius et victurum, et de hostibus triumphanturum,

¹ Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
Archbishop Arundel refuses to anoint him.

Henry IV. the first anointed with the sacred ointment.

The sitting of Parliament is resumed.

A.D. 1399. tanquam divinam prædestinationem vellet anticipare, et in se consummari, quod sibi nullatenus debeatur.

Cui Archiepiscopus, ut erat vir profundi consilii, dissuasit omnino ne tale quid peteret vel desideraret, quod altissimi Dei providentia servabatur. Sufficere dixit sibi, quod semel per manus Metropolitani sacrum suscepit in Coronatione pristina unctionem, quae habere non debuit iterationem; fore fortassis futurum per hujusmodi presumptionem, quod pateretur a Deo dejectionem. Vindex Rex quod trahere non valebat Archiepiscopum ad consensum, licet invitus, destitit a petitis; aquilam tamen auream, et ampullam, portavit expost super se jugiter, quotiens ad aliqua pericula sive terræ sive pelagi, vel hostium, se convertit. Qua occasione factum est, cum redisset ultimo de Hibernia, et se redidisset Duci Lancastriæ sub certis pactis, et pervenisset ad Castrum de Cestria, Archiepiscopo, cum instantia, requirenti et exigenti dictam aquilam, cum ampullam, restituit, licet nolens, dicens jam patenter sibi clarescere quod non fuit voluntatis divinae ut ungeretur unguine supradicto, sed alteri deberi tam nobile sacramentum. Archiepiscopus vero, ¹ præservans tanta jocalia sub veneranda custodia, ea tenuit usque ad tempus Coronationis Regis moderni; qui primus Regum unctus est tam pretioso liquore, utpote de caelo misso. ² Quapropter pluribus credebatur, quod hic esset ille Rex electus a Deo, cui talis unctio miraculose servabatur; cui et tanta gratia promittebatur quanta nulli aliui qui fuerat ante eum.

In crastino Coronationis regii, reinceptum fuit Parliamentum, in quo communes petierunt confirmari leges bonas, et malas, usitatas hactenus, abrogari. Quibus Rex, vultu benigno, respondit, se libenter concessurum et confirmaturum bonas leges et consuetudines quas

¹ reservans in Faustina B. ix. ² Qua in orig.; corrected from

Hiis itaque gestis, Rex tradidit militibus Parliamenti quemdam rotulum repertum in arca Magdalenæ, clericis ac sacerdotibus nuper Regis Ricardi, continentem artes magicas; inungens eis ut eundem rotulum supraviderent et legerent cum summa diligentia, et quid eisdem super contentis visum foret, Regi Parliamentoque referrent. Non tamen tunc arestatus fuit idem Magdalenæ, quia persona fuit ecclesiastica; sed in crastino, in Convocatione clericorum apud Sanctum Paulum, conventus est super illa scriptura. Qui respondit se nescire quid scriptura portenderet; sed tamen fatebatur se, Rege tradente, custodiam illius rotuli habuisse, sicut et aliarum rerum multarum Regis, quae sibi minime pertinebant. Hoc responso et examinatores emollivit, et hac vice liber abcessit.

Die Mercurii post Coronationem, milites Parliamentales, intrantes Parliamenti locum, adventum Regis praestolabantur. Qui cum venisset, et resedisset in praebito...

Dictus ergo Willelmus Durward petiit ex parte communitatis, primo et principaliter, ut ligei Regis possent esse tam liberi sicut fuerant temporibus bene regentium progenitorum Regis.

Secundarie petiit, ut tam ferale Parliamentum, et secularibus omnibus detestandum, tentum inordinateannis regni Regis nuper Ricardi vicesimo primo et vicesimo secundo, non solum annuaretur, sed nec pro Parliamento teneretur, duplici causa praetensa;— quia, videlicet, milites Parliamenti non fuerunt electi, juxta regni consuetudines, per communitatem more solito, sed Regis violentia et voluntate; et quia dic tum 1 est quod Parliamentum tenebatur vi et armis, per talis terroris illusionem, quod nullus audebat verum fateri, vel verum dicere, sed hoc solummodo quod Regi placebat.

Tertio, petiit ut illud Parliamentum, celebratum anno undecimo nuper Regis Ricardi integraliter confirmaretur.

Quarto, petiit ut omnes Domini qui exhaeredati fuerunt in Parliamento ferali praescripto, annis regni Regis Ricardi vicesimo primo et vicesimo secundo, sine alio juris processu, restituerentur suis hæreditatibus et aliis suis bonis, cum suis exitibus universis.

1 est quod omitted in Faustina B. ix.
Quae omnia Rex benigno vultu, hilarique, concessit; et ultra, de sua mera motiva, dixit esse nimis irrationabile vocari proditores eos qui loquemabantur contra malam Regis gubernationem, vel inordinata facta sua. Et ideo voluit quod de cætero non censerentur proditores, nisi qui de antiquo jure bonorum progenitorum suorum censebantur antiquitus proditores. Rogavitque, junctis manibus, ut milites Parliamenti taliter providereant et ordinarent, ne unquam de cætero Parliamentum staret in octo personis, sicut Rex, prædecessor suus, introixerat cautelose, ad destructionem regni sui. Concessit insuper Rex, ut si quid bene et ad utilitatem regni et communitatis fuerat statutum vel ordinatum in illo Parliamento, [tento] annis superdictis, notaretur per milites Parliamenti, et non utique confirmaretur, quia Parliamentum illud nullum fuit; sed ut ipsi milites per billas de novo prosequerentur, ut talia possent statui, et in præsenti Parliamento confirmari; et ipse Rex satisfaceret votis suis. Tunc quiesitum fuit a singulis, tam clericis quam Domini temporalibus, quod eis visum fuit de dicto Parliamento ferat, et Statutis ejusdem. Qui responderunt omnes, quod omnino contra rationem facta fuerunt, et ideo pro nullo tenenda sunt, nec Parliamentum id proullo tenendum vel dicendum. Hoc asseruerunt prælati, hoc proceres, hoc ipsis appellatores nobilis Ducis Gloverniæ, etc., Dux Surrey, Dux Albemarle, Dux Exonie, Comes Gloverniæ, et Comes Sarisburiensis.

Die Jovis petitum fuit per milites Parliamentales, ut arrestarentur omnes mali consiliarii nuper Regis Ricardi. Ipso die ductus est Willelmus Bagot, [miles] ad responsa; qui inprimis, cum requisitus fuisset si charges made against the Duke of Albemarle by Sir

A.D. 1399. The prayer of the petition is granted.

The Acts of the Parliament of 21 and 22 Richard II. are held to be null and void.

1 vel censeri proditores, in Faustina B. ix.
2 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
3 Qy. if not "ullo"?
4 generaliter omnes, in Faustina B. ix.
5 Omitted in orig.; supplied from Faustina B. ix.
A.D. 1399. vellet stare cum billis quas scripserat, Regique miserat, respondit quod sic; et in progressu accusavit Ducem Almarle tanquam malum consiliarium Regi Ricardo, et in multis suis malitiis sibi præcipue consentientem,\(^1\) —"Tu," inquiens, "dixisti apud\(^2\) quod nisi "occiderentur Dux Gloverniæ, Comes Arundelii, "Comes Warwici, etc., quod Rex ipse nunquam gau- "deret regia potestate." Adjecit quoque, quod Rex Ricardus dixisset quod desideravit ponere regnum in bona gubernacione, et extunc cessare, sibimetque vacare, et gubernationem regni committere, cum corona, Ducì Almarle, tanquam generosissimo ac sapientissimo\(^3\) viro totius regni. Ad quem Dux Northfolchiæ respondisset, quod melius fuissest, et honestius, ut Dux Herefordiæ substitueretur in regnum, quia propriori conjunctus erat affinitate dicto Regi, et propter alias causas multas. Cui Rex Ricardus illico respondisset, quod hoc nullo\(^4\) [modo] fieret,—"Quia ipse," inquit, "nil valet "penitus, nec valebit unquam. Qui revera, si ipse "teneret regni regimen, destruere vellet totam Eccle- "siam sanctam Dei." At Rex Henricus, audiens de se prolatum tam infame testimonium, mox respondit quod illa prophetia, per Dei gratiam, de persona sua, inveniretur falsa; quia et in votis habuit Ecclesiam Dei manutenere, protegere, et fovere, adeo sicut aliqui præ- decessorum suorum; sed tamen asseveravit se velle videre quod rectores ecclesiæ tales eligerentur qui forent digni, non tales quales promoti fuerunt pro magna\(^5\) [parte] sui temporibus prædecessoris.

Dux Almarle, non feres accusationes W[illelmi] Bagot, surrexit, et project in medium capucium suum, offerens se pugnaturum cum eo, et duello suam innocentiam purgaturum. Rex vero jussit ut Dux recuperet suum capucium ea vice.

---

\(^1\) At this word, the context of Faustina B. ix. suddenly ends, folio 241 b.  
\(^2\) Hiatus in orig.  
\(^3\) vro in orig.  
\(^4\) Omitted in orig.  
\(^5\) Om in orig.
Interea requisitum fuit a dicto Willelmo Bagot, A.D. 1399. quare ad tot mala consensum vel assensum præbuit Regi, quæ novit honestati et bonæ fidei obviare. Ad hæc satis audacter, et velut cum summa libertate, respondit invective:—“Quis est inter vos omnes,” inquit, “a quo si Rex Ricardus voluisset exigisse talia, "qui fuisset ausus sibi contradixisse, vel non paru-" esse?” Thesaurarius regni, Johannes Northbury, ne dictus W[illelmus] in erroris excusatione posset habere solatium, sic respondit:—“Vere,” inquit, “ego, etsi "perdidisset omnia bona mea, una cum vita.” ¹Tune Bagot, cupiens justificare seipsum per malitias aliorum, dixit, non solum fore reum de hujusmodi sibi objectis, sed esse quamplures ibidem alios in Parliamento residentes, qui debebant juste super hujusmodi conveniri. Audientes hæ Duces de Sotherey et de Excestre, et propter eos hoc dictum fuisse putantes, prout veraciter putaret potentant, illico surrexerunt, et se duello, projectis capuciis, obtulerunt, contra Willelum Bagot, vel quemcunque alium qui imponere vellet eis mortem Duci Gloverniae, etc., vel de tam malo consilio Regi præbito accusare. Quibus Rex jussit recipere sibi vadia, sicut prius, etc. Constanter W[illelmus] Bagot adjecit, quod non solum Domini temporales, sed spiritualia, fuerunt æque rei sicut et ipse; et inter cætera, se excusare nitebatur de morte Duci Gloverniae, imponens in genere quibusdam de Parliamento quod consilium et assensum tanto facinori præbuerunt; sed manifestius Ducem de Almarle super hujusmodi facto notavit. Dux vero predictus hoc negavit viriliter, et excusationis occasiones nitebatur quærere. Tunc dictus W[illelmus] Bagot dixit, quod si euperent rei certitudinem ²interscire, juberent quemdam valectum, dic-

¹ This word is blotted, and almost illegible.
²intersiri in orig.
A.D. 1399. Halle, qui tenebatur in carcere apud Newgate, qui et ipse ad mortem Ducis Gloverniæ, 
remanded in custody.

The opinion of the Lords is asked as to the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester, Lord Cobham speaks at length thereon.

Die Veneris convenerunt ad Regem, in Albam Cæ- theriam, Domini spirituales et temporales, praeter tres Duces supra nominatos; ubi requisitum fuit a singulis Dominis temporalibus, utrum, juxta petitionem communiun, Duces predicti, et appellantes cæteri, qui Dominos de Gloucestria etc. appellaverunt, deberent arestari. Dominus de Cobham inprimis, præmisso longo sermone de malitia transacti temporis, dixit inter cætera, quod sub talibus Rege, ducibus, et rectoribus, conditio Anglorum facta fuit pejor quorumlibet conditionibus ethnicorum, qui licet infideles sint ad fidem Christianam, et male creduli inter se, tamen vera loquuntur, vera faciunt, veraque fatentur. Sed Anglici, cum sint Christiani, et professores veritatis esse debe- bant, et in ipsa perseverare, metu amissionis suæ sub- stantiae temporali, metu detrusionis in exilium, metu denique mortis, qui in constantes etiam posset cadere, nullibi in agendis verum facere vel verum dicere sub talibus gubernatoribus fuerunt etiam; et in progressu dixit, visum fore, ut cum Rex ipse, qui fuerat caput et capitaneus tot nequam malorum consiliariorum, sit depositus et punitus merito propter hujusmodi scelera, quod illi qui hæc suaserunt sibi, instigarunt, et quodammodo ad talia perpetranda coegerunt eum, sub detentione servarentur, et, secundum quod sanum con-

2 Hiatus in orig. 3 Some words seem to be omitted here. 4 Written ingendis in orig.
REGIS ANGLIÆ. 307

silium regni dictaverat, meritas sui nequam consilii A.D. 1399. poenas luant. Ipsi nempe, gloriantes in malitiis tune temporis, alumnos Regis se vocabant, et fastu intolerabili jactitabant, tali denominatione suam appellationem promoventes—1 "Nous, nurres a le Rey Richard, etc."

"Sed vae," inquit, "tali nutritori, talibusque alumnis!" Et in fine dixit:—"Ego," inquit, "Deo teste, hae non prosequeor, vindictam cupiens pro injuria mihimet irrogata, sed stans pro communi justitia, profiteor in conscientia, quod si pater meus, qui me genuit, esset reus hujusemodi facinorum, desidera rem utique quod puniretur." Cunque finem dicendi fecisset, [et] dictus Dominus de Cobham et alii requisiti fuissent super supradicto negotio, singillatim definitioni praetactae consenserunt, omnes, videlicet, arrestur appellantes memorati. Cunque legeretur occasionaliter recordum de judicio dato contra Ducem Gloucestriæ, Comitem Arundelliae, et Comitem Warwici, in Parliamento ferali tento anno vicesimo primo regni Regis Ricardi, et, inter cetera, quomodo idem Comes Warwici confessus palpam fuerat se fore proditorem Regis; idem Comes, erubescens de vecordia tam notabilis, surrexit ac stetit in publico, rogavitque Regem ut illud recordum corrigeretur, jurans quod nunquam verbum tale prodit ex ore suo, sed fuisses quendam qui hoc sibi consuluisse fateri, et ipse talis consiliarii monita repulisset; Comes Westmerlandiae, Radulphus Nevyle, juxta stans, mox respondit,—"Non," inquit, "puto vos velle mihi imponere, quod ego vobis eo tempore talia suasisse;" quia ipse tunc ejus habebat custodia, jussu Regis. At Comes,—"Nequaquam," ait, "sed mortuus est qui talia persuasit."

Alia vice, cum dictum recordum legeretur, et eadem verba de Comite Warwici recitarentur, de sua pro-

1 "We, foster-children to King Richard, etc."

The Earl of Warwick endeavours to excuse himself, as to his former admission of treason.
A.D. 1399. brosa confessione, surrexit iterum, [et dixit] quod nunquam talia fassus fuit. Rex vero, non volens ulterius dissimulare tam manifestae veritatis testimonium, jussit ne de hoc amplius loqueretur: quia eo tempore quo hoc confessus fuerat, fatebatur etiam sanctum Abbatem Sancti Albani, et reclusum Westmonasterii, sibi dedisse consilia ad attentandum negotium, pro quo tamen, Regis judicio, Comes, hiis auditis, de cetero non prossequatur pro delesione vel abrasione memorati recordi. Quia vero legebatur in recordo Ducem Gloucestriae, etc. fuisset proditores, Dominus Fiz-Water surrexit, et obtulit se duello contra quemcunque qui vellet asserere dictum Ducem fuisset proditorem. Idem fecit ibidem Dominus de Mirlee. Rex volens placere per omnia communitati, fecit introferri cistam, cum albis chartis [quas] Rex Ricardus extorserat cautelose de Dominis et communibus regni; et mandavit Cancellario ut cancellarentur, ne unquam gravari posset communitas per easdem.

Die Sancti Luce Evangeliæ Willelmus Bagot iterum ductus est ad responsa; a quo Dominus Thomas Percy, vice Senescalí regni, quæsivit quæliter se voluit asserere de conspiratione et imaginatione mortis Ducis Lancastriæ, patris Regis præsenti; quam quidem conspirationem non potuit diffìteri. Willelmus respondit, quod habuit chartas perdonationis exinde tam de Rege Ricardo quam de ipso Duce sibi concessas, et de Duce quidem, ad Regis instantiam et preceptum. Item, quæsitum fuit ab illo utrum habuit chartam Regis de hoc facto vel de ceteris suis sceleribus, specialem vel generalem. Respondit quod de omnibus generalem; et hanc asseruit inveniri posse in recordo. Jussus ergo exhibere chartam, respondit se chartas apud Cestriam

---

1 Omitted in orig.
2 sic in orig.
3 This word, resembling "astitus," is indistinct and doubtful;
4 Omitted in orig.
and the passage seems incomplete, perhaps purposely left so.
reliquisse; tunc missus est custodiri, usque in diem A.D. 1399. Martis proximo tunc sequentem.

Eodem die, communes petierunt iterum, ut arestaretur generaliter personae, tam ecclesiasticæ quam secularis, notabiles de malo consilio dato Regi Ricardo, et illi præcipue qui, per sortilegia vel calculationes falsas et fallibiles, dementaverant dictum Regem. Ad hæc Rex respondit quod quidam ex eis erant sub custodia, et caeteri pro votis arestarentur, si vellent eos specialiter nominare; et interim jussit Rex, ut diligenter super hiis inquirerent et tractarent, ab isto die Sabbati usque feriam tertiam proximo extunc sequentem; quia die Lunæ fuerunt Octavæ Coronationis regæ, quando lavandus fuit Rex, Episcoporum ministerio, amictusque capitis deponendus, qui fuerat ibi propter unctionem sacram; aliaeque sæculare sive ritus, fierent, prout moris est, circa eum: quominus eo die Parliamento non poterant inesse.

Tunc adductus est Halle, valectus, vincitus manicis et compedibus, et conventus est de morte Ducis Gloucestræ; qui respondit se quidem ejus neci interfuisse, cum aliis multis sociis, sed contra voluntatem suam, quia nihil inde præscivisset; de lecto vocatus, et ductus ad Ducem Northfolchiiæ, a quo missus est ire cum sociis ad occidentum; et cum id facere recusasset, Dux percussit eum in capite ictu gravi jurans quod suspenderetur in erastino, nisi vellet obedire,—"Quia," inquit Dux Northfolchiiæ, "de Rege, Duco de Almarle, habeo mandatum inevitabile, ut occidatur;" sicque perrexisse ad socios atque locum ubi fuerat occidentum.

Audiens hæc, Dux de Almarle surrexit et rogavit Regem ut se posset excusare, quia quodammodo per verba Halle notabatur de consensu in mortem Ducis. Et cum magnam fecisset circumlocutionem pro

---

1 specialite in orig.  
2 Hiatus in orig.
A.D. 1399, sua excusatione, Dominus Filius Walteri, accepta dicendi licentia, dixit ei:—"Tu," inquit, "appellasti eum de pro-ditione, et accusasti eum, odibilemque Regi fecisti, "et per hoc fuisti causa mortis ejus; et hoc volo, cum "licentia Regis, duello probare." Dux Southereyæ, cupiens et suffragium ferre collegæ, Ducæ de Almarle, et se innocentem demonstrare, dixit Domino Filio Walteri ; —"Tu," inquit, "multum garrulas, et nimium "interponis; quare tantopere nobis imponis crimen ap-"pellationis, cum nullo modo potuimus subterfugere "illud ea vice? Nam sub virga Regis detenti, et in "ejus domigerio multiplicantur constituti, qualiter fuis-
"semus ausi contravenire suas quomodolibet jussioni? "Nonne et tu præsens eras, et omnes Domini affue-
runt, et judicio mortis ejus consenserunt?" Ad hæc Dominus Fitz-Water,—"Non," inquit, "verum dicis de "persona mea, quia ego hic præsens non eram in illo "Parliamento, nec unquam illi consensi judicio; prout "testari volunt, ut puto, Domini hic præsentes." Cui mox cuncti testimonium præbuerunt, quod non 1 talis fuit dicto Parlamento. Hæc audientis Dux Southereyæ, verecunde resedit, et Dominus Fitz-Water iterum dixit Duci de Almarle; —"Tu," ait, "Almarle, fuisti occasio "Ducis Gloucestræ, et asservisti neci suæ; ad quod "duello probandum, ecce! capucium meum;" capu-
ciumque proiect. At Dux de Almarle, nihil segni-or, capucium suum jecit; quo viso, Dominus de Murlee, Dominus Willelmus de Bello Campo, et ipse Comes Warwick, et fere cuncti Comites atque Barones, contra Ducem de Almarle, in hac sua causa, capucia sua pro-
jecerunt. Tunc tantus tumultus, clamor tam validus factus communium, offerentium bellum in hac causa, ut Rex putaret dictum Ducem in suæ præsentia peri-
mendum. Surrexit ergo, et compressit Dominos, orans, monens, et jubens, ut nihil contra legem molirentur,

Several peers challenge the Duke of Albemarle.

1 tal in orig.
sed legaliter cuncta facerent, et cum bona deliberatione; ne, si contra facerent, reprehensibilis foret eorum actio, sicut eorum quorum scelera persequebantur. Hac oratione moti, Domini a tumultibus cessaverunt. Consequentibus cunctis iterum, datum est judicium contra supradictum Halle, tractionis, exenterationis, internorum combustionis, suspensionis, decapitationis, et quarterizationis.

Die Martis proximo post Octavas Coronationis Regis, communes petierunt, ut Ricardus, quondam Rex, aduceretur, et de criminiibus objectis sibi coram omnibus responderet. Ad quam petitionem respondit Rex se nolle responsum reddere, donec omnes prelati adessent. Item petierunt ut Comitatus Richemundiae, quem Rex præsens dederat Comiti Westmerlandiae, Duci Britanniae redderetur. Affuerunt et tunc ibi ambassiores Ducis prædicti, ex parte domini sui, idem suppliciter deprecantes; sed istud negotium dilationem accepit usque in Vigiliam Simonis et Judæ, Apostolorum. Quod die, non obstantibus petitionibus communitatis, nec ambassiorum supplicationibus, donum Comitatus prædicti confirmatum fuit Comiti Westmerlandia, Radulpho Nevyle; et insula Eubonæ data fuit Comiti Northumbriæ, Domino Henrico Percy, tenenda, ut prefertur, de Rege, per servitium deportationis gladii coram Rege in Regis Coronatione, cum quo intravit Angliam; ac per istud servitium quatuor gladii coram Rege in Coronatione de cætero portarentur. Istam quidem insulam Willelmus Scrop emerat de Domino Willelmo de Monte Acuto, Comite Sarisburiensi, dum sibi licuit quicquid libuit; que modo, per forisfacturam dicti Willelmi, qui occisus fuerat apud Bristoliam, devoluta fuit ad fiscum.

Fecit præterea Rex novum Principem Ducem Aquitannieæ; sicque in presenti Parliamento idem Regis

---

1 Hiatus in orig. 2 Repeated in orig.
A.D. 1399. primogenitus et Principatu Walliae, et Ducatu duplici Aquitanniae et Cornubiae, ac Comitatu Cestriæ, fuit honoratus.

Examiners of Bills in Parliament appointed. In hoc Parliamento ordinati sunt examinatores bil-
larum supplicatoriarum, qui commendarent Parlia-
mento quae non poterant sine Parliamentali determi-
nari judicio, et cæteras resignarent vel in Communi Banco vel Banco Regio. Examinatores præcipui fuerunt Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, Episcopus Wytoniensis, Abbas Sancti Albani, ex ecclesiasticis, Comes North-
umbrae, Cancellarius Regis, Bajulus Privati Sigilli, et Justiciarii Capitales de Banco Regio et Communi.

Petition presented for Michael de la Pole, son of the Earl of Suffolk, for restoration of certain of his father's estates. Ad hos intravit Camerarius regius, Dominus Thomas Erpingham, porrigens eis, mandato Regis, billam pro Michaele atte Pool, militie, qui prosequebatur pro dono quod Rex Ricardus ei donaverat, patris sui Comi-
tatum, videlicet, Southfolchiae, cum suis appendicis et dominii universis; ut, non obstante decreto, sive judicio dato, contra patrem suum et hæredes suos, anno undecimo Regis Ricardi, gaudere possit quibusdam honoribus pertinentibus ad eundem Comitatum. Quod idem Rex Ricardus restituerat eum, ut asseruit, expost juri paterno, non obstante judicio dato contra eum in Parliamento, anno supradicto. Ad hoc Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, de communi assensu, respondit, quod plures acquisierunt, post forisfacturam patris sui, parti-
culas praefati dominii, dum adhuc fuit fiscus regius, et Regi licebat illas dare vel vendere cui volebat, et, soluta pro illis condigna pecunia, gaudebant de possessione pacifica, dictarumque particularum pleno jure; et ideo non licere Regi privare quemquam tali possessione quam acquiserat sub debita forma juris. Si quid tamen de dicto dominio remansit in manu Regis, quod non erat alienatum per legem modo prænotato, bene licuit Regi dare illud sibi, vel cuicunque placebat; nec debere eos qui adquisierant tales particulæ suis jure vel posses-
sione privari. Permittebatur tamen ut, amicabili medi-
ante tractatu, pecunia, vel escambio, ipse et alii qui
steterunt in casu consimili, componere possent cum illis A.D. 1399. qui tales particulam ad quisierant, et easdem taliter recuperare.

In Vigilia Apostolorum Simonis et Iudae, decretum fuit consensu communitatis, ut Rex Ricardus perpetuo carceri traderetur, et ut serviretur a certis personis sibi non praecognitis, in loco secreto, per regni Consilium designando; et provisum est ne mitteret litteras, vel accipiat, ullo modo.

Item concessum fuit communibus, ut illi qui vocantur "appellantes," feria quarta sequente, suis astarent responsis, ad omnia quantacumque yellent objiceret vel dicere contra eos.

In crastino Apostolorum Simonis et Iudae, cito post medium noctem, Ricardus, quondam Rex, abductus fuit de Turri Londoniarum ad locum alium, omnibus occultatum.


---

1 servabatur in orig.
2 vel in orig.
3 consensisse in orig.
A.D. 1399. "Qui cum maxime in tua fide consideret, tu eum dolose " procurasti indictari." Et haec dicens, project vadium suum contra eum. Comes et ipse, nihil segnior, project vadium contra Dominum de Morlee, asserens se paratum ad purgandum duello suam innocentiam in haec parte. Sed quia die presenti non poterat haec causa discindi, ideo datus est dies Lunae proximus post festum Omnium Sanctorum examinationi causae predictae, per Constabularium et Marescallum.

Hiis itaque gestis, Episcopus Carleolensis surrexit, ut excusesaret se de quibuslibet objectis contra eum per suspicionem, quam intendit probare fallacem. Cui Rex dixit, non debere eum in illa causa judicari, sed in Curia Ecclesiastica fore conveniendum. Ille tamen, facta protestatione quod noluit derogare juri Ecclesiae, vel libertati, rogavit instantius, ut excusesatio sua posset audi; declaravitque peroptime suam innocentiam de multis crimibus quae ex suspicione tantum fuerunt sibi imputata, et de conspiratione in mortem Ducis, etc. Expost conquestus est quod diu fuerat sub aresta. Cui mox responsum fuit, quod non sub aresta, sed fuisse salvae custodie commendatum pro tutela sua, et ad declinandum odium vulgi, quod conceperant contra eum; jam vero licere sibi pergere libere quocunque vellet. Sed tamen consultum est sibi, propter honestatem, ut rediret ad Abbatem Sancti Albani, in cujus comitiva jam moram traxerat, jussu Regis, et ibi permaneret, donec mundus, ex conquietatione vulgi, felicior arideret; et fecit sic per tempus aliquod.

Die Jovis post festum Apostolorum Simonis et Judae, de Regis benevolentia, allocati sunt Katerinæ Swynford, nuper Ducissœ Lancastriæ, mille marcatus annui terrarum de Ducatu Lancastriæ, quos Dux, pater Regis, sibi concesserat, dum adhuc Rex esset Comes de Derby.

Die Lunæ proxima post festum Omnium Sanctorum, datum est judicium contra Dominos qui dicuntur "ap- "pellantes," Willelmo Thernyng verba prosequente,
REGIS ANGLIÆ. 315

jussu Regis, quia Thomas Percy, Vice-Senescallos, in A.D. 1399. firmabatur, qui hoc ex officio debuerat pronunciassæ. Dixit ergo dictus Willelmus, Justiciarius, prologum, priusquam proferret sententiam, pene talem.—

"Nostis, Domini, quod, ad instantiam communitatis, Rex concessit et mandavit in recordo Parliamenti tenti anno regni Regis nuper vicesimo primo publica legerentur, et certæ personæ de quibus fiebat men-
tio in dictis recordis suis astarent responsis. Quibus auditis, si quisquam, cujuscunque fuerit conditionis, vellet affirmare quicquam contra eos, acceptaretur, et eorum responsa etiam allocarentur; et Rex paratus erat ad faciendum justitiam utique parti. Quæ quidem recorda legebantur die Mercurii ultimo præ-terito, et responsa certorum Dominorum, videlicet, Ducis de Almarle, etc., audita fuerunt separatim coram Rege et cunctis statibus præsentibus. Quo tempore nemo aliquid affirmavit contra eos, præter Dominum de Murle, qui accusavit Comitem Sarisburiensem, et Dominum Fiz-Water, qui simili modo accusavit Ducem de Almarle; super quibus Rex dixit se velle deliberare de omnibus dictis recordis, et contentis in eisdem, et etiam de responsis dictorum Dominorum, Ducis de Almarle, etc., cum cunctis Dominis regni temporalibus, et Consilio suo toto, et tunc procedere, prout opportumnum videretur, pro expeditione præsentis negotii atque totius Parliamenti. Super quibus in erasto convocatis cunctis suis Dominis temporalibus, alisque de Consilio, tractavit diligentissime cum eis- dem. Itaque libris singularum responsis Dominorum, Ducis de Almarle, etc., quæ videbantur sonare in excusationem eorundem, videlicet, quod quilibet eorum diceret separatim se non fuisset imaginatorem primum,

1 quod contenta, or similar words, are omitted here.

3 Almare in orig.

8 astare in orig.

4 præsentis in orig.
Judgment against the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester.

A.D. 1399. "executorem, neque motorem, billarum continentium appellationem, nec quicquam præsecivisse de materia, donec demonstrata fuit eisdem in diversis locis et diversis temporibus; prout audistis allegatum hic alias coram Rege et vobis omnibus; et quod illi compulsi fuerunt Regis mandato ad faciendum, et ita fecerunt, metu mortis, et ad evitandum pericula quæ contingissent illis, nisi paruissent. Et tunc quidam ex ipsis Dominis rogaverunt Regem et Dominos hinc praesentes, ut considerarent teneritudinem ætatis in qua constiterunt eo tempore quo ad talia cogebantur; et etiam quilibet eorum pro tunc excusavit se, juratus quod non fuit pars nec conducer, volens nec assensu mortis Ducis Gloucestriae. Rex vero ad sciendum clarius omnem rei veritatem in materia prænotata, quo ad optimum perveniret judicium et maximam æquitatem, avisiamento cunctorum Dominorum temporalium, et aliorum de Consilio, fecit venire dictos Dominos appellantes, præter Comitem Sarisburiensem, et oneravit eos singillatim ac separatim, per fidem et ligeantiam quæ sibi debebant, ut sibi dicerent totam veritatem, et propalarent, qui fuerant primi factores, motores, et executores, hujusmodi appellatiohnis, et aliorum comprehensorum in dicto recordo, aliarumque rerum quæ in recordo minime comprehenduntur. Quibus separatim responsa dederunt, prout notum est Regi, Dominisque, et Consilio, memorignis. Ulterius Rex oneravit eos modo quo supra, ut recogitarent cum majori deliberatione, et si occurreret aliquid memoriam eorum, quod non dixissent in ista materia, quod non omittent Regi referre. Super hiis videbatur Regi, Dominisque temporalibus, quod dicta appellatio, et materia contenta in eadem, tam grandis fuit, tam ardua, et tot damna et infortunia exinde contigerant, et tot casus mali, videlicet, "quarundam personarum occisio, quarundam incarceratio, "insuper et hereditatum forisfacturæ, necnon et exhære-
dationes, legumque subversiones, et status altus accumulatus appellantibus, causa talium forisfacturarum.

in magnam communi populi oppressionem; et omnia incepterunt et. processerunt extra cursum communis juris, in tantum, quod processu juris communis corone et regni non valebant reformari, nec puniri, nisi per Regem et Dominos, pares regni, in hac suprema Curia Parliamenti. Quapropter Domini temporales omnes cogitaverunt, ut esset tale judicium datum in hoc casu super Dominos appellantes, quo Rex posset esse salvus et securus principaliter, et alii status hujus regni, cum misericordia Regis, et gratia, prout sibi pertinet, ejus regali statui in sua propria discretion.

Ulterius, in crastino, et in die Veneris, Rex communicavit istam materiam Dominis spiritualibus, quantum licuit consciri, salva honestate statuum eorumdem: quibus visum est quod, sine morte vel occasione quorumcumque, fuit expediens ponere talem punitionem et castigationem in hoc casu, ut posset fieri bona securitas, ut praefertur, et exemplum futuris temporibus illis et aliis, ne caderent in casu consimili quovis modo. Super hiis igitur Rex, et sui Domini supradicti, habentes oculos ad has materias et responsiones prædictas, et considerationem Statuti anno undecimo editi, quod quidem cum bona deliberatione visum est a Rege et Dominis, ac intellectum, quod continet proditionem, etc., de cujus Statuti sententia plurimi dubitant et intricantur in suis conceptibus, et Rex ipse præcipue; et habendo considerationem ad hoc, quod communes petierunt in hoc Parliamento, ut illud quod male fuerat editum in dicto Parliamento, anno undecimo, si foret affirmatum, extraheretur et emendaretur in praesenti Parliamento, et non potest scriri quo temperamento fiet in hoc articulo, donec finitur Parlamentum præsens; et habendo considera-
Judgment against the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester.

A.D. 1329. "tionem quod si taliter dictum Statutum caperetur et confirmaretur, ad sententiae suae discussionem profun-
dissimam et rigorosissimam, non solum caderet super has personas appellantes, sed super plures alios qui ceciderunt, vel cadere potuerunt, in tali casu, post-
quam dictum Statutum fuit editum. Quamobrem Rex nullo modo voluit exponere tam multos de populo suo tanto periculo vel perditioni, sed vult facere suum judicium in justitia et virtute, cum misericordia et gratia, juxta suam discretionem; et quamvis sua 1 gratia et misericordia specialiter sibi appropriaretur supra omnes status alios, ratione regalitatis suae, tamen in praesenti tempore, alisque temporibus, cum sibi placuerit, vult consulere Dominos suos de sua gratia facienda, et per viam consilii eorum procedere, et 2 motive in perpetuum, reservando sibimet suae gratiae et misericordiae dignitatem, prout pertinet statui suo regali, et ut nullus hoc sibi in-
titulet, sed sint in sua propria voluntate. Super quibus Domini in Parliamento præsenti, Regis as-
sensu, judicant et decernunt quod Duces de Almarle, Surrey, et Excestre, qui sunt hic præsentes, et fuerunt appellantes, amittant de se et heredibus suis Ducum nomina que nunc habent, et honores exinde, pariter ac dignitates. Et quod Marchio de Dorceste, qui præ-
sens est, amittat a se et suis heredibus, nomen Marchionis. Et Comes Gloucestriae, qui præsens est, amittat nomen Comitis, et honorem. Et ut omnia castella, prædia, dominia, et alias possessiones, liber-
tates, bona, et catalla, que habuerunt, de his que fuerunt eorum quos appellaverant, que forisfecerunt eo tempore a die arestationis Ducis Gloucestriae et aliorum Dominorum, vel expost, aliquo tempore, simpliciter, et absque gratia, vel misericordia, ulla, perdant. Et ut omnia alia castella, prædia, dominia,

1 Apparently, grati in orig. 2 Sic in origin; perhaps for movere.
Regis Angliæ. 319

A.D. 1399.

Judgment against the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester.

"possidiones, et libertates, quæ tenuerunt de dono
"Regis ipso die, vel postea, in Regis gratiæ stent, et
"misericordia. Et quod omnes patentes litteræ et
"chartæ quæ habuerunt, vel aliquis illorum habet
"dictorum nominatorum castellorum, dominiorum, pos-
"sessionum, et libertatum, sursum reddantur in Can-
"cellariam, ibidem cancellanda. Et quod omnino
"consistat in statu quem habuerunt, nomine et pos-
"sessione, ante dictum diem arrestationis prædictæ; et
"quod ipsi, nec illorum aliquis, det libratas vel signa,
"nec faciat retinentiam hominum, nisi officiariorum
"necessariorum, in suis domibus, et officiariorum ne-
"cessariorum extra, ad gubernandum hospitia, terras,
"et possessiones, eorumdem et aliorum consiliariorum,
"prout rationabler pertinet dictarum statu personæ-
"rum. Et ulterior, Domini temporales, Regis assensu,
"judicant et decernunt, quod si isti prædicti Domini,
"Dux de Almarle, etc., sive illorum aliqui, unquam
"adhæreat Riccardo, qui fuit Rex, et est depositus, in
"consilio, adjutorio, vel confortatorio, contra dictam
"depositionem, judicium, ordinationem, vel affirmatio-
"nem, in praesenti Parliamento, tangenter personam
"prædicti Ricardi, ut sint in poena proditionis, et
"pro talibus teneantur et reputentur. Et insuper,
"quia fuit, et est, clamor et tumultus magnus in
"communi populo, quod quidam dictoræ Dominorum
"famuli fecerunt graves extortiones, injurias, et op-
"pressiones, in communi populo, in tantum quod dice-
batur quod quidam qui fuerunt cum illis, sub colore
"dominiorum suorum, et status alti in quo sui domini
"fuerunt constituti, ceperunt multo plus per extor-
tionem de Regis populo, et per causarum manutenen-
tiam, et querelarum, quam valuit totum residuum
"victus eorumdem; quare, Domini, Regis assensu, judi-
cant et decernunt, ut iant proclamationes, etc., ut si
"ullus velit conqueri de istis Dominis, vel de aliquo
"de sua familia, qui cum illis est, aut erat, in his
"temporibus, de extortionibus, injuriis, vel oppressio-
A.D. 1399. "bus sibi factis per eosdem, veniat, et gravamen in-
stituet, et remedium fiet ei."

The King Post judicium dictum in Dominos, fiebat murmur in
populo, et obloquium de Rege, et Archiepiscopo, et
Comite Northumbriæ, aliisque de Consilio; quasi illi, cæcati muneribus, salvassent vitam hominum, quos
vulgus sceleratissimos et morte dignissimos reputabat.

Eo tempore, ex insperato, reperta est in camera Regis
quedam littera quæ et talia continebat, quod insur-
rectio fieret contra Regem, nisi morte puniret Dominos
supracticitos. Ob hanc causam, cum Parliamentum dis-
solvendum fuisset, dilatum est; et Rex convenit Domi-
nos, regni pares, requirens si talis littera de eorum
scientia processisset. Qui cum juraverunt se nunquam
de littera illa prescivisse, tunc Rex milites Parliamenti
requisivit, si illi tali sententiæ consensus vel consilium
praebissent. At illi omnes sacramento firmaverunt,
se non fuisse conscios hujus facti. Quibus auditis,
Rex, animosior factus, dissolvit Parliamentum.

Rex, ut demonstraret cunctis gentibus in circuitu,
quo titulo, quo jure, quo favore, coronam regni susce-
perit, misit ad Romanam Curiam Episcopum Herfor-
densem, Magistrum Johannem Trevenaunt, J[ohannem] 
Cheyne, militem, et J[ohannem] Cheyne, scutiferum. In
Franciam vero misit Episcopum Dunelmensem, Magis-
trum Walterum Skyrlow, et Comitem Wygorniae, Do-
minum Thomam Percy: in Hispaniam Episcopum As-
savensem, Magistrum Johannem Trevor, et Willelmum
Par, militem, destinavit; in Almanniam Episcopum
Bangorensem et ¹

Scoti, quorum natura malitia, conceptus superbia, opus
perfidia, per Parliamenti tempus, occasione nacta de
Dominatorum, ² seu patriæ magnatum, absentia, et ³ quia

¹ Omitted in orig. In Walsingham's text (II. p. 242), it is — "cum
alia, quorum nomina non tenemus."

² se in orig.

³ quæ in orig.
premebantur Boreales grandi pestilentia, partes illas A.D. 1399. hostiliter intraverunt, et Castrum de Werk, quod deputatum fuerat custodiae Domini Thomæ Gray, militis, qui in Parliamento, pro commoditate gentis suæ, ¹ [fuit absens,] eeperunt, et per tempus tuerunt, et tandem despoliaverunt et funditus dejecerunt, aliaque mala fecerunt in terra.

Per idem ² [tempus] Papa, per billas suas, restituit Dominum Thomam Arundele Archiepiscopatui Cantuariensi, in toto et in totum, excusans se, ut circumventus fuerit fraude et dolo Rogeri Waldene.

Eo tempore disseminabantur nova de morte Domini Thomæ de Mounbray, quondam Ducis Northfolchiae, qui diem clausit ultimum, justo Dei judicio, in terra peregrina, dum rediret de Ierosolimis, in amaritudine mentis magna. Cujus ³ [mors] fuisset toti regno Angliae deflenda merito, si nec in necem Ducis Gloucestriae consensisset, nec eum nequiter jugulasset. Felix fuisset fama sua per sæcula, si, declinato tanto scelere, vel eum dicto Duce fugisset, vel eum ad sua responsa perduxisset.

Eodem fere tempore concessit in fata, ex infirmitate quam contraxit de nimis gravi tristitia, nobilis et devota fœmina, Domina Ducissa Gloucestriae, apud Minorissas Londoniarum, juxta Turrim; quæ paulo ante infausto omine filium suum et haeredem amiserat, subtractum sibi pestilentia, dum redisset de Hibernia, sub ductu Domini de Grey de Ruthyn. Cujus obitus multos in Anglia contristavit: sicque sub brevi tempore Anglia deflevit mortes patris optimi et filii ⁴ opinatissimi, in quo spes communium sita fuit, et matris nobilissimae, quæ prudentia, pudicitia, et sanctitate, præcessit fœminas regionis.

¹ Omitted in orig.; but "fuit" is supplied in a side-note, by a later hand. ² Omitted in orig. ³ Omitted in orig. ⁴ Sic in orig.
A.D. 1399. Hoc anno, Romæ imagines Crucifixi et Beatae Virginis Mariae sudaverunt humorem sanguineum, similem cuorii recenti. Quo tempore, nobiles Romanorum, et Duces ac Principes, (et promiscuum vulgus totius Ital.iæ,) nova devotione tacti, induti pannis unius, cum crucibus rubeis insertis in eisdem, ferens crucies in manibus, et vexilla, et habens imaginem Crucifixi deportatam coram eo, 1 facit processiones, circuens stationes die ac nocte, et nudatis humeris usque ad umbilicum, flagellabant se, cantantes in vulgari pios cantus, sed inter hos devotius,—

2 "Stabat mater dolorosa
"Juxta crucem lacrymosa,
"Dum pendebat Filius;"—
et clamabant in vulgari frequentius misericordiam et pacem. Quibus Papa dedit cotidie benedictionem solennem, demonstrans eis sudarium Domini Ihesu Christi; feceruntque pacem inter discordantes in omni loco ad quem venerunt. Venerunt autem per varias comitivas, et una quidem ex his habit quadraginta millia, et alia viginti millia, aliaque decem millia; et 3 [ut] una comitiva complevit devotionem, et recessit, alia supervenit, per omnia faciens devotionem quam fecit ante prior comitiva; in lectis non dormiens, carnes et lacticinia non comedens, et jejunium diebus observans præcipue Sabbatorum.

A.D. 1400. Anno gratias millesimo quadringentesimo, et regni Regis Henrici, a Conquestu Quartii, primo, tenuit Rex Natale apud Wyndeshoram, cum parva admodum familia, exilique laetitia, quia nondum convaluerat de infirmitate gravissima quam contraxerat ex impotione, vel per cibaria toxicata. Fertur quod filius suus, Princeps Walliae, et plures de Regis hospitio, alique

1 Sic in orig.; faciunt, more correctly.
2 The beginning of the Prose, or
3 Omitted in orig.
quamplures de regno, utpote Henricus Percy, junior, A.D. 1400, alii quoque multi, infecti fuerunt consimili toxico, prout apparuit multis signis.

Eo tempore, Comites Cancieæ, Sarum, et Huntyndoneæ, ingrati Regis beneficiis, qui vitas eorum salvaverat, contra vota tam procerum regni multorum quam communium, congregantes iniquitatem sibi, per conventiculæ facta locis variis, et conjurationes, statuerunt repente super Regem irruisse in Castro de Wyndeshore, sub simulatione ludorum natalitorum vel hastiludiorum, et, cum omnibus suis filiis, crudeler peremisse, Regemque Ricardum, requisitum, regno restituisset; et per tam infanda facinora, nomina Ducum et possessiones, quibus juste privati fuerant, occupasse. Sed horum molitionibus miraculose divina virtus restituit, quia Rex præmunitus fuit de proditorum consilio, et mox se removit a dicto loco, Londoniasque pervenire celeriter maturavit. Illi vero, scilicet, Comes Cancieæ et Comes Sarum, putantes Regem suam omnino late concep tionem, Dominica proxima post festum Circumcisionis Domini, id est in crastino Sanctorum ¹, in ipsius noctis crepusculo, aggressi sunt perficere nefandum facinus in Regem suum; perveneruntque ad castellum cum armata manu, circiter quadringentorum armatorum et arcitenientium, et praepararunt se ad præfatum scelus sub omni festinatione consummandum. Sed cum cognovissent Regem, præmunitum de eorum insidiis, sive dolis, se subtraxisse, contristati sunt valde, perturbatique requiserunt dividia anxii, prout tanta distictio temporis permittebat; urgentesque caballos calcaribus, velocissimo cursu venerunt ad manerium de Sonnyng, juxta Radyngum, ubi Regina, filia Regis Franciæ, tunc temporis moram traxit. Et cum pervenissent ad portas, in ipso die Epiphaniae, circa nonam, armatis suis et sagittariis foris expectantibus, ipsi duo

¹ This hiatus occurs in orig.; the text in Walsingham (II. p. 243) has —“id est, in Octabis Innocentium.”
A.D. 1400. Comites, et pauci cum eis, intraverunt aulam, miranti-
bus cunctis Reginae familiaribus quid haec portenderent
que videbant. Et subito Comes Canciæ, cum vidisset
Reginae famulos diversi status sibi reverenter occur-
rere, ut suam palliaret tristitiam, dum premeret alto
corde dolorem, et tamen lætitiam vultu præferreret, ele-
vata manu dextra ad frontem suam, signavit se, tan-
quam admirando, signo crucis, publice sic dicendo,—
"Benedicite," inquit, "quid accidit quod Dominus
Henricus de Lancastre sic fugit a facie mea, qui
"tantum de sua, strenuitate et militia se extollebat?
"Et mox respiciens eos qui convenabant,—"Domini,"
ait "et amici, notum sit vobis omnibus, quod Henri-
cus de Lancastria, me persequente, fugit ad Turrim
"Londoniarum, cum suis filiis et amicis. Et meæ in-
tentionis est adire Regem Ricardum, qui fuit, et est,
"verus Rex vester; qui jam evasit a carcere, et jacet
"ad pontem de Raticote, cum centum millibus defen-
sorum. Et ideo qui Regem Ricardum diligitis, et
"Reginam, quæ presens est, armate vos quantocius,
"et mecum venite, vel cæterum sequi sequimini, quam cito
"parati fueritis, per viam Wallingfordiæ [et] Abyn-
"doniæ, contrahentes vobiscum de patria quot potes-
tis." Et ut fidem daret suis fictivis, detraxit de
collis quorundam signa Regis, scilicet, collaria, dicens
de æterno signum tale minime deferendum. Detraxit
insuper de brachiis domicellorum signa crescentium, et
abjecit. Ad Reginam quoque intravit, velut conforta-
turam eam, cum ipsumet consolatione careret. Cui et dixit
quæ perante in aula mentitus fuerat, et sterilī sermine
lætificabat.

Tandem, accepta licentia, ad suos exiit, et ascensis
equis, primo Walingfordiam, postea Abndoniam, est in-

1 In Walsingham’s text (II. p. 244) it is "Pontem Fractum," Pontefract; but Radeote Bridge, near Faringdon, in Berkshire, is, no doubt, the place meant.
2 Omitted in orig.
3 Or fictitiœ, the word being some-
what indistinct.
gressus, ibique disseminans mendacium quod praestruxerat, et commovens populum per omnes vias ut arma caperent, et eum sequerentur ad auxiliandum Regi Ricardo. Sed mox ex uno loco egresso, cum suis, Comite, priusquam armari potuissent quos commoverant, insuper venit novus rumor de apparatu Regis Henrici, insequentis Comitem cum decentissima turba pugnantium; qui rumor semper augebatur, et ipsis rerum experimentis esse verior probabatur.

Comes vero Canciac, cum Comite Sarum et Domino Bunney, et aliis sequentibus, arma sua velocissime fugiens, jam caeca nocte pervenit Cirecestriam. Viri vero dictae villa, spectum habentes tantum apparatum, et putantes, prout erat, rumorem eorum mendacium, praestruxerunt omnes [exitus] et aditus hospitii eorum nocte secrete. Illi vero, timentes, si usque manem haberent, imminere sibi periculum, nocte media moliebantur egredi, discedereque latenter. Sed cum exitus omnes praestructos cernèrent trabibus et lignis grossioribus, cœperunt lanceis et sagittis rem agere, ut obstantes eis villanos repellèrent. Villani vero glomerati, et ipsi sagittare cœperunt intra hospitia per fenestras, per fores, per ostia, ita quod nullus locus tu tus dabatur eis, nec ad exitum nec ad prospectum. Duravit iste congressus a media nocte usque ad horam tertiam sequentis diei, quo tempore manus dederunt, villanis se reddentes, et submisse precantes ut salvarentur a nece, donec cum Rege colloquium habuissent. Duxit sunt ergo in Abbathiam, ubi et Missam audierunt et jentabantur ipso die. Post nonam vero, circiter horam Vesperarum, quidam sacerdos, de eorum familia, immisit ignem in quasdam domos cujusdam stratae dictae villa, ut, occupatis villanis circa ignis extinctionem, Comites habere possent evadendi occasionem. Sed frustra; nam villani, hanc cautelam prævi-
A.D. 1400. dentes, domos dimiserunt conflagrationi et incendio, ¹ [et] ad Abbathiam convolaverunt, ut eos retinérent quos ceperant labore tanto. Affuit tum ibidem Dominus Thomas de Berklee, qui conduxisse paraverat eos ad Regem, et utique sic fecisset, si non fuisse ignis in villam missus. Sed hoc infortunium tantum comovit villanos et alios, qui jam confluérant de partibus Gloucestræ, et locis aliis, quod nulla sedari potuerunt oratione; quin omnino in necem Comitum armarentur; ipsique Domino de Berkele mortem minati sunt, nisi produci permetteret ad eodem Regis proditores. Producti sunt ergo jam pene circa solis occasum, et decollati Comites Cancæ atque Sarum per manus communium; male fidei et incredulitatis sue meritas eis reddente poenas Domino ultionum. Nam uterque infidelis Regi suo fuerat, qui salvavit eos; et, quod pejus est, ingratus ei qui tantam gratiam dedit eis. Comes autem Sarum, qui Lollardorum fuctor fuerat in tota vita, et imaginum vilipensor, sacramentorumque derisor, sine sacramento confessionis, si verum est quod vulgo dicitur, miserabiliter vitam finivit.²

Comes Huntyngdonæ, Dominus Johannes Holond, qui prius "Dux Excœstræ" vocabatur, non equitavit cum prædictis Comitibus ad Castrum de Wyndeshore, die quo meditati fuerant peremisse Regem; sed, latens Londoniis, expectavit rei finem, quæ si juxta ³ [vota] cessisset eisdem, paratus fuit, ut dicebatur, ad occurrendum eis, et auxilia ferre, cum magnō numero armatorum. Sed mox ut cognovit versum in contrarium, in scapha fugere nitebatur. Qui vero ventis et mari imperat, ventum contrarium sibi, tam turgidum, tam contrarium sibi, concitavit, ut nullo modo per Tamisiam fugere prævaleret. Quamobrem vectus

¹ ad ad in orig.
² At this place, about half a page of the MS. is left vacant, and the History is continued, in the same hand, on another leaf (pp. 105-106).
³ Omitted in orig.
equo velociissimo, fugit in Estsexiam, ad Castrum de A.D. 1400. Hadle, ubi morabatur Comes Oxoniae, Albredus de Veer, cum uxore sua, Oxoniae Comitissa. Sed ibi diu latere non potuit, propter persecutores, qui propter eum omnia scrutabantur. Egressusigitur latenter a castro, venit ad quoddam molendinum, sequente eum milité quoddam, Johanne de Schevele, quem de garcione fortuna produxerat ad arduum paucis annis. Ibi igitur occultavit se biduo, tentans si quomodo posset, per mare fugiendo, iram Domini declinare. Sed quotiens tentavit alta ponti conscendere, totiens vi ventorum repulsus, cogebatur utus repetere; donec omnino desperans de maris suffragio, destitit a propositione praeccepto. Regressus in terram igitur venit ad domum noctu cujusdam armigeri sibi noti, scilicet Johannis de Prytwelle; ubi dum esset in cena, supervenerunt multi de patria, qui repente rapuerunt et duxerunt ad villam de Chelmesford, in qua censuerunt eum, arbitrio communium, morti turpissimae judicandum. Quo cum pervenisset, interventu Dominae Comitissæ de Hereford, salvatus est ad horam, et ducitus ad fortiicium de Plesshy, servandus per familiæ domine, sed mediante communibus restituendus. Cumque custodiretur ibi per dies aliquot, Orientalæ Saxones confluxerunt de cunctis villis circumjacentibus, et munitionem in qua servabatur, velut obsidiendo, circumsecerunt; et tandem ad hunc finem intenderunt omnes, ut produceuteret, et, velut Regum proditor, in eodem loco decapitaretur, in quo dominus corundem, Dux Gloucestrie, dum occurrisset Regi Ricardo processionaliter et pacifice, per eundem Règem fuerat astatus.

Die igitur Sancti Mauri, que fuit octavo-decimo Kalendas Februarii, imminente jam nocte, communes

---

1 This hiatus occurs in orig., and the word "arduum," or "ardua," is left unfinished.
2 These two words are repeated in orig.
3 This passage appears to be imperfect; the name of the person mediating is omitted.
4 Repeated in orig.
A.D. 1400. petierunt Dominum Gerardum Braybrok, militem, ut
educeret proditorem. Ille vero, juxta mandata Domi-

næ Comitissæ Herefordiae, cupiens servare eum donec
Dominus Rex cum eo colloquium habuisset, requisivit
divortia, tempusque protraxit, et distulit eos audire.
Qui mox, velut in mentis insaniam versi, juraverunt
quod nisi ipse produceret eum sine mora, ipse more-

retur pro eodem. Ille vero, iras vulgi [metuens], pro-

misit se Comitem producturum; jugiter reversusque,
cum festinatione tremebundus, reperit Comitem atque
militem, scilicet, Johannem Schevelee, genuflectendo,
jam dixisse commendationem pro animabus propriis,
et Officium Mortuorum; narravitque eis in quanto [pa-
vore] fuerat constitutus, quia eos producere distulisset.
Comes, hæc audiens, lamentabiliter exclamavit,—“Heu,”
inquit, “sumne tradendus arbitrio rusticorum et ne-
bulonum, et mactandus juxta beneplacitum eorum-
dem? Sinite me,” inquit, “armari, deprecor, et me
defendere donec deficiam, ne tam fæde mori me con-
tingat.” Gerardus et alii, e contra, consuluerunt ut,
dimissa vindicandi voluntate, armaret se patientia, et
humiliter fortunam subiret, quam subterfugere nullo
modo poterat. Cumque Comes consensisset eorum con-
siliis, vinctis a tergo manibus, eductus est ad com-
munes, qui steterunt super pontem hinc et inde, armati
lanceis, gladiis, arcubus, et sagittis; nam pons longus
est ab illa turri usque ad terram contiguam, et per
eorum medium eum transire necessarium fuit. Qui ut
vidit tantum communitatis apparatum, elevata voce
rogavit eos omnes, ex parte Dei, et caritatis intuitu, ne
inordinatis clamoribus eum stupefacerent, quominus in
mortis articulo sensus compositos habere posset: lacry-
mabilitæ coram cunctis confitebatur, se in Deum suum
multiplicer nequiter peccasse, et in regem suum, quia

1 Omitted in orig.  
2 se is repeated before this word, by inadvertence, in orig.
consiliis se misisset dictorum dominorum, et Regem A.D. 1400.
minime praemunisset. Consequenter, a cunctis commu-
 nibus veniam petiit, in quantum contra eos deliquit,
remittens eis omnibus necem suam, quam se scivit
non posse subterfugere, et orans ut \[pro\] anima ejus
Dominum deprecarentur, cujus vita jam in eorum arbi-
trio fuerat constituita, modus et mortis genus. Cumque
pervenisset ad locum ubi arestatus olim fuerat Dux
Gloveniae, genufiecte jussus, dixit "Confiteor" in
aperto, remittens cuilibet quicquid contra eum facere
contigisset. Exinde in omnium audientia, dixit Sym-
bolum, cum magna compunctione, interpellans omnes
præsentes, ut testes ei essent coram Deo, quod in fide
Ecclesiae decessisset; rogavitque cunctos attentius, ut
taliis eligeretur ad decollandum eum, qui foret expertus,
et uno ictu decapitare sciret. Sed cum extendisset
caput et collum super breve scabellum, ganeo, qui de-
capitaturus fuerat eum, vel ebrietate vel metu facti
oberrans, non lictoris, sed tortoris, exercetbat officium,
eum decem vicibus securi feriens, et miserabiliter nimis
torquens. Corpus vero truncum sacerdotes de Collegio
rapuerunt, et penes se collocaverunt. Caput ejus, sicut
et cæterorum qui perempti fuerunt Cyrecestriæ, Lon-
doniiis mittebatur.

Per idem tempus, Dominus Thomas le Spencer, qui
dicebatur quondam "Comes Glocestriæ," dum fugisse
proposerat, repente captus, ductus est Brisselliam, ubi
juxta vota communiun deollatus est; licet misisset
illlic nuncios ad salvandum vitam suam, donec [Rex
habuisisset] cum eo colloquium.

Rex interea, cuj nulla unquam defuit animositas, et King
cordis audacia, commendatis filii suis Majori Londoni-
arum et civibus, et in Turri Londoniarum positis, cum
virtutum viribus, persequit Dominos supradictos;
habensque secum exercitum pulchrum valde, contendit
Oxonias. Interim audivit nova de captione et merita He hears of

---

\[1\] Omitted in orig. \[2\] Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1400. Punitione proditorum suorum, qui, 1 sine labore Regis vel regalis exercitus, tam cito, non sua, sed Dei sapientia, sunt sublati. Cumque omnium præmissorum certitudinem habuisset, elevatis manibus, gratias egit Deo, prosperatori suo, qui eum sine sanguinis effusione constituisset in regno, et nunc, sine suo, vel suorum, magno periculo, eum de suorum adversariorum manibus liberasset; cognovitque pro vero præmissa sibi contigisse non humano ingenio, sed divino miraculo manifesto. Ducti sunt ergo plures Oxonias qui 2 horum sceleratorum adhaesperunt, et ibidem interrogati, adducti sunt mortis supplicio.


Ricardus, quondam Rex Angliae, constitutus sub custodia in Castro de Ponte Fracto, cum audisset infortunium quod contigerat fratri suo, Johanni Holand, et ceteris, in tantam, ut fertur, demersus est tristitiam, quod semetipsum inedia voluit peremisse. In tantum dicitur abstineuisse, quod, clauso orificio stomachi, cum expost, consilio amicorum, voluisset naturæ satisfecisse comedendo, praecluso omnino appetitu, comedere non

---

1 These two words are repeated in orig.
2 This passage is evidently incomplete, "cause," or some similar word, being omitted.
3 This hiatus occurs in orig. "J," is given in Walsingham (II. p. 245) as the initial of the Christian name of the priest; Maud, or Magdalene.
valeret; ut factum est, ut, debilitata natura, deficeret, A.D. 1400. et die Sancti Valentini diem supremum clauderet, apud castreum praefatum. Cujus corpus per loca celeberrima quae interjacent, a dicto castello usque Londonias, deportatum fuit, et ostensum; in hiis, videlicet, locis ubi pernoctavit; ea pars saltem corporis per quod cognosci poterat, scilicet, ab ima parte frontis usque ad guttur. Tandem, cum ventum fisset ad Sanctum Albanum, et, ibi pernoctasset, factum fuisset Officium solemne Mortuorum pro ejus anima a Conventu, mane celebrata Missa per Abbatem, deportatum est Londonias, ad ecclesiam Sancti Pauli, ubi Rex affuit exsequiis primo die; et in crastino, cum quibusdam regni nobilibus et civibus Londoniarum. Et mox expleta Missa, corpus reduxitur ad Angleye, inter Fratres tumulandum; pervenitque caeca nocte ad praefatum locum. Et mox missi sunt nuncii de parte Regis ad Abbatem Sancti Albani, qui monerent Abbatem, ex parte Regis, ut in crastimo, summo mane, maturaret ad locum, ubi, cum Episcopo Cestrensi et Abbate Waltham, supremis regiae funerâibus interesset. Et factum est ita; sicque sine pompa, sine pluri, traditum fuit corpus regium sepulcrure.

Franci, cognoscentes Regem quondam Angliæ, Ricardum, de medio fore sublatum, mittunt legatos qui reportarent filiam Regis Franciae, quam nuper duxerat cum pompa maxima Ricardus Rex, ut præmittitur sed tamen intactam reliquerat, prout rerunt. Quæ, postquam conditiones pacis renovatæ, que firmatae fuerant inter Regem Angliæ, Ricardum, et Regem Franciae, Karolum, ante nuptias memoratæ virginis, remissa est ad patrem et regnum patrium, cum gloria maxima et mirifico apparatu, conducentibus eam multis ex nobilioribus regni totius. Nec defuit aliquid

---

1 Sic in orig.
2 This word is somewhat indistinct, and appears to have been patched up by a later hand.
3 Omitted in orig.
4 reperent in orig.
A.D. 1400. de supellectili quod secum adduxerat; sed omnia sanæ et integra restituta sunt ei. Et si que forte donata sunt ab ea, vel vetustate consumpta, addita sunt duplicia pro eisdem. Sed haec non modo completa sunt, sed anno sequenti, circa mensem Augusti; quo tempore, pactis hinc inde firmatis inter Reges et regna, remissa est.

Disastrous fight of the youths of London, in St. Paul's Churchyard.

In festo Sancti Ambrosii, confluxere pueri in Cœmterio Sancti Pauli Londoniis, in magna multitudine, et pueriliter eligentes sibi diversæ partes reges, non pueriliter, sed perniciosum iniere conflictum; nempe quidam vulnerati, quidam perempti, sunt ibidem. Sed pejor calculus hiis qui de parte Scotorum fuere, contigit,—nam quidam pro parte Regis Angliae, quidam pro parte Regis Scotiae, certavere. Quam pugnam secuta sunt prodigia in aere, a multis conspecta, armatorum, videlicet, sese collisionium, apud Kyngestone in Comitatu Cantabrigiae.

Eodem anno fuit epidemicæ tempore aestivali, quæ multos haec luce privavit.

The King requests a subsidy of the clergy.

Eodem tempore, misit [Rex] litteras deprecatorias ad omnes ecclesiasticos pro subsidio pecuniari quod æquaret unam decimam. Cujus preces pro tune sprevisse videbatur omnibus inhumanum, præsertim cum haec petitionum suarum prima fuisset.

He visits St. Alban's.

In Vigilia Ascensionis Domini, Rex accessit ad Sanctum Albanum, et in crastino interfuit processioni et Missæ Majori, solemniter coronatus.

Scottish ships taken by the men of Lynn.

Circa tempus istud captæ sunt naves Scotorum quædam per homines de Lennia, et Scoti plurimi; per quod arcana consilia Gallicorum et Scotorum fuere

1 Omittitur in orig.
2 At the foot of this page (107) the following halting lines are written in, apparently, an almost contemporary hand;—

"Qui regis, intende, rotam fortunae cavete.

"En Rex procerus, regum Richard recolendus;
"Ecce! per auriloguos victus, cu-
"pidosque bilingues, t
"En cui servierat, fraude peremp-
"tus erat."
cognita et comperta, malignantium contra Anglos. A.D. 1400.
Nempe tunc captus est Dominus Thomas "Lagorn, miles Scotiae, qui pactus fuerat destruxisse navigium nostrium, et præcipue piscatores qui solent piscari apud Aberdene. Captus est et secretarius Regis Scotiae, cum multis aliis; sed tamen, redemptione pacta, dimissi sunt. Nostrates, hiis captis, mox insulas Orcadum in- vaserunt; et non multo post, Rex, collecto exercitu, pro- prefectus est in Scotia; sed Scotis se subtrahentibus, nce facientibus belli copiam, Rex, vastata patria, reedit in Angliam. Cum venisset ad Eboracum, occurrerunt ei quidam milites, quorum [alius] erat ex Gallia, alius ex Italia, poscentes pugnam duelli contra Grenewayle et quemdam alium, in obsequio Regis exis- tentem, "Ranico" vocatam. Commissio bello inter utrosque, afflicti sunt alienigenae, et humiliati summa confusione, qui huc advenarent in superbia et abusione. Ubi Grenecornewayle, pro strenuitatis commendatione, gratiam Regis, et favorem, meruit, et sororem suum duxit uxorem, quae dudum Domini Johanni Holand, Comiti Huntingdoniae; quanquam, ut dicitur, sine regis conscientia, ex assensu mutuo, primitus vir et mulier convenissent.

Interea Wallici, nacta occasione de Regis absentia, rebellare coeperunt, duce quodam Howen de Glendore. Hic primo juris apprenticius fuit apud Westmonaste- rium, deinde armiger non ignobilis Regi moderno, ante susceptum regnum, laudabili militavit; sed orta discordia inter eum et Dominum Reginaldum Grey de Ruthyn, pro terris quas asseruit hæreditario jure sibi competere, cum rationes suas et allegationes parvipen- sas cerneret, primo in Dominum de Grey hostilia com- movit arma, vastans possessiones ejus per incendia, et ferro perimens plures de familia sua nimis crudeliter

---

1Logon (Logan) in Walsingham (II. p. 246).
2Omitted in orig.
3mile in orig.
4The words "nupta fuerat" ap- pear to be wanting here.

Hoc anno obiit Magister Radulphus Ergom, Episcopus Bathoniensis; cujus loco, Regis intuitu, electus est Magister Henricus Bowet.

Eo tempore, Willelmus, Abbas de Waltham, tactus pestilentia, vitæ finem fecit, juvenis aptus ad multos annos.

Circa præsens tempus, Imperator Constantinopolitanaus, cum Græcis pluribus, venit in Angliam, a Rege petitum auxilium contra Morettum, qui ejus terras graviter, et gentes, infestaverat. Cui Rex occurrit ad le Blakeseth, cum pompa qua decuit, eumque suscepit honorificentissime; duxit Londonias in die Sancti Thomæ Apostoli, exhibuit [que] gloriose longo tempore, solvensque pro expensis hospitii sui atque suorum, et respiciens eum dignis tanto fastigio donativis.

Hoc anno, Papa, quorundam magnatum intuitu, transit Episcopum Carleolensem, Magistrum Thomam Merk, ad Episcopatum, unde nec fructus perciperet, nec proventus; et idcirco, paulo post fecit ei gratiam de uno beneficio, vel de pluribus, ad taxam quingentarum marcarum, quæ idem Thomas duceret, acceptanda in Diocesi. Successit ei, in Episcopatum Karleolensem, Magister Willelmus Styrkelond.

Transit annus iste mediocriter frugifer et fructifer, sic quod inclo nec de abundantia poterant exultare, nec de penuria conqueri; Regi, regniqüe fidelibus,

---

1. Omitted in orig.
2. Hiatus in orig.
3. The meaning of this ungrammatical passage it seems difficult to divine; or what Diocese is meant.
4. penuri in orig.
latus, de subtractione simulorum ; laboriosus, in repri- A.D. 1400.
mendo insolentias Wallensium et Scotorum.

Anno gratiae millesimo 1 quadragesimo primo, et A.D. 1401,
regni Regis Henrici, a Conquestu Quartii, secundo, The Em-
tenuit Rex Natale gloriose apud 2 [manerium] suum de
Eltham ; ubi affuit Imperator Constantinopolitanus, cum
Græcorum Episcopis, aliisque quos necessitudo hic at-
traxerat ea vice.

Post Epiphaniam convenit universa regni nobilitas ad Parlamentum celebrandum, in quo quidem Parlia-
mento Dominus Ernaldus Savage constitutus est mil-
tum Parlamentalium Prolocutor ; qui tam diserte, tam eloquenter, tam gratioso, declaravit communitatis ne-
gotia, praecipue ne de cætero taxis gravarentur, aut
talliaquis, quod laudem ab universis promeruit ea die.

Rex vero publice declaravit ibidem, se non fuisse, nec esse, ditatum de bonis Ricardi Regis, prædecessoris sui, sed potius fuisse de fraudatum a nonnullis, qui au-
rum Regis, multaque jocalia, sibimet occulte retenue-
runt; quamobrem se veraciter demonstravit pauperem et egenum.

In hoc Parlamento, ad instantiam communitatis, editum est Statutum de Lollardis, ut ubicunque deprehenderentur suam pravam dogmatizare doctrinam, caperentur, et Episcopo diece-sano traderentur; et si præsumerent opiniones defendere pertinaciter, degra-
derentur, et committerentur judicio saeculari. Unde 3 quidam, sacerdos gradu, sed moribus execrabili-
is, et doctrina, durante adhuc Parlamento, captus est, et
drecipere Cantuariensi est praesentatus. Qui inter-
rogatus de doctrina sua, cum constanter 4 assereret opiniones suas, et auctoritatem Archiepiscopalem par-
vipenderet, jussit eum in custodiam recipi, si forte resilire decerneret. Sed cum nulla spes esset correc-

---

1 quadragesimo in orig.  
2 Omitted in orig.  
3 William Sautry, by name.  
4 asseret in orig.
A.D. 1401. converted to Lollard-ism, burnt at Smith- field. News that the son of Bajazeth has been slain in battle.


King. Henry gives him presents, but is unable to supply...
et Hibernicis ex parte altera, excusavit se Rex non posse carere propria manu bellica, qui tot adversanti- 
bus urgeretur; et ideo ipsum abundantioribus donariis oneravit.

Post recessum Imperatoris, redit Rex ad Parliamen- 
tum, et creavit novum Cancellarium, Dominum Edmun-

Hoc anno obiit Dominus Thomas de Bello Campo, Comes Warwici, qui sævam fortunam expertus fuerat sub Rege Ricardo.

Eodem anno debita naturæ solvit Magister Johannes Botelesham, qui ex Fratre de Ordine Praedicatorum factus fuerat Episcopus Bethlemitanus, ac deinde Roffensis, per Urbanum Papam. Cui successit Johannes, ejusdem cognominis, clericus Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis.

Circa tempus istud, jam conditionibus inter regna firmatis, et omnibus, profectioni Reginæ necessariis, preparatis, revecta est Ysabella, quondam Regina Ang- 
gliae, ad patrem suum, non annorum plus duodecim. Sub eisdem diebus, nocte quadam, cum Rex iturus esset cubitum, Deo, ut creditur, eum protegenti, evasit letale periculum. Siquidem, in stramento lecti sui, cujusdam proditoris ingenio, positum fuit quoddam ferrum fabrefactum, ad modum tricuspidis, vel tridentis, "William de Bottlesham, Bishop Bottlesham, his successor, in 1404, of Rochester, died in 1400; Jhon de Bottlesham, his successor, in 1404.
A.D. 1401. habens tres aculeos longos et subtiles, atque rotundos, punctuum aculeis acutissimis sursum erectis; tali ingenio, ut cum Rex decubuisset, et mole corporali stramenta pressisset, per eosdem aculeos vulneratus fuisse, vel forsitan interfactus. Sed, Deo volente, Rex inpinate persensit instrumentum mortiferum, 1 [et] devitavit periculum.

Hoc anno, advesperascente die Depositionis Sancti Martini, Turonensis Episcopi, Dominus Johannes Mot, Abbas Sancti Albani, ex hac luce subtractus est; cui successit, per viam scrutinii electus, Dominus Willelmus Hethworth, ejusdem loci c cellerarius, in Vigilia Sanctae Luciae Virginis; quanquam Capitulum fuisset eo die turbatum per minas nunciorum, ex parte Regis venientium, et litteras deferentium, ut Regis intuitu alium elegissent.

A.D. 1402. Anno gratiae millesimo quadringentesimo secundo, et regni Regis Henrici, a conquestu, Quartii, tertio, tenuit Rex Natale 3 .

Cometa apparuit mense Martio, primo inter Corum et Septentriionem, videlicet, in Circio, flammas emit tens terribiles, in altitudine magna porrecta, postremocomas in Boream transferens, in qua plaga ultimo videri desiiit; designans, ut opinor, humanum sanguinem effundendum circa partes in quibus apparuit, Walliae, videlicet, et Northumbriæ, ut dicemus.

Per hoc tempus, Owenus Glendor, congregatis suis Wallicis, vastavit terras Domini Reginaldi Grey, qui in Castro de Rythyn eo tempore morabatur; qui, putans eum adesse, cum manu permodica exivit, aestimans se posse capere dictum Owenum, et levi negotio subjugare. Sed longe aliter evenit quam speraverat; nam cum manus conseruiissent, Dominus de Grey captus est, et de parte sua plurimi interfecti. Quod infortunium

---

1 Omitted in orig.  
2 cellerarius in orig.  
3 Hiatus in orig., the place not being named.
Wallicos extulit in superbiam, et eorum auxit insania, ut in sequentibus apparebit.

Circa festum Pentecostes, facta fuit conjuratio contra Regem quorundam affectantium mortem ejus, et nonnullorum asserentium Regem Ricardum vivere, et incitantium multos ad standum cum Rege Ricardo; quem affirmabant quam citius in palam venturum, et suos fideles consolaturum, et digne remuneraturum. Hujus conjurationis in parte metus evanuit, capto apud Ware quodam sacerdote sui scripserat nomina multorum in matricula, qui futurae turbationis adjutores extitissent. Qui juxta conceptum proprium nomina plurimorum scripserat, qui nullatenus consci fuerant hujus facti, ut expost claruit suam confessione. Qui, cum requisitus fuisset de certis personis eoram constitutis, quarum nomina irrotulasset, si novisset eos, respondit quod non. Et cum interrogatus fuisset cur ergo tales irrotulasset, dixit, quia opinabatur eos voluisse facisse contra Regem, si complures invenissent; quia per Regem Ricardum ditati fuissent. Hae occasione liberati sunt plurimi, qui fuere suspecti, et sacerdos tractus est, et suspensus. Et paulo post Prior de Lawne sortem, similem expertus est; non quia deprehensus est aliquid actitasse, sed quia confessus est seuisse maligni [consilii] conscium, et hoc utique conceleasse. Hic erat quondam Canonicus apud Dunstapliam, dictus "Walterus de Baldok;" qui, malo omine, relicto claustro, pervenit ad Regis Ricardi Curiam, et ibidem lucutatus diutissime cum fortuna, tandem de Lawne obtinuit Prioratum.

In Vigilia Sanctæ Trinitatis, Dominus Willelmus, Abbas Sancti Albani, juxta tenorem novi privilegii, solemniter in Capella sua quatuor ex suis monachis in accolitos ordinavit.

---

1 *adjutores* in orig.  
2 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1402.

A Minorite Friar is executed for treason.

Eo tempore, malo sidere, quidam ex Ordine Minorum, de pridione pensantes, priusquam procedere potuissent, capti sunt. Quorum unus, interrogatus a judice quid facere voluisset, si Rex Ricardus viveret et ad esset, respondit constanter, se pro eo velle stetisse contra quoslibet alios usque ad mortem. Data proinde contra eum sententia, tractus et suspensus est in habitu suae professionis, ad majorem Ordinis confusionem. Sed confratres ejus, tantum non ferentes dedecus, obtinuerunt a Rege ut corpus defuncti deponeretur, et supemis exequiis curarentur.

Suspensus est et Dominus Rogerus Clerandone, miles, filius, ut dicebatur, nothus quondam nobilis principis Edwardi, filii Regis Edwardi, Tertii a Conquestu, et, cum eo, armiger suus, et valectus.

In festo Corporis Christi, quod accidit octavo Kalendas Junii, quasi hora tertia post meridiem, repente, cum tempestatis turbine et tonitruis perhorrendi fragore, eccidere fulgura et coruscationes, corda multorum mortalium deterrentes. Diabolica quoque species visibiliter apparuit in Estsexia, in similitudine Fratris Minoris, apud Danbyri, et intrantis ecclesiam hora Vesperarum, parochianis aspicientibus, et de horridissima vultus intuitu indicibus tremefactis. Quae species, inter caetera terribilia quae gessit, visa est ad altare accessisse, et super saltasse, a dextro cornu ad sinistrum, tribus vici bus, deinde se, 1 nigricans effigiem, transforasse, et inter 2 cujasdam tibias pertransisse; et sic demum, relictus foetore intolerabili, ecclesiam exivisse. Vir autem per cujus tibias transierat, confestim letalem incurrit infirmitatem, pedibus et tibiis, atque femoribus, nigriscens tibus ad modum picis. Ipsa hora, summitas toli ipsius ecclesiae est contracta, et medietas cancelli destructa et dissipata.

---

1 nigricans in orig. | Apparently written cujasdam in orig.
Post dies aliquot, capti sunt octo Fratres de Ordine A.D. 1402 Minorum, et ad judicium publicum dedecorose tracti, ubi examinati, et convicti quod contra Regem fecissent, Londoniis tracti, suspensi, et decapitati sunt.

Per idem tempus, Owenus Glendor, cum turba Cambrensis, assuetis intendens irruptionibus, pene totam militem 1 Herefordensium et 2 Comitatuum provocavit ad arma. Exiverunt ergo, Duce Edmundo de Mortuo Mari, milites et armigeri Oweno in obviam; valentiores, videlicet, regionis, qui nihil majus metuebant quam Cambrorum fugam. Sed 3 proh dolor! proditione mediate, qui vicisse properaverant, insperato victi sunt, propriis sagittariis in suos manus vertentibus, et occidentibus cum quibus stare debuissent. Sicque perempti sunt ibidem plures quam mille centum de nostratibus, et Edmundus Mortimer captus est, cum quibusdam aliis militibus et scutiferis, atque valetis, quorum nomina 4 [non] tenemus. Ibique perpetratum est facinus, a seculis inauditum: nam foemine Wancellium, post conflitum, accesserunt ad corpora peremptorum, et, 5 abscidentes membra genitalia, in ore cujuslibet posuerunt membrum pudendum, inter dentes testiculis dependentibus, supra mentum; et nasos 6 abscissos presserunt in culis eorundem. Nec passae sunt corpora mortuorum sepulture commendari, sine pretio, gravique redemptione. Extiterunt qui asserebant Edmumde Mortimer non invitum fuisse captum, sed ex condito, praemeditataque proditione. Quorum asseveravit opinionem ipsius ex post Edmundi cum Oweno satis infamis conversatio, ut inferius patebit.

Eo tempore, 7 Scoti, consuetis dantes operam latrocinis, cum armata manu Westmarchiam intraverunt.

1 Herefordensis in orig. 2 Hiatus in orig. 3 proth in orig. 4 Omitted in orig. 5 abscidentes in orig. 6 abscissos in orig. 7 Soti in orig.
A.D. 1402. qui cum prædas egissent, multaque mala fecissent, et
Bishop rediisse disposuissent, per Episcopum Karleolensem, \[et\] alios fideles et probos patris, qui sibi constituerant, ducis nomine, filium Domini Thomæ Percy, qui obierat in Hispania, (qui fuit filius Domini Henrici Percy, Comitis Northumbriæ), circumventi sunt, et superati,
et ex maxima parte captivati.

In festo Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, ab hora tertia usque in horam sextam, extitere tonitrua et undique discurrentes ignes fulgurum; ut multis instare videretur ultimum terribilium. Quo tempore, apud Hertfordiam, tempore Missæ solennis, malignus spiritus, corporaliter, ut putabatur, ingressus ecclesiam Omnium Sanctorum, per scalam quæ ad horologium fuit erecta, ascendit ad instrumentum quod "crokkum," dicimus, et sinistrum latus scalæ sic laceravit et scalpsit, acsi leo \[vel ursus illud suis unguibus \[lacerasset; contrivitque rotas instrumenti quae motum causarent, et in campanili magnam trabem in parte confregit. Serviens autem ille, qui servavit horologium, tactus igne fulguris, pene perisset adustus, nisi major gratia affuisset. Non tamen evasit lesionem, quia toto suo tempore demonstrare poterat sui corporis ustionem.

In festo Sancti Johannis et Pauli, Commissarii Abbatis Rameseye, et ejusdem loci monachi, visitaverunt Monasterium Sancti Albani; vice Abbatis sui, qui decretus fuerat Visitator in Capitulo Generali.

Per hoc tempus, Rex misit filiam suam, cum grandi apparatu, ad Coloniam \[Agrippam; ubi occurririt filius Imperatoris in apparatu simplici, qui nec decuit nomen tanti fastigii, nec par erat in occursum venire tanta virginis. Ibi, tamen juvenis, more regionis, \[duxit\] virginem in uxorem. Comes vero de Somerset, colla-

---

1 Omitted in orig.  
2 vīrus in orig.  
3 lacerarerassent in orig.  
4 Agrippam in orig.  
5 Omitted in orig.
teralis Regis, qui eam illuc duxerat, circa festum Sancti Jacobi Apostoli in Angliam est reversus.

Rex Anglie, circa festum Assumptionis Sanctae Mariae, collectis exercitibus, profectus [est] in Walliam, committens unum exercitum filio suo, Principi, alium vero Arundelie Comiti, tertium secum detinens, ut in diversis partibus Walliae, si quasi inopinate subintrantes, Owenum Glendor et suos complices sic conclusissent, ut evadendi copiam minime reperissent; sed nihil profuit tantus armorum strepitus, quia Wallicus in nova latibula se receptit. Quin potius, ut putatur, arte magica Regem pene perdidit, cum exercitu quem ducebat; nam a die quo ingressus est fines Cambrensiurn, usquequo loca dicta relinqueret, nunquam sibi arrisit aura serena, sed totis diebus et noctibus, pluviae, mixtæ cum nivibus atque grandine, sic afflexerunt exercitum, quod sustinere non poterant intertemperantiam frigoris excessivi.

In Vigilia vero Nativitatis Sanctae Mariae, cum Rex in amoenissimo prato fixisset tentoria, ubi, juxta loci naturam, nihil formidabile, sed summa requies sperabatur, repente in ipsius noctis prima vigilia, tanta descendit aquarum abundantia, ut pene putarent Anglii se mergendos. Supervenerunt insuper tanti ventorum turbines, ut ipsum Regis tentorium rumperent, dissiparent, et prosternerent, et lanceam Regis impetu vehementi dejecterent, et in regali armatura defigerent; fuissetque ipsa nox Regi ultima, si non quievisset armatus. Nec meminerunt Angliici, quamquam assueti rebus bellicis ab antiquo, se unquam tantum vexatos, periculis tantiis expositos, in uella expeditione, ut eis visum fuerat, sine humano ingenio, extitisse. Unde plures, si fas sit credere, opinati sunt hæc mala arte Fratrum Minorum, contra Regem et suos, fuisset commentata atque suscitata, qui parti Wallici favere dicebantur.

A.D. 1402.

Owen Glendower prevails against the English, by magical devices, it is surmised.

The English suffer greatly from rain and violent winds.

Magical devices attributed to the Friars, by some.

---

1 Omitted in orig.
2 intemperantianciam in orig.
3 dissiparent in orig.
4 suscita in orig.
A.D. 1402. Sed absit hoc ab hominibus tam sanctam professis regulam, ut cum daemonibus tantam contraherent familiaritatem, ut ponerent in gloria sua maculam, nullo saeculo detergendam! Rex autem, necessitate cogente, redivit, incensam patriam de dictis infortuniiis contristatus.

Eodem tempore obiit Dominus Edmundus Langele, Dux Eboraci; filius quondam illustris Regis Angliæ, Edwardi de Wyndeshore; cujus corpus, sine tumultu, sine obsequentium frequentia, allatum ad Langleam, inter Fratres Prædicatorum est sepultum; juxta corpus suæ conjugis, filiæ quondam Hispaniae Regis, Petri. Eodem tempore, Scoti, solito fastu concitati, sumentes audaciam de Regis absentia, qui operi martio deditus erat in Wallia, et putantes jam neminem remansisse in patria, qui eorum impetus retunderet, in apparatu maximo et exercitu numeroso, Orientales partes Northumbrie, duce Comite Duglas, satis hostili sunt ingressi. De quorum adventu præmunitus, Comes Northumbrie exercitum collegit occulte, permisitque Scotos latenter ingredi, et more solito debacchari; cu­piens, ut evenit, eis esse obviam, dum redirent ad patriam, et præcludere sic eis viam, ut necessario bel­lum eligerent, vel periculosam fugam. Nec eum istud fefellit ingenium; nam cum Scoti didicissent quod mi­nime adesse, videlicet, Comitem, et Hen­ricum Percy, ejus filium, Comitemque de Dunbar, qui dudum, relictis Scotis, fidem Regi jurarat Angliæ, cum manu bellica, concito gradu regredi conabantur. Pu­taverant autem omnes istos in Walliam fuisse profectos, ad subsidium Regi ferendum. Proinde celerrimo passu retrogrado converterunt lora et vexilla versus propria, laborantes prævenire Comitem, apud itineria et arva, nota quæ ducunt ad Scotiam. Sed Comes, cum suis,

---

1 dum in orig. | 2 Hiatus in orig.
neceto continuo caballando, prævenit ad loca per quæ A.D. 1402.
transire debuerant; ibique illorum præstolabatur ad-
ventum, in valle quadam cum exercitu collocatus.

Mane facto, putantes Scoti Comitem a tergo liquisse,
sub omni festinatione ¹ cucurrerunt, ita ne Angli super-
venirent et eos apprehenderent. Sed dum vitant Scyllam,
incidunt in Charybdim; nam quos fugisse crediderant,
vident pulchre disposuisse acies contra illos. Oportuit
igitur subsistere, et capere locum pugnae; elegerunt
ergo montem proximum loco in quem nostrates conces-
serant. Nostri vero, videntes cepisse montem, capiunt
et ipsi alium montem; et ita vallis separabat utrosque.
Eratque cernere pulchrum valde spectandum, hinc
Anglos armatos peroptime, cum suis arcitenentibus,
illinc Scotos, cum suis sagittariis, armorum tutela fiden-
tibus, quorum armatura ad instar argenti, repercussis
solis spiculis, resplendebat. Interea regrediebatur a
perambulatione turba sagittariorum quingentorum, qui
nocte illa pro victualibus egressi fuerant comportandis;
qui videntes utrumque exercitum, vexillis explicatis,
stantem in montibus, et se repente convenisse inter
eosdem, confestim emittunt de semetipsis certum nu-
merum arcitenentium, qui sagittarent contra Scotorum
cuneum, et provocarent ad descensum. Exitierunt e
Scotis qui descenderent, et missos retrocedere cogerent
arcitenentes; sed multiplicatis nostris, sagittarii Scoti,
qui premere videbantur, terga dare coguntur. Nee de-
fuit Scoticis sagittariis ² animositas, quia et ipsi sua
spicula in nostros ³ [conabantur] emittere toto nisu.
Qui tamen, ut senserunt gravitatem, et velut imbrife-
ram tempestatem sagittarum nostræ partis, fugerunt.
Comes Duglas, cernens suorum fugam, ne desertor belli
videretur extitisse, accepta lancea, cum turba suorum
impetuose descendit, confusis in armatura propria, com-

¹ cucurrerunt in orig. Either "cucurrerunt" or "cuvaverunt" is probably the word meant.
² animosita in orig. Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1402

The Earl of Douglas is wounded, and taken prisoner.

Reliqui de Scotis, qui nondum de monte descenderant, conversi sunt retrorsum, et ad fugam se praeparaverunt. Qui cum sagittariis manus inseruerant, ut praefertur, vel capti sunt ab eisdem, vel occisi: inter quos, Comes Duglas captus est. Qui vero de morte fugerunt, ex magna parte fugiendo capti fuerunt. Plurimi quoque [qui] festinando fugientes socios praecesserunt, cum ad amnem de Twede pervenissent, nescientes vada, rapacitate gurgitis sunt submersi, ad numerum, ut asseritur, quingentorum; per omnia [Deus] benedictus, qui dedit nobis victoriam, non in manu procerum et dominorum, sed mediatione pauperum ac servorum! neque enim fuit omnibus dominus, miles, aut scutifer, qui pedem movit adversus [Scotos], donec contriti fuissent a sagittariis, ut prædixi.

Capti sunt eo die Comes Duglas, Comes Fyf, Comes de Murref, Comes de Angus, Comes de Orkeneye; et de Baronibus, Dominus de Monte Gomerico, Dominus de Ersykyn, Dominus Styward de Ermesworthe, Dominus de Setone, Dominus Walterus Grame, Dominus Robertus Logon, Dominus David Flemyns. Interfecti sunt etiam, Barones, Dominus de Gordone, et Dominus Johannes de Swyntone, et milites, Dominus Alexander Ramseye, et Willelmus de Prestone, Walterus Seyncler, et Willelmus Akenhed, et alii milites octoginta. Capti quoque fuerunt insuper, et occisi, plurimi, quorum numerum, sive nomina, non tenemus. Commissum

---

1 Omitted in orig.
2 This word is somewhat doubtful.
3 Omitted in orig.
4 octoginta in orig.
bellum hoc in die Exaltationis Crucis, citto post meri-
diem; laudes Deo!

Circa præsens tempus, Dominus Lodewycus Clifford, miles, qui jamdum Lollardis fautor extiterat, crebra
conversatione cumerit eorum nequitias et opiniones
damnabiles, quas antea sub terminorum involucris pal-
liaverat, denudatas, et, ut ostenderet se non ex per-
tinac malitia, sed ex simplicitate cordis, et ignorantia,
uisse seductum, Domino Archiepiscopo dedit in scriptis
Conclusiones quas tenuerunt, simul cum nominibus
eorum qui dictas pravitates publice praedicaverant;
in subversionem totius Christianæ religionis:

Conclusio prima fuit ista, quam generaliter asseve-
rabant:

Quod septem Sacramenta non sunt nisi signa mor-
tua, nec valent in forma qua Ecclesia utitur eisdem.

Secunda Conclusio.—Quod virginitas et presbyteratus
non sunt status approbati a Deo; sed conjugium est
optimus et excellentissimus status, ordinatus a Domino.
Quapropter, omnes virgines et presbyteri, ac religiosi
populi, qui non sunt conjugati, si cupiunt stare in via
salvationis, debent esse conjugati, vel alias in voluntate
et proposito conjugandi: alias sunt homicidae, et de-
struunt sanctum semen unde veniret secunda Trinitas;
et sic sunt causa impediendi numerum salvandorum,
et numerum damnandorum.

Tertia Conclusio.—Si vir et mulier in una voluntate
nubendi convenerint, illa voluntas est sufficiens conju-
gium, sine majori obedientia facienda Ecclesiae; et sic
sunt conjuncti plures quam nos cognoscimus.

Quarta Conclusio.—Quod Ecclesia nihil est alius
quam synagoga Sathanæ; et ideo nolunt adire illam
ad honorandum Dominum, neque recipiendum aliquod

1 This word is partly erased, and consequently doubtful.

2 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1402. Sacramentum ibidem, et præcipue Sacramentum Altaris; quia, ut asserunt, illud non est nisi buccella panis mortui, et turris, sive pinnaculum, Antichristi.

Quinta Conclusio.—Si haberent puerum modo natum, non efficeretur Christianus per manus presbyterorum apud Ecclesiam; quia puer iste [est] secunda Trinitas, non contaminata peccato, et pejor est, si deveniat in manus eorundem.

^ Sexta Conclusio.—Quod non habemus aliquem diem sanctificatum vel sanctum, sed nec Dominicum diem, aut alium; sed quilibet dies est ejusdem libertatis ad operandum, comedendum, et bibendum, quod Deus donaverit.

Septima Conclusio. — Quod non est Purgatorium post hanc vitam; neque quod oportet agere majorem pœnitentiam pro ullo peccato, quanquam vilissimo; sed tantum, ut illud deserant, et apud se peniteant; quia, ut dicunt, in fide stat quicquid est, sicut Christus dixit Mariae Magdalenae.4

Elienses, per hoc tempus, pares esse cupientes Norwicensibus, qui in festo Trinitatis, et Buriensibus, qui in festo Sancti Edmundi, indulgentias obtinuerant a Sede Apostolica, impetraverunt peregre advenientibus, et in aliqua parte benefaciuntibus ecclesiae sue, in festo Pentecostes, a postremis Vesperis ipsius diei usque ad posteriores Vesperas feriae quartæ in hebdomada Pentecostes, vere contritis et confessis, plenam remissionem omnium peccatorum. Consimiles indulgentias perante impetraverant monachi Cartusienses Londoniis, in festo Annunciationis Beatae Virginis; et quidam religiosi, juxta villam de Hitche commorantes, in festo prænotato.

1 Omitted in orig.
2 Sex in orig.
3 ne in orig.
4 “Fides tua te salvam fecit” is added in the text of Walsingham (Luke, vii. 50).
5 Pentecostes in orig.
Edmundus de Mortuo Mari, juvenis, quem diximus A.D. 1402. ante captum ab Oweno Glendor, vel tædio diræ captivitatis, vel metu mortis, vel ex aliqua nescitur causa, conversus retrorsum, cum Howeno contra Regem Angliæ se sentire professus est; dum nuptias satis humiles, et suæ generositati impares, contrahit cum filia dicti Howeni. Et hujus, ut fertur, nativitatis exordia dira comitata sunt prodigia; cum nocte qua in lucem effusus est, in hippodromo patris sui, omnes equi patris ejus reperti sunt in alto cruore stetisse, usque ad pedum et 1 juncturarum demersionem; quod tunc plurimi sinistrorum interpretati sunt.

Eo tempore, Dominus Reginaldus de Grey, 2 peracta solutione decem millium marcarum pro sua redemptione, et exinde solutis pre manibus sex millibus Howeno Glendor, de captivitate solutus est. Parliamentum factum est Londoniis in crastino Sancti Michaelis; in quo, post commendationem filiorum Regis, communes oraverunt Regem, ut haberet commendatam personam Georgii de Dunbarre, Comitis Marchiae Scotiæ, qui se monstraverat Regi regnoque fidelem in multis argumentis.

Inter cetera Parliamenti Statuta, provisum fuit, ne Fratres Mendicantes quicquam recipierent ad Ordines eorum, donec quartum-decimum ætatis annum plenarie complevisset; et ne filii pauperum de caetero ficerent apprenticii, sed 3 economiae vacarent operibus, nisi parentes eorum posse expendere quadraginta 4 solidos annuatim, aut eorum catalla valerent quadraginta libras. Item, quia plures confugerent ad loca privilegiata, ut ad Sanctum Martinum le Graunt, propter debita, quorum quidam satis ad solvendum de suis habeant facultatibus, et solvere noluerint, provisum

1 This is apparently the word, but it is indistinctly written, upon an erasure.
2 pacta is probably the word intended.
3 yeconomie in orig.
4 solido in orig.
A.D. 1402. est, ut personae quidem talium 1 gauderentur loci privilegiis, sed bona eorum per visum civium appreciarentur, et creditoribus solverentur debita, quamdiu sufficerent ipsa bona. Concessa fuit per clerum decima et dimidia, et per burgenses, et quintadecima per communes 2 consuetudinibus lanarum per terminum, capiendo de sacco quinquaginta solidos a propriis mercatoribus, et sexaginta solidos ab externis.

Circa festum Sancti Martini Apostoli, missi sunt nuncii solemnes in Britanniam Armoricam, qui deducerent Ducissam Britanniae ad connubia Regis Angliæ.

A.D. 1403. Anno gratiæ millesimo quadrimgentesimo tertio, et regni Regis Henrici, a Conquœstu Quartì, quarto, tenuit idem Rex Natale apud Wyndeshore.

Post festum Purificationis, nuncii qui destinati fuerant ad deducendum Reginam de Britannia in hanc terram, suspites revererunt, licet infortunia multotiens perpessi fuissent. Occurrît ergo Rex Reginæ futuræ apud Wyntoniam, et tota pene regni nobilitas procerum et dominarum: ubi celebrata sunt septimo die Februarii solemnia nuptiarum; quæ cito post, Londoniis, id est, vicesima sexta die mensis, secuta est celebritas Coronationis apud Westmonasterium, satis honorifica et festiva. Sicque migravit hera præfata de Minorit Britannia ad Majorem, de ducatu ad regnum, de gente feroci ad populum pacificum et quietum; et, utinam, fausto pede.

In diebus illis, egressa est a Sede Apostolica inpreconcepta novitas, facula scintillans occasiones murmurationis et scandalì, per totum pene regnum Angliæ, contra Sanctam Sedem, dum quisque qui, per graves labores et sumptus modicos a dicta Sede gratias, beneficia, vel indulgentias, impetraverat tempore Papæ presentis, vel in diebus prædecessoris sui, doluit se repente

1 Sic in orig.; for gauderent.  
2 Hiatus in orig.
perdidisse operam et impensam, cernens inopinate quic- A.D. 1403.
quad impetraverat cassatum et penitus adnullatum. 
Unde, de Romana levitate, quam vocant ipsi qui 
gravati sunt mutabilitatem vel inconstantiam, fiebant 
obloquia pleno ore, et dissuasiones, ne qui illic ime- 
traret quicquam de cætero, ubi nulla fuerat certitudo; 
— sed quotiens Dominus Papa consulere vellet suo mar- 
supio proprio, non dubitaret, nec vereretur, contravniere 
verbo vel scripto. Sic susurrabant in privato vel pub- 
lico, et sic injungebant adversus [Dominum], et ad- 
versus Christum ejus. Nos autem, quia putamus nihil 
inordinatum, nihil inconsultum, ab ipsa Sede posse 
procedere, committimus pertractandam dictam mate- 
riam, ad alia festinantes. Sed prius Bullæ ponemus 
Articulos revocatoriae, ne causa lateat posteros tantæ 
commotionis:— 

"Bonifacius, servus servorum Dei, ad perpetuam rei 
memoriam.—Intenta salutis operibus, Apostolicae Se- 
dis circumspecta benignitas, indultam sibi desuper 
plenitudinem potestatis, et sicut in Deo conspicit ex- 
pedire, providens interdum aliqua per importunam 
potentium instantiam, quaedam autem per surrep- 
tionis malitiam et fraudem, seu quemvis modum illi- 
citum, impetrata, statuit vel indulget ductum in 
ejus notitiam. Hiis deductis, vel utilitate publica 
suadente, ea restituet in melius, pro salubri subdito-
rum regimine, prout ad regimen publicum, et tran-
quillitatem hujusmodi subditorum, per Apostolicae 
provisionis remedium, salubrius noverit convenire. 
Hodie siquidem, videlicet, undecimo Kalendas Janu-
arii, Pontificatus nostri anno quarto-decimo, præ- 
missis ac aliis certis rationabilibus causis animum 
nostrum moventibus ex certa scientia, auctoritate 
Apostolica, præsentium tenore, volumus, statuimus, 

\[1\] Omitted in orig. In allusion to Psalm ii. 2. \[2\] This (so-called) Bull is evidently in an imperfect state.
A.D. 1403, "ordinamus, et mandamus, omnia et singula infra scripta.—

"Inprimis, si deinceps reperiantur aliquae litterae Apostolice, Bulla nostra bullatae, habentes datam post dictam diem, undecimam Kalendas Januarii anni praedicti, gratiam sive justitiam continentes, sub quavis forma, sive expressione verborum conceptorum, quae non fuerint expeditae per Cancellariam nostram, et quae non habeat signa consueta Cancellariae nostrae, tales litterae reputentur et censeantur nullae, et nullius existant roboris vel momenti; nec eis in judicio, vel extra, aliqua fides adhibeatur, etiamsi in eis contineatur clausula—' Non obstante ordinatione, 'regulis quibuscunque, Cancellariae,' vel quacunque alia clausula derogativa, quorumcunque verborum; exceptis duntaxat litteris de Curia nostra Secretis, quae factae fuerint de mandato nostro, etc.

"Item, revocamus, cassamus, et irritamus, generaliter, omnes et singulas gratias expectativas, factas per nos, sub quacunque forma, specialiter vel generaliter, quibuscunque personis, etiam cum clausula Anteferni et Avillationis; necnon indulta et facultates etiam, quibuscunque praelatis concessa, super conferendis beneficiis, in posterum vacaturis, et eorum prerogativis, quae nondum sortitae sunt effectum. Et intelligentur sortitae ipsae effectum, si illi quibus factae fuerint tales gratiae, vigore ipsarum acceptae verint beneficia cadentia sub talibus gratis, et de illis sibi fecerint provideri; etiamsi super eis in quacunque instantia lis penderet indecisa. Non obstante etiam, si in hujusmodi gratiis, seu in earum aliqua, contineretur clausula—' Si continget per nos tales 'gratias, aut aliquam eorumdem, quomodolibet re- 'vocari,' quae hujusmodi in genere vel in specie non

\[1] eorum in orig. \hspace{1cm} \[2] eorumdem in orig. \hspace{1cm} \[3] revocare in orig.
 Item, volumus et ordinamus, quod omnes illi qui hactenus impetraverant a nobis gratias quascunque, teneantur a data præsentium, infra unum annum, facere confici super eisdem gratiis litteras, et expedire eas usque ad registrum inclusive. Alioquin, lapso anno dictæ gratiæ, expirent et habeantur pro non factis, et extunc litteræ super eis non expedientur.

 Item, volumus et ordinamus, quod illi deinceps [qui] quascunque gratias a nobis impetrabunt, infra unum annum, a data gratiarum ipsarum computandum, teneant super eis facere confici litteras Apostolicas usque ad registrum, ut supra; alioquin, gratiæ ipsæ, ipso facto, expirent, et, lapso dicto anno, nullatenus litteræ expedientur super ipsis.

 Item, cassamus, irritamus, et annullamus, omnes uniones ecclesiarum parochialium, monasteriorum, et monialium, ac dignitatum, personatum, praebendarum, et officiorum, et aliorum beneficiorum ecclesiasticorum, et ipsorum locorum quorumcunque, sive per nos sive per prædecessorem nostrum immediatum, aut etiam, per quosvis ordinarios, factas quibuscunque ecclesiis, monasteriis, vel aliis locis ecclesiasticis, vel mensis episcopalibus aut capitularibus, vel abbatialibus, collegiis, officiis, dignitatibus, aut prebendis, aut quibuscunque aliis locis, aut hospitalaribus, qua nondum sunt sortitæ effectum; alias quam per obitus eorum qui dicta beneficia unita obtinebant, tempore unionum de illis factarum; etsi essent factæ motu proprio, et etiam illis quæ fuerunt, sine magna

---

1 Qy. if not intended for expedientur? 2 These two words are repeated in orig.
A.D. 1403. "necessitate, vel ex falsis vel nullis causis, etiamsi "super his unionibus lis pendeat indecisa, in quacunque "instantia fuerit. Et 1 similiter, cassamus et irri-tamus quaslibet confirmationes per nos factas, de "unionibus per ordinarios factis, etiamsi in litteris "Apostolicis, super dictis unionibus et confirmationi-bus confectis, continetur talis clausula, videlicet,— "Etsi contingat revocari per nos uniones in genere "vel in specie, quod uniones ipsae per casdem litteras "factae, non intelligantur revocatæ, etc.'

Item, quia nonnullis prælatis ecclesiarum regularium, "ac monasteriorum sanctimonialium, ac prioratum, di-citur esse concessum per nos, quod prælati, capita]ula, vel "conventus, ecclesiarum, monasteriorum, ac prioratum, "vel locorum prædictorum, possent parochiales ecclesias "et beneficia curata, seu perpetuas vicarias prædictas, "eis unita, facere regi per monachos suos, etiam removibiles ad nutum ipsorum vel alias qualitercumque, "declaramus et decernimus quod, prætextu talium "concessionum, nulla parochialis ecclesia, aut perpetua "vicaria, parochialis ecclesiae, aut aliud curatum bene-ficium, quæ prius regebantur per seculares canonicos "2 videlicet, in eis instituantur perpetui "vicarii seculares presbyteri. Et si ante non fuerint "assignatae congruae portiones, sicut de jure assigna-nandæ sunt, per locorum ordinarios assignetur; et "deinceps tales ecclesiae parochiales, et curata beneficia, "seu vicariæ perpetuae, consueta per prius per seculares "clericos regi et gubernari, nullatenus per monachos, "vel aliós 3 religiosos, gubernentur, vel regantur, non "obstantibus quibusque concessionibus nostris, vel "indultis, ecclesiis regularibus, 4 monasteriis, vel pri-oratibus, aut locis aliis regularibus prædictis, sub "qua vis forma vel expressione factis, vel concessis; "quæ ex nunc totaliter, revocamus, cassamus, et an-

1 similiter in orig. 2 Hiatus in orig. 3 religiosos in orig. 4 a is inserted here in orig.
nullamus, et nullius esse volumus roboris vel momenti. A.D. 1403.

Ac volumus quod locorum ordinarii possint, et debant etiam, accepta auctoritate Apostolica, compellere ad observandam præmissa, per censuram ecclesiasticam et alia juris remedii, etc. Item, revocamus et annullamus omnes et singulas indulgentias in quibus continetur 'A poena et a culpa', vel Plena Indulgentia omnium peccatorum suorum, et alias quæ concessæ sunt formis indulgentiarum ecclesiariarum Urbis anni Jubilæi, vel Sancti Sepulchri Dominici, Michaelis Archangeli in Monte Gargano, Sancti Jacobi in Compostella et Sancti Marci de Venetiis, Sanctæ Mariae de Angelo, alias in Portiuncula, Sanctæ Mariae de Solomodio, ac omnes alias, quæ sunt ad instar indulgentiarum quibusvis alii ecclesiis concessarum; et volumus, quod nullius roboris existant, vel momenti, etiam si in litteris Apostolicis supradictis indulgentiis confectis continetur clausula talis,—'Et si contingat revocari per nos indulgentias in genere vel in specie; quæ indulgentiae ipsæ per easdem litteras confectæ, non intelligantur revocatæ.'

Item, cum olim fuerint diversis ecclesiis, ac monasteriis, aliis pluribus locis, concessæ diversæ indulgentiæ, cum clausula, quod qui præessent ecclesiis vel monasteriis, aut locis praedictis, possent eligere certos confessores qui audirent confessiones personarum confluentium ad hujusmodi indulgentias, et absolverent illos qui eis confiterentur, et in casibus episcopalibus, et etiam Sedi Apostolicae reservatis; ac quia nonnulli Fratres Mendicantium Ordinum impetraverunt, quinimmo et extorserunt, Apostolicas letteras a nobis, per quas conceditur eis, quod possint, etiam invitis et contradicentibus rectoribus paro-
A.D. 1403. “chialium ecclesiarum, prædicare in ipsorum ecclesiis,
et audire confessiones parochianorum ipsorum, ipsos-
que absolvere etiam in casibus, et plura alia, contra
Decretalem piae memorise Æ Domini Bonifacii, Papæ,
Octavi, prædecessoris nostri, quæ sic incipit,—‘Super
‘Cathedram,’ et in Consilio Vienensi, per felicis re-
cordationis Clementem, Papam, Quintum, prædecesso-
rem nostrum, invocatum, temere facere et attentare
preamunt: et ad notitiam nostram pervenit, ex re-
lacione fidedignorum, quod dicti Fratres et alii, qui
tales potestates se dicunt habere, eis mirabiliter
abutuntur, et exinde plura scandala subsequuntur;
propterœa, tales potestates ac litteras, sub quavis forma
vel expressione verborum concessas, etsi essent factæ
motu proprio, cassamus, irritamus, et annullamus, ac
nullius esse volumus roboris vel momenti.
Item, revocamus, cassamus, et annullamus, omnes
gratias dispensationum factas quibuscumque Fratri-
bus Ordinum Mendicantium, quod possint ob-
tinere beneficia ecclesiastica, cum cura vel sine cura,
consuetæ clericis sæcularibus assignari; si illa con-
ferantur sub quavis expressione verborum, vel forma,
quæ nondum sunt sortitæ effectum; et si aliqui,
vigore talium dispensationum, essent assecuti plura
beneficia ultra, unum duntaxat retineant. Si tamen
existat aliis in manibus, ordinariorum, diversis
titulis dimissis libere, quod si infra mensem a publi-
catione præsentium illa nondum servit, eo ipso
sint dicto uno et aliis privati, et dispensationes
ipsæ omni effectu careant, et reputentur pro non
factis.

1 Domini in orig., the ecclesiastical form.
2 Qy. if not innovatum?
3 abutur in orig.
4 plure in orig.
5 eccastica in orig.

This word is preceded, apparently, by the word “acta,” which seems out of place.

This passage seems imperfect, and the sense hard to be divined.
"Item, volumus et ordinamus, quod illi cum quibus A.D. 1403,
est hactenus dispensatum quod plura beneficia poss-
sint incorporalia, videlicet, dignitates, personatus,
vel curata officia, aut parochiales ecclesias, insimul
retinere, etiam ultra duo vel tria, vigore taliu dispensationum non possint assequi vel retinere ultra duo incorporalia. Et si qui Magistri in Theologia, Doctores Juris Canonici vel Civilis, sive illustres, essent assecuti, illa quae ultra duo sint assecuti, teneant infra sex menses, a data presenti computandos, permutare cum alii beneficiis simplicibus, et alia que ultra duo incorporealibus obtinent, teneant infra dictum terminum libere dimittere verbo et facto in manibus ordinarii; alioquin, si Magistri, Doctores, et illustres ipsi, infra datum terminum illa non permutaverint, et alii predicti ea non dimiserint, ut praefertur, eo quod sint privati omnibus illis corporalibus quae obtinent; exceptis venerabilibus fratribus, Sanctae Romanae Ecclesiae Cardinalibus, Notariis nostris, Correctoribus litterarum Apostolicarum, Subdecano nostro, Auditoribus causarum Palatii Apostolici, Clericis Cameræ Apostolicae, cubiculariis et secretariis, et accolitis nostris, qui sub regula nullatenus includuntur, etc. "Item, revocamus et anullamus omnes exemptiones perpetuas, per nos factas quibuscunque monasteriis vel ecclesiis, aut capitulis vel praëtatis, aut conventibus quorumcunque Ordinum seu religionem, et sæcularium ecclesiæarum, cathedralium vel collegiatarum, universitatis quorumlibet castrorum, villarum, et terrarum; et litteras Apostolicas super ipsis confectas decernimus esse irritas et inanes, nullius roboris vel momenti, etc. "Item, cum multi clerici et personæ ecclesiasticæ, sæculares ac religiosæ, etiam Ordinum Mendicantium,
A.D. 1403. ' hactenus recepti fuerunt in ¹ capellanos nostros honoris, et super hujusmodi receptionibus, et litteris inde confectis, fecerunt fieri processus penes Camerarum nostrum, et propterea asserunt se fore exemptos a jurisdictione suorum superiorum et ordinariaurum, quo multa scandala sepe oriuntur; ac tales capellani putant se minime posse, propter peccata et delicta per ipsos commissa, vel committenda, per suos superiores corrigi vel puniri; volumus et ordinamus, quod tales capellani, prætextu litterarum et processuum prædictorum, nullatenus sint exempti a jurisdictione superiorum et ordinariaurum prædictorum, sed libere per eos possint, ² [et] debeant corrigi et puniri, juxta canonicas sanctiones, non obstantibus litteris et processibus prædictis eis concessis, quorumlibet tenorum existant; Magistris ac Baccalariis formatis in Theologia, ac Doctoribus Juris Canonici, duntaxat exceptis, etc.

' Item, cum olim felicis recordationis Urbanus Papa, Sextus, prædecessor noster, ex certis causis rationabilibus, concessit quibusdam prælatis, quod in eorum civitatibus, vel Diœcesibus, non possit fieri executio aliquarum litterarum Apostolicarum, nisi prius ipsæ litteræ exhiberentur eisdem prælatis, vel eorum officiariis, et per ipsos essent approbatae, ipsique prælati et officiarii in consuetudinem, et aliqii prætexto Statutorum provincialium seu synodalium, similibus servant et faciunt; ad tales litteras nullus audiet exequi, nisi postquam prælati vel officiarii, per suas quas nuncupant 'Vidimus,' mandent et concedant quod dictæ litteræ possent exequi, per judices in eis deputatos; propter litteras 'Vidimus' nuncupatas, sæpius impetrantes ipsi eorumdem litteras nequeunt conseque effectum, propter hujusmodi concessionem

ⁱ Qy. if not "capellanatos nostri" | ² Omitted in orig. "honorem." ³ quibus in orig.
dictis praefatis factam, et litteras Apostolicas super A.D. 1403.

eis confectas. Provide attendentes quod tendunt ad
noxam, praedictam consuetudinem, et Statuta praedicta
quaequaque super hiis, revocamus, cassamus, et annul-

lamus; ac volumus et decernimus, quod judices et
executores quicunque, in litteris Apostolicis deputati
et deputandi, ac notarii et tabelliones super hiis
requisiti et requirendi, absque littera hujusmodi,
Vidimus nuncupata, et absque licentia vel consensu
quorumcunque praefatorum, seu superiorum, aut offi-

cieriorum, libere hujusmodi Apostolicas litteras exequi
possint et debeant; ac omnes et singulas sententias
quae praefati vel superiores, aut eorum officiales, vel
executores praefatorum, propter executiones ipsas
per ipsos faciendas, infligerent seu promulgarent,
decernimus irritas et inanes, nulliusque roboris exis-
tere, vel momenti.

Item, cum dudum, importuna instantia, conces-
simus quampluribus personis litteras familiaritatis
noster, in quibus continetur quod ipsi possint et
debeant gaudere privilegiis quibus gaudent familiares
nostri continui, et domestici commensales; volumus et
declaramus, quod, praetextu talium litterarum, qui-
busve concessarum, sub quaecunque forma vel ex-
pressione verborum, etiamsi essent factae motu pro-
prio, illi qui tales litteras obtinuerunt, nullo modo
gaudecant dictis privilegiis, nisi duntaxat illi qui
revera sunt familiares nostri continui, et domestici
commensales.

Item, cassamus, irritamus, et annullamus, omnes et
singulas concessiones et donationes per nos factas,
sub quaecunque [forma] sive expressione verborum,
quibuscunque laicalibus personis, de quibuscunque
bonis, mobilibus seu stabilibus, quarumcunque eccle-
siarum aut monasteriorum, aut mensarum episcopa-

1 This word, or one similar to it, is omitted in orig.

“Item, cassamus, irritamus, et annulamus, omnes et singulas facultates, hactenus concessas per nos quibusve personis et fratribus Mendicantium Ordinum, et quibuslibet aliis supradictis, ‘Do verbum Crucis,’ sub quacunque forma vel expressione verborum; etiamsi in litteris nostris, eis super hoc concessis, contineretur quod personæ ipsæ possent absolvere personas eis confitentes peccata sua, in quibuscumque casibus, et eis aliquest indulgentias auctoritate Apostolica concedere. Quas quidem concessiones, et litteras nostras, super eis confectas, nullius esse volumus roboris vel momenti. Nulli ergo liceat, etc. Si quis autem, etc. “Data apud Sanctum Petrum, undecimo Kalendas Januarii, anno Pontificatus nostri decimo-quarto.”

Æstate sequente, juxta villas de Bedford et de Biggleswade, frequenter apparuerunt mane et meridie monstra de sylvis emergentia, varios colores habentia, in similitudinem hominum bellatorum, sibimet occurrentia, et inientium bella dura. Qui etsi videri a remotis poterant, ab appropinquantibus inveniri minime potuerunt. Sicque illa phantastica apparitio saepius multos delusit, propterea cupientes.

The Earl of Consequenter, Comes Northumbriæ, cum filio, magnam faciens in Scotiam expeditionem, vastavit patriam, praedas egit, captivos abduxit, nemine resistente. Sed cum redisset, rumores disseminabantur per totam Angliam, quod Scoti praefijissent illi bellum in festo Ad Vincula Sancti Petri, cujus belli fuisset occasio cujusdam castri per eundem obsessio in praefata profectione sua. Quod cum aceriores impetissent, obsessi petierunt, ut ferebatur, inducias ad dictum festum; quo die, si Scoti non da-
rent sibi bellum, redderetur 1 sibi castrum, et rursum, si victor existeret, castrum sibi nihilominus redderetur.

Ad hos rumores, evigilavit tota juventus Angliae, regnique nobilitas, atque Rex ipsae, bello cupiens interesse. Sed Comes denunciavit Regi non opus esse sibi sua præsentia, sed nec expedire ut elongaret a patria; sed tamen adquievit, ut Domini accederent, et Barones. Cumque multi se parassent ad istud negotium, totum repente monstrabatur phantasma fuisse, et frivolum.


A.D. 1403.

1 Repeated in orig.
2 These two words are repeated in orig.
3 Qy. if not "publicos gubernatores"?
The King writes to various persons, in answer to their complaints.

Visis his apicibus, plures laudabant ipsorum insolentias, et extolabant fidem quam praetendebant erga rempublicam. Sed Rex audivit fraudem, et comperit. Turbatus cogitare ccepit quibus viis communitati satisfacere posset, et pessundare commenta conflicta per eos. Scripsit ergo personis quibus novit eos mandasse preamissas litteras,icens se mirari maxime, quod cum Comes Northumbriæ, et filius suus, Henricus, pessissas litteras, dicens se mirari maxime, quod cum

Comes Northumbriæ, et filius suus, Henricus, percipisse partem maximam summarum concessarum pro tutione Marchiae Scotiae, et posset evidenter ostendere, unde concepisset materiam tanta non solum querimonie, sed manifeste detractioe. Scripsit praeterea quod sibi dabatur intelligi quod ipsi Comes Northumbriæ et filius ejus, Henricus, necnon et Comes Wygorniæ, certificarin mutlos litteraliter, quod, scilicet, propter æmulorum pessimas informationes, delationesque sinistras, penes ipsum, quod Rex tantum contra eos motus fuit, quod non auderant accedere ad suam presentiam, donec personæ quibus scripperant, suam fecissent humilem mediationem penes se pro eisdem. Quare supplicabant, ut, coadunatis Praelatis et regni Baronibus, dicti Comes et Henricus venire permetterentur ad Regis presentiam, ad declarandum de talibus sinistris informationibus suam innocenticam, et exinde per pares suos legaliter justificari valerent. Quibus in suis respondit apicibus, quod licet Omnipotentis Dei gratia satis esset atque

1 This is probably the word, *exuendas*, though it more nearly resembles *exuendas*. 
munitus contra sibi cunctos malevolos, tamen noluit A.D. 1403. quod illi nec aliquae personae aliae conceptus haberent quare noluit esse justus et rectus erga dictos Comitem et Henricum, specialiter, cum omnibus suis ligeis, juxta merita; quin libenter paratus esset facere justitiam unicusque, secundum posse. Et idcirco rogavit personas quibus dicti Comes et Henricus scripsissent, ut, consideratos suprascriptis, festinatione qua posset ad eum accedent, ad communicandum effectualiter de praemissis, pro pace regni, commodaque communi. Scip- sitque dicto Comiti et Henrico, sub signo Regis, quod si vellent, salvo possent accedere, salvoque discedere, sine quovis periculo sive fraude.


1 The name of Hotspur is evi- dently individually alluded to in these words.
2 These two words are repeated in orig.
3 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1403.
The Earl of Dunbar instigates the King to immediate action.

Rex Henricus, haec praemissa prudenter attendens, cum esset audax animo et manu promptus, definito consilio, congressavit quos potuit, et ad partes se contulit ubi dicti rebelles, Henricus et Comes, esse nunciabantur, instigante eum quam maxime Comite de Dunbarre, Scotto, qui monuit omnino ne moras 1 uti verteret, memorans id Lucani,—

"Tolle moras, nocuit semper differre paratis;"

"quia pro certo, si Londonis, vel juxta Londonias, expectaveritis, ipsorum in remotis comitia faciet cotidie incrementum; sicutque ut, multis millibus successive in ipsorum proposito conglobatis, te subito circumfundant; et tunc necesse erit tibi condescendere ad quaeunque, non dico supplicare, sed jubere, voluerint."

Cunque Rex causaretur sibi exercitus deesse,—"Copias non curetis," inquit, "sed versus eos profiscamini pedentim; et tunc oculata fide videre poteritis qui vos ex corde diligunt, quive fingunt.

Fecit Rex ut Scotus monuit, et inopinato pervenit ad partes ubi rebelles bacchabantur. Cujus vexillum ut Henricus Percy conspexit, supra modum miratus est, quia putabat eum esse detentum apud villam de Burton super Trentam, ad prestolandum adventum consiliariorum suorum. Et idcirco, quia non suspicabatur quicquam de Regis adventu, securus obsedit villam Solopie, importune exigens introitum a villanis, ut refocillare possent, et suo exercitui victualia providere. Multum tamen contulit Regis adventus Solopiensisibus; quia, viso vexillo Regis, confestim 2 destitit Henricus ab infestatione villanorum, dicens sui;—"Consocii et commilitones mei, ab huius desistere nos oportet inceptis, et arma vertere in eos qui cum Rege contra nos veniunt. Videtis certe signum regium; atque

---

1 This word is doubtful. 2 destit in orig.
Mira res! repente conveniunt in votum unum, quicum Henrico fuerunt, ad numerum quatuordecim millium lectorissimorum hominum, qui secum perstituturos fore promittunt; elegeruntque campum, prout videbatur, eis magis accommodum; sic quod oportebat Regis exercitu, si conserere manus vellet, accedere super aream satam pisas multis, quas pisas etiam ita nexuerant et tricaverant, ut impedimento forent accedentibus praetensi laquei earundem. Cumque cognovisset Henricus se absque dubio pugnaturum, et defuisset sibi gladius quem dilexit, quuesivit ubinam gladius ille foret; responsum fuit sibi quod in illa parva villa retro se, vulgariter "Berwicus" nuncupata. Ad quod vocabulum, ita palluit ut mirarentur astantes; ducensque ab alto suspirium, servo inquit: "Cerno quod modo meum aratum ad sulcum pertingit ultimum; nam et accepi per fatidicum, dum adhuc in propriis partibus essem, apud Berwicum me procul dubio moriturum. Sed deceptit me, proh dolor! nominis hujus æquivocum." Proinde suos sagaciter disponit ad bellum, promittens ipsos eo die finem malorum consecuturos, si superstiterint, et expost divites et gloriosos futuros de tanti fama facti, et in perpetuum nominatos.

Secuti sunt eum nobiles ad hunc locum atque proposutation; patruus ejus, Comes Wygorniae, Dominus Thomas Percy, de quo nunquam perante surreperat ualla suspicio in tota vita perfidiae; et inter Anglos, qui de levitate praecipe notantur apud exterios, iste solus de fidelitate laudem promeruit, ita ut Reges Franciae et Hispaniae ejus solo verbo, plusquam ullius chirographo,

1 The text of this speech seems imperfect and corrupt, as compared with Walsingham, Vol. II. p. 256.
A.D. 1403. in tractatibus et conventionibus fidem darent. Sequutus est eum Comes Duglas, Scoticus, qui duum captus fuerat in bello de Homeldon Hul, vir per omnia bellicosus, cujus animositas et prudentiae, sive fortitudini, perpauci eo tempore poterant æquiparari. Baro quoque de Kyndertonæ, et Dominus Hugo Brow[n]e, necnon Dominus Ricardus Vernone, Henrici sequentes propositum, affuerunt, cum decem aliis qui pares Baronis exititerunt.

Cernens Rex contra se dispositas acies, et arcitementes prœcipuos collocatos, et ipse suum disponit exercitum, alacritate qua regem decuit; partem committens primogenito suo, Principi, partem retinens propriæ gubernationi. Anterior acies regalis cunei Staffordie commissa fuit Comiti, magnum probitatis, qui fuerat eo die regni Constabularius constitutus. Cumque partis utriusque acies ad invicem prosicerent, et expectaretur signum belli solummodo, Abbas Solopiffe, et clericus de Privato Sigillo, pro parte Regis ad Henricum perreurent, offerentes sibi pacem, ex parte Regis, si vellet eam esse et requirent causas sui gravaminis, et eorum qui cum eo fuerant; quas pro parte Regis promittebant corrigi, si vellet eas in commune referri. Si vero tacite denunciare eas Regi decerneret, orabant ut mittet ex suis in quo confidebat, qui, Deo volente, sibi nova gratissima reportaret.

Henricus, horum persuasionibus aliqualiter emolliatus, mittit ad Regem patrium suum, Dominum Thomam Percy, qui sibi tantæ turbationis causas exprimeret, et emendas exigeret, cum effectu. Ferunt aliqui quod cum Rex omni rationi condescendisset, idem Dominus Thomas, cum redisset ad nepotem, pervertit negotium, contraria referens responsis regis, et exacer-
bans mentem juvenis, et ad bellum impellens etiam A.D. 1403. 
proeliiari nolentem: et cum talibus legationibus multum 
diei pertransisset spatium, nunciatum fuit Regi rebelles 
suos ad nil alius proteclare negotium, nisi ut, conflu-
entibus illis auxiliariis ab instanti usque in diem 
Lunæ proximum, possent effici fortiores. Erat autem 
Sabbatum, quando præmissa tractabantur. Comes autem 
de Dunbar omnino restitit ne darentur eis induciae, sed 
Regem monuit, ut ex quo rationi recusaret adqui-
escere, dare signum bello. Sed non erat opus signo 
bellare cupientibus.

Ex adversa parte, mox ut legati pervenerunt ad 
castra propria, sagittarii Henrici, quibus meliores non 
poterant inveniri in Comitatu Cestriae, fortiter sagittare 
ceperunt; quorum jaculis multi de parte Regis illico 
correrunt. Facta fuit tanta strages subito, ut ad 
quatuor millia de Regis exercitu fugerent, aestimantes 
Regem proculdubio sagittatum. Ipse vero campi-
ductor 
partis adverse, Comes quoque Duglas, quibus animo-
iores nullus unquam reperisset, spretis jaculis emissis 
de parte Regis, spretis armatorum consortis cuneis, ver-
sus unam personam, vires excitantes, arma vertunt; 
Regem nempe, pro decem millibus computantes, stratis 
requirunt obviis, et lanceis infestis et gladiis persecu-
tantur. Comes de Dunbarre, cum percepisset istorum 
propositum, Regem subtraxit a statione sua prima, ne 
asequentibus animam suam reperiretur in loco ubi 
primo steterunt pedes ejus. Quæ loci permutatio mul-
tum Regi contulit ea vice; quia et ejus scutifer a 
furentibus est prostratus, vexillumque dejectum et di-
laceratum, et qui circa illud constiterant, sunt occisi. 
Inter quos illustrissimus juvenis, Comes Staffordiae, et 
miles regius, Walterus Blond, vita privantur.

Interea ceciderunt ex utraque parte plurimi, a sagitta 
volante indifferenter perforati, quæ ad instar grandi-
nis hinc inde mittebantur. Ibi Princeps, pertentans 

\[1\] Sic in orig.
A.D. 1403.

wounded in the face.

proelendi primitias, ictu sagittae in facie vulneratus; cujus tamen vultus, licet puer esset, non concidit, sed, super vetus exigitam, et vulner parvipendit inflictum, et ad vindictam animavit exercitum. Unde contingit quod, acie sibi commissa prius perveniens ad hostilem cuneum, penetraret aciem contrapositam, et pertransit, prostratis obstantibus; sic quod hostes inter Principis clauderent copias et cohortes regias. Factoque proinde fuit adversariis magna dubies, dum nescirent vel contra regios vel proprios socios dimicarent.

In hac confusione partis adversae, Dux Henricus Percy corruit interemptum, dubium cujus manu; suis ignoti etus casum, sed putantibus eum vel comprehensisse Regem, vel procul dubio periisse. Quamobrem, se cohortantes, clamabant ingeminantes—"Henry Percy "Kynge,"—quod sonat "Henricus Percy Rex." Quorum clamores Rex intelligenf, ne vana seducti certarent uterius, affectans eorum cedì parcere, clamavit voce qua potuit,—"Mortuus est Henricus Percy." Qua voce prolata, coeperunt, qui ferventius proeliabantur, se subtrahere, et jam solummodo in fugae subsidio sper habere. Tunc animo crescente regalibus, perempta fuit major pars militum et scutiferorum Comitatùs Cestrîæ, ad numerum, ut fertur, ducentum. Ceciderunt insuper ibi de peditibus, valettis, et domicellis, plurimi, quorum numerum non tenemus, ibique captus est Comes Dougles; cujus animositatem et constantiam si reliqui rebelles imitati fuisse, non dubium quin plaga insanabilis facta fuisse ipsos die in populo Anglicano. Iste bis hoc anno pugnans adversus Anglicos fortunam sensit adversam; nam in primo bello trajectus caput, amisit oculum, et captus fuit; in secundo, verenda transfixus, perdidit paulo minus loculum, et sub jugum venit captivitatis secundae. Captus est etiam Comes Wygornæ, Thomas Percy, in-

---

1 claudentur in orig.
2 Repeated in orig.
3 pralibantur in orig.
centor, ut dicitur, totius mali, et causa præsentis im-
fortunii. Dominus quoque Ricardus Vernone captus
est ibidem, necnon et Baro Kyndertone, viri utique
nobiles et potentes. De parte Regis, ut praefertur, per-
empti sunt Comes Staffordiae, Dominus Hugo Schirle,
Dominus Johannes Clifstone, Dominus Johannes Ko-
kayn, Dominus Nicholaus Ganvile, Dominus Walterus
Blount, Dominus Johannes Calverle, Dominus Joha-
nes Massy de Podyngone, Dominus Hugo Mortimer,
et Dominus B. Gousile, qui eo die susceperat ordinem
militarem. Hic non fuit occasus in bello, sed 1 prodi-
tione propria famuli sui, dum, latus 2 vulneratus, se
subduxisset e proelio. Nempe cum sub sepe jaceret,
et velut extremum 3 [traheret] halitum, supervenit
quidam de sua familia, quem familiarius diligebat.
Hic in principio belli fugerat, sed, jam finito bello,
redierat, ut vispilio, ad spoliandum, prout moris est
talium, interfectos. Cumque solus, casu superne, 4 ivis-
set ad locum ubi decumbebat ejus dominus, agnovit
eum per armorum signa. A quo etiam cum fuisse
et ipse cognitus, requisivit a domino qualiter se
haberet. Cui ille, prout loqui valebat, respondit se
vivere, sed pressus ait, — "Armis pene suffocatus sum;
" quapropter, detrahe mihi chirothecas et arma, si
" forte reviviscat anima mea." Detractis igitur chiro-
thecis, commendavit sibi annulum sua conjugi defe-
rendum, et intimavit ei quod sexaginta marcas habebat
in loculo, quas jussit eum servare pro propria refocil-
lacione, si viveret; si vero moreretur, acciperet ad
usus proprios dictam summam. Sed quid faceret do-
losus proditor, qui dominum deseruerat? Meticulosus
in bello, nudatum percitum pectus transfodit in campo,
palpitantque cultro tam diu tentat immerso, donec
eum omnino mortuam cognovisset. Quo facto, monilia
vel jocalia, annulos, etc., suæ nobilitatis indicia, simul

1 Dedicat in orig. 2 et is inserted here in orig. 3 Given as rexaret in orig. 4 iusset in orig.

De valettis occisis ex parte Regis reticemus numerum, sed de vulneratis scutiferis et valettis, summa viro- rum fuit trium milliom, quorum postea periit magna pars languedo. Commissum fuit hoc bellum Sabbato, in Vigilia, scilicet, Mariae Magdalenæ, diu post meridiem; quo nunquam, ut fatebantur qui affuerunt, asperius gerebatur; nam fuerunt de utraque parte plurimi, qui tanta certaverunt 2 tenacitate, quod nocte superveniente nesciebant cui victoria remanebat; jacueruntque fessi, vulnerati, verberati sanguinolenti, passim mixti.

The body of Henry Percy is exposed to public view.

The murderer is detected, and punished.

Numbers of the slain.

Fierceness of the combat.

The body of Henry Percy is exposed to public view.

Sorrow of the Earl of Worcester.

He is beheaded, and others

---

1 abscedit in orig.
2 inesitatem in orig.; possibly, animositate is the word meant.
3 Repeated in orig.
4 “concedere,” or “dare,” seems to be wanting after this word.
isset; tantum exacerbaverat animos amicorum Regis. A.D. 1403. Decapitati fuerunt eadem die Baro de Kyndertone et Dominus Ricardus de Vernona.

Die Lunæ sequente, Comes Northumbriae, cum manu valida, versus filium suum properans, aut certe versus Regem, ut putatur, pro pacis promovendo negotio, cognovit Comitem Westmerloniae et Robertum Watertonem grandem contraxisse exercitum, qui foret ei obstaculo, si progredi decrevisset. Ipse vero neutrum horum sibi credens benevolum, fraæna reflexit revertendo, donec pervenit ad Novum Castrum super Tynam. Cives sequentem cernentes exercitum, contra illum clausurunt januas; quod videntes qui cum illo venerat, max intravit eos propter impetus, et villam intrare, etiam civibus nolentibus, decrevisserant. Qui tamen probitate civium sunt repulsi. Tandem Comes, moderator cæteris, ingressum precbatur, ut requiescere posset ibidem nocte illa. Cives autem responderunt, si placeret sibi cum privata familia suæ domus ingredi, bene liceret, sed cum exercitu nullo sensu. Comes, acceptans conditionem, requievit in villa, dormiens ea nocte, et in crastino prandens, cum paucis; sed exclusus inquietus exercitus, nescitur an ardore vindictæ, an suspicione proditionis domini sui, Comitis, aduros applicant, et hostili more villam invadere laborabant. Sed nil profecit ipsorum molitio; quia repulsi dejecti sunt arcubus, et acriter verberati. Comes vero, prout potuit, satisfecit, excusando sé civibus et recessit; dimisitque exercitum, quia jam noverat filium suum mortuum; et secessit cum cotidiana familia ad Werkworthe, proprium castrum suum.

---

1 This word is almost illegible, and the whole passage is mutilated, and quite unintelligible; being the writing, probably, of an illiterate scribe. All reference to it is omitted in Walsingham's text.

2 responderent in orig.

3 responderent in orig.

4 Omitted in orig.

5 proditione in orig.

6 ve in orig.

7 Repeated in orig.

8 no in orig.
A.D. 1403.

Circa presens tempus, regressi sunt de Francia solemnnes nuncii, qui illie directi fuerant pro treugis inter nostrates et Gallicos; Episcopus, seilicet, Bathoniensis, et Dominus de Say, W. de Clifford, Senescallus regius, et Dominus Thomas Ramestone. Hii reportaverunt belli vacationem usque ad mensis Martii diem primam. Exceptae sunt tamen de hiis inducis duas personae Franciae, Dux Aurelianorum et Comes Sancti Pauli, pro quibus Gallici spondere noluerunt, quia indomabiles extiterunt; siquidem magni videbatur, in tanta rerum turbatione, vel modicam guttam pacis 'hausisse, nostris regniciis; et idcirco de personarum exceptione minime causabantur, putantes illas nil posse personaliter, si non totius Galliae concurrisset assensus.

Compositis rebus apud Solopiam, Rex lora vertit ad Eboracum, ut Comitem Northumbriae persequeretur, si nollet pacifice se submittere, manu militari dimissa. Qui, ut libentius sibi occurreret, litteras direxit eodem, cum omni conceptas modestia; in quibus sibi reprobavit indemnitatem. Venit ergo ad eum Comes, cum parva familia, in crastino Sancti Laurentii; sed nec cum vultu susceptus est hilari, nec familiaritate quae solebat, sed potius more supplicis, gratiam requiritis. Cui post paucat verba Rex vitam promisit, et victum satis honorificum, quoad viveret. Non tamen libertati restitutus est; sed sub tutoribus usque ad tempus fuit.

Quidam per id temporis heremita, qui multa futura prædixerat Regi Ricardo, dum Regi moderno prophetare nititur, et minus prudenter invehitur contra ipsum, convictus dixisse mendacium, decollatus est apud Eboracum; cujus carnem ciliicium mordax abrazerat, cujus pedes nulla pellis operuerat per annos

---

1 hausis in orig.
2 exceptione in orig.
3 assessus in orig.
4 At this word (p. 120 of the Volume) the context is continued in a different, but probably contemporary, hand, in Lombardic characters.
5 heirimita in orig.
multos, nisi fortassì cum Missas celebraret, quamquam Romam pergeret et rediret; cujus os a diu carnes omnino non gustaverat: et tamen morte moritur pro
ditoris.

Reversus Rex de partibus Aquilonis, versus Walliam
ter vertit, ad comprimendas insolentias Howeni Gleyndor, qui multa damna patrioticis intulerat, post recessum Regis. Et quia pecunia jam destitutas fuerat, nec ha
eret in promptu unde copias auxiliares conducet,
expetit et expectavit ab ecclesiasticis sibi subsidium
provideri; ut qui in pace domi quieverant, dum ille sudavit hostes et rebelles edomare, non sine corporali periculo, sibi pro tot laboribus et expensis subvenirent
de censu necessario. Cumque perhendinaret Wigorniae,
venit ad eum Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, cum non
nullis suffraganois et coepiscopis, qui intimaverunt sibi clerum sic apporriatum, quod grave fuit ulterior quie
quam solvere, quippe cum pene cuncti sic exhausti fuerint, ut vix habeant necessaria sustentationi propriae.

Affuerunt ibi milites et scutiferi, magis Dionae quam 
Martis, Lavernæ quam Palladis; qui censuerunt Epi
scopos omnes, existentes ibidem, equis et auro spoliandos, domunque pedites remittendos, ut familiarium Regis
inopia ipsorum copia levaretur. Hiis Archipresul animo
mose respondit, illos non impune quemquam de suis
despoliaturas; sed prìus quam de substantia sua diri
perent aliquid, duris ictibus induratus. Rex, inter
hæc se gerens moderatus, venerabatur quodammodo benevolentiam Episcoporum. At Archiepiscopus, a
Rege petita redeundi licentia, promisit se palpatum ecclesiasticos, et elaboraturum, ut Regi in presenti
necessitate succurrant. Qui cum redisset ad partes, convocavit clerum in ecclesia sancti Pauli Londonies, declarans Regis indigentiam, qui, in arto positus, unde
promoveret contra hostes exercitum non habebat. Quem
opertebat reverti cum dedecore et cachinno rebellium,

A.D. 1493. The King
is pre
vented by
want of
means
from pro
ceeding
against the
Welsh.

Propos

tion to
despòl the
Bishops
of their
horses and
money.

The Arch
bishop of
Canterbury
exhorts the
clergy to
make a
grant to
the King.

1 induratus in orig.
A.D. 1403. nisi citius subveniretur eidem.— "Quapropter," inquit, "ut bonus nobis sit dominus, et defensor Ecclesiae, postposita, nos oportet, excusatione, juxta posse Regem nostrum in hac parte, sub omni festinatione, juvare. Constat nempe pontifices," ait, "me et caeteros confratres meos, abbreviare posse familiam, grandes expensas ad tempus subtrahere, donec serenior nobis arriserit aura pacis. Abbates vero, et "Piores, quorum omus est certum sustentare numerum monachorum, et hospitalitatem suis in locis exhibere continuum, non possunt abbreviare familiam, neque subtrahere famulantium Deo quod debetur eisdem; et idecirco de qualibet exigendum puto non amplius quam quisquis, salvo gradu proprio, rationabiliter poterit supportare." Cujus peroratio tantum valuit eo die, ut libenter concederetur Regi medietas unius decimae, ad festum persolvenda. Sed quia necessitas urgebant Regem, quod oportuit sine dilatatione sibi prospici, requisitum fuit, quantum quaque vellet in presenti mutuare sibi, termino praefixa solutionis mutuum recepturus. Archiepiscopus, ut preberet exemplum caeteris, concessit accommodare Regi centum libras; Abbas Sancti Albani centum marcas. Sed quid haec in tanta necessitate de tanta summa Regi concessa? Etenim vero de totius ipsius cleri collegio vix ad pressens quingentae librae poterant extorqueri mutuo; tam constans fuit communis oppressio allegatio. Et idecirco necesse fuit Regi de mercatoribus mutuari aequivalentem summam, usque ad terminum quo dimidia decima solveretur.²

¹ Hiatus in orig.
² At the foot of this page (120) the following lines are written, in large modern Gothic characters, in a contemporary hand:—

"Christe, Dei splendor, tibi suppleo, destrue Gleendor."

"Iste versus fuit scriptus in fine chori Monachorum Sancti Albani."

The latter part of the second column is left in blank, and in page 121 the former style of writing is resumed. See p. 372, Note 4.
Britones Armorici, sociatis sibi Gallicis, cum magna A.D. 1403.
classe, prope tempus istud, venerunt ad villam de
Plummouth, et, nocte irruptentem, villanos male cau-
tos invadunt et opprimunt, et villam comburunt et
praedantur nocte tota, usque ad horam tertiam sequen-
tis diei, nemine succurrente. Contigit istud malum
propter villanorum nequitiam atque superbiam, qui,
propriis fidentes viribus, proximorum suffragia refuta-
runt. Nam cum visum fisset adstasse, ut apparebat,
hostile navigium, patriotes concurrerunt ad villam, eam
defendere cupientes. Sed Plummouthenses, velut in-
dignati de caritate gratis oblata, mox duplicaverunt
in villa victualium cumotorum pretia. Querentibus
patriotes cur sic facerent, responderunt se non opus
habere ipsorum solatio, qui satis fuere in ipsorum
1 modulo. Accepto procaci response, qui conveni
recesserunt; etiam si staret necessitas, minime rever-
suri. Eventit igitur, ut hostes impune villam spoliaren,
et quaecunque vellent ad naves otiose deferrent.

Ductor classis hujus fuit Dominus de Castellis, Brito, vir supra modum superbus et arrogans, sed manu
promptus; qui, cum spoliis multus reversus ad propria,
gloriabatur se multum patriæ contulisse. Cui quidam
ex antiquis dominis illius terræ dixit;—"Et in quo
loco," inquit, "regni Anglie tantam exercuistis pro-
bitate?" "Apud Plummouth," inquit, "villam
"populosam, mercibus abundantem, divitiis opulentam."
—"Caveatis de cauda," respondit vetulus, "quia non
"impune tolerabunt Anglici tot sibimet illata damna."

Evenitque ut prophetaverat herus Armoricus, ut lu-
geret Britannia quod Anglia perdidisset; nam quidam
Willelmus de Wilford, associatis Dortemouthensibus,
Bristoliensisbus, et Plummouthensisbus, navigavit in
Britanniam, et coram Castro de Brest cepit sex naves;
et in erastino adventus sui socii cepere quatuor vasa

\[1 \text{modulo in orig.}\]

\[\text{The Bretons burn Plymouth.} \]

Circa festum Omnium Sanctorum fecit Rex citari qui de jure, vel consuetudine, tenebantur adesse Parliamento, ut convenirent apud Coventreiam, ad festum Sancti Andreas, pro tractandis ibidem negotiis hujus regni. Sed tamen, quia multis grave videbatur eo

---

1 This passage appears to be incomplete. The difficulty is unnoticeable in Walsingham's text (II. p. 260).
2 requiret in orig.
3 nostratus in orig.
4 These two words are repeated in orig.
tempore, quod procellosum fuit, et ad locum qui vic-
tualibus et hospitio caruit, commigrare, Rex, mutato
proposito, differri jussit Parliamentum usque post dies
Natalitios, Octavas, videlicet, Epiphaniae; de novo
summonens universos, ut Londonias convenirent ad Par-
liamentum praenotatum.

Eo tempore fecit Rex proclamari publice pacem et
perdonationem his qui contra eum fecerant cum Hen-
rico Percy, vel ex quacunque causa foris fecissent alia,
praeter ¹, et praeter illos qui proditioni Calesiae
nuper consenserant. Quos remisit Calesiam, pro suis
sceleribus justissime puniendos.

Sub his diebus, quidam peregrini Anglici in trans-
marinis partibus, in vastis deviantes solitudinibus;
nocte ruente, coacti sunt sub divo pernoctare; sed
quia noverunt illam heremiam abundare malis bestiis,
non arbitrabantur tumutum solo recubare. Quapropter
ascenderunt arbores quae frondose fuerant ibidem, se-
cum gladios et lanceas contrahentes. Cum ecce prima
noctis vigilia confluxerunt illuc lupi, cum ursis pluri-
mes, qui nitebantur arbores illas ascendere, allecti nimi-
rum spe delectabilioris prædæ. Sed repulerunt ursos
viriliter, pro vita certantes contra bestias nocte tota.
Mane sauciatae bestiae, recedentes, dedere peregiinis co-
piam discedendi. Qui longo pergentes itinere, tandem
venerunt ad tugurium cujusdam solitarii, aquis et palo
satis munitum; ubi clamantes foris diutius, precaban-
tur ingressum. Quibus apparuit vir grandus, et in-
troduxit in casale suum. Quos cum vidisset destitutos
viribus a labore nocturno, precedentique vigilia, refe-
cit pane, caseo, atque vino, satis sedule ac caritative.
Et cum cognovisset eos esse Anglicos et peregrinos,
monuit eos regratari Domino pro sua salvatione, et
non solum quia preservavit eos a bestis, sed quia
eripuisset eos ab infestis hostibus in terra propria, et

¹ Hiatus in orig.  | ² Apparently heremum, in orig.
A.D. 1403. gladio devorante:—“Nam,” inquiens, “in visione Dei, " vidi, et ecce! angelus, vindicem exsertum tenens gla- " dium ulationis, super terram vestram apparuit; non " destitus vindictam sumere, donec peccatores de " terra conterat, et scelestos. Vos interim proficisca- " mini peregre, donec cognoveritis pacem redditam " terre vestrae. Quia non in perpetuum irascetur Deus, " neque comminabitur; sed cum iratus fuerit, miseri- " cordiae recordabitur.” Illi vero, dimissi ab heremita, " profecti sunt peregre, reddituri vota sua, destinantes " litteras per patriotas obvios amicis suis in patria, de " omnibus quae acciderant eis in hae via. Nec multo " post secutum fuit bellum de Solapia, et turbario gran- " dis in patria, ut praefertur. 

Paucis diebus ante Natale Domini, Gallici, stipati " 1 bellorum turba, ascenderunt terram in Vecta insula, " jactantes se celebratos Dominica Natalia in hac terra, " etiam invito Rege. Cumque mille subintrassent, et " jam greges et armenta fugassent, ut ad mare reverte- " rent cum parva praeda, superveniente subito auxiliariorum copia, coacti sunt praedas dimittere, et ad navigia " festinare, non sine dedecore damnoque suorum. Nam " qui prius instanter ab incolis petierant rerum redemp- " tionem, vix evadere poterant publicam interventionem.

A.D. 1404. Anno gratiae millesimo quadringentesimo quarto, et " Henrici Regis, a Conquestu Quarti quinto, tenuit Rex " Christmas, cum nova Regina, apud Monasterium de Abing- " dona.

Post Octavas Epiphaniæ, fuit inchoatum Parliamentum " Londiniis, in quo plura locuta sunt, pauca fuere " statuta pro communi commodo, licet per duodecim heb- " domadas perdurasset. In hoc Parliamento, Comes Northumbræ 2 restitus est dignitati pristinae, et omnibus " bonis suis, mobilibus et immobiliis; ut eisdem gau- " deat in perpetuum, et hæredes sui. Et tamen quæ

---

1 bellorum in orig.  
2 restitus in orig.
Rex sibi donaverat, scilicet, regnum Euboniae, etc., Rex A.D. 1404. 
recepit, concedens sibi, ut praefertur, quae sua de jure 
haereditario perante fuerant. 

Item, petitione communi ejecti sunt multi de domo regia, qui putabantur vel superflui vel nocivi, nullum 
tamen crimine praetenso palam, vel publicato. Item, 
concessum fuit ut omnes alienigenae vacuarent regnum, 
praeter homines de Ducatu, et certas personas quae 
cum Regina manerent. Item, fuit ordinatum ne Lumbardi 
tenerent hospitia propria, sed hospitarentur cum 
Anglicis, sicut Angli compelluntur in eorum regionibus 
cum Lumbardis hospitari.

In hoc Parliamento, quia sic oportuit, communitas 
laicalis, habita consideratione laborum Regis, et sollicitudinis 
ac expensarum factarum, et faciendarum, 
in guerris contra Scotos et rebelles Wallicos, et salva 
custodia maris et Marchiae, et Calesiae, Acquitaniae, et 
Hiberniae, necnon defensione regni, novam concessit, et 
exquisitam, taxam, quae, videlicet, aequaliter vel superaret 
unam quintam-decimam, persolvi Regis usibus consue-

Quae tamen levaretur, non expendenda Regis 
 arbitrio, sed certorum thesaurariorum prudenti consilio, 
qui "Guerrarum Thesaurarii" vocarentur. Hii, de com-
muni voluntate dominorum et communium, sunt electi 
ad recipiendum pecuniam sic levandam; — Johannes 
Owdeby clericus, Johannes Hadley, Thomas Knolles, et 
Ricardus Merlawe, Londoniarum cives. Forma vero præ-
sentis concessionis erat, quod Rex perciperet de quo-
libet feodo militari viginti solidos, quod tenebatur de 
eo, sine medio vel cum medio; et de medietate feodi 
militaris ejusdem tenuræ, perciperet medietatem ad de-
cem solidos. Qui vero terras haberent, aut tenementa, 
vel redditus, valentia per annum, supra reprisam, viginti 
solidos,solverent duodecim denarios, tam de illis quae 
data fuerunt in perpetuam eleemosynam, ab anno septimo 

1 arbrio in orig. 2 pectuniam in orig. 3 et decem, in orig.
A.D. 1404. Regis Edwardi, filii Henrici Regis, quam de aliis quae pertinent ad laicalem possessionem. Qui terras, etc. habuerint ad valorem annuum, supra onera, quadraginta solidorum, solverent Regi duos solidos; et sic ex crescendo, qui plus habebant, pro rata solverent portione. Qui terras non habebant, aut tenencia, sed catalla ad valorem viginti librarum, penderent huic subsidio duodecim denarios. Qui possidebant catalla ad valorem quadraginta librarum, solverent duos solidos, et ultra pro rata bonorum, semper de summa viginti librarum duodecim denarios. Et ordinatum est, ut qui terras habent, et pensiones annuas, sine servitio faciendo in officio, concessas per Regis progenitores, vel per Ricardum, Regem ultimum, seu per Regem qui nunc est, sint contributarii dictae taxae. Qui etiam sub forma praenotata habent maritigia vel wardas sibi concessas, et tentas per militare servitium, contribuerent huic taxae. Extendit autem se hae praemissa concessio super terras et tenementa, sive possessiones, Hospitalis Sancti Johannis Jerusalem, et eorum qui terras, etc. habent in Episcopatu Dunelmensi et Comitatu de Hexam, exceptis incendio vastatis et destructis per hostes rebelles in Comitatu Sopoliae et Herefordiae, et terris conjunctis terris Scotiae, vel per adversarios devastatis, vel possessionibus per fluctus submersis marinos, vel per illuviones aquarum. Concessum quaque fuit, ut medietas hujus subsidii solveretur ad festum Pentecostes proximo futurum, et alia medietas ad festum Omnium Sanctorum proximo secuturum. Ordinatumque fuit, de communi omnium voluntate, ut Rex perciperet pro laboribus et expensis duodecim millia librarum de subsidio antedicto, expendendarum pro suae arbitrio voluntatis; de qua summa perciperet septem millia librarum ad festum Omnium Sanctorum.

Ista praemissa concessa sub conditione quod dicta
concessio non trahatur in posterum in exemplum, nec A.D. 1404.

servetur ejus rememoratio in Thesauraria regia, nec in

Scaccario; sed scripture vel recordationes de dicto

subsido comburantur et destruantur, atque cassentur;
et non emittantur brevia contra collectores vel inquisi-
tores hujus negotii de melius inquirendo. Et ultra

summam quae remanebit a festo Annunciationis, de sub-
sidio levando de lanis, coriis, pellibus lanatis, tunnagio,
ponderagio, ultimo concesso Regi pro defensione regni,
provisum est ut recipiatur per manus thesaurariorum prædictorum, non aliter expendenda quam in usus Guerræ Regis; et concessum est, ut si remanserint tria millia librarum, postquam dicti thesaurarii reddiderint compotum de praemissis, ultra onera et ordinationes Parliamentales, quod illa tria millia librarum rema-

neant Domino nostro Regi, ad suum beneplacitum expendenda.

Æstate sequente, iterum irruperunt Gallici in Vectam insulam. Sed mox oppressi sunt qui irruperant, cae-
teris in navibus expectantibus, donec redissent qui pre-
missi fuerant ad explorandum statum insulae; sed non redierunt. Miserunt ergo insulani ad hostes, requi-
rentes causas adventus eorum; qui responderunt se venisse in nomine Regis Ricardi et Reginae conjugis, Ysabelleæ, ut tributum exigerent ab eisdem. Quibus insulani renunciaverunt, dicentes, — "Regem Ricardum " defunctum 2 noceimus, et Reginam, quondam suam " conjugem, remissam pacifice ad parentes et patriam, " sine conditio tributi. Quapropter finaliter respon-
" demus, nos nullum tributum vobis, nec aliud subsi-
" dium, provisuros." Gallici, talibus exasperati responsis, et maxime quia cogoverunt interemptos quosdam de sociis, cum furoris spiritu, renunciaverunt quod non

---

1 ut nomine, in orig. | Apparently written "notumus" in orig.
LONGUM IN MEDIO TEMPUS EFFLUIRET, QUIN PROCACIA VERBA DOLERENT, CUM VITAM PRO VERBIS AMITTERENT. SED VECTUARII, NIL OMNINO TERRITI, JUSSERUNT UT OMNES ASCENDERENT, PROMITTENTES SE NEMINEM IMPETITUROS, NEMINEM INVASUROS, NEMINI MOLESTIAM ILLATUROS, DONEC OMNES INTRASSENT OTIOSE INSULAM, ET SE PER SEX HORAS REFOCILLASSENT. QUIBUS INSUPER POST SEX HORAS DARE BELLUM INFALLIBILITER PROMISERUNT. SED GALLI, CERENTES INCOLO- RUM ALACRITATEM ET AUDACIAM, CREDIDERUNT PROCOLDUBIO IPSOS ANIMATOS ALIENO SUFFRAGIO, ET IDEO, NULLO PERFECTO NEGOTIO, RECESSERUNT.

Per omnem aetatem praesentem fortuna vices variavit, nunc utrisque gentibus, Anglis et Gallis, sive Britonibus, arridendo, nunc irridendo; dum alternatim spoliarent et spoliarentur, vincerent et vincerentur; in mari perdentes naves plurimas, multasque recuperantes.

Ea tempestate, Dominus de Castellis, Britannicus, elatus animo de damnis quæ Plumouthensibus impune nuper intulerat, sperans sibi conciliasse fortunam, recollecta juventute nobilium, tam Gallorum quam Britonum, cum magna classe mare secat, versus Angliam velificando.

Sed—

"HAEC DEA NON STABILI QUAM SIT LEVIS ORBE FATETUR,
  "QUAE SUMMUM DUBIO SUB PEDA SEMPER HABET."

NEMPE,—

"PASSIBUS AMBIGUIS FORTUNA VOLUBILIS ERRAT,
  "ET MANET IN NULLO CERTA, TENAXQUE, LOCO.

QUIA,—

"SImodo LÆTA MANET,modo VULTUS SUMIT ACERBOS;
  "ET ² TAMENT CONSTANS IN LEVITATE SUA EST."

* navos in orig.
² An error for "tantum." This and the three preceding lines are an incorrect version of Ovid's Tristia, v. 8, ll. 15–18.
Hæc expertus est ipse Dominus de Castellis, qui, dum putat in mentis audacia neminem sibi parem, dum apud Dortemouth terram scandit, a ruralibus est oppressus, et hiis quos maxime habebat despectui interfectus. Atque sic ab eodem

"Exegit dignas ultrix Rhamnusia pocenas;" siquidem plebani, sive rustici, qui prope morabantur, cum vidissent classem magnam per multos dies anchorare coram portu de Dortemouth, rati, prout erat, hostes adesse, noctibus confluuerunt ad villam, ut ascensum hostium prohiberent. Dominus vero de Castellis, et qui cum eo erant, augurati villam defensore carere, quia neminem videre sollicitum ad præparandum resistentiam, post sex dies navibus exsiliere. Sed aliter evenit quam sperabant; quia confestim occurrerunt Domino de Castellis, qui primus exsilierat, tres valetti; qui cum impedire vellent progressum suum, perempti sunt ab eo, unus post alium, brevi hora. Quo successu effectus audacior, progredi conabatur, suis innuens, ut sequerentur. Secuti sunt ergo plurimi, ducis exemplo compositi, et aridam contingere decertabant. Qui vero jamdudum de patriots delituerant, constanter irrumpentes occurrunt adversariis cum gladiis et fustibus, et instrumentis aliis ruricolarum. Unde contigit ut Dominus de Castellis, qui praecedebat caeteros, praeceteris sternetur; et quia jam multitudo Britonum terram scanderat, nec facile reverti poterant, dicentes pro certo quod jam pro capitibus agebatur, animo feroci se defendere tentaverunt. Sed nostris vulgari-bus animum paravere, et vires, gloriosus apparatus hostium, pretiosissimus amictus, et fulgens armatura. Reputabat se quisque beatum, si peremisse, vel praecedi.

dasse, potuisset aliquem ex eisdem. Mulieres quoque, doctae fundis jacere, armatos, volentes progredi, duris ictibus proternebant: factum est autem, ut hostes minus lapidibus quam gladiis sternentur. Nec tamen semel se dignabantur reddere, sed per se, vel per suos, relevati iterum se defendere delectabantur, donec lassati viribus destituerentur, et caderent iterato. Nec fuit, ut fertur, eorum aliquis, qui se submisit, dum stetit erectus, sed solo prostrati se reddere cogebantur. Plures a rusticis occidebantur, eo quod ignorabant eorum linguan, quamquam grandes pro redemptione summas obtulissent. Sed rustici, alia pro aliis interpretantes, putabant eos comminari, qui pro vita sollicitant. Capti sunt eo die, scilicet, quinto-decimo die mensis Aprilis, a communibus tres domini et viginti milites; praeter eos qui perempti sunt, scutiferos et valettos plurimos, quorum numerum magnumuisse credimus, per numerum nobilium captivorum. Nam capti sunt ibidem proceres, Dominus de Matynham, Vicecomes de Fow, et Dominus de Jayly; milites vero, Dominus Willelmus de Lawne, Dominus Salamon de Kerge, Dominus Johannes de Kelevk, Dominus Johannes de Lognewiche, Dominus Alanus de Cotyny, Dominus Henricus de Park, Dominus de Barraght, Dominus Jacobus Dawerge, Dominus Johannes Laweche, Dominus Hericot de Hay, Dominus Peys de Fok, Dominus Baw de Hale, Dominus Johannes Cogmys, Dominus Paganus de Gawdene, Dominus Willelmus de Syntymak, Dominus de Harecourt, Dominus Johannes Dartyne, Dominus Wtradus de Gwyde, Dominus Philippus Kelenek, Dominus Willelmus de Molinblos, Dominus Robertus Reche, Dominus Radulfus de Romyle. Hos omnes generosos et nobiles con-
tigit eo die, Deo laudes, a communibus captivari; A.D. 1404. pessundeditque Deus arrogantiam superborum die illo, qui putabant nullas vires illis resistere potuisse; desditque videri cunctis futuris sæculis experimentum formidable, dum tot ingenui a plebanis, tot nobiles ab ignobilibus, tot domini, sive proceres, ab inferioris fortune rusticis, jure bellico caperentur; fecitque servos imperare dominis, et eos vincetos, quocunque liberet, abducere, velut pecudes.


1 Apparently nostras (nras) in orig.
A.D. 1404.

The King rewards the peasants, and retains the French prisoners.

Remarkable successes of Henry de Pay, by sea, against the French.

Decantaverunt igitur Laudis Canticum clerus et monachi, cum summa devotione, Deo, qui dedit in mortem dedecorosam hostem infestissimum, de Castellis Dominum, et socios suos in reprobam captivitatem. Nempe miraretur quisquam, videns tantae nobilitatis heroes in manus infimorum hominum devenisse.

Prosecuti sunt igitur captivos suos usque ad Regis præsentiam, postulantes a Rege quatinus gaudere permittentur tantae praedae suæ redemptione. Mirabatur Rex, mirabantur et regales milites et scutiferi, de tanta fortuna virorum simplicium, optantes ut his ipsorum opera contingissent. Rex vero, viris applaudens,—"Benedicat vos," ait, "Omnipotens, qui dedit nobis contra hostes, et gratiam superandam. Nec putetis me veUe diripere praedam vestram; sed quia novi captivorum personas plus quam vos, expedit vos in hac parte sim de vestro consilio, pro majori vestro commodo." Cui illi alacres respondunt, orantes ut ita fieret. Convenit ergo Rex cum illis ad placita, et, crumenis suffarcinatis, abire permisit gaudentes ad propria, retinens penes se captivos, uberiori censu in posterum redimendos.

Henricus de Pay, per idem tempus, habens navem fortissimam, juventute cordata munitam, dum hostibus frequenter infert damna, inopinate præoccupatus est bargia quadam Normannica. Cum his manus aliquantisper conserens, victus virtute virorum, se reddere est coactus. Insilierunt in navem suam proinde mox adversarii, et captum, cum sociis, armis exuerunt. Hostes vero, calefacti a fervore pugnae, cassides deposuerunt, et chirothecas, et nonnulli, satis effecti securi, omnia arma projeicerunt, et percurrentes ubique puppim, scientes sub tabulis plura spolia contineri, descenderunt in profundum navis, indicentes Henrico et suis omnibus,

\footnote{1} heros in orig. \footnote{2} fortunia in orig. \footnote{3} hoc in orig.
ut confiterentur, pro quibus intercedere nulla posset A.D. 1404. redemptio, quin proculdubio morerentur. Elegerunt ergo confessores e sociis, quisque suum, scientes jam nullum superesse suffragium. Cumque conferret unusquaque cum altero peccata sua, elevans caput, Henricus vidit omnes hostes abississe [ad] navis ima, præter paucos gerciones relictos pro captorum custodia; et, resumpto spiritu, ait suis, —“Videtisne, socii, hostes descendisse sub tabulato, et non remansisse nobiscum præter servos invalidos? Ecce gladios eorum securos! surgamus, et vindicemus mortem nostram, ne mo- "" riamur inulti.” Arripuerunt ergo secures et gladios, atque lanceas, et, peremptis primo gercionibus, in eos qui sub tabulis erant, arma vertunt; factumque est, ut levi negotio superarent in inferiori loco positos. Qui- bus oppressis, exsilierunt de navi propria, et hostium scansere puppim; in qua pauci relictis fuerunt pro navis gubernatione, dum magistratus abessent pro nos- træ navis despoliatione. Quibus simili sorte peremptis, non solum proprium recuperavere navigium, sed navis hostilis obtinuere dominium. Sicque gratiose fortuna mutata, concessit in ratem Henricus hostilem, trahens secum vas suum proprium. Et nec fractus miseria in qua nuper fuerat, nec sui ipsius oblitus in alio, velificare disponit ulterius; cum ecce! vident navem Anglicam obviacm sibi facere; cui innuit, ut ejus collo- quium expectaret. Naucerus vero, repente conspiciens navem armatam, manu gravidam, et hostile velum, vehementer expavit. Sed tandem, cum veraciter cog- novisset quod Henricus esset, accessit, et quaesivit quod Henricus narrat omnem seriem rei gestæ, hortaturque, quia et ipse bellatores habebat, ut secum redate, promittens se pariter aliquid grande facturos; quod et factum est. Nam ad horam revertentes, Neus- triæ subintran flumen Sequanæ, navigantes pene Pari-

---

1 Omitted in orig.
A.D. 1404. sium, cunctis putantibus fore Normannum, qui naves Anglicas bellica virtute cepisset. Sed cum tempus vidisset accommodum, rapuit naves quas volebat ibidem, et, nemine impediente, ad Sequanæ revertit ostium, combustis per viam vasis plurimis. Et sic mare penetrans, iterato pervenit ad patriam Normannorum, sive Gallorum, navibus dives effectus.

Circa medium mensis Aprilis, convocavit Dominus Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis clericum in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniis, ut sciret de quanto clerus vellet sufragari Regi, pecuniae necessitatem maximam patienti. Nam perante, ut præsedit, laici pecuniale subsidium concessere. Finaliter concessa fuit Regi una decima, solvenda ad festa Sancti Martini et Sancti Johannis Baptistæ proximo futura; sub conditione quod Rex proclamari faceret Ecclesiæ vetusta privilegia, ut parcatur bonis eorum, et cariagiis, ne per provisores, sicut hactenus, molestentur. Sed si praesumpserint capere vel arestare bona vel cariagia ecclesiastica, contra voluntatem dominorum, capiantur et ipsi per bailivos, et custodiantur, donec Rex suam sententiam dixerit contra eos.

Eodem anno, quinto Idus mensis Maii, post innuere praestensa miracula, toti seculo admiranda, mandato Domini Papæ convenere Praæules ad villam, Prioratumque Canoniceorum de Bridelington, in Comitatu Eboracensi Archiepiscopus, et Dunelmensis ac Carleolensis, sive Lugubaliensis, 3 Antistites, et velut infinitus populus, ut Translationi Domini Johannis, quondam Prioris de Bridelington, interessent. Translatum est igitur venerabile corpus illius viri sanctissimi, Episcoporum ministerio, et in scrinio coUatum, Domino renovante miracula ipso die ad gloriam Sancti sui. Cujus vita sanctissima, conversatioque perfecta, tractatum exigunt specialem.

1 praesumpserit in orig. 2 Hiatus in orig. 3 Antistites in orig.

Prope tempus praesens, viri nautici de Hispania, dum pervagantur meridionalis oceani vasta spatia, vel mercandi, vel latrocinandi, sive piscandi, gratia, inopinata repererunt insulam prius illis incognitam, quam nominant "Canoriam." Hec capris abundat, et ovibus, et utriusque sexus hominibus, nigris et niidis, sed pedum velocitate pernicibus. Hiis nulla est ferri materies, vel cujuscunque metalli, victus vero carnes hircinae et ovinae. Operiuntur contra brumale frigus pecuina pelle; nam aestivo tempore vestem non quaerunt. Filios parvulos portantes sub ascella, foeminae sic lactant, ut caput sit ad ubera, corpus reliquum, cum pedibus, et tergo pendeat earundem. Sylvas habent, et nemora, ad quae confugiunt quotiens irruptum exteri; contra

---

1 *hospes* in *orig.*
2 This date is incorrect: about 1330 is probably the period of the discovery of the Canaries.
3 *pellis* in *orig.*
4 Qy. if *not a tergo*?
A.D. 1404. quos, juxta littora, pugnant jactu lapidum, tamque
dure feriunt, ut intolerabilis sit grando saxea quam
emittunt. Proinde vitant Hispani luce cum eis con­
gredi, et inopinate noctu irrumpunt super eos; captos
vero domant, et servos sibi faciunt, qui libenter, post
depositam feritatem, magistri et dominis obsequuntur.
Hispani vero ovae, quot possunt, abigunt, ut earum
adipe, lanaque, ditentur et fruantur, tam ad lumi-
naria quam vestimenta. Huic genti nulla domus,
nullum est ædificium, sed pro domibus antris utuntur,
et speluncis. Pisces ad esum sibi capiunt, unci non
quidem ferri, sed factis ex hircinis cornibus, quos
de fracturis silicum exasperatis formant; cum ignis
adminiculo, qui reddat corum molle, juxta vota sciden-
tium. Fila vero, vel cordulas, faciunt de barbis capra-
rum, quibus unci nectantur, ad profunda mittendi.
Ipsi vero in scopulis resident, cum piscantur, et fre­
quenter capiunt bonos pisces. Cum cultellis etiam
petrinas, silicet de confractis silicibus, capras excoriant,
et bidentes; quarum carnes, ad solem ventumque sic-
catas, ad esum servant, quotiens pisces desunt.

1 In festo Sancti Johannis Baptistae, post plures cita-
tiones litterales, Northumbriae Comes accessit ad Re-
gem, ad Pontem Fractum, ducens secum duos nepotes
suos, ex filio suo, Henrico, procreatam, et tertium ex
Thoma, filio suo, genitum, qui obiit in Hispania; ut
nulla suspicio subreperet Regi de quacunque perfidia;
venitque cum eo Dominus Willelmus 2 [de Clifford], qui
jamdudum ceperat Serlonem, Regis quondam Ricardi
familiaern, qui Ducem Glovemiae suffocaverat apud Cal-
lesiam; sed, fortuna favente, hactenus poenas fugerat,
et jam, Deo volente, ignominiose subjiciendus erat. Nam
tractus est pene per omnes principias civitates et vil-
las regni, et tandem, more prodorum, Londoniis inter-
fectus. Quo mortuo, cessavit in regno de vita Ricardi Regis confabulatio, quae prius viguit, non solum in vulgari populo, sed etiam in ipsa Domini Regis domo.


Eo tempore, Ricardus, Episcopus Wigor-niensis, sæculo valefecit.

Die SanctÆ Fidis, Virginis, coactum est Parliamen tum Coventreiam, sed sub brevi novi tenoris, ne, vide- licet, eligerentur milites, sive cives, qui gustassent aliquid de jure regni, sed omnino illiterati. Quamob- rem merito postea Parliamentum prædictum sortitum est nomen “Parliamenti Illiterati.” Nempe milites Parliamentales, tam fide quam doctrina laici, et minus sapientes quam pagani vel quicunque ethnici, vacabant cotidie ad conclusionem unicam; quo pacto diripere patrimonium possent Christi, et auferrent temporaUa, a sanctis viris et regibus ecclesiasticis præconcessa. Angebantur in hiis prælati, parvipendentes petitorum pertinaciam; sed maxime Dominus Cantuariensis, ad quem spectabat præcipue non solum regni Christia- nitas, sed et omnium ecclesiæarum immunitas, contu-

---

1 This, or some similar word, is wanting in the original.
2 This hiatus occurs in orig.; it is intended to imply that Abbot Ripendene succeeded Beaufort. The passage is left incomplete.
3 The name is omitted; and this assertion is incorrect. Richard de Clifford, Bishop of Worcester, was translated to the See of London in 1407.
A.D. 1404.

He receives encouragement from reading a passage in the Life of St. Edmund, Archbishop of Canterbury.

He associates other prelates with himself, in the cause of the Church.

The text continues...

1 This, or a similar word, is omitted in orig.
Cum igitur die quadam milites Parliamentales subintrassent locum publicum, et more solito pronunciassent impudenter oportere concedi ad opus Regis Ecclesiae temporalia, saltem per unum annum, Cantuariensis, spiritu fortiore concepi, respondit voce liberum se caput daturum citius quam possessione minima privaretur Ecclesia, vel perpetuo, vel ad tempus. Et addidit, loquens ipsis militibus; — "Vos," ait, "Regem induxistis, ut praesumeret Prioratus, et alia loca religiosorum multa, per Angliam, de manibus Francorum, velut ad usus suos, rapere, expulsis Dei famulis, quamditandus esset ex depauperatione miserrorum; asserentes talium redditus magnos futuros, et Regis marsupium referturos. Quibus ille consentiens, oneratus est quidem peccati periculo, sed nihil talium divitiarum invent in loculo. Nam max ut Rex sibi seysivit loca taliia, vos ab illo importune petistis dari vobis illa, quae [non] sine Divinitatis offensa detinet, et bona donata Christi pauperibus, ad supplicandum pro locorum fundatoribus, in superbia et in abusione, caeterisque vitiiis, absorbet; et unde vos superbitis et ditamin, Rex eget, et penuriam patitur, prout prius. Et quia de similibus simile sumendum est indicium, certum est, et nulli dubium, quod si Rex obtineret totius cleri temporalia, vobis exsurgentibus, non esset diuior ad anni finem, nec unica quidem marca. Et ideo, desistite ab hiis coeptis, quia votis vestris non fruemini, me vivente."

Eboracensis autem haec dicta ratificabat, et plura alia innecetens, dixit contra eos. Roffensis vero, qui Mercurius dicebatur Domini Cantuariensis, eo quod ea quae mente conceperat Archiepiscopus, ipse protulit voce libera, quanquam Domino Cantuariensi non detesset facundia, afferri fecit librum in quo continebatur Magna Charta, legitque coram eis; ostenditque eos

1 Omitted in orig.
excommunicatos, et omnes qui subvertere nitebantur Ecclesiae libertatem. Quo tonitruo repercussi, proparaverunt in crastino plurimi, patentes peccatum, et petentes absolutiorem; Archiepiscopo gratiantes de sua constantia, qui nisi major fuisset sibi virtutis perseverantia, ipsi perissent in sua malitia, quamvis nescissent se involvendos tam horrenda excommunicationis sententia. Nec minus Rex ipso Domino Cantuariensi egit gratias, ejusque collaudans constantiam, affirmavit Ecclesiam suo tempore suis viribus non fraudandam.

In hoc Parliamento revocatae sunt patentes litterae, quas quisque de temporibus Regis Edwardi et Edwardi Principis, atque Ricardi Regis, necnon et praesentis Regis, obtinuerat per totum regnum.

In festo Sanctæ Katerinæ facta Convocatione, clerus concessit Regi decimam et dimidiam decimæ, non obstante quod solverant dimidiam decimæ in festo Sancti Martini ultimo; et alia dimidia decimæ solvenda foret in festo Purificationis proximo.

Eo tempore factæ sunt in Cancia et locis multis aquarum irruptiones insolitæ, per quas et multæ mansiones deletæ, et animalia diversi generis sunt submersa. Et, ut sileamus de aliis, Dominus Cantuariensis, et Prior ejusdem loci, incurrere detrimenta mille librarum. Apud Calesiam quoque aqua maris influxit in villam, ultra muros.

Eo tempore Coventreiae, ex morbo dysenterico, plures cotidie efferebantur. Quapropter, ut moris est Christianorum, qui se tactos infirmitate senserunt aliquae, max ad extrema cucurrere remedia, petentes beneficia confessionis et Corporis Christi sacrosanctae Communionis. Enimvero, dum quadam vice vocatus sacerdos ad agrotum pergeret, ferens secum Sacramentum vivificum, et eum praecederet clericus cum lumine et cam-

1 irruptiones in orig.  |  2 sacerdo in orig.
pana, contigit Dominum Cantuariensem in strata con-
stitisse publica, et de rebus tunc necessariis contulisse.
Qui, cernens transiturum portitorem Corporis Dominici,
genua flexit, et adoravit, idem facientibus qui cum eo
stabant: prosecutusque longo intuitu sacerdotem, vidit
quosdam ex militibus et armigeris Regis stantes, qui
cum transiturus esset eos presbyter, bajulus Eucha-
ristiae, dorsa verterunt ad eum, nihil irrumpentes de
suis confabulationibus, nihil impendentes reverentiae
corpori Redemptoris. Videns haec, Archiepiscopus con-
tristatus est nimium, et dolorem cordis suspiria pro-
diderunt. Ex quibus astantes turbati, sciscitabantur
quid accidisset quod taliter suspirasset. Quibus ille,—
"Video," inquit, "abominationem, qualem, puto, nul-
"lus vidit hactenus inter Christianos;" et properavit
protinus ad Regem, conquesturus de irreligiositate
suorum militum, de irreverentia familiarium, penes
Christianorum venerabile Sacramentum. Rex autem,
cum retulisset haec ¹ Pontifex, querimoniam ejus parvi-
pendere videbatur. Tunc Archiepiscopus, amplius ex-
acerbatus, Regem redarguit de negligentia, dicens sine
dubio in caput suum redundaturum excessum suorum
familiarium, quos noverit indigne agere, et non cor-
ripuerit, vel gratia, vel favore personae; addens quod,
dum vigilant in hac terra penes Sacramentum Corporis
et Sanguinis Domini fides integra, vigiluit et thronus
regius, vigiluit et militia, et undique successere pros-
pera, successere votiva. At modo, postquam milites
regales coeperunt in articulis claudicare fidei, et in fide
præcipue Sacramenti, eliminata est pax a regno, fides
a terreno domino, caritas ab amico. Nec fore possibile
diu ² stare regnum, quod salvationis suæ negligent Sacra-
mentum;—"In Italia," inquit, "ubi gens esse videtur
" criminosissima, et Lombardia præcipue, circa Corpus

¹ pon precedes this word, by inadvertence.
² sta in orig.
A.D. 1404. "maximam impendunt reverentiam; sic quod, dum " sacerdos transit in villis et urribus ita cum Sacra- " mento, mox is qui proximus est ecclesiae, accendit " torticium, quod 1 ex devotione 2 in domo tenet ad hoc " officium, et praecedit reverenter, cum luminosa face, " presbyterum; et consimiliter faciunt conjunctim, per " quos transit, donec pervenerit ad locum quo jacet " ægrotus. Quem dum intraverit, expectant foris, donec " communicaverit ipsum ægrotum, in numero quan- " doque accensorum, scilicet, octoginta funalia; quem " præcedat egredientem, donec 3 veniat ad ecclesiam, " et ibi extinguent funalia, ad propria 4 revertentes; et " puto Deum parcere et propitiari illis pro fide quam " ostendunt, et reverentia quam impendunt, Sacra- " mento."

The King promises that he will correct the offenders.

Circa præsens tempus, J[ohannes] Trevor, Episcopus Assavensis, reliquit curiam Principis, et, conversus re- trorum, fugit ad Owenum Glendor; conquestus primò quod per eundem perdidisset fructus sui beneficii, licet jussu Regis in domo Principis conversaretur, deesse tamen sibi sumptus ad 5 necessaria quibus ipse et sui 6 peculiis indigebant. Cui cum Dominus Cantua- riensis obtulisset hospitium et impensas necessarias, non adquievit, sed latenter abiens, conversus est in 7 arcum pravum, et, hostis hosti junctus, hostis regni publicus est judicatus.

---

1 ex devotione in devotione, in orig. 2 These two words are repeated in orig. 3 Repeated in orig. 4 revertente in orig. 5 The whole of this passage seems to be imperfect. 6 Sic in orig. 7 Probably, in allusion to Psalm lxviii. 57.
Anno gratiae millesimo quadringentesimo quinto, et Henrici Regis, a Conquestu Quarti, sexto, tenuit Rex Natale apud Eltham.

Circa dies istos obierunt Episcopi, Magister Johannes Trevenaunt, Herefordensis, et Johannes de Botellesham, Roffensis, viri cordati, litterati, et optimae opinionis.

Per idem tempus obiit Papa Bonifacius Nonus, ad quem pervenerant nuncii Anti-Papae per dies aliquot ante mortem suam, offerentes sibi ex parte domini sui, pro redintegratione divisionis in Ecclesia, si vellet cessare, cessare vellet et ipse ; et extunc, conveniente clero, de toto mundo collecto, nova facienda electio, et quicunque tunc eligenter communi voto, ipse gauderet totius Christianitatis Pontificio. Cumque Papa prestatos diu distulisset nuncios, nec respondisset super istis eisdem, tandem, per suos familiares pulsatus, resedit in Consistorio, et, recitato legationis eulogio, infrenduit Papa, responditque continuo ;—"Certe," inquit, "cessasse debuisset adversarius, non quidem "1 dignitatis viri, quod nullum unquam extitit, sed " præsumptioni, per quam plurimas animas perire. Et " nos, si nostri consilli securi fuissemus arbitrium, " jamdudum, sicuti est, denunciassemus eum publice " excommunicatum." Ad hanc vocem 2conturbati legati, cum clamore valido responderunt, non eorum dominum, qui pacem quasivit, sed ipsum Bonifacium, excommunicatum potius, qui sua superbia negotium totius Christianitatis perturbasset. Papa vero, plenus ira, recessit in cameram, et mox incurrit febrem mortiferam, in qua longuit usque ad vesperam, per sex horas. Interea visa est super ejus cameram nubes nigra descendere, qua terruit corda eunctorum videntium. Cumque Papa jam exhalasset spiritum, de nube dissoluta toti visi sunt evolasse nigri sturni, ut lumen adimerent civitati :
A.D. 1405. quos quidam interpretati sunt fuisse daemones, qui, confusi eo quod nihil haberent contra eum, recesserunt. Alii

In erastino Sancti Valentini, natus est filius Domino Johanni Grenecornewayle, ex sorore Regis; quem de sacro fonte suscepit Dominus Willelmus, Abbas Sancti Albani, intuito et honore Regis et dicti Johannis.

In feria sexta sequente, rapti sunt peculi Comitis Marchie de Castro de Wyndeshore, summo mane, et abducti: sed cito post recepti.

Septimo-decimo die mensis Februarii, jussu Regis, convenerunt ad consilium Londonis regni nobilis, apud Westmonasterium, ubi Domina de Spencer accusavit fratrem suum, Ducem Eboraci, quod fuit principalis auctor furti puerorum ac filiorum Comitis Marchiae, qui dudum de Castello de Wyndeshore, fraude cujusdam fabrici, furtive sunt abducti: propter quod, expost, idem faber poenas solvit, capite amputate. Item accusavit eum, quod disposuerat intra dies Natalitios nocte scalasse muros manerii de Eltham, in quo Rex erat, et occidisse Regem; vel si id fortuna non permisisset, praordinaverat, collecta turba fortium, obviasse Regi venienti Londonias, et peremisse. Et super hae asseruit, quod si foret aliquid, vel armiger, qui pro ea vellet in hae causa duello confligere contra eum, ipsa se comburendam traderet, si vinceretur athleta suus. Cumque hae audisset Willelmus Maideston, armiger dictae dominae, projecto capucio coram Rege, in causa dominae suae se obtulit pugnaturum. Dux vero, in nullo segnior, project et ipse capucium, paratus duello suam innocentiam declarare. Arrestatus tamen est, jussu Regis, per Thomam, Ducem Lancastriae, et ad Turrim ductus, donec Rex deliberasset quid de

---

1 This passage is left unfinished. 2 Omitted in orig. with an hiatus of four lines.
eo faciendum foret: et interim confiscantur omnia bona sua.

Eo tempore, Thomas, Comes Marescallus, accusatus fuit quod scivit propositum Ducis Eboraci de subtractione puerorum Marchiae. Cui accusationi respondit se quidem in hac parte novisse Ducis propositum, sed facie minime consensisse; unde, pro concelatione petiti Regis gratiam; et Rex perdonavit eadem.

Dominus Cantuariensis, non ignorans quam amaro animo eum perstringeabant familiare regii, surgens in Consilio, genu flexo rogavit Regem, ut daret copiam cuicumque volenti accusare eum offerendi, offerens se purgaturum viis et modis quibus Archiepiscopum decet se purgare; qui arrestatione Ducis et Dominae supra dixit, ac aliorum omnium, excusatus est. Tunc Rex laetificatus, affirmavit juramento maximo, quod noluit pro regni sui dimidio, nisi taliter se purgasset. Et Archiepiscopus—"Si," inquit, "quae dicitis, ex corde venerint, teneor vobis multum. At certissime teneatis, quod nunquam communicavi quicquam sinistrum cum aliquo de persona vestra; sed quae vobis novi expedire. Inter vos et me communicavi secretius propter honorem regium, licet multotiens monitiones meas durius tulissetis." Sicque Dominus Cantuariensis et suspicione se exuit, et Regis animum in amorem suum reduxit. Non tamen potuit finiri Consilium, quia Rex multa postulavit contra vota procerum. Quamobrem ad Sanctum Albanum fuit translatum; sed neendum finis, quia nec ibi poterant concordare.

Eo anno, Die Cinerum, facta est magna strages Wallensium, et quinto die mensis Maii, altero facto conflictu, apud Usik, inter Wallicos et Anglicos, familiares Domini Principis, captus est filius Oweni Glendor, captis cum eo, vel peremptis, mille quingentis de parte rebellium. Expost, circa festum Sancti Dunstani, captus est in bello Cancellarius Oweni Glendor, multis ex Wallensibus interemptis. Et eodem anno captus
A.D. 1405. est Johannes Hanmere, gener ejus, in bello: qui omnès ducti sunt Londonias, et in Turri claudi.

Circa istud tempus, Comes Northumbriæ, qui sæpius Comitis Westmorlandiæ odium et ingratiudinem, ut dicebat, in se et suos expertus fuerat, jam nacta temporis opportunitate, decrevit reddere sibi vicem. Nempe cum cognovisset eum se recepisse in quodam fortalitio Domini Radulphi Vineres, venit nocte ad obсидendum eum, quadrangentis armatis. Sed, ille, præmunitus de proposito Comitis Northumbriæ, recessit sero, priusquam Comes advenit; sicque delusa est senis Comitis sollicitudo, et extunc quiesse cavere ab altero; fuitque casus iste Comiti magnorum malorum initium, ut expost plenius dicetur loco suo.

Duodecimo die mensis Maii, circa noctis medium, Comes Sancti Pauli venit inopinate, cum grandi exercitu et præparamentis variis, ad obсидendum Castrum de Merk, fatigavitque interius obsessos incessanter per triduum, continuos insultibus et impetitionibus; sed die tertia, post meridiem, repente supervenientes stipendiarii Calesienses, dissolvi fecerunt obсидionem, et confricrunt cum obsessoribus, et interfecerunt ibidem quindecim milites, captis hominibus de armis et armigeris, et occisis, de quibus habetur bona notitia, amplius quam nongentis. Comes vero Sancti Pauli fugit turpiter, vexillum suum et pennonam, et totum cameræ suæ supellectilem, ibi deserens, et totum exercitum suum, cum nota vecordiæ, desertorisque militiae, derelinquens. Capta sunt ibi die illa vexilla quatuor, pennonae quindensæ; una cum vexillo, et pennona, et armorum tunica, Comitis supradicti. Nomina vero nobiliorum captivorum sunt ista,—Dominus de Warineres, Dominus de Vynellis, Dominus de Nayellis, Dominus J. Hungest, Capitaneus Bolonie, Dominus Lyonellus Darreys, Capitaneus de Gravelyng, Dominus Petrus Rasser, Capitaneus de Arde, Hanord Camberciarde, Capitaneus de Tyrewan, Boyd Sanon, Capitaneus de Montorie, Jo-
hannes Sanōn, Capitaneus de ¹ Lisbe, Stevène Bek, A.D. 1405. Capitaneus de Ralingham, Bastard de Bornevyle, Capitaneus de Bourgh.

Hac æstate, classis Anglicana, cui ² præfecti fuere Naval Dominus Thomas, Regis filius, et ³ Comes Cancœ, velificavit ad portum de Sclus, ubi nostrates combusserunt quatuor magnas naves. Quinto vero die, postquam ⁴ constitissent in portu, ascenderunt terram, se putantes cum Duce Burgundie pugnatos. Sed hoste non apparente, nec faciente belli copiam, naves repetierunt, et paulo ⁵ [post] obviaverunt tribus trieribus quas "carricas" vocamus. ⁶ Quarum una ventos pro votis fruens, dispositum supernavigasse navem in qua filius Regis erat. Sed probitate providentiae naucleri, obliquantibus dracœnam subito, navemque gyrantis, navis regia vasa ratis declinavit impetum. Non tamen permansit ilæsa, nam hostis carica proram discussit puppis regiae, et contrivit in parte latus ipsius. Tunc pugna succrevit acerrima, donec supervenit Comes Cancœ, cum rate sua. Qui licet non annos excessisset adolescentiae, constantis tamen militis implevit vices, periculis se ingerens, et hostes animose satis invadens. Et licet balistarum spiculis in pectore duobus locis esset terebratus, non expalluit, sed constanter insistens, non destitit suos animare, donec nostri cessit victoria, et prima carrica capta fuit, cum secunda et tertia; quas advexerunt ad partes Anglica nas, post reditum suum de Normannia. Nam ver- The coasts The coasts

dentes vela versus Normanniam, hostiliter intraverunt terram, et combusserrunt villas de Hoggles, et de Mount- ravaged

---

¹ Probably "Lisle" is the name meant. Few of these names, in the forms here given, are to be relied upon.
² præfecti in orig.
³ Hiatus in orig. "Edmundus " Holland" are the words omitted.
⁴ This word is indistinct, and doubtful.
⁵ Omitted in orig.
⁶ Qua in orig.; the writing seems here to have devolved on an ignorant scribe. The reading should be "Quarum una ventis, etc."
A.D. 1405. Appearance of a great dragon, near Sudbury.

The Earl of Northumberland and Lord Bardolf prepare for revolt against the King.

The King sets out, to curb the Welsh.

**ANNALES HENRICI QUARTI,**

by the English.

burgh, et de Berflu, et Sanctæ Petronillæ, et alias, ad numerum sex et triginta, progredientes in regionem per triginta milliarium, et praedas agentes, nemine resistente. Fuguerunt namque habitatores a facie formidinis supervenientis exercitus, villis vacuis derelictis.

Sub his diebus, *draco*, vastus corpore, cristato capite, dente serrato, cauda protensa nimia longitudine, nuper apparuit, malo *patrei*, juxta villam de *Buryram prope Sudburyam*, qui pastorem peremit ovium, ovesque plurimas interfecit. Ad quem sagittandum servi Domini Ricardi de Waldegrave, militis, cujus in domino draco latuit, sunt egressi; sed corpus ejus omnes elusit ictus sagittantium, resiliueruntque sagittæ ab ejus crate, velut a ferro vel duro lapide; et quæ super spinam dorsi ecciderunt, exsiliere, tinnitum reddentes velut offendissent laminam æream, et procul evolaverunt, ratione cutis bellue æmpenetrabilis. Ad cujus occasioem quasi patria tota fuit summonita. Verum cum vidisset se iterum sagittis impetendum, fugit in paludem, et inter arundinetæ delitit; nec amplius visus fuit.

Comes Northumbriæ, per id temporis metuens iram Regis, communivit omnia castra sua victualibus et armatura, faciens omnem præparationem qua novit oppressos aliquatenus indigere. Accessit autem ad eum Dominus de Bardolf, qui pertinacissime refutit voluntati Regis in consiliis nuper Londoniis et apud Sanctum Albanum habitis, vir armis strenuus, et lineamentis corporis ac statura nulli secundus in regno, si non descivisset a Rege suo. Hii, cum Willelmo Clifford funiculum contexentes triplicem, qui difficile rumperetur, multis animaverunt ad inobedientiam et rebellionem.

Per idem tempus, insolentibus Wallicis, Rex profectus est illuc hostiliter, ad comprimendum tantos motus.

---

1 *drache* in orig. | indistinct; possibly *Bures* is the place meant.

2 *patie* in orig.

3 The latter part of this word is
Interea Magister Ricardus Scrop, Eboracensis Archi-
episcopus, cum Thoma Mounbray, Comite Marescallo,
imaginatis quibusdam articulis, quibus non solum
regni communitas sed ipsa nobilitas se gravatos in-
gemuit, demonstraverunt eos prope sibi adherentibus,
postea procul positis; asserentes se pro eisdem, si
oporteat, usque ad mortem certatos. Nec fuit diffi-
cile huic proposito vota communium mutuare, qui spe-
rabant totius regni multitudinem in hanc sententiam
[venire]. Animavit quoque illos maxime et Pontificis
nota sanctitas, et continuata viri gravitas, et modestia
morum suorum, et puritas. Cumque Præsul vidisset
se jam vallatum multis viris bellatoribus, fecit scribi
supradictos articulos, et in viis et vicis civitatis Ebo-
raci, et super monasteriorum januas, affigi publice; ut
quilibet posset cognoscere titulum causæ suæ. Quos
articulos, per nos translatos in Latinum ex Anglico,
istic duximus inserendos.—

"Hii sunt articuli et defectus, quos A. B. C. et G.,
ex assensu communi, desiderant emendari; ut Par-
liamentum teneri posset Londoniis, habentibus om-
nibus statibus suas libertates in liberis electionibus
militum Comitatum.

"Isti sunt articuli emendandi et reformandi, in
evitazione adversitatis et obversionis, quæ verisi-
militer regno accident, pro defectu recti, nisi pla-
cuerit Deo, de sua gratia, et regni statibus, hac
juvare.

"Primo. — Propter malum regimen quod est in
regno, emendandum, secundum cursum veritatis et
justitiae, et ordinandum pro importabilibus oneribus
quæ currunt in omnes status cleri, et reformandum
injurias et derogationes factas statibus, tam spiri-

---

1 This, or some similar word, is omitted in orig.
A.D. 1405. "alibus quam temporalibus, in salvationem et liberta-
tem Sanctae Ecclesiae, quae semper antea extitit ordi-
nata et visitata ad placendum Domino.

"Item, ad ordinandum remedium de subjectione et
annullatione, in quas verisimile est dominos dejici-
endos, in prejudicium tam personarum quam haeredi-
tatum, contra status nativitatis suæ, et leges usita-
tas et factas antecessoribus eorumdem.

"Item, ad ordinandum emendationem de excessivis
gubernationibus, et importabilibus taxis et subsidiis,
extortionibus et oppressionibus, quæ regnant supra
generosos, mercenarios, et communes regni, in ulti-
mam depauperationem et destructionem eorum qui
deborent esse veri supportatores cunctis statibus,
spiritualibus et temporalibus, si forent bene et debite
gubernati; et ut puniatur voluntaria prodigalitas,
id est, expense factæ pro singularibus et privatis
protectibus de magnis bonis et divitiis receptis de
prædictis generosis, mercatoribus, atque communibus,
et illa bona resarciantur, ad salvationem regni, et
emendationem status fidelis communitatis.

"Et hiis articulis atque defectibus, sit correctio,
reformatio, et emendatio, et juste ac recte ordinata
gubernatione, pro prosperitate, pace, unitate, et tran-
quillitate regni, inter nos ipsos extune laboretur ad
faciendum vias et gubernaciones ad resistendum hos-
tibus nostris extrinsecus, per Dei gratiam, qui nunc
nos destruunt, et nostros mercatores, qui deborent
esse unum de substantialibus divitiis terræ nostræ.
"Et similiter, ad faciendum alias multas vias, tam
per aquam [quam] per terram, hactenus omissas, pro
defectu bonæ gubernationis, ad resistendum malitiae
præmissorum hostium. Et si hoc possit impleri, habe-
mus informationem et plenam promissionem ipsorum

1 Sic in orig. 2 Omitted in orig.
qui nunc rebellant in Wallia, quod erunt cordati et A.D. 1405 hilares sub gubernatione Regis Angliae, sicut fuerunt temporibus Regum Edwardi et Ricardi, sine rebellione vel resistentia facienda.

Quapropter rogamus vos omnes, et requirimus, ob Dei reverentiam, qui hoc audituri estis, sitis benevoli huic proposito, et adjutores in salvationem vestram, et nostram, et boni status et gubernationis nobilis regni hujus.

Hii fuerunt articuli, in Anglicis exarati, quorum sententiam de verbo in verbum pene transtuli, et hic inserui nudam et sive colore; quia sic videbatur mihi necessarium, propter sermonis barbariam et illipsum, qui non facile servit rhetorice, servato verborum sensu.

Igitur milites et armigeri, communeque vulgus, illecti vel cupidine novarum rerum, vel, ut promittebant articuli, desiderio correctionis defectuum publicorum, in brevi grandem fecerunt exercitum. Et jam Archiepiscopus delectabatur inter eos armatus conspici, animare, monere, et hortari cunctos, ut persisterent in proposito, promittens procul dubio veniam peccatorum, et plenam remissionem, omnibus quorum sors esset interfici in hac causa. Quapropter, præter populares patriæ, pene cives omnes Eboracenses, qui poterant arma portare, ad eum alacriter cucurrere.

Audienz hæc Comes Westmerlandiae, collegit et ipse multitudinem virorum, qui Domino Johanni, filio Regis, deputati fuerant ad custodiendum patriam contra Sco-torum irruptiones, et eorum qui sibi parebant, et venit in obviam Eboracensis. Cunque non procul abesset ab exercitu, constitit, et signa figi in declivo quasi montis loco; Archiepiscopus vero idem fecit ex oppo-sito. Sed cum nihil attentaretur ex una parte nec alia, Comes misit ad discendam causam tantæ commotionis et bellici apparatus. Cui respondit Archiepisco-

\textsuperscript{1} cordenti et hiliari, in orig.
A.D. 1405.

The Archbishop's answer.

The Earl proposes a conference.

Particulars of the conference, held by the Archbishop, and the Earl Marshal, with the Earl of Westmoreland.

---

pus, non belli causa se cum turba venisse, sed pacis potius, 1 quam dilatari volebat ubique: ostenditque nuncio sedulam inscriptam prædictis articulis, jubens ut eam ferret hiis qui miserunt cum. Quam cum legisset Comes, collaudavit publice propositum Archi-

præsulis, mittens et rogans ut super hiis posset habere colloquium personale.

Venit igitur Pontifex, cum certis personis, trahens secum Comitem Marescallum, licet invitum, quia dubi-
taret de fide vocantis, ad locum medium inter castra. Occurrit et Comes Westmerlondiae, ducens et ipse Dominum Johannem, Regis filium, cum sequentium numero, qui numerum. Pontificis non excederet, sed aequaret. Interim præstolabatur finem uterque exercitus in locis suis. Convenientes itaque partes in medium, reverenter se salutaverunt ad invicem, et recitari con-
dixerunt articulos memoratos. Quibus auditis, Comes Westmerlondiae palam fabeatur articulos pie justeque conceptos, nec fore quem qui sanum saperet, qui non hiis favorem impenderet; addens se totis viribus ad eorum executionem daturum operam, et Regem, si possit, ad illud propositum inducturum. Jungunt ergo dextras, congratulantes alterutrum, et jocundantes. Tunc Comes Westmerlondiae dixit Archiepiscopo: — "Ecce!

"pater et domine, finis optatus vestri laboris, cum nos omnes habeatis consentaneos in vota vestra. "Bibamus igitur pariter, cunctis spectantibus, ut cog-

"noscant de parte vestra viri, quod in concordiam "venimus, quod idem in omnibus sapiemus."

Consensit Archiepiscopus, et palam bibit, et qui cum eo erant, de calice hostis inexorabilis, nescientes fraudem que struebatur. Tunc Comes dixit Archie-
pisco: — "Mittatis, si placet, populo vestro, qui nun-

"ciat nos concordatos, et faciat eos reverti in domos

---

1 This word is indistinct and doubtful.

2 revert in orig.
"suos; quia jam fessi videntur, triduo perseverantes in armis." Missus est ergo Dominus, consanguineus Præsulis. Populus autem, cum audisset ab ore viri tanti factam concordiam, nullam omnino moram faciens, cupide discessit a loco; et confestim occurrentes plures numero de parte Comitis et Regis filii, circumgyraverunt Archiepiscopum, et qui cum eo erant. Tunc Comes, injectis manibus in Pontificem, arestavit eum; et illico Comes Marescallus per eundem fuit arestatus, et omnes qui expectaverant cum eisdem. Quo facto, videbatur impleta prophetia Bridlingtonæ,—

"Pacem tractabant, sed fraudem subter arabant;" et in morte Archiepiscopi, quæ cito postea secuta est,—

"Pro nulla marca salvabitur ille hierarcha."

Archiepiscopus et Comes, cum eæteris ita captis, ducuntur ad Castrum de, ubi sub vili custodia detenti sunt usque ad adventum Regis in illas partes. Rex autem, in Wallia constitutus, cum audisset quod Archiepiscopus Eboracensis et Comes Marescallus, ex una parte, et Comes Northumbriæ et Dominus de Bardolf, ex altera parte, congregassent exercitus, dimissa Wallia, properavit ad partes Eboraci. Cumque venisset cum exercitu ad, ubi Eboracensis Archiepiscopus, et eæteri cum eo capti, clausi erant, rogavit Archiepiscopus ut Rex dignaretur dare sibi copiam alloquendi eum. Sed Rex hoc concedere noluit ullo modo; quinimmo misit qui auferrent ab eo crucem, sibique deferrent. Et cum Dominus Thomas Beuford tollere crucem voluisset, dicens eum indignum tali honore, restituit Archiepiscopus animose, asserens non esse juris Regis crucem suam tollere; quam nullus sibi conferre potuit, excepto Summo Pontifice. Certatum

---

1 Hiatus in orig.  
2 At this word (p. 133) the Lombardic handwriting is resumed, and continued to the end. See pages 372, 384, and 390, ante.

The Archbishop of Canterbury intercedes with the King for the Archbishop of York.

The Arch- Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, cum audisset Eboracensem captum et incarceratum, confestim iter arripuit versus partes illas, ut confratri ferret auxilium, si quo modo posset. Et cum per duas dietas vix abesset, nunciatum est ei quod tam Præsul quam Comes morte plectendi forent in crastino. Quapropter anxius, et laborem corporis parvipendens, vix expectavit audire die sancto Pentecostes unam privatam Missam, sed tota nocte, dieque sequente, caballans, cum summo labore mane, fera secunda, pervenit ad Regem, prius quam excussisset se de lecto; et ingressus monuit Re-gem, ne mitteret manum in Archiepiscopum, recitans quantum hoc esset periculum, quantum peccatum, et quanta severitate non solum a jure sed a Domino vindicandum. Rex vero, mentis prætendens sobrieta-tem, et tranquillitatem animi, videbatur multum com-
pati labori ejus. Unde monuit ut paulisper se somno A.D. 1405. recrearet, et expost Missam audiret, quia secum erat jentaturus, et omnem voluntatis effectum infallibiliter habiturus; nec fieret in haec parte quicquam sine suo judicio vel decreto. Archiepiscopus, hiis promissis legificatus aliquualiter, se contulit ad pausandum, quia nocte illa praeterita lectum non intraverat, sed in stramine vel in foeno, dum jumenta refocillabant, caput paulisper reclinaverat.

Experrectus Missam audivit, sed antequam finiretur, venerunt de parte Regis qui eum ad jentaculum vocaverunt; dumque procederet jentaculum, Comes Arundelie, et Dominus Thomas Beaufort, collateralis frater Regis, accepta sententia, sederunt in judicio super eum et Comitem Marescallum, et condemnaverunt eos sententia proditorum; et Archiepiscopum quidem damnantes, velut apostatam et ordinis sui transgressorem, et, eo quod captus sit armatus, Regis sui necnon et regni publicum proditorem. Ad quod verbum tantum respondit, se regni proditorem nullatenus extitisse.

Accepta tristi sententia, mox urgebatur ad mortem, ne, mediante prece cujusquam, Rex sententiam revocaret. Impositique jumentis vilibus, et sine stramentis, cum turba multa ducti sunt extra civitatem, in campum satum hordeo tunc virenti: cumque Comes Marescallus, utpote junior ætate et delicatio, mortem expavesceret, Archiepiscopus, confortans eum, monuit ut esset forti animo, cum damnatus esset inique, et libenter sufferret mortem momentaneam quam obiturus erat pro justitia: promittens sibi, sub periculo animae suæ, quod mox, soluto carnis onere, spiritus ad gaudia transvolaret. Et sic quidem juvenis laetior effectus, et constantior, a speculatore decollatus est. Archiepiscopum vero tortores trahebant in campum virentem hordeo stipatum equibus et peditibus, velut innumeris, qui ad hoc spectaculum convenerant ex multis locis. Vir autem paterfamilias, cujus erat campus et hordeum, Singular circumstance connected with the locality where the Arch-
A.D. 1405, cernens bladum suum omnino conteri et conculcari pe-
bishop was dibus, tam equorum quam hominum, lacrymabiliter
accessit ad Archiepiscopum, conquerens quod causa sui
perdidisset spem totius victus sui pro anno futuro.
Unde rogavit ut moneret ministros mortis suae, ut
eum in viam reducerent regiam, quae prope fuit, satis
spatiosa et lata; ut illic decapitaretur, et non perderet
victum suum. Archiepiscopus, compassionem plenam, con-
dolens misero homini, rogavit custodes suos, ut re-
ducerent eum ad viam publicam, et illic facerent ei
quaececumque concepiissent. At illi, audita voce Pontifi-
cis, magis furibundi trahebant eum in campum, asse-
rentes proditorem non electurum sibi nec mortis nec
sepulturae locum. Tunc Antistes, videns quod nihil
praeveraerent preces suae, benedixit campum, fusa prece
ut largitor omnium bonorum, Deus Omnipotens, incre-
mentum daret viro gementi. Evenitque juxta precem
Pontificis, ut, contra spem, campus qui omnino concul-
catus videbatur, redderet fructum eo anno quantum
antea non reddiderat in multis annis, ita ut posseor
cerneret crevisse septem spicas de culmo uno, plenas at-
que formosas; ut proditum est testimonio plurímorum.
Igitur Archiepiscopus, decollatus in eodem loco, juxta
quorundam opiniones, pulchro consummatus est, digno-
que, martyrio. Corpus ejus, cum capite, Regis indul-
gentia, sepulta fuit in ecclesia, cui praefuit, cum honore;
ubi, protul vulgus prædicat, multa sunt miracula, et
frequentis peregrinatio plebanorum crevit, donec per
regales sepulcrum ejus seclusum fuit tabulis altis, ne
quisquam offere posset illic, nisi de facili deprehendi
posset. Deprehensos ministri, ad hoc deputati,
et dehonestabant et torquebant, et affligentes turpiter
abigebant; praecipientes ne illux peregre venire, nec de
miraculis loqui, presumerent. Sed tanto eis precipie-
bant, tanto magis plus prædicabant Dominum ostendisse
plura miracula pro eodem. Ferunt autem caput ejus
abscissum speciem moderate ridentis prætulisse.
Corpus Domini Thomæ Moubray, Comitis Marescalli, permissione Domini Regis, sepultum est in eadem ecclesia, cum mœrore multo, pluribus dolentibus vicem ejus, et praesepue Domino Johanne Grenecornewayle, quia duxerat filiam suæ conjugis, scilicet, sororis Regis; qui pro vita sua Regem rogasse desideravit, sed, quorumdam potentium de Consilio violentia, negatus est sibi aditus, prout fertur. Caput vero, fixum in stipite, stetit supra muros civitatis longo tempore, expositum fervori et pluviae. Sed tandem, cum Rex annuisset ut conseperlaretur corpore, inventum est in nullo fluxum, in nullo marcidum, in nullo decoloratum, sed eandem prætulisse speciem et decorem quam vivens habuerat, ut dicunt multi.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, cum cognovisset Eboracensem et Comitem ita mortuos, tandem eum vitæ suæ, et præ doloris immensitate decidit in tertianam, et languit per multos dies. Rex vero tractabat eum mitigius, vitans exacerbare eum amplius; et ei honorem supra solitum exhibebat. Ipse tamen, quam cito potuit, rediit ad partes suas, ut praedicitur, infirmatus.

At Rex, civibus Eboracensibus multatis ad libitum, se accinxit ad prosecludendum Comitem Northumbriæ et Dominum de Bardolf, contrahens secum omne præparamentum belli, machinas petrarías, balistas, et gunnas, quarum una tam capax fuit, ut nullus murus perseveret, ut creditur, ictus ejus. Convenit autem ad eum exercitus fortis valde, ad numerum triginta septem millium pugnatorum. Cómès vero Northumbriæ, comperto pro certo quod Rex venturus esset ad persequendum eum, Berwicum adiit cum trecentis equis, mandavitque Majori ville, ut eum admitteret, cum sequela sua, ut illic se refocilaret. Qui respondit, si veniret sicut fidelis Regis ligeus, eum cum suis libenter intrare permetteret. Cui Comes respondit se fidelem Regi semper fuisse, sed esse dissidium inter se et quorundam in orig.
A.D. 1402. dam de vicinis suis; propter quod se receptare vellet ibidem pro villanorum commodo, pariter et tutela. Quod si nollent eum admittere, intraret per Castrum, quod in custodia sua fuit, villanis invitis. Comes itaque est admissus per Majorem; sed infra spatium unius horæ, cognovit quod fugisset Regem, et mæstus valde dixit Comiti,—"Vos me," inquit, "seduxistis; ideo juro me non comesurum in hac villa, donec excusaverim memet Regi. Facite cum uxore mea et liberis, et omni substantia mea, prout placet; tantum permittite me adire Regem." Cui Comes,—"Perge securus, nullum incurres dispendium bonorum tuorum;" sicque venit ad Regem, a quo et excusari meruit, et laudari.

The King of Denmark asks the King's daughter (Philippa) in marriage.

The King of Denmark venerunt ad Regem ambassiores, missi a Rege Danamarchiae, et Regina vetula, matre ejus, pro petenda filia Regis nostri filio dictæ Reginae Danamarchiae, Norwagiae, et Suavie, in conjugium. Nam hæc Regina illa, Amaronia, partim jure hereditario, partim conquista bellico, obtinerat. Fuerunt autem præfati nuncii præelecti de cunctis illis regnis, qui et apparatu et facetia cunctos illarum partium dominos antecellere videbantur. Quorum præcipuus erat Episcopus Solucensis, quod vocabulum resolvitur lingua Danica "De Anselowe," qui mecum diu contulit de Sancto Albano, cujus peroptime novit historiam. Novit etiam quod habuit doctorem et magistrum, sed fabeatur se nescire nomen ejus, de quo petiit informari; quod et factum est. Iste Episcopus exposit prædicavit in Latinis coram Rege, et pro maximo clericó reputabatur.

The Bishop of Anselowe, one of the envoys, discourses on the history of St. Alban.

The envoys press the suit of the King of Denmark.

Cæteri nuncii, videlicet, quinque milites, exequentes injunctum sibi negotium, constanter insteterunt pro dicto matrimonio, dicentes dominum suum, Regem, puellam regiam præ cunctis creaturis mundialibus a-

1 Repeated in orig. 2 Repeated in orig. 3 faciesia in orig.
fectasse; in tantum, ut promiserit constituere illam Re-
ginam regnorum omnium prænominatorum, nec petere
 cum illa dotem vel divitiis, sed solum corpus virginis
nominatae. Rex vero, accersito Archiepiscopo Cantua-
riensi, qui nondum discesserat ab Eboraco, consuluit cum
eo et Consilio suo, quod tunc aderat, de dicto negotio;
et expost, honorans multum nuncios, præbuit eis bonam
spem expeditionis negotii pro quo venerant. Hæc est
illa Regina, multis nationibus formidabilis, quæ, de-
posita muliebri mollitia, ausa est armis indui, ferrum-
que, fera, tractare; quod dicitur evenisse tali causa.—

Maritus suus, inferens bellum Regi Suaviae, circum-
ventus insidiis, ab eo peremptus est. Regina vero, jam
viro viduata, cum dedignaretur secundas nuptias, et
filius suus esset parvulus, et gens sua scortis et otio
dedita, excitavit animos juvenum, ut desiderarent bel-
lum, et, collecto grandi exercitu, dixit inesse menti suæ
vindicare dominum suum peremptum a Rege Swavo-
rum. Nec mora,—juvenes, illecti promissis Reginae, quæ
multa fuere, 1 secuti sunt eum in Suaviam, ubi com-
missio prælio, peremerunt eum, et totum regnum suum
ditioni Reginae subdiderunt. Sed si regnum Norwagiae
tali modo, vel alio, consecuta fuerit, incertum mihi est.
Notorium tamen est eam hactenus regnasse super tria
regna, et nunc illa filio tradidisse.

Circa tempus illud, Flandrenses et Britones, simul
juncti, combusserunt villam de Horneseye, ubi Rex
modernus applicuit, quando venit ad vendicandum
hæreditatem suam, et progredientes, incenderunt et
alias quasdam vicinas conjunctivas; et, arrepta præda
cum captivis, regressi sunt ad mare. Quos viri de
Hul, armatis septem navibus, persecuti sunt, et ceperunt
omnes; sic quod non unus quidem evaserit ex eisdem.
Quos, cum tota præda sua, traxerunt 2 ad Hul, et
naves suas, numero decem et sex.

A favourable answer is given to the envoys.

How the Queen mother of Denmark had avenged her husband's death, and conquered Sweden.

1 secute in orig. 2 a in orig.
A.D. 1405.

The King pursuing, the Earl of Northumberland flies to Scotland.

Berwick Castle is surrendered to the King.

He captures Alnwick and other Castles.

Misfortunes overtake the King in Wales, through great inundations.

He demands succour of the clergy.

Counsel given to the King by certain knights, against the Archbishop of Canterbury and the Bishops.

Interea Rex, firmans vultum contra Comitem Northumbriæ, et rebelles ibidem, continuavit iter suum donec veniret Berwycum; sed Comes Northumbriæ, non audens expectare tanti turbinis commotiones, fugit in Scotiam, et Dominus de Bardolf cum eo; recepti sunt sub fide Domini David Fleming. Rex autem, cum cognovisset fugam Comitis, mandavit hiis qui erant in Castello, ut redderent illud sibi. Qui cum negassent se id facturos, incendit gnumam magnam, cujus lapis delecit partem unius turris, et inclusos tantum interruit, ut mallent objicere se sponte gladiis, quam expectare secundum ictum. Reddum est ergo Castrum, et de custodibus partim fuere decollati, partim carceribus mancipati; quo recepto et pro votis disposito, Castellum de Alnwyk et caetera castra Comitis redditia sunt faciliter in manus Regis.

Quibus successibus Rex mente elevatus, redidit incunctanter in Walliam; ubi, e contrario, nil sibi omnino cessit prosperum, sed infortuniate omnia gerebantur. Quapropter redire coactus est, nullo perfecto negotio scriptura digno, praeter id, quod perdidit currus, carectas, et plaustra, redeundo, ad numerum quadraginta, cum thesauro impertiabili et coronis suis, subvenientibus repente aquis.

Venit ergo Wigorniam; quo vocavit Archiepiscopum et multos Episcopos regni, ad colloquium. A quibus petiit avide succurrī sibi, eo quod cernere possent infortunium quod accidisset. Cumque different dare responsum, fuerunt illic milites, qui laudaverunt Archiepiscopum et Episcopos, qui convenerant, despoliandos thesauris quos attulerant pro viarum expensis, et equis suis; dicentes illos melius sufferre posse penuriam quam Regem et milites qui bona sua pro regni negotiis amisissent. Archiepiscopus autem, indignatus contra eum qui ista censuerat,—“Vellum,” inquit, “quod tu primus esses, qui me despoliare prae- sumeres. Per Sanctum,” ait, “Jacobum, nihil de
REGIS ANGLÆ. 415

"meo reportares, nisi illud diris verberibus mercareris." A.D. 1405.

Rex vero se gessit mitius, orans ut sibi 1 aliquale subsidium providerent. Archiepiscopus respondit, se cum clero super isto negotio in proximo 2 habiturum.

Circa dies istos, Galli, facto grandi apparatu, vene-runt cum centum quadraginta navibus ad succursum Howeni Gleyndor, et applicuerunt in portu de Millesford; amissis primo, præ defectu aquæ recentis, pene omnibus equis suis. Dominus de Berkle et Henricus Pay combusserunt ex eisdem navibus quindecim in eodem portu. Gallici cum venissent ad Howenum, animaverunt eum ad obsidionem urbis Merlini, quæ nunc "Kaermerdyn" appellatur. Cujus defensores, cum non possent resistere, reddiderunt urbem, salvis bonis omnibus, et personis; et obtinuerunt patentes litteras ab Howeno libere et sine indemnitate recedendi ad alia loca Regis in Wallia, vel in Angliam, si maluis-sent.


In Translatione Sancti Martini, combusta est villa Royston de Royston.

In Translatione Sancti Benedicti, obiit Abbas Sancti Augustini.

Per idem tempus, quidam latro, arte serrator, dum coram Justiciario, Willelmo Cokayn, astitisset, et sci-visset pro certo se moriturum, ut horam meritæ mor-tis suspenderet, dixit se magnum commodum Regi procuraturum, si vivere permetteret ad horam. Qui, data sibi copia dicendi quæ vellet, accusavit quinqua-

1 aliqualem in orig. "silium" seem to be omitted.
2 The words "Parliamento con-
A.D. 1405. ginta novem Abbates et Priores, et alias honorabiles personas ecclesiasticas, de subventione pecuniaria, quasi facta per eos, Howeno Gleyndor; inter quos præcipue, Abbatem de Rameseye, de cujus parte, ut asseruit, fuit sepe nuncius ad deportandam pecuniam hosti Regis.


The Earl of Arundel Eo tempore venit in Angliam, cum magnificentia et
glossia, filia notha Regis Portugaliae, Comitii Arundeliae, A.D. 1405, marries the illegitimate daughter of the King of Portugal.

conjugio copulanda. Quam duxit magnifice Londoniis, in praesentia Regis et Reginae, multorumque nobilium, in crastino Sanctae Katerinae.

In festo Conceptionis Sanctae Mariae, Domina 1 Regis filia, proclamata est Regina Dacie, Norwegiae, et Suaviae, sive Suessiae, in praesentia nunciorum qui eam venerant petituri.

Nuncii Domini Papae venerunt hoc anno, missi pro certis negotiis ad Regem et Archiepiscopum; quibus Dominus Cantuarias, in reditu, providit subsidium, non generale quidem, propter taxas frequentes in regno, sed ab amicis et exemptis velut emendicatum. Et inter ceteros scriptit Abbati Sancti Albani, supplicans ne huic deesset auxilio, quia ei competebat, ratione sue exemptionis, specialius respicere nuncios a Domino Papa missos. Unde rogavit ut provideret eis, hac vice, de decem marcis. Quod Abbas libenter fecit;—sed hoc anno sequenti.

Anno gratiae millesimo quadringentesimo sexto, et A.D. 1406. Henrici Regis, a Concaestu 2 [Quarti], septimo, tenuit Rex Natale apud 3

Hoc anno, Dominus Rogerus de Waldene debitum naturae solvit, quarto Nonas Januarii; qui notabiliter, sub brevi tempore, sensit mutari fortunae faciem, dum de pauperculo factus est regni Thesaurarius, et confestim Archiepiscopus; dum exularet, 4cum repositum erat, vide licet, Dominus Thomas de Arundelia, et mox dejectus et privatus per longa tempora. Tandem levatus iterum in thronum honorificentissimum Londoniarum, non permis sus est cernere finem anni.

Hoc in tempore, Dominus Papa excommunicavit publice peremptores Ricardi Scrup, nuper Eboracensis shop of the Archbishops of

1 "Philippa" is the name omitted. in orig.
2 Omitted in orig. 4 Sic in orig.
3 The name of the place is omitted
A.D. 1406.
York are excommunicated.

Prolonged sitting of Parliament; disastrous consequences thereof to the constituencies.

Defeat of the Welch, and death of a son of Glendower.

A new grant made to the King, by the clergy.

Discontent caused thereby.

The Earl of Northumberland and Lord Bardolf fly to Wales.

Civil war in Scotland, and truce with England, on land.

Archiepiscopi; et Dominus Papa, superatis adversariis, creat Romae novum Senatorem, et recuperat terras olim sibi debitas, a Roma usque Mediolanum.

Eo tempore, inchoatum est Parliamentum, quod duravit inutiliter fere per annum. Quia postquam milites Comitatum Regi subsidium concedere distulissent, in fine tamen fracti, quod petebatur concesserunt, ad duplex damnum communitatis: nam expensae militum pene æquiparabant subsidium expetitum.

Per id tempus, in die Sancti Georgii, conflixerunt cum Walliciis Anglici, et ecciderunt ex Walliciis mille viri; inter quos, alter filius Howeni Gleyndor occidus est.

Eodem vero tempore, concessa fuit Regi per cerum nova taxa, levanda de presbyteris stipendiariis et Fratribus Mendicantibus, ac alis religiosis qui annalibus celebrabant; ut, videlicet, quilibet talis solveret Regi dimidiam marcam, in supportatione cleri, qui semper onus portabat eorum. Qua de causa fuit murmurem inter presbyteros et hujusmodi religiosos, maxime pro novitatis introductione, quia in posterum timebant consimiliter se taxandos. Inde exivit proverbium, quod nullus Rex unquam perante sibi fecisset tot presbyteros oratores.

Per idem tempus, Comes Northumbriæ et Dominus de Bardolf, qui in Scotiam fugerant, suspiciences quod Scoti eos vellent reddere Regi Angliæ, pro commutatione quorundam qui captivi in Anglia detinebantur, monitu Domini David Flemyng, qui dixit eis Scotiae conspirationem, fugerunt in Walliam. Ob quam causam, idem David a Scotis est interfactus. Propter cujus occasionem factum est dissidium in Scotia, quo commovebantur omnes ad omnia; in tantum quod cogebantur, invalescente inter eos discordia, petere treugias annales, quas Rex concessit eisdem. Quibus initis et firmatis in terra, Scoti miserunt per æquora filium

1 factus in orig.
Regis sui, et hæredem, ut coalesceret, et informaretur A.D. 1406. in Francia de facetia et lingua Gallica. Qua tempes-
tate, viri de Cleye, sulcantes maria, fortuitu ceperunt
eum et quemdam Episcopum, Comitemque de Orkeneye,
quibus commissus fuerat a patre suo, et ad Angliam
dedexerunt, Regique dederunt. Rex vero, resolutus in
jocos, dixit,—“Certe si gratitudo viguisset inter Scotos,
mihi misissent hunc juvenem, docendum et alendum;
” namque et linguam Gallicam ego novi.” Positique
sunt in Turri Londoniarum dictus juvenis et Comes
Oreadum, Episcopo per fugam elapsa.

Medio tempore, durante Parliamentum, eliminati sunt
Britones familiares Reginnæ, cum duabus filiabus ejus-
dem, a regno, ex ipsius Parliamenti decreto.

Eo tempore velificaverunt versus Walliam naves Gal-
líce 1 viginti octo; ex quibus captae sunt octo, cum
multis armatis; reliquaeque in Walliam evaserunt.

Hoc anno, sexto-decimo die mensis Junii, fuit eclips-
sis solis, mane, inter sex de campana, scilicet, post
medium noctem, hora quasi sexta.

Mercatores, hoc tempore, deputati ad maris custodiam,
ceperunt naves quindecim onustas vino et cera. Qua-
propter, cera de meliori foro vendebatur; sed nihil de
vini pretio minuebatur, potentibus illud rapientibus ad
usus suos.

Papa contulit Archiepiscopatum Eboracensem Ma-
gistro Roberto Alum, Cancellario Oxoniensi, tunc in
Curia existenti; unde Rex indignatur, et contradicit.

Item contulit Thomaæ de Langele Episcopatum Dunel-
mæ, vacanatem per decessum Walteri Skyrlow; quam-
quam idem Thomas fuisset electus per Capitulum

Hac aèstate, Rex et Regina perduxerunt puellam The young
virginem, Regis filiam, ex prima Regis conjugia pro-

---

1 Tria iunta et octo, in Walsingham, II. p. 273.
2 Quy, if not "Eboracense."
A.D. 1406.
is escorted
to Lynn, on
her road to
Denmark.

creatam, ad villam de Lenna; ubi sensura fuit navem,
transfretatura in Daciam, ad sponsum suum, Regem.
Hane comitabantur nobiles, inter quos Episcopus Ba-
thoniensis et Dominus Ricardus, frater Ducis Eboraci,
precipui extitere. Qui magnam maris difficultatem
passi, tam in exitu quam regressu, in Adventu Domini
redierunt, parum vel nihil boni de patria referentes.

Fatebantur tamen Regem decentis formae juvenem,
vivacem, fortum, agilem, modicum facieit scientem, sed
tamen, pro modulo suo, illos benignissime suscipiantem:
patriam vero incultam et asperam, sic quod nullum
ibi triticum crescere videatur, sed frumentum illuc de
exteris regionibus comportetur. Et causam dicunt,
quia Regina, postquam Suaviam conquisivit, redit in
terram suam; non habens unde remuneraret exercitum,
sparsim vagari per regionem per binos et ternos. Qui
mane vel sero domos intrantes patrumfamilias, de-
donentes arma sua, invaserunt ibi per biduum, sive
triduum, vel quanto tempore placuit; durantibus victu-
alisibus, cuncta reperta in locis talibus, velut propria,
praesumptes, nec in exitu quicquam pro victualibus
persolventes. Haec ergo causa est sterilitatis patriae,
et neglectae culture. Hos "wo men" appellant incolae,
quia per tales oppressiones faciunt sibi vae.

Quarto Nonas Augusti, quando celebratur solemnitas
Inventionis Sancti Albani, Anglorum Protomartyris,
publicata sunt multa miracula facta per eundem Mar-
tyrem, in processione coram populo qui tunc aderat,
numeroso; videlicet, de puella submersa apud molen-
dinum de Sopwelle, cujus corpus etiam sub rota, dum
volveretur, magno aquae impulsu pertransierat, vitae
reddita per dicti Sancti merita.1—

1 At this point the Annals end, somewhat abruptly; page 136 of the
Volume.
INTERPOLATIONS

in

MS. COTTON. FAUSTINA B. IX., FOLS. 189 AND 198.
INTERPOLATIONS

IN MS. COTTON. FAUSTINA B. IX.,

FOLS. 189 AND 198.

[Fol. 189. Instead of the passage—"Hoc anno
" sensu suo," in Walsingham’s History, Vol. II.,

p. 212.]

Eodem anno Rex Franciae, dum moveret expeditio-
nem contra Ducem Britanniae, ut dicitur, minus justa,
incurririt phrenesim repentinam, cœpitque furere et in
vicinos irruere, multos perimere, plurimos mutilare;
donec ingeniouse captus et constrictus esset. Perduravit-
que in hac amentia, semetipsum dilaniens et discerpens,
ac manus et brachia sua mordens, donec calor æstivus
transisset. In hyeme vero cœpit paulisper infirmitas
mitigari, et ipse redditus est sobrietati priori. Sed
redeunte calore vernali, furuit sicut prius.

Ferunt quidam quod cujusdam monachi, et cujusdam
militis, incantationibus et veneficiis talem phrenesim
Rex incurrit; qui postea perempti sunt pro tanto sce-
lere perpetrato. Hii nempe inculserant in olla lutae
bufonem permaximum et lacertum, qui concatenati fue-
runt catena aurea; et ollam, cum nocivis vermibus,
foderunt in terra, in angulo regalis pomærii, ubi Rex
spatìari et oblectari solebat. Qui mox ut pervenit ad
illum angulum, cœpit furere, et arborum ramos confrin-
gere; et si securum vel gladium, aut bipennem, potuit
invenire, arbores eedere consuevitt, et semetipsum adeo
fatigare donec pene deficeret in eo halitus. A quo
loco cotidie lassus reportabatur ad cameram, ubi post
somnum cœpit habere melius. Sed mox ut vires recu-
pissset pristinas, nullus eum detinere potuit quin om-

\(^1\) per is inserted here in orig.
nino ad dictum locum pomcerii festinaret. Quo cum pervenisset, confestim, sicut prius, furuit; irruit in familiares, decerpes vineas vel ramos arborum, et se mirabiliter defatigans. Tantaque fuit vis incantationis, ut dum bene sibi esset in camera, non posset ibi contineri, quin semper appeteret noxium sibi locum.


Hæc Regina Franciæ retulit nuncio Regis Angliæ, monstrans sibi locum in pomcerio, ubi dicta animalia fossa fuere.

[Fol. 198. After “principio officii funeralis,” in Walsingham’s History, Vol. II., p. 215; and in page 169 ante.]
APPENDIX.
APPENDIX.

LIBER DE BENEFACTORIBUS MONASTERII SANCTI
ALBANI, COMPENDIOSE CONJECTUS.
[MS. Coll. Corp. Christi, Cant. No. VII.]

Post primi parentis præcipitium, qui, tactus typo
superbiae, astu serpentino, per gustum cibi vetiti, cum
tota sua posteritate, mortis imperio se subjecit, cœpit
inimicus \(^1\) homo, diabolus, in totum genus humanum jus,
quod non per naturam humanitatis sed per culpam
habuit, exercere; et more tyrannico, utpote invasor, in
messem alienam falcem mittere, et humanum genus,
sæ ditioni subjectum fraudulenter, violenter opprimere,
et oppressum non solum miserabiliter, immo immiser-
icorditer, detinere. Cujus oppressioni compatiens miseric-
cordiarum Dominus, cujus est natura bonitas, cujus
opus misericordia, et de parentis \(^2\) protoplasti frauda
facta condolens, statuit, per Filium suum unigenitum,
mortalium genus eripere a servitute tyrannica, et ad
statum innocentia, a quo deceptum deviaverat, miseri-
corditer reparare.

Igitur Dei Filius, secundum plenitudinem temporis,
quam divini consilii inscrutabilis altitudo disposit, re-
conciliandam Auctori suo, naturam assumpsit humanam,
ut inventor mortis, diabolus, per ipsam quam vicerat,
vinceretur. In quo pro nobis magno et admirabili
jure æquitatis certatum est, dum Omnipotens Dominus
cum sævissimo hoste, non in sua majestate, sed in
nostra humilitate, congreditur, objiciens ei eandem for-

\(^1\) Probably in allusion to Matt. xiii. 28.

\(^2\) protoplasti in orig.
mam, eandemque naturam, mortalitatis quidem nostrae participem, sed peccati totius expertern.

In qua natura idem Deus et Dei Filius multa et varia tentamenta sustinuit; ac demum, ut arte artem falleret proditoris, et inde ferret antidotum, unde humanum genus idem hostis læserat, suspensus in ligne crucis, de eodem hoste triumphans, damnavit mortis imperium, et humanum genus de faucibus mortis eripuit, et cui tenebatur obnoxium jugum absolvit tyranni ce servitutis. Sicque celebri victoria Christi Dei, spolia sua perdidit coluber lividus, serpens antiquus.

Igitur Redemptor noster, memor fragilitatis humanæ, et quoniam ad malum ab adolescentia proni sumus, et non vivitur in humana carne sine peccato, quippe in nobis gerimus unde certamina toleramus, in terris locum expiationis statuit, Sanctam, videlicet, Ecclesiam, in qua non est ruga neque macula; quæ merito "Porta coeli," "Janua Paradisi" vocaretur, et esset; ubi in hac vita constituti possemus condignam satisfactionem facere pro commissis; et pro defunctorum fidelium animabus, qui citra condignum sua peccata ludentes a seculo discesserunt, et in locis penalibus divinam praestolantur misericordiam, cotidie Patri Filium im molare, atque aliis subvenire pietais operibus, hiis quibus præcipue pro rebus temporalibus sive spiritu alibus obligamur.

Venerabilis igitur pater noster, Dominus Thomas, Dei gratia, Abbas hujus Monasterii, cum nostri totius consensu CapituIi, statuit universis et singulis, vivis et defunctis, qui nobis et Ecclesiæ nostrae pro se vel caris suis, vivis seu defunctis, de bonis eis a Deo collatis pro voto aliquid erogaverint, spiritualia domus hujus beneficia imperti, eisdem plenam fraternitatem hujus Monasterii concedendo, ut sint nobiscum plene participes in Missis, Matutinis, Horis, eleemosynis, je-

---

1 *Dominus* in orig., the monastic form of the word. Abbot Thomas de la Mare is alluded to, who died A.D. 1396.
LIBER DE BENEFACTORIBUS. 429

 dniis, vigiliis, processionibus, disciplinis, orationibus, solemnibus et privatis, et omnibus aliis beneficiis quae fiunt in hoc Monasterio, sive huic Ecclesiae pertinentibus Cellis nostris.

Ut ergo hujus præcellentis beneficii partem scire cupientibus demonstremus, Missas, quas omni die ex consuetudine celebrari facimus, præter illas quæ per totum annum a centum, et eo amplius, monachis celebrantur, huic paginæ duximus inserendas.

Omni namque die in Monasterio tres Missæ per notam decantantur;—scilicet, Missa Matutinalis, Missa Beatae Virginis, et Missa Major. Sine nota vero, aliae tres certitudinaliter celebrantur;—una pro statu Ecclesiae, quæ semper est de Beata Virgine; alia pro benefactoribus specialiter, quæ semper est de Beato Albano; tertia, pro defunctis. Horum omnium beneficiorum fieri volumus participes hujus Monasterii benefactores; necnon et veniarum et relaxationum huic Ecclesiae a Summis Pontificibus, Archiepiscopis, et Episcopis, concessarum, puta, novem annorum, octies viginti decemque dierum, et omnium beneficiorum innumerabilium secretorum, quæ ex personarum devotione speciali, ad laudem Dei et suæ sanctissimæ Genitricis, et beatissimi patroni nostri Anglorum Protomartyris, Albani, atque Amphibi, et eorum quorun venerandæ reliquiae in nostra continentur Ecclesia, cum magna devotione et summa cordis contritione a fratribus persolvuntur.

Statuimus etiam omnium Benefactorum nostrorum nomina in praesenti conscribi matricula, et super magnum altare reponi, et ad celebrantis memoriam in subscripta oratione reduci.—

"Sanctorum tuorum intercessionibus quæsumus, Domine, et nos protege, et famulis et famulabus tuis quorum commemorationem agimus, vel quorum eleemosynas recepimus, seu hiis qui nobis familiaritate juncti sunt, misericordiam tuam ubique prætende;

1 Protomartiris in orig.
"ut, ab omnibus impugnationibus defensi, tua opitulatione salventur, et animas famulorum famularumque tuarum, omnium videlicet, fidelium, Catholicorum ¹ orthodoxorum, quorum commemorationem agimus, et quorum corpora in hoc Monasterio, vel in cunctis cæmeteriis fidelium, requiescant, vel quorum nomina super sanctum altare tuum scripta adesse videntur, electorum tuorum jungere digneris consortio, per Dominum nostrum, Ihesum Christum."

"Propitiare, Domine, supplicationibus nostris, et has oblationes, quas pro incoluntate famulorum famularumque tuarum, et pro animabus omnium fidelium Catholicorum orthodoxorum, quorum commemorationem agimus, et quorum nomina super sanctum altare tuum scripta adesse videntur, nomini tuo consecrandas deferimus, benignius assume; ut sacrificii praesentis oblatio ad refrigerium animarum eorum, Te miserrante, perveniat, per Dominum nostrum, Ihesum Christum."

"Purificet nos, quaesumus, Domine, et divini Sacramenti perceptio, et gloriosa Sanctorum tuorum oratio; et animabus famulorum famularumque tuarum, quorum commemorationem agimus, remissionem cunctorum tribue peccatorum, per Dominum nostrum, Ihesum Christum."

Gloriosus Rex Offa, Merciorum tenens gubernacula, corpore Beati Albani, Patroni nostri, de terra levato, fundavit istud Monasterium, possessionibusque ac multis libertatibus ditavit magnificè; ac non multo post, Romam petiit corporaliter, ut, sicut temporalibus et regalibus dignitatisbus hoc Monasterium ditavit in Anglia, ita illud nobilitaret privilegiis impetratis a Sede Apostolica. Et quia reperit Dominum Papam, Adrianum, videlicet, Primum, sibi favorabilem, exultavit spiritus ejus in Deo, prosperatore vitae suae. Contulit

¹ orthodoxorum in orig. ² cunctis in orig. ³ cunctorum in orig.
ergo ad honorem Dei et Beati Petri denarium, qui dicitur "Sancti Petri" hiis diebus, de maxima parte regni sui, ad sustentandum scholam peregrinarum Angliæ, vel aliarum nationum illuc confluenterum, ubi hi qui vel orationis gratia, vel expediendorum negotiorum causa, venerant, audirent et addiscerent linguam quam non noverant. Censum vero totum provenientem ex terris quas Sancto Albano contulerat, eidem Martyri assignavit, ut cunctis temporibus die Sancti Petri quæ dicitur "Ad Vincula," solveretur.

Hæc autem sunt nomina locorum 1 quos Rex Offa contulit húc loco.—


Egfridus Rex, gloriosi Regis Offæ filius patrissans, patris augens beneficia, contulit Ecclesiam Sancti Albani, primo anno regni sui, terram quinque maneriorum in loco dicto "Pynesfeld," cum terminis suis antiquis, et manerium de Sandrugge, et Tyresfeld; chartasque patris sui benigne cum sua serena concessione confirmavit, pro confirmatione regni sui, et sua prosperitate, nec non pro salute paternæ, suæque, animæ, et antecessorum suorum, Ecclesiæ suam per omnia salubriter protegendo.


Ethelredus Rex chartas et dona prædecessorum suorum, nobis datas, innovavit, et renovando confirmavit.

1 quœ in orig. 
2 Nomina successorum corum. — Marginal note, in an almost contemporary hand.
vit, domum istam pro viribus protegendo. Dedit etiam unum lapidem pretiosum Martyri pretioso, quem "onychem" vulgariter appellamus; qui dicitur multum conferre parturientibus.

Edmundus, Cnuto Danus,—amator Beati Albani ² Prothomartyris specialis,—Haraldus, Hardecnutus, Haraldus, Willelmus Conquæstor, Willelmus Rufus.


Stephanus Rex, ad petitionem Abbatis Roberti, et ob honorem Albani, Martyris gloriosi, permisit dirui Castrum de Kyngesbyri; ubi antiquis temporibus latebant quidam regales, nequam homines, Abbatiae nimis infesti et damnosi, dicentes se Regis esse fideles, et custodes pacis patriæ, cum potius pacem et patriam perturbarent.

Rex Henricus Secundus favorem Beati Martyris meruit immortalem, eo quod, in controversia mota inter nos et Episcopum Lincolniensem, nobis se præbuit favorabiliem. Cujus etiam industria tanta lis est sopita: qui insuper unam cuppam nobilissimam Beato Albano devote donavit, in qua posset reponi honorifice Corpus Christi.

Rex Ricardus, Anglicanae gentis decus et deliciae, ob nimium honorem quo colebat Martyrem, insignitus est, ut credimus, ubique bene gestorum titulis præliorum; et, quod præstantius est, gloriosos actus gloriösiore fine conclusit.

Rex Johannes, etsi suis extitit minus bonus, Beato tamen Martyri devotus fuit. Quare speramus eum in

---

¹ onicem in orig.
² Prothomartiris in orig.
³ This has been already named as given by King Offa: see page 431.
fine vitæ sue pœnitentiae gratiam consecutum, et in viam salvandorum fuisset directum; sicut patet per quasdam revelationes factas post mortem ejus.

Henricus Tertius, hujus Domus protector constantissimus, plures pallas, quas vulgo "baldekynos" dicimus, Beato Albano obtulit, quam omnes prædecessores sui, Reges. Decoravit eiam Ecclesiam duabus capis pretiosissimis; quarum una vocatur "Vinea" his diebus, altera "Paradisus," eo quod in ea ejectio Adæ de Paradisio nobiliter opere plumario figuratur.

Comes Ricardus, frater Henrici Regis, duo 1 huic Ecclesiae contulit baldekynos.

Edwardus, Primus a Conquæstu, obtulit ad majus altare unum pannum sericum, et alium ad altare Sancti Amphibali; et feretro, unam imaginem magnam argenteam deauratam.

Edwardus Karnerivan, cui Dominus nostris temporibus benedixit specialiter, ac inter Sanctos merito numeretur, istud Monasterium semper protexit regali potentia, et donis multiplicibus decoravit. Revera contulit Monasterio crucem auream, cum lapidibus pretiosis et diversorum Sanctorum reliquis, et meremium ad reparationem chori, cum centum libris argenti; atque refectorio unam cupam magnam, argenteam et auratam.

Edwardus de Wyndleshores, Rex, cunctis Regibus pietatis et clementiae praecociis praeverendorum, presentis Monasterii protector extitit, et amator, et suum patrocinium nobis efficaciter semper impendit.

Edwardus, Princeps Walliæ, Domini Edwardi de Windleshores, Regis, primogenitus, nos protexit brachio fortitudinis, et specialis amator Monasterii et monachorum extitit, ac donis pluribus et jocalibus tam Ecclesiam quam feretrum Martyris adornavit.

Ricardus, Secundus a Conquæstu, filius Edwardi

1 The letter u is inserted before this word.
APPENDIX.

Principis, vestigia patris sequens, obtulit feretro monile aureum, et, ad ornamentum Ecclesiae, duos pannos aureos, quorum opus, ad modum vineae consurgoendo, botros et ramos dilatat decentissime locis debitis et opportunis: et dedit Conventui centum solidos. Dedit insuper, ad reparationem portae de Tynemutha, quingentas libras.


Johannes, Dux Lancastriæ, pro anima Dominae Blanche, uxoris suæ, cujus corpus hic pernoctavit, contulit huic Ecclesiae duos pannos aureos, et contulit insuper, ad reparationem portæ Cellæ nostræ de Tyne-mutha, centum libras. Hic, hujus Monasterii et Abbatis 2 memorati amator præcipuus, eidem multotiens vina contulit, negotia promovit, et Ecclesiam suis magnificis et frequentibus oblationibus plurimum locupletavit.

Dominus Thomas Wodestoke, filius Regis Angliae, frater dicti Ducis Lancastriæ, Dux Gloversiæ, hujus Monasterii fraternitate recepta, obtulit Sancto Albano monile aureum circulare; in cujus medio cygnus albus, alis quasi ad volandum expansis, habetur, et in circuitu monilis 3 sapphiri, cum unionibus, pulcherrime sunt locati. Dedit insuper duos pannos aureos ad deferendum supra feretrum Sancti Albani, et duodecim pannos aureos campi rubri, operis varii, cum tribus pannis aureis coloris viridis; in viginti cappis chorali-

---

1 These entries, here denoted by brackets, are inserted in vacant spaces in pages 206, 207, and are of a later date.

2 Probably in allusion to Abbot Thomas de la Mare, who died A.D. 1396, and is mentioned in a preceding account, given in MS. No. VII., of the Abbots of St. Alban's.

3 saphiri in orig.
bus, per sacristam Monasterii, aurifrigiis pretiosis, sumptibus sui officii, adaptatis.

2 Domina Johanna, Principissa, magnis oblationibus sæpius Martyrem honoravit. Inter quas, nobile monile aureum ei dedit, et pro caritate Conventui centum solidos assignavit. Dedit insuper Domino Abbati unam cupam argenteam et deauratam, cum cooperculo ejsdem ponderis, pretio, imaginem insuper Sanctæ Mariae, tenentem puerum in manibus, de aumbour glauco, et faciebus et in manibus de aumbour albo.

5 Postea Willelmo Wathamstede, ad ornatum feretri Sancti Oswyni per dictum Abbatem collati; præter dolum vini quolibet anno plurimorum annorum, et alia pretiosa munuscula eidem Abbati per eandem sæpius collata.

Domina Constantia, conjux Domini Johannis, Ducis Lancastriæ, dedit fabricæ coquînae nostræ decem libras, et Abbati nostro memorato nobilem pannum aureum, coloris cœrulei, pro aurifrigiis capparum datarum per Ducem Gloucestriæ Ecclesiæ collatum. Obtulit insuper quoddam aureum vestimentum nobili pellura penula- tum, postmodum venditum, et in utilitatem Ecclesiæ conversum.]

6 Matildis Regina dedit nobis Bewyk et Lylleburne. Emma, Alienora, Margareta, Alienora, Margareta, Isabella.

Philippa obtulit unum pannum aureum pretiosum.

Domina Johanna, Principissa, magnis oblationibus sæpius Martyrem honoravit. Inter quas, nobile monile aureum ei dedit, et pro caritate Conventui centum solidos assignavit.

---

1 aurifrigiis in orig.
2 This passage, down to assignavit, is a mere repetition of the original text in page 208. See the text below.
3 Hiatus in orig.
4 tenentem in orig.
5 This passage appears to be incomplete.
6 The original text is here resumed, page 208.
7 Names of succeeding female benefactors.
8 assignavit in orig.
Henricus Percy, Comes Northumbriae, hujus domus protector efficax, et defensor, saepius pro nostris commodis insudavit, et pro nobis saepius intercessit, nostra negotiisque promovit. Cellae nostre de Tynemutha plura dona dedit; ac inter caetera, contulit ad fabricam ejusdem loci portae centum marcas. Contulit etiam Prioratu nostro de Tynemutha mille et amplius arbores, in subsidium reparationis domorum Prioris et Conventus, et tenentium, per Scotos

Dominus Thomas Beuchaumpe, Comes Warwycy, cum conjuge sua, Margareta Comitissa, fructuosus amator semper exitit hujus loci. Idem vero, cum uxor sua predicta, contulit ad opus refectorii duas grossas trubes.

Dominus Karolus de Bloys dedit Sancto Albano unum bonum pannum aureum, de quo fit capa modernis diebus.

Domina Margaretæ, Comitissa Northfolchiae, in Conventus fidens orationibus, dedit fabricæ coquinae viginti marcas, orans ut Dominum Johannem de Hastynges, Comitem quondam de Penbroke, in suis haberet orationibus commendatum. Cui Dominus Abbas et Conventus fraternitatem plenam nostri Capituli concesserunt. Item, contulit decem marcas; item, alias decem marcas; item, alias decem marcas. Item, Cellæ nostre de Bello Loco, vastatae per incendium, viginti marcas.

Domina Maria de Sancto Paulo, Comitissa Penbrochiae, legavit Ecclesiam Sancti Albani unam imaginem de Sancto Vincentio, argenteam et deauratam, in manibus quoddam scrinium, in quo quoddam os ejusdem Martyris continetur, bajulantem.

Domina Blanchia Wake, soror Capitularis, frequentibus oblationibus et munusculis memoratum Abbatem,

---

1 The later hand is here resumed, in the latter part of page 208.
2 nostræ in orig, by inadvertence.
3 destrucarum, or a similar word, is wanting here.
4 Dominus, the mediæval form, in orig.
5 imaginem in orig.
et suum Monasterium, honoravit; moriensque eidem Monasterio sexaginta solidos legavit.

Domina Elizaetha de la Souche dedit huic Ecclesiae unum vestimentum, scilicet, casulam, tunicam, et dalmaticam, cum stolis et manipulis, et tribus albis: quod vestimentum est de panno quem "baldekynum de ‘Damasco’ vocamus; dorsum vero et pectorale optime serico texuntur, et auro. Et quoddam frontale pro altari, pulchrum, quod habetur Redbournæ, ex dono Domini Thomæ Abbatis. Legavit etiam eidem Abbatu unum jocale argenteum pro Corpore Domini reponendo, seu deferendo, habens ¹ beryllum in medio, et crucem in summitate ejusdem, cum quadam parte ligni et sepulcri Domini inibi inclusa, Capellæ ejusdem Abbatis specialiter deputatum; cum viginti ² de opere serico textili ³ dicto "bewtrone," per dictum Abbatem Ecclesiae pro paruris Abbatum postmodum collatis.

Domina Maria Percy, soror Henrici, nobilis Ducis Lancastriae, et conjux Domini Henrici Percy, præter beneficia erga praefatum Abbatem, ut in ⁴ Gestis ejusdem præmittitur, multipliciter ostensa, contulit eidem Abbati pannum argenteum, coloris blodii, valde pretiosum; postea in capam chorum adaptatum, et Ecclesiae collatum. Contulit insuper unam cupam argenteam et deauratam, scutulis armorum sui generis redimitam; postea per eundem Abbatem Domino Thomæ Percy, suo filio, nostri Monasterii zelatori praecipuo, ob speciale memoriale suæ matris, liberaliter collatam].

⁵ Adrianus Primus, quem adavit corporaliter Offa Rex, ut istud Coenobium privilegiaret, istam Ecclesiam in specialem filiam adoptavit; et non solum fecit liberam, sed et ingenuam, in tantum ut nulli mortalium, sive

---

¹ beryllum in orig.
² The word is omitted.
³ dictum in orig.
⁴ See page 434 ante, Note 2.
⁵ The original writing recommences here, page 209 of the original.
Episcopo, sive Archiepiscopo, nisi soli Romanae Ecclesiae, subderetur.

Alexander Papa contulit nobis privilegia de processionibus, de Comitatu Hertfordiae, et de monialibus benedicendis; et de unamquaque caruca Hertfordensis Provinciae obolum unum feria sexta post Ascensionem Dominicam; et nummum unum in secunda festivitate Sancti Albani de unamquaque caruca; ut perpetuis temporibus persolvantur. Item, alius indulsit privilegium; —ut sententia cujuslibet Episcopi, in monachos Sancti Albani promulgata, irrita habeatur; et ne ullus Episcopus excommunicet monachos Sancti Albani, vel interdicat; et ne aliquis Episcopus parochianos suos prohibeat a communione monachorum Sancti Albani; et de clericis tonsurandis, et de pontificialibus ornamentis ubique gestandis.

Caüxtus Papa festivitatem Sancti Albani per totam Angliam celebrari constituit, et, ab ipso Vigiliarum die usque ad ejusdem solemnitatis Octavas, devote ad Ecclesiam venientibus de injuncta sibi peccatorum suorum penitentia duodecim dierum tribuit indulgentiam.

Cœlestinus corroboravit universa quæ illustris memoriae Reges Offa, et Egfridus, et Ethelredus, necnon et Henricus, aut alii fideles, de suo jure, nostro Monasterio contulerunt, aut in futurum concessione fidelium, sive oblatione, poterimus adipisci.

Gregorius privilegia prædecessorum suorum ratificavit, et illibata manere decrevit, in perpetuum honorem et, ¹devotionem Beatissimo patrono nostro, Albano, Anglorum Protonartyrion, in omni vita sua exhibens specialem.

Clemens Papa statuit ut Abbas Sancti Albani primus sit inter Abbates Anglie, et quod licet nobis celebrare divina in Interdicto Generali, etiam pulsatis tintinnabulis. Et quod licet Priori Sancti Albani, Abbathia vacante, cum consilio Capituli, Prioris Cel-

¹ A word appears to be omitted here.
larum 1 amovere; et quod licet Abbati sententiam excommunicationis ferre in omnes malefactores; et quod licet Abbati vestimenta sacerdotalia benedicere, et obventiones ecclesiarum in usus propios convertere. Item, alius contulit privilegium;—ne Abbas, vel alius monachorum Sancti Albani, teneatur respondere, admonitone non præmissa a Domino Papa; et quod nemini de subjectis suis, regularibus vel sæcularibus, liceat ab Abbatis judicio appellare. Item, quod licet nobis cantare “Gloria in Excelsis” ab Adventu usque ad Nativitatem Domini, et a Septuagesima usque ad Pascha, in praecipuis festivitatibus.

Urbanus indulsit ut Abbas Garinus absolveret ordinatos suos a suspensu 2 Episcopo, tam sæculares clericos quam religiosos; et plura alia concessit privilegia huic loco, quæ isthic inserere longum foret. Erat nempe cultor Beati Albani devotissimus, et ideo præsentis Monasterii peculiaris amator.

Lucius Papa concessit privilegium, quod non licet in Cellis nostris Abbatem constituere; et de Capellis vel Oratoriiis non construendis in parochia hujus Ecclesiae; et antiquitus concessa privilegia a suis prædecessoribus renovavit.

Adrianus Papa, de Sancti Albani territorio oriundus, pontificalia ornamenta concessit Abbati, et plura privilegia de libertatibus hujus Ecclesiae. Et ut memoria ejus semper haberetur in Ecclesia nostra, dedit Monasterio reliquias de Legione 3 Theba; propter quod statutum est, ut eorum festivitas ampliaretur, et duodecim lectiones propriaque legenda de eis in hac Ecclesia 4 legerentur. Dedit etiam insigne pallium quod Dominus Imperator sibi miserat, et sandalia pretiosa, et annulum pretiosissimum, necnon capam unam choralem, unde jam fit casula, quæ nomen Adriani retinet

1 ammove re in orig.
2 Qy. if not Episcopi.
3 Sic in orig., for Thebana.
4 legeretur in orig.
hiis diebus. Insuper et refectorio dedit unum cyphum murreum, in cujus fundo scribitur nomen ejus.

Honorius Papa, Tertius, hoc modo scripsit Archiepiscopis, Episcopis, et aliis ecclesiarum praefatis:

"Per Apostolica scripta mandamus, praecipiendo quatenus jura Ecclesiae Sancti Albani ita sollicite pro-
tegere et conservare curetis, sicut tenemini jura Ro-
manae Ecclesiae conservare."

1 Nicholas Papa, Bonefacius Papa, Sixtus Papa, Adrianus Papa, Alexander Papa.

Innocentius Papa, Tertius, scripsit Archiepiscopis, Episcopis, et aliis ecclesiarum praefatis, pro privilegiis Ecclesiae Sancti Albani conservandis.

Eugenius Papa, Tertius, Monasterium istud sub Beati Petri, et sua, protectione suscepit, et nominatim omnes possessiones nostras, antiquas et novas, auctoritate Apostolica confirmavit.

Pelagius Papa.

Innocentius Quartus dedit privilegium de exemptione Abbatis, Prioris, Praecentoris, Archidiaconi Sancti Albani, a cognitione causarum; et quod Abbas potest dispensare cum monachis suis non observantibus Statuta Gregorii Papæ.


Gregorius Nonus confirmavit huic Monasterio possessionem ecclesiae de Egingeham.

Johannes Papa.

Anastasius Papa confirmavit nobis possessionem ecclesiae de Lutona.

Benedictus Papa concessit in quinquennium benefactoribus claustri nostri indulgentiae centum dies.

Summa privilegiorum quæ isti et alii Papæ contulé-

1 All these Popes are named as having been benefactors to the Monastery.
runt huic Monasterio, se extendit ad octies viginti et duodecim.

Ethelredus, Episcopus Dorkceastræ, dedit Deo et Sancto Albano villam quæ dicitur Cirstiwa, Cyneumbæ, Tiwa.

Lanfrancus Archiepiscopus, Ecclesiæ istius ruinæ condolens, caritative contulit ad opus ejusdem Ecclesiæ mille marcas; terramque de Redburne, injuste ablatam, restituit cameræ monachorum. Insuper obtulit calicem aureum Sancto Albano de tribus marcis, quatuor capas, dalmaticam unam, et tunicam, et tria magna candelabra deargentata, et duo argentea de triginta marcis. In obitu vero suo centum libras Sancto Albano legavit, ex quibus tantum habuimus quinquaginta.

Robertus, Lincolniensis Episcopus, reddidit Sancto Albano Cynceumbam, quam injuste perdidit idem Martyr, et in obitu suo dedit nobis quadraginta sex libras.

Odo, Baiocensis Episcopus, ad instantiam Pauli Abbatis, dedit Sancto Albano tres hidas terre ad Apse, cum sylva quæ vocatur “Eywode”; pro quibus Abbas ei promisit viginti libras, sed ipse eas pro anima sua misericorditer perdonavit. Reddidit etiam villam quæ “Tywa” vocatur, violentia quorundam alienatam injuste ab Ecclesia Sancti Albani; et statuit ut desertviret victui monachorum.

Ricardus de Marisco, Dunelmensis Episcopus, compatiens debilitati potus Conventualis, contulit, intuitu pietatis, ad nostræ cervisiae meliorationem ecclesiam de Eglingham; ob quam rem meruit laudem sempiternam.

Walterus, Dunelmensis Episcopus, ad incrementum hospitalitatis hujus Domus, contulit nobis ecclesiam de Hertburne.

Ricardus de Bury, Episcopus Dunelmensis, multos et varios libros nobiles dedit nobis; quorum numerum

1 Sic in orig.; in the singular.
si quem scire delectat, ad armiariola quae in Ecclesia habentur recurrat.

Johannes, Episcopus Ardfordensis, praeter libros quam­plures utiles quos huic Monasterio contulit, dedit unam petram nobilem aerii coloris, distinctam albis maculis, quae dicitur vulgariter "serpentina," quae etiam furtur multum valere lunaticis; cujus forma est fere quadra, et circumligatur argento, in cujus margine plures reliquia continentur. Dedit etiam tres nobiles aureos annulos, in quorum uno habetur 1 sapphirus orientalis mirae magnitudinis; in alio, lapis qui dicitur "peridotus," sive "pederotes;" in cujus medio 1 saph­phirus excellentis pulchritudinis collocatur, et habet vir­tutem spasnum potenter refrenandi. Iste lapis ad modum clypei fere formatur. In tertio vero annulo alius 1 sapphirus includitur orientalis, sed minor quam prior de quo locuti sumus.

Henricus, Wyntoniensis Episcopus, frater 2 Regis Ang­gliæ, contulit huic Ecclesiae unum magnum annulum, rotundum et gemmatum; in cujus medio ponitur 1 saph­phirus remissi coloris, et in circuitu ejus quatuor margaritae, et quatuor granatae.

Johannes Hothom, Episcopus Elyensis, contulit Ecclesiæ Sancti Albani centum marcas.


Johannes Barnet, Episcopus Elyensis, jurium præ-

1 safrinus in orig. | 2 King Stephen.
sentis Ecclesiae fidissimus tutor erat; et contulit ad diversa opera Monasterii sex grandes trabes.

Dominus Thomas de Arundelle, Episcopus Eliensis, et postea Archiepiscopus Eboracensis et Cantuariensis, fructuosus amator hujus loci, contulit ad opus refectorii quatuor trabes magnas.

Robertus de Munbray, vir illustris, Comes Northumbrorum, penes Sanctum Albanum affectus, dedit Abbati Paulo ecclesiam Sanctae Mariae de Tynemute, in qua corpus Beati Oswyni, Regis et Martyris, requiescit; et postea, factus monachus in Ecclesia Sancti Albani, in sanctissima conversatione decedens, sepultus est in Capella Sancti Symeonis.

Willelmus de Albeneio, pinxerna Regis, simili ductus affectu penes locum istum, dedit Sancto Albano Cellam de Wymundham et manerium de Tynghester; quam donationem filius ejus, Willelmus de Albeneio, confirmavit.

Petrus de Waloniis, ob honorem Sancti Albani, concessit Cellam de Bynham huic Monasterio, tempore Pauli Abbatis.

Robertus de Totoneio dedit Deo et Sancto Albano ecclesiam Sanctae Mariae de Belvero, in Cellam.

Galfridus Camerarius, vir illustris, Deoque devotus, dedit Cellam de Walyngforde Sancto Albano.

Radulphus de Lymesy, Baro nobilis, dedit Deo et Sancto Albano Cellam de Hertforde.

Willelmus Pyperellus contulit huic Monasterio possessionem Cellae de Hatfelde.

Robertus de Albeneio dedit Sancto Albano Cellam de Bello Loco, et Capellam Sancti Macuti.

Elfhelmus, fidelis minister Ethelredi Regis, contulit Deo et Sancto Albano terram de Codecote.

Oswulfus, et Ayleiza, uxor sua, dederunt Deo et Sancto Albano terram quae "Stodham" dicitur; et Conventui, propter caritatem, quando susceperunt fraternitatem hujus domus, viginti solidos. Praedictam
vero terram dicta 1 Ayeliya dari procuravit huic Ecclesiae, pro anima prioris mariti sui, Ulfì.


Edwynus de Cadyngtone dedit huic Monasterio terram quæ vocatur “Waterforde,” et Beoronleam; et legavit insuper viginti boves et viginti vaccas.

Egelwinus þe Swarte, et Wynfleda, uxor ejus, dederunt Deo et Sancto Albano, tempore Regis Edwardi, ultimi ante Conquæstum, Redburnam, Greneburwe, Langeleyam, Thwantunam; et Wynfleda, uxor ejusdem, dedit huic Ecclesiae unam campanam, quæ diu vocabatur “Campana precum;” modernis vero temporibus fracta, cessit in augmentum campanæ quæ vocatur “Christus.”


Sexi, quidam Danus nobilis, devotus et praepotens, erga Sanctum Albanum affectus, dedit huic Monasterio Hehstantunam.

Had, quidam homo nobilis, et Cristina, uxor ejus, dederunt Sancto Albano, pro animarum suarum salute, Newenham et Beandisch.

Thurefleda, quædam religiosa matrona, dedit nobis Schenleam et Bridleam, in perpetuam eleemosynam.

1 Sic in orig.
Ethelbertus, quidam potens et nobilis in diebus suis, dedit nobis Cramforde, pro salute suae animae et redemptione peccatorum suorum.

Wulsinus, quidam alius magnus et dives, dedit Esendene Sancto Albano et monachis hujus loci.

Wulfsinus, temporibus suis homo honorabilis, dedit Sancto Albano Ealdenham et Atedich.

Aelfstanus, vir Deo devotus, et Ecclesiae, dedit Sancto Albano, et monachis sibi famulantibus, villam de Encesham.

Wulfgarus, minister Ethelredi Regis, dedit huic Monasterio terram quae "Waldene" vulgariter nominatur.

Matildis de Estuna dedit huic Ecclesiae terram suam de Owynges.

Godefridus de Rokamstude contulit Sancto Albano viginti quinque acras terrae in eadem villa.

Walterus de Valoniis dedit huic Ecclesiae villam de Bernere, perpetuo jure possidendam.

Willelmus de Merlowe, et Rohays, uxor ejus, dederunt huic Monasterio villam de Wulsyngtone.

Nigellus de Merstone dedit huic Monasterio decem solidatas terrae in civitate Londoniarum.

Ricardus de Crokesle dedit huic Ecclesiae octoginta quatuor acras terrae in Wrokushulle.


Beryngerius de Totoneio, et Albreda, uxor ejus, dederunt huic Ecclesiae Thorp et decimas de Sederynktone.


1 Repeated in orig.
Hardewynus de Scaliers dedit nobis villam de Brantefeld, cum ecclesia ejusdem villæ.
Willelmus de Bosrohard, et Adeliza, uxor ejus, dederunt nobis villam de Talyngtone, pro sustentatione monachorum.
Hugo de Bibliwurthe dedit huic Ecclesiae dimidiam hidam terræ in eadem villa de Bibliwurthe.
Adeliza, uxor Theodorici de Forho, dedit huic Ecclesiae unam hidam terræ in Grenestude, pro sua, suorumque, salute.
Rogerus de Burun dedit unam mansionem super ripam Thele, et unam acram prati; et in obitu suo legavit fratribus quinquaginta solidos.
Angodus de Lyndesey dedit nobis unam carucatam terræ in HerdreshiUe, pro amore Dei et Sancti Albani.
Rogerus de Hertforde dedit nobis unam domum in prædicta villa de Hertforde, et decimam suam de Boxa.
Alfricus de Hieg dedit Sancto Albano unam domum in Londoniis, reddentem sex solidos annuatim.
1 Godoleva, quaedam matrona Londoniæ, dedit aliam domum in eadem civitate, reddentem quinque solidos annuatim.
Willelmus, quidam clericus de Londoniis, dedit nobis dimidiam ecclesiam Sancti Albani, et dimidiam ecclesiam Sancti Michaelis, et domos quas habuit in civitate, quæ reddunt quatuordecim solidos omni anno.
Rogerus quidam, cujus cognomen non habetur, dedit quandam terram apud Welegam, quæ solembat reddere octo solidos annuatim.
Rodbertus, Comes Moretoniensis, et Almodis, uxor ejus, dederunt Sancto Albano unam virgatam et dimidiam hydam terræ: virga vero terræ jacet in Sudecote, et semis hyda in Redburna.

1 Or Godolena.
Juthota Comitissa dedit Sancto Albano tres virgatas terræ in Pottuna, pro anima sua, et pro animabus patris et matris suæ, et pro anima viri sui Walthini Comitis.

Leoericus, Diaconus, dedit quammad terram et domum in villa de Cantebriggia Sancto Albano.

Humfridus de Eueresdone dedit Deo et Sancto Albano duas acras terræ in eadem villa de Everesdone.

Manasses de Arsi dedit Sancto Albano quammad terram in Oxefordschire, quæ solebat reddere quadruginta solidos annuatim.

Henricus de Albeneio dedit Deo et Sancto Albano quammad villam quae vocatur "Wybaldyngtone."

Emma de Bradewey, et filius ejus, Hugo, dederunt Sancto Albano manerium de Bradeweye.

Hernulphus de Hesdin dedit unam carucatam terræ in Warwikschire, et ecclesiam de Eppestone, et decem libras.

Alueredus, cum uxoræ sua et filiis, pincerna Rodberti, Comitis Moretonii, dedit manerium septem carucarum, id est, Nortone in Warwikschire; et obtulit unum pallium Sancto Albano.

Nigelus de Wast dedit unam carucatam terræ quæ vocatur "Ceceynge," et deciam de Ryngetone, atque centum solidos. Et postea dedit ecclesiam de Mylebrok, et unam carucatam terræ, cum cæteris quæ ad ecclesiam pertinent; et ecclesiam de Hampthulle.

Nigelus de Stafforde dedit ecclesiam de Fortune, et unam carucatam terræ, et deciam dominii sui in eadem villa.

Wydo de Bailul dedit Sancto Albano et fratribus, ad victum eorum, unam virgatum terræ in Hehstansstune.

Willemus, Comes de Moritonia, reddidit Sancto Albano, et ad proprium victum monachorum, terram de Stanmere, quam Sanctus Albanus injuste perdiderat.

1 Earl Waltheof is meant. | 2 Repeated in orig.
Matildis, quædam vidua, filia Ermaldi de Hysdyng, dedit Sancto Albano dimidiam hidam in villa quæ vocatur “Hara,” pro anima viri sui, Willemi.

Hugo, filius Osberni, dedit Sancto Albano salinam unam apud Wyecum, et salinatorem, cum terra sua.

Humfridus de Kymebele dedit Deo et Sancto Albano ecclesiam ejusdem villæ de Kymebele.

Nigellus de Merstone dedit huic Ecclesiae, pro salute animæ suæ, ecclesiam de Tyrefelde, perpetuo jure possidendam.

Willelmus de Wedone, ob honorem gloriæ Protomartyris Anglorum, Albani, dedit nobis ecclesiam de Wynegrave.

Willelmus de Albeneio contulit huic Monasterio ecclesias de Wulsthorp et de Redmyld.

Walterus Blancfront dedit Deo ut Sancto Albano ecclesiam de Potesgrave, in puram et perpetuam eleemosynam.

Willelmus de Lavale dedit huic Ecclesiae villam quæ “Ducentuna” appellatur, in regione Northanhambrorum.

Willelmus dedit huic Monasterio, ad usum monachorum, ecclesiam de Walyngtone.

Nigellus de Berwilla dedit huic Ecclesiae unam hidam terre in Middiltone, cum decimis ecclesiae ejusdem villæ.

Ricardus de Clohale, miles devotus, dedit altari gloriosæ Virginis Mariæ, ad quatuor cereos, unum calicem aureum.

Johannes, rector de Hodicru’, ad augmentum cultus divini, dedit huic Ecclesiae campanam peroptimam.

Gerardus Piscarius dedit decem solidatus annui redditus ad coquinam, in civitate Londoniarum.

---

1 *Ducentuna* in Nero D. vii., fol. 95, a later account of the Benefactors of St. Alban’s: Dissington, in

2 Hiatus in orig.
Willelmus, filius Simonis, dedit huic Ecclesiae quasdam decimas in villa de Hatfeld, ad officium scriptorii. Alanus de Wyntonia dedit Deo et Sancto Albano dimidiam terrae in villa quae vocatur “Bishophescote.”
Galfridus de Childewik dedit huic Ecclesiae decimam de Wand, in honorem Sancti Albanis, Anglorum Protomartyris.
Nigellus Molendinarius dedit coquinæ monachorum annuum redditum quattuor solidorum.
Willelmus de Albeneio, et Cecilia, uxor ejus, dederunt huic Ecclesiae ecclesias de Talyngtone et de Barstone, et duas carucatas terræ, cum molendino, in villa de Belvero.
Adam, filius Willelmi de Hatfeld, dedit huic Ecclesiae annuum redditum quinquaginta solidorum in Newebery.
Ailwardus et Leofwynus dederunt huic Ecclesiae quattuor hidas terræ in Hehstanstuna.
Henricus de Keneswurtha dedit huic Monasterio unam virgatem terræ in Potesgrave.
Rogerus de Eywode, pro salute animæ suæ, dedit coquinæ monachorum redditum unius marciæ.
Aegelwynus Cotecnapa dedit unam domum in civitate Londoniarum, reddentem octo solidos annuatim.
Willelmus Luvet dedit Sancto Albano totam decimam de Niutuna, de omnibus rebus, exceptis molendinis : et de Mortuna et de Flitewyk dedit medietates decimarum suarum omnium rerum, exceptis similiter molendinis.
Rodbertus, Caementarius, tempore Pauli Abbatis, circa reaedificationem hujus Ecclesiae fideliter laboravit ; et singulis annis, quamdiu vixit, dedit decem solidos Sancto Albano.
Bermundus de Sancto Audoeno, et Cana, uxor ejus, dederunt Sancto Albano decimam omnium rerum unde

1 Protomartiris in orig.
recte decimari debet, quantum feodo suo pertinet, in Bolituna, et in Estawicowurthe, et in Eastuna.

Thurstanus, frater Willelmi de Mara, dedit decimam suam de villa quae dicitur "Wilia;" et Rodbertus de Mara simili modo decimam suam dedit.

Humfridus de Cnibwurthe dedit huic Monasterio decimam suam de Esfresduna, ad sustentationem monachorum.

Walterus Giffardus dedit unam acram terrae, et domos quas habuit in Walyngforde, quae reddunt novem solidos omni anno.

Normannus de Muntsaltrel dedit duas partes decimae suae de Holepol et de Pyri, et unam virgatam terrae.


Serlo de Marcer, et Mabilia, uxor ejus, conceserunt Sancto Albano in perpetuum decimas de Perendon, Tropyngtone, et de Fishide, pro salute animae suae, et filiorum suorum.

Edwardus de Cantebrigia, et mater ejus, deduerunt Sancto Albano ecclesiam Sancti Benedicti, quae est in Cantebrigia.

Robertus Desbaus dedit decimam suam de Morodone Deo et Ecclesiae Sancti Albani, perpetuo jure possidentam.

Alueredus et uxor ejus deduerunt huic Monasterio decimam suam de Craudena, ob honorem Sancti Albani.


\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{1} Correctly Le Marcer, or Mercer. He was Sheriff of London in the year 1206, Henry de St. Alban's being his colleague; and Mayor, A.D. 1214 and 1217–1222.\textsuperscript{2} Probably, "Trumpington," now Trumpington, near Cambridge.}
Henricus de Albeneio, et fratres sui, Willelms et Nigellus, dederunt Ecclesiae Sancti Albani ecclesiam de Cloppehille, cum terra ad eam pertinentem, scilicet, dimidia hida, et decimas ipsius villæ et de Cota et de Kegenho; et firmaverunt donationem quam fecerat pater eorum.

Nigellus contulit eidem Ecclesiae Sancti Albani unam ecclesiam Sanctæ Trinitatis, et dimidiam ecclesiam Sanctæ Mariæ in Walingford, et triginta acras terræ extra civitatem, et manerium de Henred.


Lyolf, quidam ex nobilibus hujus Provinciae, cum uxor sua, dedit duas campanas magnas, tempore Pauli Abbatis.

Rodbertus de Oili dedit Deo et Sancto Albano centum et decem libras, et unum bonum cyphum corneum.

Willelms de Albencio dedit Deo et Sancto Albano omnes decimas suas in Snedesham, in Fretginges, in Flicham, in Bruneham, in Grunestuna, in Pikenham. Dedit etiam terram duarum carucarum, quarum una jacet in Fretginges, altera in Bruneham.

Ivo de Tigernullia, cum uxor et filio, Beringario, dedit huic Ecclesiae ecclesiam in villa quæ vocatur “Glestone,” et unam carucatam terræ in eadem villa.

Willelms Mescinus, et uxor sua, Cecilia, dederunt decimam villæ de Netuesby in Northamptonschire.

Alanus, filius Piroti, dedit Sancto Albano Capellam suam de Kenontone, cum decima ipsius villæ.

Willelms Noreys, villanus Sancti Albani, et Margareta, uxor ejus, propter bona multimoda quæ fecerunt in vita sua nostro Monasterio, annuum post obitum solenne meruerunt Officium Mortuorum, una cum participatione fraternitatis hujus domus. Magnitudo beneficiorum suorum poterit conjici per magnitudinem cari-
tatis operum illis ab Abbate et fratribus in perpetuum concessorum; ac per hoc insuper, quod unanimi consensus Abbatis et confratrum, Abbas ad providendum annuum redditum quadraginta solidorum, ad reficiendum Conventum in eorum anniversarii die, fuerat obligatus. Nullus ergo miretur quod donorum istorum quantitatem reticemus; quia ipsi fortassis homines, memores illius Evangelii,—1 "Nesciat sinistra tua quid faciat dextera tua," eleemosynam suam abscondere decreverunt.

Adam de Belvero, vir devotus et nobilis, de Sancto Albano, condonavit huic Ecclesiae debitum ducentarum triginta et trium marcarum; et contulit altari Sancti Blasii calicem aureum, in pede decerter ornatum lapidibus pretiosis, ponderis quadraginta solidorum, et unam casulam de rubeo examito.

Laurentius Clericus condonavit huic Ecclesiae debitum centum librarum et quindenarum marcarum, et dedit unum annulum pretiosum cum carbunculo, qui "rube" vulgariter appellatur.

Robertus de Hertforde, Decanus Sarum, dedit huic Ecclesiae centum marcas, et unum calicem deauratum, et unam cuppam argenteam et deauratam.

Dominus Radulphus de Hengham, clericus, perdnavit huic Ecclesiae.

Walterus de Hamundesham, fidelis minister huic Ecclesiae, inter villanos Sancti Albani peremptus est, pro jure istius Ecclesiae, et libertate.

Domina Petronilla de Banstede dedit Sancto Albano unum superaltare rotundum, de lapide iaspidis subtus, et in circuitu argento inclusum; super quod, ut fertur, Sanctus Augustinus, Anglorum Apostolus, celebravit. Obtulit etiam duas phialas, quarum corpora crystallina

1 Matt. vi. 3.
2 Domnus in orig.
3 The conclusion of this sentence is wanting; it is supplied by "qua-
sunt, orificia vero, et pedes, argentea; quae gemmis et margaritis ornantur.

Magister Reginaldus de Sancto Albano, affectus penes eundem Martyrem specialiter, et istud Monasterium, construxit Capellam gloriosae Virginis in orientali parte Ecclesiae, ubi cotidie Missa per notam, in honorem ejusdem Virginis, celebratur.

Dominus Willelmus de Clyntone, Comes Huntyndoniae, dedit huic Ecclesiae unum vestimentum; scilicet, capam, casulam, dalmaticam, atque tunicam, cum albis, stolis, et manipulis, de panno quem "actam," dicimus; cujus corpus est aereus, in reliquis vero partibus resultat auri fulgor.

Johannes Aynel contulit Sancto Albano unum lapidem pretiosum, excellentis pulchritudinis, ad ponendum super feretrum ejusdem Martyris, quem vulgariter vocare solemus "sapphirum lupum."

Willelmus Pursere, de Sancto Albano, et Matildis, uxor ejus, dederunt nobis reddítum in eadem villa, quae solet valere singulis annis quatuor marcas. Et præter plura alia bona quæ idem Willelmus, cum uxore sua, contulit, dedit ecclesiæ de Redburne unum tapetum cum capitali, duo linteamina, et unam cistam, longitudinis septem pedum.

[Domini Nigeullus Loryng contulit ad opus claustrī decem marcas; item, alia vice, ad idem opus decem marcas. Et contulit Conventu domum unum; et in morte perdonavit Abbati centum marcas.

Robertus Knollis, miles strenuus et devotus, Deo ac Beato Albano, nostro patrono, contulit, ad opera Monasterii, pro anima Dominae Constantiae, uxoris sue, decem marcas; quibus nostræ fraternitatis beneficium

---

1 *safrum* in orig.  
2 The original writing ends here, consists of additions of later date.
est impensum. Et post, idem Robertus dedit ad fabricam coquinae Conventus centum libras.

Dominus Galfridus Lucy, miles devotus, contulit huic Monasterio liberaliter quinque marcas. Cujus beneficio correspondere volentes, Dominus Abbas et Conventus decreverunt illum ab illo die inter Benefactores nostri Monasterii computandum.

Dominus Johannes de Sancto Albano, miles, legavit Sancto Albano plures annulos, in quibus multi continentur lapides pretiosi.

Dominus Thomas Fytlyng, miles, contulit ad idem opus claustri decem libras.

Dominus Ricardus de la Vache, miles, contulit huic Monasterio triginta libras.

Dominus Johannes Hay, miles, contulit ad opus claustri nostri sex solidos et octo denarios.

Dominus Ricardus Haveryng, miles, contulit ad opus refectorii unam trabem.

Dominus Willelmus Croysere, miles, contulit ad idem opus unam trabem.

Dominus Robertus de Walsam, praecentor Sarum, cui in perpetuum obligamur pro gratis impensis beneficiis, dedit per vices, ad opus claustri nostri, quadringentas marcas; et legavit huic Ecclesiae centum marcas, et summo altari pelvem, cum lavatorio, de argento puro, pro manibus ablueandis sacerdotum diebus festivis; et Beato Albano quoddam jocale aureum, et cuilibet monacho quadraginta denarios.

Dominus Bartholomaeus de Wendover, rector ecclesiae de Schakrestone, pro mercando utriusque stipendio, dedit nobis ducentas et quadraginta marcas, ut haberet inter nos corrodium, non multum onerosum, sed per-exile. Et cum illud corrodium non æquipolleret tantæ

---

1 This word may possibly mean quinquaginta.

2 Barthomeus in orig.
summæ pecuniae, fatae batur se id co maxime dedisse tantam summam, ut opus claus tri novi feliciori per ipsum consurgeret incremento. Et quoniam tam pium votum condigna remuneratiorne fraudari non debuit, totius consensu Conventus, impensum est nostræ fraternitatis beneficium, ipso illud cum summa devotione petente. Moriens tandem legavit Abbati viginti libras, et Priori viginti marcas, et cuilibet sacerdoti de Conventu unam marcam, et non sacerdotibus dimidiam marcum.

Magister Willelmus Burtoun, jurispritus, et clericus Archidiaconi hujus Monasterii, jura istius Ecclesiae illæsa triginta annis et amplius manutenuit. Et tandem vitae bonum finem faciens, quinque marcas ad opus claustri, et omnes libros suos utriusque juris, officio Archidiaconi voluntarie delegavit.

Dominus Johannes Roulonde, rector ecclesiae de Todyngtone, in hujus Monasterii causis laboravit indefessus, et, tanquam natus fuisset istius Monasterii comodo, semper perseveravit fideliter in utilibus hujus loci negotiis promoter indefessus. Qui dedit pro animabus Ricardi Ecleshale, et Clemenciae, uxoris ejus, et Johannis Stoke, quorum executor exiterat, ad opus magnæ portæ Monasterii, assensu Johannis Whytewelle, sibi coexecutoris, quinquaginta libras de eorum manerio de Walhale 1 provenientes. Qui etiam, ruinae claus tri nostri condolens, dedit ad opus ejusdem claustri viginti et tres libras, et Conventui viginti solidos pro animabus Johannis Pecok, et Edmundi, Matildis, et filiorum supradictorum Johannis et Edmundi, vide licet, Roberti, Johannis, et Johannis; ac etiam pro animabus parentum, amicorum, et benefactorum eorumdem. Item, dedit alia vice pro eisdem decem libras, ad opus campanilis, et Conventui decem libras. Et praestitit Domino Johanni Abbati septime ntas marcas ad per-

1 provenientibus in orig.
quisitionem praedii de Gorham. Et condonavit ejdem
Abbati octoginta marcas, quas recepisset de firma dicti
manerii, si in manu sua illud, prout potuit, tenuisset
usque ad finem octo annorum, videlicet, quolibet anno
decem marcas, quas incremento poterat recepisse de
praedio memorato. Nempe cum habuisse illud ad firm-
man annis octo ex emptione de Comitissa Oxonie, et
recepisset inde annis singulis quadraginta libras, post-
quam dictus Abbas adquisivit dictum manerium, per-
misit Abbatem habere profectus praedii pro quinquag-
inta marcis annuis, ut praedicitur, octo annis, quibus
in manu sua tenuisset locum praeefatum. Item distribuit
in Conventu viginti libras, videlicet, cuilibet fratri
dimidiam marcam.

Dominus Ricardus de Tretoun, rector de Tindele,
executor Domini Roberti de Thorp, militis, Justiciarior
principalis, et postmodum regni Cancellarii, contulit
pro anima ejusdem, per vices, ad diversa opera in
Monasterio septies viginti marcas.

Magister Johannes Appelby dedit huic Ecclesiae unam
capam, cujus campus est viridis, diversis bestiis aureis
intextam. Contulit etiam librum, dictum "Rosarium,"
et decem libras, pro comparatione cujusdam libri, dicti
"Collectarii," per memoratum Abbatem profusas; et ad
opus claustroni sex libras, tresdecim solidos, et quatuor
denarios.

Magister Willelmus Burcote, rector ecclesiae paro-
chialis de Parva Waltham, vir qui, ab ineunte aetate
hujus Monasterii tanquam alumnus, ejus commodis
deservierat.—Qui dedit Conventui die quo receptus

1 Conventi in orig.
2 Hic fuit Magister Corporis
3 Christi Cantabrigiae, et executor
4 testamenti Roberti de Thorpe
5 (prope Norwicum); qui Robertus
6 edificavit sexcellum ubi Regentes
7 sedent Cantabrigiae, ut in fenestra
8 nitrea videre licet; et erat Justi-
9 civiris principalis, etc." This
marginal note, down to "Christi
"Cantabrigiae" is in Archbishop
Parker’s handwriting. An account
of Richard Treton, Master of Cor-
pus Christi College, will be found
in Lamb’s edition of Masters’s His-
tory of that College, page 37.
3 alumnus in orig.
fuerat ad fraternitatem Capituli, librum Catholicum, et totum Corpus Juris Civilis; studio vero Abbatis, totum Corpus Juris Canonici; et legavit cuilibet de Conventu quadraginta denarios. Et condonavit Abbatii et Conventui centum libras argenti, illis præstitas pro impetracione novorum privilegiorum in Romana Curia; scilicet, ut omnes et singuli, qui successive perpetuis temporibus in Abbates hujus Monasterii, cum vacare contigerit, consensu Conventus electi fuerint, eo ipso, absque alia confirmatione, sint veri Abbates, et pro talibus censeantur.

Dominus David Wellovere, Clericus Rotulorum Cancellariæ regiæ, contulit huic Monasterio viginti libras.

Dominus Johannes Lowkyn, Canonicus ecclesiae quæ est Londoniis apud Elysynspytelle, et executor Adae Lowkyn, contulit pro anima ejusdem Adae, ad opus claustri, viginti marcas.

Dominus Ricardus Cotel, rector de Barnet, dedit ad opus coquinae Conventus quadraginta solidos.

Dominus Willelmus Burges, quondam rector de Northymynmis, contulit fabricæ coquinae nostræ decem marcas, et in morte decem marcas huic Monasterio legavit.

Magister Willelmus Tankerville contulit ad opus novæ portæ centum solidos, et tantum ad opus claustri.

Magister Johannes Enderby, clericus Archidiaconi, legavit cuilibet monacho duodecin denarios.

Magister Johannes Wyliot contulit ad opus claustri viginti solidos.

Magister Willelmus Rouse contulit ad opus claustri viginti solidos.

Dominus Willelmus, vicarius de Redburna, dedit Conventui viginti solidos.

Dominus Rogerus, Capellanus Capellæ Comitis Wawycri de Flamstede, contulit ad opus claustri sex solidos.

---

1 le in orig.; corrected in the margin, in a later hand.  
2 sil in orig.  
3 Archidiaconi in orig.
et octo denarios; et ad opus ¹ Libri Benefactorum duos solidos; et alia vice, ad opus claustri sex solidos et octo denarios.

Johannes Whittewelle, quondam Senescallus libertatis Sancti Albani, cum matre sua, Johanna, dedit huic Monasterio in Kyngesbury, Chyldewykeshay, et Sandrugge, unum mesuagium, sex tofta, tres carucatas terrae, tres acras bosci, tres solidatos redditus; et in Watforde et Oxhey Walrand, dedit quinque tofta, duas carucatas terrae, viginti acras prati, sex acras pasturæ, octo acras bosci, medietatem unius molendini, et annuum redditum sexaginta solidorum, octo denariores, et unius oboli.

Magister Adam Rous dedit huic Ecclesiae unam capam nobilem, cum casula et alba de rubeo velketo, quæ pulverisantur cum arboribus aureis et leopardis. Dedit etiam summo altari calicem auream. Contulit insuper tenementum in Londoniis, juxta Dowgate situtum, valoris annui quadraginta solidorum, unde subcellerarius solvit decem solidos Conventui, pro pitancia in anniversario ejus.

Stephanus de Lamare, nepos Domini Thomæ Abbatis, ² contulit Monasterio tenementum suum, in Dagenale situatum; postea, pro decem libris Magistro Johanni Norman coco venditum.

Johannes Gelus contulit tenementum suum angulare, in Churchestrete situatum, ad officium coquinarii deputatum. Habuit tamen pro eodem quoddam corrodium, per tempus vitae suæ, et uxoris suæ, duraturum.

Johannes Gumbard, et Agnes, uxor ejus, contulerunt ad opus claustri quadraginta solidos; et speciebus Conventus, quadraginta solidos; et pro vino emendo Conventui, quadraginta denarios; et operi ¹ Libri Benefactorum, quadraginta denarios. Item, post decessum eorum

¹ Probably the same volume from which the present text is derived. ² contu in orig.; corrected in the margin, in a later hand.
contulerunt Monasterio tenementum suum, cum pertinentiis suis, in vico de Dagenale situatum, cum viginti novem acris terrae, cidem pertinentibus.

Willelmus de Langeleye dedit huic Monasterio unum mansum bene ædificatum in villa Sancti Albani, valoris annui sexaginta solidorum, in vico de Dagenale situatum.

Willelmus Chewpayn, et uxor ejus, Johanna, dederunt huic Ecclesiae duo tenementa in vico de Haliwelle. Et idem Willelmus, ad ornamentum Ecclesiae, contulit plura frontalia, quorum campus est niger; in quo rosarium intexitur de auro grosso. Dedit etiam quandam zonam stipatam, de qua fit morsus ad capas principales, et effigiantur cygni in medio morsu, nobiliter facti opere aurifabrili. Contulit quoque refectorio unum cyphum de dygun, ornatum decenter, cum copertorio de eodem ligne; et unum cyphum murreum, cum duabus peciis et tresdecim cochlearibus argenteis, et unum ferrum pro carbonibus imponendis.

Johannes Pikebon, et Matildis, uxor ejus, die quo recepti fuerunt ad fraternitatem nostri Capituli, contulerunt speciebus Conventus hujus Monasterii nobile mansum suum, cum duabus acris terrae, in le Freynsche Rowe villæ Sancti Albani situatis, post decessum eorumdem.

Robertus de la Chaumbre, et Agnes, uxor ejus, die quo recepti fuerunt ad fraternitatem nostri Capituli, dederunt huic Monasterio nobile vestimentum, cum toto apparatu. Et insuper, contulerunt ad officium eleemosynæ tenementum suum, cum duabus acris terrae et aliis pertinentiis, quod in vico Sancti Petri villæ Sancti Albani situatum est, videlicet, ex opposto illius Ecclesiae.

Willelmus Kynsulle de Sancto Albano, pro salute

1 anni in orig.  
2 aurifabrili in orig.  
3 Alba in orig.  
4 eleemosina in orig.
animæ suæ, et animæ quondam uxoris suæ, Christianæ, dedit Capellæ Beatae Virginis, quæ est in Ecclesia Sancti Albani, quoddam tenementum quod valet annuatim viginti solidos. Expost Conventui contulit 1 quadraginta solidos.

Agnes de Langeforde dedit huic Ecclesiæ unum tenementum in vico de Soppewelle, ad species monachorum, quod reddit annis singulis unam marcam. Dedit autem illud pro salute animæ suæ, et recommendatione animæ mariti sui, Johannis de Langeforde.

Johanna de Ware, soror nostra, contulit huic Monasterio quoddam mansum bene ædificatum in villa de Sancto Albano, pro quo quidam recepit corrodium, per totam vitam duraturum.

Johannes Chestone contulit Ecclesiæ viginti libras et tres acras bosci, quas tenet modo Thomas de Nortoune.

Reginaldus, dictus "Heynotaceoffotone," contulit Monasterio tenementum suum in le Romnelonde, juxta portam Monasterii situatum. Recepit tamen pro eodem magnum corrodium de eodem, per totam vitam suam, et suæ sororis, duraturum.

Ricardus Egleshale, et Clemencia, uxor ejusdem, legaverunt Monasterio quoddam suum tenementum in vico de Haliwelle situatum, "Stonehalle" vocitatum; quod postea fuit venditum pro triginta libris, et pecunia in usum coquinarii conversa.

2 Johannes Philepot, civis Londoniarum, contulit ad opus claustri quadraginta libras. Dedit etiam duas summas dactylorum et amygdalorum.

Alexander Onger contulit huic Ecclesiæ, pro salute animæ suæ, viginti libras.

Henricus Yherdele, et Sabrina, uxor ejus, contulerunt Monasterio viginti libras.

---

1 quagraginta in orig.
Henricus de Bertone dedit huic Ecclesiae, pro salute animae suae, quindecim libras.

Galfridus Stukeley legavit Conventui, pro salute animae suae, centum solidos.


Robertus Warbeltone, civis Londoniarum, contulit Ecclesiae octo libras.

Johannes Furneux, civis Londoniarum, contulit ad opus claustri centum solidos.

Willelmus de Bury, piscator Londoniarum, contulit huic Monasterio centum solidos.

Adam Raulyn de Sancto Albano, et Alicia, uxor sua, contulerunt pelvem argentem quæ pendet coram Martyre, ad magnum honorem Ecclesiae, et frequentem magnas summas argentii ad diversa opera Monasterii; ac in vita sua Conventui benefacere non cessarunt. In morte etiam centum solidos Conventui legaverunt.

Willelmus Fuinnere legavit Conventui centum solidos, et fabricae Ecclesiae centum solidos; et lumini Capellæ Sanctæ Marie unam marcam, et zonam argentæm.

Willelmus Martyn contulit ad opus claustri viginti solidos; et in morte legavit fratribus qui laborem subiurati erant in legendis Passionibus, unum tenementum in vico ², quod valet quatuor solidos per annum; ut, videlicet, præcentor, qui pro tempore futurus esset, inde disponeret pro majori commodo fratum prædictorum.

* su in orig.; corrected in the margin, in a later hand.
| but in the margin “de Sopwelledane” is inserted, in a later hand.

² The name is omitted in orig.;
Rogerus de Refectorio dedit refectorio septem pecias et duodecem \(^1\) cochlearia de argento.

Theodoricus Stynnaux dedit feretro Sancti zonam, argento peroptime redimitam.

Willelmaus Hosiere, et uxor ejus, Johanna, contulerunt per vices Conventus Ecclesiae sexaginta solidos, et ad opus claustri quadraginta solidos. Et \(^2\) eadem Johanna, moriens, legavit Conventui quadraginta solidos, et ejus executores dederunt ad opus coquinae viginti marcas.

Thomes Bedul, de Redburna, contulit ecclesiae de Redburna decem solidos et duas acras terrae; et monachis hujus Domus, post susceput fratemitatis beneficium, unam marcam.

Thomas Eydone, armiger Abbatis, et custos nemorum, contulit ad opus celebrantis cotidie Missam de Sancto Albano, ad caput feretri scutellam argenteam, et, ad calicem faciendum, zonam pretii quadraginta solidorum; et ad opera varia in Ecclesia, notabiles argenti \(^3\) summam; et cuilibet de Conventu viginti denarios; orans devotius, ut memoria patris ejus, Johannis, et matris ejus, Burgae, et uxoris sue, Johannae, inter nos habeatur. Item, alia vice contulit cuilibet de Conventu viginti denarios. Contulit etiam caritative decem marcas, ad perquisitionem prædii de Gorham, scilicet, de Westwyka. Cujus beneficiis correspondere cupientes, Abbas et Conventus concesserunt eidem plenam fraternitatem nostri Capituli, unanimi voluntate. Item, praedictus Thomas contulit ad opus claustri quatuor marcas et dimidium. Conventum etiam frequentibus pietanciis recreavit.

Anno Gratiae millesimo trecentesimo nonagesimo sexto, die sanctorum Martyrum Abdon et Sennes, concessa fuit fraternitas hujus Monasterii Roberto Euere, et Helewyse, uxori ejus, Johanni Euere, filio eorundem, et

---

\(^1\) *cochlearia* in orig.  
\(^2\) *idem* in orig., by inadvertence.  
\(^3\) *su* is incorrectly inserted before this word in orig.
Johannæ, uxori ejus, et Galfrido Chally de Cadingdone, qui contulerunt caritative ad opus Monasterii decem marcas.

Iste est Johannes qui laboravit efficaciter circa priviliegium impetrandum; ut, videlicet, in singulis vacationibus electi per Conventum Sancti Albani eo ipso, absque alia confirmatione, sint veri Abbates, et pro talibus censeantur et habeantur. Idem Johannes contulit cuilibet in Conventu duodecim denarios; item, alia vice viginti denarios.

Willelmus Gardinere, cum Hauwisia, conjuge sua, contulit ad Librum Benefactorum sex solidos et octo denarios. Et legavit Abbati quadraginta solidos, et Conventui sexaginta solidos.

Johannes Redyngham, et Cristiana, uxor ejus, dederunt ad opus novæ portæ septem marcas.

Executores Philippi le Yhonge dederunt pro anima ejusdem Philippi, ad opus claustri, centum solidos.

Rogerus Hoppere, et uxor ejus, Margeria, contulerunt ad idem opus undecim libras.

Johannes Quyntine dedit Conventui quinquaginta solidos.

Johannes Thekke dedit Conventui viginti solidos.

Hugo atte Nasche dedit Conventui viginti solidos.

Johannes Fleechere contulit ad opus claustri viginti solidos.

Johannes Mordone contulit ad idem opus tresdecim solidos et quatuor denarios.

Nicholaus Tyler contulit viginti solidos.

Executores Emmæ Ymayn contulerunt viginti septem solidos.

Johannes Halstede contulit quadraginta solidos.

Edmundus Bayle contulit ad opus claustri decem solidos.

Willelmus Lychelade contulit ad idem opus claustri sex solidos et octo denarios.

Johannes Cliftone et uxor ejus contulerunt ad idem opus sex solidos et octo denarios.
Johannes Landesdale contulit ad idem opus sex solidos et octo denarios.
Rogerus Colyn contulit ad idem opus sex solidos et octo denarios.
Medius filius Johannis Mordone contulit ad idem opus sex solidos et octo denarios.
Johannes Wykynge contulit ad idem opus sex solidos et octo denarios.
Johannes Barbore contulit ad idem opus quadraginta denarios.
Johannes Dynesley contulit ad idem opus quadraginta denarios.
Magister Robertus Coke, et Helena, uxor ejus, contulerunt ad opus Libri Benefactorum tres solidos et quattuor denarios.
Alanus Straylere contulit ad idem opus tres solidos et quattuor denarios.
Thomas Tannere, cum Agnete, uxor ejusdem, Monasterio semper benevolus, suis divitiis et voluntariis accommodationibus ejusdem obedientiarios adjuvavit. Morions etiam quadraginta solidos eidem Monasterio de suis facultatibus delegavit.]¹

¹ As to the portions enclosed in brackets, see page 434 ante, Note 1.
GLOSSARY.
GLOSSARY.

A.

ABATIA (36). An abbey. (So written in orig.)

ABIGENS (24). Classically, this word means, “one driving away;” otherwise “a drover.” The Chronicler speaks of it as peculiarly applied to cattle-stealers. “Abiges” and “abigerus” are given with the meaning of “thief,” in Du Cange, Henschel’s Edition.

ACELLA (30). The armpit. More commonly “ascella,” or “axella.”

ACCOLITUS (339). An acolyth, or acolyte: a member of the lowest Order in the Roman Church.

ACTA, or ACTA (453). Some kind of rich cloth, probably impossible now to be identified; its colour seems to have been sky-blue, shot with gold.

AEREBUS (453). Of sky-blue colour. This is not a classical meaning of the word.

ALBA (50). An alb, a long tunic of white linen, worn by the Roman clergy; so called from its whiteness.

AMERCIARE (21). To amerce, to fine.

AMRAYS (31). An Emir: the early form of our word “Admiral.”

ANTEFERNUM (352). Qy. as to the meaning of this word.

APPELLARE (167). To appeal, in the sense of “accuse.”

APPONNARE (199). To impoverish.


ARRANANE (140). To arraign, to accuse.

AUCA, or ANCA (89). A goose.


AURIFRIGIUM (435). Orfrays, golden fringes in embroidery work.

AUXIONARIUS (90). A seller of geese.

AVERSUS (194). Violent, sweeping away: perhaps intended for the participle of “averro;” or, meaning generally “unfavourable,” if from “averto.”

AVILLATIO (352). Qy. as to the meaning of this word.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.</th>
<th>C.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Baldewaynus</strong> (435). A baldakin, or baudkin; a tissue of gold</td>
<td><strong>Campi-Ductor</strong> (174). A leader in the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and silk, said to have been introduced into England in the 13th</td>
<td><strong>Capa</strong> (50), <strong>Cappa</strong> (435). A cope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>century.</td>
<td><strong>Capellanatus</strong> (187), <strong>Capellania</strong> (187). A chaplaincy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Balliva</strong> (97). A bailiwick, or jurisdiction.</td>
<td><strong>Capitaneus</strong> (70). A captain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bancale</strong> (444). A banker, cloth or tapestry for covering the</td>
<td><strong>Capo</strong> (89). A capon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banks, or benches, at dessert; which thence had its name of</td>
<td><strong>Capucium, or Caputium</strong> (190). A hood, cowl, or covering for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban-quet; now more extensively employed.</td>
<td>the head.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bancus Regius</strong> (156), <strong>Bankus</strong> (172). The King’s Bench, or</td>
<td><strong>Carris</strong> (401). A carrick, or car-rack, a large merchant-ship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Barnagium</strong> (4, 5). The Baronage, or general body of Barons.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Barra</strong> (20). A bar, or bolt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Barro</strong> (85). A Baron.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Baselardus</strong> (198). A baselard; a long dagger, or short sword,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mostly worn by civilians. See the <em>Munimenta Gildhalle</em> (published</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in this Series), III. p. 378.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Benda</strong> (189, 190). A bend, in heraldry. See the next.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bende</strong> (109). Early Engl. A line drawn from the dexter chief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the sinister base of a coat of arms; here worn over the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armour as a distinctive mark of esquirehood.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beneficenatus</strong> (151). Beneficed, holding a benefice.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bewtrone</strong> (437). Early Eng. A name given to a kind of silken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>texture.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blodius</strong> (192), <strong>Blodius</strong> (437). Blood-coloured.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Boscus</strong> (458). Woodland.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Botrus</strong> (434). A cluster of grapes. This word is used in the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Braesium</strong> (96). Malt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bravium</strong> (19). A reward of victory; a corrupt form of the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late classical “brabium.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bullatus</strong> (352). Having the Pope’s <em>Bulla</em> annexed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Burgencis</strong> (21), <strong>Burgensis</strong> (21). A burgess, or townsman.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Campi-Ductor</strong> (174). A leader in the field.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capa</strong> (50), <strong>Cappa</strong> (435). A cope.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capellanatus</strong> (187), <strong>Capellania</strong> (187). A chaplaincy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capitaneus</strong> (70). A captain.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capo</strong> (89). A capon.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capucium, or Caputium</strong> (190). A hood, cowl, or covering for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the head.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Caristia</strong> (89). Dearness, dearth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carris</strong> (401). A carrick, or car-rack, a large merchant-ship.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Caruca</strong> (438). A plough.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GLOSSARY.  469

CARUCATA (446). A carucate, or plough-land.

CASELLA (183). Literally, a little abode; the shell of a tortoise, in this instance.

CASSARE (105). To quash, to make void.

CASULA (437). A chasuble, or cassock.

CATAVALLA (136). Chattels.

CAUDATUS (51). A coward. See the Volume of Rishanger, Glossary, p. 504; where add "page 131" to the reference to the Camden Society's Volume of Rishanger's Wars of the Barons; it being a quotation from Oxenedes' Chronicle, s. a. 1264—"Ibi quiunque fugerat Anglicus, est caudatus, plenus versutiis, etc."

CERTITUDINALITE (429). For certain.

CERVICATUS (30). Having the neck broken. In the Vulgate, this word means "stiff-necked."

CHRISMA (295). A chrism, or oil for anointing, sometimes mixed with balsam, and consecrated by the Bishop.

CLAUSTRUM (453). A cloister.

COLLATIO (158). A sermon, or discourse, before monks, on religious subjects.

COLUMBELLA (89). A young pigeon.

COMPROMITOR (121). A fellow traitor.

CONFORTARE (241). To comfort, or support.

CONJECTATOR (163). A deviser, a planner.

CONSTELLATOR (316). A planner, a deviser.

CONTRARIARE (116). To oppose, to strive against.

CONVICTACEUS (9, 45). A neighbour.

COPIA (253). A copy.

CORDA (146). A cord.

CORNUCOPIA (142). Mitred. Nostrī cornūtī,—"Our mitred prelates."

CORRODIUM (454). A corody, or fixed allowance in money and victuals.

CORTINA (444). A curtain.

COTULA (109). A coat, or coat of arms, with quarterings on it; here worn over the armour, as a distinctive mark of knighthood. See Du Cange, s. v.

CROKUS (342). A crook; part of the works of a clock, in this instance.

CRUCIATA (201). A Crusade.

CULCITRA (221). A counterpane stuffed with wool, or other soft material. "Culcita" is the classical form of the word.

CUPA (28). A cup.

CURIOSITAS (181). Refinement in excess, the making of artificial wants.

CURTANA (293). The sword, originally said to have been that of Edward the Confessor, borne before the English sovereigns at their Coronation. It had the point broken short (curtam), in token of the mercy which befits a ruler; whence probably the name.
DAGARDOUS (189). A dagger.
DALMATICA (437). A dalmatic, a long white garment, worn by deacons in the Romish Church.
DESCUS (98). The dais of a hall.
DEXTRARIUS (451). A destere, charger, or war-horse.
DIETA (250). A day's journey.
DISGUSYNG (181). Early Engl. Dressing fantastically, or unsuitably to one's station.
DOLPHINUS (193). The Dauphin of France; a title borne by the eldest son of the Kings of France of the Valois and Bourbon dynasties. Charles V. of France, son of John II., was the first who held it; shortly after the cession of the territory of Dauphiné to Philip of Valois, A.D. 1349.
DOMICELLA (194). A young lady, a damsel.
DOMICELLUS (324). A young noble, a page of noble birth.
DKETTUS (223). A Dukeling, or diminutive Duke; an expression of contempt.
DYGUN (460). A kind of wood, perhaps difficult now to be identified.

E.

EMENDA (97). Supervision.
ENGRELATUS (190). Engrailed, spotted, as with hail.

F.

FERETRUM (433). A feretry, or shrine.
FERIA (168). A day of the week. Feria secunda, — "The second "day of the week," i.e., Monday.
FORISFACTURA (311). Forfeiture.
FORTALITIUM (327). A fortress.
FRONTALE (459). A frontal, or cloth hung in front of the altar, in the Romish Church.
FUNDIBALARIUS (33). A slinger. Fundibulator, or fundibulat.or, is classical.

G.

GARCIIO (21). A groom, a serving-man.
GOUNA (189). A gown.
GRANATA (442). A garnet.
GROSSUS (121). Great.
GUERRA (8, et passim). War, a state of warfare.
GLOSSARY.

GUERRARE (136). To war against.

GULA AUGUSTI (171). The Gule, or gullet, of August; meaning the first day of that month. Why this term was applied to the beginning of August in particular, seems not to be known.

GUNNA (411). A gun.

H.

HASTILUDIUM (7, 170). A joust, or tournament.

HOGGES (401). La Hogue, or Hague, in Normandy.

HOSPITALARII (142). The Knights Hospitallers, or of St. John of Jerusalem.

HOSTIARIUS (98). An usher, or door-keeper.

I., J.

IMPETITIO (188). Exaction, demand, as of right.

IMPETITIO (400). An attack.

INFIRMARIA (28). The infirmary, or quarters for the sick, in a Monastery.

INTOXICATUS (105). Poisoned.

INVADIARE (164). To give in pledge.

INVALIDUS (47). Greatly prevailing, very strong. The word appears to be used with a similar meaning in Lucretius, I. 970, and the Aeneid, vi. 114.

JOCALE (437). A jewel.

L.

LAGENA (96). A gallon.

LAVATORIUM (454). A washing basin.

LEGENDUM (439). A Legend, or Chronicle of the lives of Saints; read in Convents, at Matins, or in the Refectory.

LEOGANTIA (115). Allegiance.

LETO (336). Lithuania.

LIBERATA (189). Livery; the cognizance, or badge, (in the instance of Richard II. a hart) was a part of the sovereign's livery; given out, or delivered, to be worn by his more immediate retainers and household. See Munimenta Gild-halle (published in this Series), III. p. 392.

LICENCIATUS (102). Receiving leave of departure.

LIGEANTIA (113). Allegiance.

LINTEAMEN (453). A linen altar-cloth.

M.

MANCUSA AURI (444). A mancus of gold. The exact value of this coin is doubtful. It was formerly supposed to be identical with the mark; but that opinion is not generally upheld.

MANIPULUS (437). A maniple, mappula, or fason; a scarf, in form of a napkin, worn on the left arm of a priest, in the Romish Church.
MANSUM (459). A manse, or dwelling-house.
MANUTENTIA (116). Maintenance, support.
MANUTENTOR (121). A maintainer, upholster, or supporter.
MARCHIA (139). A march, or border territory.
MARKANDIA (178). A trading, a huckstering.
MEDIATUS (46). Mesne, intermediate.
MENESTRALLUS (98). A minstrel.
MEREMIUM (433). Timber.
MILITALIS (317). Military.
MONIALIS (184). A nun.
MORINA (92). Murrain.
MORSUS (459). A buckle.
MORTICINUM (105). A deadly disease.
MOTLE (191). Early Engl. Motley; a mixture of colours in the dress, white and red in this instance.
MULTO (89). A mutton, or wether.
MURREUS (440, 442). Myrrhine, probably meaning, made of porcelain, or of some transparent mineral. As to the myrrhine vessels of the ancients, see Pliny's *Nat. History*, B. xxxvii., cc. 7, 8.

O.
OBEDIENTIARIUS (464). An obedientiary, an inferior of a Monastery, below the rank of Abbot.
OBOLUS (96). A halfpenny.
Obryzum (55). For obryzum aurum, "the finest gold."
Octavæ (438). The Octave, or Octaves, of a festival, celebrated on the (so-called) eighth day after it; according to modern reckoning, on that day week.
ORATORIOUM (439). An oratory, place of prayer, or private chapel.

P.
Palexridus (29). A palfrey. *Custos palefridi,* a "palfreyman."
PALLA (433). A palle, or pall, a piece of cloth of rich texture. From the early use of this cloth for the purpose, the name is still given to the cloth with which the coffin is covered.
PAPILLO (190). A pavilion, or large tent. It was so called probably, either from a fancied resemblance in form to the extended wings of a butterfly, or from the varied colours with which the exterior of the pavilion was not unfrequently adorned.
PAPURA (461). An ecclesiastical vestment, adorned with embroidery work.
PECIA (459). A vessel, apparently of silver, in the present instance.

N.
NIGROMANTIA (176). Magie, the black art. A corruption, probably, of the classical word "ne-cromantia."
NUMMUS (95). A penny.
NURRES (307). Old Fr. Foster children.
PECTORALE (437). A pectoral, part of the vestments worn by the priesthood of the Romish Church.

PELLURA (435). Fur.

PELUM (101). A peel, or fortified place, of smaller dimensions than a castle. Several of the Peels of Northumberland, (of which the Peel of Horton, here mentioned, was one,) are still in existence.

PENULATUS (435). Trimmed, or edged, with fur.

PERDONARE (115). To pardon.

PERDONATIO (308). Pardon.

PERIENDINARE (103). To stay, or dwell, at a place.

PIETANCIAS (462). A pittance; a small portion of fish and other food of superior quality allowed on certain occasions to the inmates of Monasteries. It is said to have received its name from having been originally restricted to the value of the smallest coin of Poitou, one pite.

PIPA (156). A pipe, or large cask. The "Pipe Rolls" not improbably were so called from the fact of their having been kept in pipes, in the same manner as the documents, public and private, here mentioned.

PLACEA (165). A place, a vacant space of ground.

POSTICUM (139). A postern gate.

PULETARIUS (90). A poulterer.

PULLINUS (89). A chicken. Qy. if not pulcinus; see Liber Custumarum (published in this Series), Part II. p. 822.

PULVERIZATUS (193). Powdered with, variegated with; applied to cloth.

PURPRESTURA (135). A purpresture, or encroachment.

PUSIOLA (194). A young girl.

Q.

QUARE IMPEDIT (290.) The name of a Writ lying for one who has purchased an advowson, against a person who hinders him in his right of advowson by presenting a clerk thereto, when the church is void.

QUATERIZARE (215). To quarter, to divide into quarters.

QUATERIZATIO (311). A quartering.

QUATERNIO (294). A quire, a number of sheets of parchment, or paper, bound together.

QUARTLETS (109). Early Eng. Coats of arms, with quarterings on them.

R.

RECEPIMENTUM (116). A receiving, or harbouring.

REFEKTORIUM (433). The refectory, or refreshment-room of a Monastery.

REFEIISSARE (54). To re-enfeoff, to enfeoff again.

REGNICOLUS (161). An inhabitant of the kingdom.
regratiari (193). To return thanks to.

reprisa (379). Reprise, deduction from a gross rental of the sum paid for taxes.

respectuare (233). To respite.

retinentia (162). A body of retainers, retinue.

Rhamnusia (383). A name of the goddess Nemesis; so called, because she was especially worshipped at Rhamnus, a borough of Attica.

Rosarium (459). A rosary of beads; or rather, in this instance, the representation of a rosary, worked in gold. The first rosaries, it is said, were introduced from the East, and received their name from the fact of the beads being made of rose-leaves, reduced to a pulp.

Rube (452). Early Engl. A ruby. Whether the stone here mentioned was a ruby, or only a carbuncle, seems doubtful.

runcans (212). The word here apparently means "nervously " twitching." Possibly "mi-" canti" may have really been the word intended to be used.

S.

Sacrista (293). A sacristan; hence our word "sexton."

Sapphirus Lupus (453). A wolf sapphire, apparently. A variety of sapphire, which, perhaps, cannot now be identified.

Savaldores (99). A name given to certain freebooters, who ravaged Northumberland temp. Edward II. It seems doubtful if this word is elsewhere to be met with.

say (190). Early Engl. A fine serge, or woollen cloth.

secta pacis (116). Breach of the peace.

Senescallus (110). A seneschal, or steward.

septimana (121). A week.

scarletum (291). Scarlet.

scriptoria (449). The writing, or copying, room in a Monastery.

scutella (462). A vessel for ministration at the altar, in the Romish Church; probably identical with the paten.

Scutulum armorum (437). A small shield of arms.

Significavit (291). The name of a Writ issuing out of the Chancery, upon certificate given by the Ordinary of a man's standing excommunicate for forty days, for putting him in prison till he submits himself to the authority of the Church. It is so called, because "Significavit" is an emphatical word of the Writ.


species (190). Spices; under which name raisins, currants, and various preserved fruits from the East would be included. Plum-cake is called "spice-cake," or "spice- " loaf," in Lancashire, to the present day.
GLOSSARY.

STAURUM (233). A store.

STOLA (437). A stole, or scarf, worn by a priest.

STRATA (146). A street. Strata publica, — "The public high-way."

SUBCAMBERLANUS (156), SUBCAMBERLAINUS (156). An under-chamberlain.

SUMMA (94, 460). A seam, the load of one sumpter-horse.

SUPERALTARE (452). This word has two meanings; (1) it is identical with the ciborium, an arch over the altar, in the Roman Church, supported upon four columns; (2) a moveable altar, placed occasionally on the fixed one. It has, probably, the second meaning in the present instance.

T.

TALLAGIUM (151), TALLIAGIUM (72). A tax, or tallage.

TAPETUM (453). A carpet, or piece of tapestry.

TOPTUM (458). A toft, a vacant space where a messuage has previously stood.

TOREAMENTUM (14, 15). A tournament.

TORTICUM (156), TORTICUM (167). A torch made of twisted (torta) cords enveloped in wax.

TOXICATUS (30). Poisoned.

TRESTELLUS (30). A trestle, the supporter of a table.

TREGAE (29). A truce.

U., V.

UTEGATUS (160). Outlawed.

VAE (420). Woe. Classically an interjection, it is here, and elsewhere in mediæval writings, used as a noun substantive.

VALECTUS, or VALETTUS (160, 305). A valet, or serving-man.

VASUM (376). A vessel, or ship; a non-classical meaning of the word.

VELVETUM (189). Velvet.

VESTIMENTUM (437). A set of ecclesiastical vestments.

VILLANUS (451). A townsman.


It is used classically as an adjective, meaning "Of," or "belonging to, wines," or "vine-yards."

VIRGATA (447). A virgate, or yardland, differing according to the locality; from fifteen acres to thirty or forty.

W.


WESSHEYL (442). Early Engl. A wassail bowl: from its description, as being styled "myrrhine," it was similar, not improbably, to the porcelain bowls of the present day. See Murreus.

Z.

ZONA STIPATA (459). Probably, a studded girdle, or belt.
INDEX.
INDEX.

Aberdeen, design against English fishermen, near, 333.
Abergavenny, Lord de, attends King Richard II. in the Tower, 254.
Abingdon, Henry IV. keeps Christmas at the Monastery of, 378.
Abron Makmouth (?), submission of, to the English, 173.
Absalom, grief of his father, David, for him, 34.
Acquitaine. See Aquitaine.
Acre, in the Holy Land, the Princess Joanna born at, 26; Prince Edward’s resolution to enter, 29.
Admiral, Sir Thomas de Ramston appointed, 337.
Agen, the French conquer, 149.
Ahitophel, the counsels of, 6, 29.
Akenhead, William, slain at Homildon Hill, 346.
Alban, Saint, King Edward II. makes offering to, 83; miracles alleged to have been wrought by, 420.
Albemarle, the Duke of, principal adviser of King Richard II., 223; attends Richard to Ireland, 238; accompanies Richard from Ireland to England, 248; Richard stipulates for his life, 250; holds the Acts of 21 and 22 Richard II. to be null and void, 303; charges are made against him by Sir William Bagot, 303; alleged intention on the part of Albemarle, the Duke of—cont.
King Richard to vacate the throne in his favour, 304; he challenges Bagot, 304; is accused by one Halle of the murder of the Duke of Glocester, 309; and by the Lord Fitz-Water and other peers, 310; is again challenged as to his proceedings against the Duke of Glocester, 313; denies complicity in his death, 313; adjudged to lose the rank of Duke, 318. See Rutland, and York.
"Albion," the former name of England, 132.
Ale, mandate issued as to the sale of, 95-98.
Alianor. See Eleanor.
Almaine, Richard, Earl of Cornwall, King of, taken prisoner at the Battle of Lewes, 11; news of his death imparted to King Edward I., 33.
Almaine, great battle in, 43; an army of the King of, aids Edward I. in Gascoigne, against Philip IV., 56; news brought to England that King Richard II. is about to be elected Emperor of, 199; envoys sent to, by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320.
Alnwick Castle, surrendered to Henry IV., 414.
Alum, Robert. See Oxford, and York.
Amaronia, the Queen Mother of Denmark, 412. See Denmark.
Amesbury, Mary of Woodstock, daughter of Edward I., assumes the veil at, 48; Alianor of Savoy, his mother, assumes the veil at, 48.
Amiens, Philip IV. allows the Jews, expelled from England, to settle at, 57.
Andre, the mill of, interview of the Kings of France and England at, 191.
Anglesey, taken by Edward I., 40.
Angus, the Earl of, taken prisoner, 346.
Anne, Queen, wife of Richard II., death of, 168; she is buried at Westminster, 169, 424; her body is brought from St. Paul's to Westminster, 424.
Anselowe, the Bishop of, one of the envoys from Denmark, 412; discourses on the Life of St. Alban, 412; preaches in Latin before Henry IV., 412.
Anti-Pope (Clement VII.), offer made by him to Pope Boniface IX., 397.
Anzazin, the name of an assassin who attempts the life of Prince Edward, at Acre, 30.
Aquitaine, Ralph Basset the cause of offence given to the French King in, 143, 144; the Earl of Kent takes measures for the defence of, 149; Charles of Valois invades, 149; discussions in Parliament concerning the preservation of the Province of, 152; John, Duke of Lancaster, is created Duke of, 158; the Duchy of, bestowed on the Duke of Lancaster, 169; the people of, object to receive any other person than the King, or his immediate heir, 169; the Duke of Lancaster is recalled from, 187, 188; Henry, Prince of Wales, is made Duke of, 311.
Aragon, war between the King of, and the King of France, 42; the territory of, laid under Interdict, 42; soldiers of the King of, aid Edward I. in Gascoigne, against Philip IV. of France, 56.
Archi (?), an Irish chieftain, submits, 173.
Ardrés, the King of France proceeds from the Castle of, to meet Richard II., 190; a Chapel to be erected on the site of the interview, 191.
Arnold, Cardinal of Saint Prisca. See Saint Prisca.
Arundel, Edmund, Earl of, opposes King Edward II., 74; refuses to attend the King at Berwick, in consequence of his non-fulfilment of the Ordinances, 83.
Arundel, Richard, Earl of, awaits the course of events at his Castle at Holt, 162; he is accused of intended treachery, 162; charge made against him, by the Duke of Lancaster, 168; he retires from Court, but is soon recalled, 166; the Church at Westminster polluted with his blood, 169, 424; Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of York, his brother, 194; invited to a banquet, by King Richard II., with sinister intentions, 201, 202; excuses himself, and retires to his Castle at Ryegate, 202; is persuaded by his brother, now Archbishop of Canterbury, at the King's instigation, to deliver himself up to the King, 208, 209; he is sent to the Isle of Wight until the meeting of Parliament, 209; allusion to him in a prophecy, 206; his cognizance, 206; he is accused in Parliament, 209; charters of pardon granted to him by the King, are revoked by Parliament, 211, 212; trial of, 214; sentence is demanded upon him, 214; he appeals to the King's charters of protection, but in vain, 215; sentence is pronounced upon him, 215; particulars of his execution, 216-218; marvellous occurrence at his execution, 218; the King is conscience-striken, upon his death, 218; the multitude venerate him as a Martyr, 219; the King commands his body to be exhumed and examined, 219; the King bestows part of his lands, 223.
Ashburne, Thomas de, confessor of the Earl of Arundel, 219.
Asser, Reginald de, Bishop of Winchester. See Winchester.
Audley, Sir Hugh de, marries the widow of Piers de Gaveston, a sister of the Earl of Gloucester, 86; confined in Wallingford Castle, 138.
Audley, Sir William de, slain in Wales, 40.
Augustinian Friars, the, bury the body of the Earl of Arundel, 219.
Avignon, the then Apostolic See, 81; Pope John XXII., previously Bishop of, 82.
Aylesbury, an enemy of the Monastery of St. Alban's becomes mad, and dies at, 108.
Ayrmine, William de, Canon of York, at Newcastle-on-Tyne, 133.

B.
Babylon, remark of the Soldan of, on hearing of Prince Edward's determination, 29.
Badlesmere (Batlesmere), Sir Bartholomew de, receives Leeds Castle, in Kent, in exchange, from Edward II., 110; he adheres to the cause of the Barons, 110; his wife, or some one in her name, refuses to admit Queen Isabella into the Castle, 110; he is executed, 124.
Bagot, Sir William—cont.
conspiracy against the life of John, Duke of Lancaster, 308; alleges certain charters of pardon, 308; but that they are left at Chester, 308.
Bajazet (Balthardan), besieges Constantinople, 166, 185; engagement between, and the Christians, 185; presses hard upon the Emperor of Constantinople, 230; alleged threats by him against the Pope and Cardinals, 231; report that his son, Bassak, has been slain in battle, 336.
Ballock, Robert de, Archdeacon of Middlesex, at Newcastle on Tyne, 133; made Chancellor, King Edward II. desires to confer upon him the See of Winchester, 148.
Baldock, Walter de, Prior of Lawne. See Lawne.
Baldwin, Abbot of Bury, miracles done by the body of, 159.
Baliol, John de, deprived of his throne by Edward I., 47.
Balthardan. See Bajazet.
Bangor, the Bishop of, sent as envoy to Almaine, by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320.
Bannockburn, defeat of the English by the Scots at, 84, 85; reasons suggested for the defeat, 87; the father of Roger de Clifford slain at, 124.
Bannokemore, the Battle of, 84—86. See Bannockburn.
Bardolf, Lord, prepares to revolt against Henry IV., 402; the King resolves to pursue him, 411; he flees to Scotland, and is received by Sir David Fleming, 414; leaves Scotland, and retreats to Wales, 418.
Barfleur (Berflu), burnt by the English, 402.
Barons, the English, dissensions of King Henry III. with, 4, 5; the King rebukes them, 5, 6; they encamp without London, 6; they humiliate themselves, and propose to make terms with the King, 7; Prince Edward enters into a compact with
Barons—cont.

Barons—cont.

them, 7; demands made by them, 8; King
Henry determines to break his oath to
them, 9; he cancels appointments made
by them, 9; they resolve to adhere to
their oath, 9; take possession of the Isle
of Ely, 10; choose Simon de Montfort,
Earl of Leicester, leader of their army,
10. See Leicester.

Barwe (? Bury), inundation near, 159. See
Bury St. Edmunds.

Bassak, son of Bajazet, report that he has
been slain in battle, 336.

Basset, Sir Philip, appointed Chief Justi­
ciar, by Henry III., 9.

Basset, Ralph, Seneschal of Edward II.,
gives ground of offence to the French
King in Aquitaine, 143, 144; he retires
to the Castle of Monpesade, 145; the de­
mands of the King of France in reference
to him, are not complied with 145.

Bath, death of Ralph Ergom, Bishop of,
334; Henry Bowet succeeds him 334;
as envoy, he returns from France, 372;
accompanies the Princess Philippa to
Denmark, 420; report brought back by
him, 420.

Bayonne, the people of, protest in Parlia­
ment against receiving the Duke of Lan­
caster as Duke of Aquitaine, 169.

Beatrice, daughter of Henry III. and
Alianor of Savoy, 35; married to the
Earl of Bretagne, 35.

Beauchamp, Lord William de, challenges
the Duke of Alenmarle in Parliament,
310.

Beaufort, Henry, son of John, Duke of
Lancaster, and Katherine Swynford, 226;
made Bishop of Lincoln, 226. See Lin­
coln.

Beaufort, Sir Thomas, wresits his cross
from the Archbishop of York, 407, 408.
See Somerset.

Beauvilien, a Priory of St. Alban's, fire at,
167.

Beaumaris Castle, Richard II. flees to, 249.

See Durham.
INDEX.

Bethlehem, William de Bottlesham, Bishop of, 337; he is made Bishop of Rochester, 337.

Beverley, Edward II. holds his Court at, 103.

Biggleswade, marvellous appearances near, 360.

Bills in Parliament, Examiners of, appointed, 312.

Bishops, the, of England, mediate between Edward II. and the Barons, to make peace, 77, 78; they stay at St. Alban's, 78; they mediate effectually between the King and the Barons, 80.

Blackheath, Henry IV. meets the Emperor of Constantinople at, 334.

Blanche, daughter of Henry IV., married to a son of the Emperor, at Cologne, 342.

Blunt (Blond), Sir Walter, slain at the Battle of Shrewsbury, 367, 369.

Boniface VIII., Pope, Edward I. appeals to, against the King of France, 58.

Boniface IX., Pope, requests the aid of King Richard II. against the Lollards, 187; he also recalls the religious to their respective houses, who have received the Pope's chaplaincy, 187; privileges granted by him to the King's brother, the Earl of Huntingdon, 200, 201; nominates Roger de Walden to the See of Canterbury, 213; at the end of two years, deprives him of the Archbishopric, 213; King Richard consults the clergy as to arbitrary translations made by, 227; the King is offended with their answer, 227; by his Nuncio, he demands the repeal of certain Statutes, 228; receives great presents from the King, and much money from the clergy, 228.

Bossy, the Sieur de, escorts King Richard II., 190.

Bottlesham, John de, Bishop of Rochester. See Rochester.

Bottlesham, William de, Bishop of Rochester. See Rochester.

Boulogne sur Mer, the Duke of Lancaster embarks at, for the invasion of England, 242.

Bourbon, the Duke of, escorts King Richard, 190.

Bovenda, the Duke of (Boventanus), uncle of the King of Spain, 163, 170.

Bowet, Henry, Bishop of Bath. See Bath.

Bredenbur, Sir Henry de, executed, 124.

Brantingham, Thomas, Bishop of Exeter. See Exeter.

Braybrook, Sir Gerard, is compelled to deliver the Earl of Huntingdon to the populace, 328.

Braybrook, Robert, Bishop of London. See London.

Brest, French ships taken near, 375.
Bretagne (written, “Braines”), John de, comes to England with Prince Edward, 7; marries Beatrice, daughter of Henry III., 35.

Bretagne, the Commons pray that the Earldom of Richmond may be restored to the Duke of, 311; intended expedition of Charles VI. of France against the Duke of, 423; envoys sent to, to escort the Duchess of, to England, 350; the Duchess of, escorted to England, 350; she is married to Henry IV. at Winchester, 350; is crowned at Westminster, 350.

Bretons, the, burn Plymouth, 373, 374; they are challenged by William de Welford, to fight, 376; his successes against them, with an English fleet, 375, 376; with the Flemings, burn Hornsey, 413; they are captured by the men of Hull, 413; of the Court of Queen Joanna are dismissed, 419.

Brewes, Sir William de, offers for sale the Land of Gower, 107; Sir John de Moubray marries his daughter, 107.

Bridlington, the Prophecy of, fulfilled, 407.

Bridlington, convention of Prelates at, for Translation of the body of John, Prior of, 388.

Bristol, Sir Roger Mortimer, the Elder, dies in confinement at, 147; the Earl of Wiltshire and other members of King Richard’s Council flee to, 245, 246; the Castle of, is surrendered to the Duke of Lancaster, 246; Thomas Despenser, late Earl of Gloucester, is beheaded at, 329; the people of, furnish ships against the Bretons, 375.

“Britannia,” the name given to England from Brutus, 132.

Buckingham, John de, Bishop of Lincoln. See Lincoln.

Bunney, Sir —, flees with the Earls of Kent and Salisbury, 325.

Burbache, John, Doctor of Laws. See Deputation.

Burgh, Sir John de, son and heir of the Earl of Ulster, 86; marries a sister of the Earl of Gloucester, 86; Sir Roger de Tamari marries his widow, 86.

Burgh on the Sands, near Carlisle, Edward I. dies at 63.

Burgundy, the Duke of, first informs the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester of the rising against them in the County of Chester, 160; escorts Richard II., 190.

Burnel, Hugh, Lord de. See Deputation.

Burton on Trent, Henry Percy supposes Henry IV. to have been detained at, 364.

Bury St. Edmunds, Henry III. dies at the Abbey of, on his road from Norwich to London, 36, 37; miracles done by the body of Baldwin, formerly Abbot of, 159; Bury? (written, “Barwe”), great inundation near, 159.
INDEX.

Bushy, Sir John, his character, 209; his chief confederates, 209; demands the impeachment of the Duke of Gloucester and the Archbishop of Canterbury, 209; his adulation of Richard II., 210; accuses the Earl of Arundel, 211; threatens the prelates with withdrawal of their temporalities, 212; at his instance, the Archbishop of Canterbury is banished from the kingdom, 213; demands sentence on the Earl of Arundel, 214; a principal adviser of King Richard, 223; at London, gives counsel to the Duke of York, 243, 244; his fear, 244; is beheaded, at Bristol, 246.

Byland, Edward II. flies from the Scots to the Abbey of, 125.

C.

Caermarthen, the City of Merlin, 415; taken by French forces, in aid of Glendower, 415.

Calais, interview of the English envoys with the French near, 157; Richard II. proceeds from, to the Castle of Guynes, 189; interview of the Kings of England and France near, 188-194; the Princess Isabella, after being given in marriage to Richard II., is escorted to, 193, 194; the Duke of Gloucester is taken to, in custody, 205, 206; William de Rikille, the Justiciar, is sent to, 221; the Duke of Gloucester is put to death at, 221; Richard II. is said to contemplate the sale of, to the King of France, 236; those sent back to, who have been for betraying it, to be there punished, 377; inundation at, 394; the troops of, raise the siege of the Castle of Merk, 400.

Calverley, Sir John, slain at Shrewsbury, 369.

Canary Island, alleged discovery of the, by the Spaniards, 389.

Canterbury, Robert de Kilwardby, Archbishop of, crowns King Edward I. at Westminster, 37; Robert de Winchelsea, Archbishop of, promulgates sentence of excommunication against all who shall break the Ordinances, 67, 73; through his mediation, the Earl Warenne joins the party of the Barons, 74; death of Robert de Winchelsea, 81; Thomas de Cobham elected Archbishop by the monks, 81; he goes to Avignon, then the Apostolic See, 82; the Pope annuls the election, 82; and appoints Walter Reynolds, then Bishop of Worcester, 82; the Archbishop feasts the King and Queen, 82; he is present at the burial of Piers de Gaveston at Langley, 88; becomes Chancellor of England, 88; present at the conference at York, 88; at the King's request, comes to an understanding as to the primacy with the Archbishop of York, 88; Reginald de Asser refuses to be consecrated Bishop of Winchester by the Archbishop, 105; the Archbishop takes the Bishop of Hereford under his protection, 141; the Archbishop of York persists in bearing his cross in the Province of the Archbishop of, 142, 143; letters exhibited to, nominating John de Stratford to the See of Winchester, 148. William Courteney, Archbishop of, his extortionate demands on the clergy enforced by Papal Bull, 186, 187; Archbishop Courteney dies, 194; is succeeded by Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of York, 194; he gives benediction to John Moot, Abbot of St. Alban's, 195; persuades his brother, the Earl of Arundel, to deliver himself up to King Richard II., 202, 203; Sir John Bushy demands his impeachment, 209; he is not allowed to answer, 210; he declares it doubtful if charters of pardon granted by the King, can be revoked, 211; at the instance of Sir John Bushy
INDEX.

Canterbury—cont.
he is banished from the kingdom, 213; Roger de Walden is appointed by the Pope to the Archbishopric, 213; Walden is advised by a hermit to vacate the Archbishopric, and to recommend the King to change his life, 231; he suspends him from service of the Mass, 232; Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of, when banished, retires to Utrecht, 241; accompanies the Duke of Lancaster in his invasion of England, 241, 242; Arundel has an interview with Richard II. at Conway, 249; has an interview with Richard in the Tower, 254; attends in Parliament to hear the renunciation of the Crown by Richard II., 257; he asks for public acceptances of the renunciation, 257; places Henry IV. upon the throne, 281; Sermon preached by him, 281; he makes an Ordinance in Convocation, as to the habits of Bishops, belonging to religious Orders, 287; announces to Parliament the wishes of King Henry IV., 288; attends a Convocation of the Clergy at St. Paul's, 289; warns the clergy against certain enemies in Parliament, 290; refuses to anoint Richard II. with the sacred ointment of St. Thomas, 299, 300; receives the sacred ointment of St. Thomas at Chester Castle, from King Richard, 300; anoints King Henry IV. with it, 300; addresses Parliament in the name of the King, 300, 301; is appointed Examiner of Bills in Parliament, 312; is censured for his leniency, as a member of the Council, towards the ceusers of the Duke of Gloucester, 320; is restored by the Pope to the Archbishopric, 321; Roger Walden, late Archbishop of, questioned on suspicion of conspiracy, is liberated, 330; Archbishop Arundel, a priest converted to Lollardism, brought before, 335; a writing given to, by Sir Louis Clifford, containing alleged Conclusions of the Lollards, 347; apprizes Henry IV. of the impoverished state of the clergy, 373; repels a proposition to despoil the Bishops of their horses and money, 373; convokes the clergy at St. Paul's, and obtains a grant for the King, 375, 374; convokes the clergy at St. Paul's, and obtains a conditional grant for the King, 388; anxiety caused to him by the hostility to the clergy of the members of the “Unlearned Parliament,” 391; he associates the other prelates with himself, in the cause of the Church, 392; censures the Knights of Parliament for their cupidity, 393; the Bishop of Rochester is styled his Mercury, 393; many members of Parliament ask his pardon, 394; losses by the Archbishop, through inundations, 394; reverence shown by him for the Sacrament of the Body of Our Lord, 395; complains to King Henry of the irreverent conduct of certain persons, 395; quotes the example of the people of Italy, 395, 396; the King promises that he will correct the offenders, 396; clears himself, before the King, of complicity in the alleged plot of the Duke of York, 399; intercedes with Henry IV. for the Archbishop of York, 408; the King dissembles with him, 409; his grief, on discovering the deception, 411; the King consults him on the marriage of his daughter to the King of Denmark, 413; he is summoned by the King to Worcester, 414; counsel given to the King by certain knights against the prelates, 414; stern answer of the Archbishop, 415; he provides for the Pope's Nuncios by contributions of the religious, 417.

Canterbury, the Life of St. Edmund, Archbishop of, 392; the Prior of, one of a deputation to call upon King Richard II. to resign the crown, 252, 253; loss of the Prior of, through inundations, 394; contribution of the city of, to the army levied against the Scots, 102; Queen Isabella, on her way to, is refused...
Canterbury—cont.
admission into Leeds Castle, 111; John de Buckingham, the deprived Bishop of Lincoln, retires to, 227. See St. Augustine’s.

Carlisle, Thomas Merk, Bishop of, Richard II. stipulates for his life, 250; he attends in Parliament, 313; defends himself against the charge of conspiring against the Duke of Gloucester, 314; retires to the Abbey of St. Alban’s, 314; he is condemned to death, for conspiracy, 330; William Strickland succeeds Thomas Merk in the See of, 334; the Pope transfers Merk to a valueless Bishopric, but he receives various benefices in addition, 334; the Bishop of, at Bridlington, at the Translation of John, Prior of that place, 388.

Carlisle, Edward I. dies at Burgh on the Sands, near, 63; the country from, to York, ravaged by the Scots, 91; one of the few Northern places in safety from the Scots, 91; the Earldom of, bestowed on Sir Andrew Harcla, 127.

Carthusians, the, of London, obtain full remission, from Rome, for benefactors, on a certain day, 348.

Castellis, warning given to the Sieur de, the leader of the Bretons in the burning of Plymouth, 375; he sends a message to the English invaders of Bretagne, 375; is elated by his achievements at Plymouth, 383; lands near Dartmouth, and is slain, 383, 384.

Chaleidon, the Bishop of, brings Letters Apostolic to England, for contributions for the Emperor of Constantinople, 230, 231.

Champion of England, the office of, claimed, 287, 288.

Chancery, the Court of, removed from London to York, 156; and back again to London, 156.

Charing Cross, the poor seated on the road to, receive alms from the Earl of Arundel on his road to execution, 216.

Charles I., King of Sicily, brother of Louis IX., 29; disaster to his army, 29; informs King Edward of the death of his father, uncle, and son, 33.

Charles II. of Sicily, his son, Philip, is captured by Pedro III., King of Aragon, 42.

Charles IV., King of France, Edward II. is summoned to do homage to, for Gascoigne, 140; Edward sends envoys to him to excuse his personal attendance to do homage, 143; he refuses the request, unless compensation is made for a trespass committed in Aquitaine, 143, 144; his demands in reference to Ralph Basset are not complied with, 145; Aymer, Earl of Pembroke, is sent envoy to, 150.

Charles VI., King of France, narrowly escapes being burnt alive, 155, 156; the deed imputed to his brother, 155; four of his companions burnt to death, 156; his illness is renewed, 157; interview of, with Richard II. near Calais, 188–194; oath made by, 188; how escorted at Guynes, 190; his dress, 190; gives his daughter, Isabella, in marriage to King Richard II., 193; he feasts with Richard, and they then part, 194; Richard is said to contemplate the sale of Calais to, 236; singular story as to the alleged cause of his insanity, 423, 424; vouched for to the envoy of King Richard, by the Queen of France, 424.

Charles of Valois, doubtful conduct of, and his hostility to the English, 55; he contemplates invading Gascoigne, 56; invades Aquitaine, 149.

Cherbourg, a pledge to the King of England, is restored to the King of Navarre, 164.

Chester, the See of, is bestowed on John de Buckingham, the deprived Bishop of Lincoln, 226; he declines it, 227; the See is bestowed on the Bishop of Llandaff, 227; the Bishop of, present at the interment of King Richard II., at Langley, 331. See Lichfield and Coventry.
Chester, the Earldom of, given by Henry III. to his son, Prince Edward, 70; the eldest son of Henry IV. is created Earl of, 301.

Chester, rising in the County of, against the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester, and the Earl of Derby, 159; insurrection in, quelled by the Duke of Lancaster, 161; malefactors from, are summoned to London, to the aid of Richard II., 208; their misdeeds, 208; men of, attend the execution of the Earl of Arundel, on Tower Hill, 216; King Richard entrusts himself entirely to his guard of men of, 237; the men of, attend Richard to Ireland, 238; dissatisfaction of the men of, for the Duke of Lancaster, 251; it is quelled by Henry Percy, 251; archers of, in Henry Percy's army, their excellence, 367; great number of men of, slain at the Battle of Shrewsbury, 368.

Chester, the City of, visited by the Duke of Lancaster, with a Commission, 160; Richard II. accompanies the Duke of Lancaster to, 250; charters of pardon alleged by Sir William Bagot to have been left at, 308; reports that King Richard is still to be seen in the Castle of, 363.

Chester, the Earl of Arundel in the March of, 166.

Cheyne, Sir John, Speaker of Parliament, an alleged enemy of the clergy, 290; resigns the office of Speaker in Parliament, 301, 302; sent to Rome by Henry IV., to announce his accession, 320.

Cheyne, Sir William, executed, 124.

Chichester, the Bishop of (Chester), an envoy from the Barons to Edward II., 109; John Mitford, Bishop of, is made Bishop of Salisbury, 186; he is succeeded by the Archbishop of Dublin, 186; (Robert Reade,) Bishop of, gives advice to the Duke of York, 243.

Christ-church, Canterbury, the deprived Bishop of Lincoln retires to, 227.

Cicero quoted, 47

Cirencester, Edward II. keeps Christmas at, 111; the people of, capture and execute the Earls of Kent and Salisbury, 325, 326; the heads of the Earls slain at, are sent to London, 329.

Clarendon, Sir Roger, said to have been a bastard son of Edward, the Black Prince, 340; is hanged for treason against Henry IV., 310.

Clarendon, Edward II. keeps Easter at, 98.

Cleye, in Norfolk, fire at, 167; the men of, capture the son of the King of Scotland, at sea, 419; they deliver him to Henry IV., 419.

Clement V., Pope, annulls the election of Thomas de Cobham as Archbishop of Canterbury, and appoints Walter Reynolds, the then Bishop of Worcester, 82; formerly Archbishop of Bordeaux, 82; death of, 82.

Clifford, Sir Louis, a leader of the Lollards, 174; he informs against them, 347.

Clifford, Robert de, Baron, is slain at Bannockburn, 83; his body is restored to King Edward II. by Robert le Brus, 87.

Clifford, Sir Roger de, executed, 124; his father slain at Bannockburn, 124.

Clifford, Sir Roger de, the Younger, slain in Wales, 40.

Clifford, William de, King's Seneschal, as envoy, returns from France, 372; captures Serle, the alleged murderer of the Duke of Gloucester, 390; attends the Earl of Northumberland to Pontefract, 390; joins the conspiracy against Henry IV., 402.

Clifton, Sir John, slain at Shrewsbury, 369.

Clipston in Sherwood (in Sirewode), King Edward II. spends Christmas at, 92.

Cobham, Sir John de, is condemned, and banished to the Isle of Guernsey, 224; is promised a sufficient sustenance by King Richard, which promise is broken, 224; returns from Guernsey, 252; speaks in Parliament on the death of the Duke of Gloucester, 306, 307.
Cobham, Master Thomas de, elected by the monks Archbishop of Canterbury, 81; he proceeds to Avignon, the then Apostolic See, 81; the election is annulled by the Pope, 82.

Cokayne (Kokayn), Sir John, slain at Shrewsbury, 369.

Cokayne, Sir William, convicts an informer against many Abbots and Priors of perjury, 415, 416; the informer is condemned to be hanged, 416.

Colby, John, a native of Norfolk, fraud practised by him upon the religious houses of Essex and Norfolk, 183.

Colne, cattle stolen belonging to men of, 24.

Colne, in Essex, the body of Robert, Earl of Oxford, is buried at the Priory of, 185.

Cologne, the Archbishop of, is taken prisoner, 43; the Provost of, brings news that King Richard II. is about to be elected Emperor of Almaine, 199.

Cologne, a daughter of King Henry IV. is escorted to, to marry a son of the Emperor, 342.

Colossians, the Epistle to the, quoted, 48.

Comet, appearance of a, 338; prognostics therefrom, 338.

Constance. See Lancaster.

Constantine, discovery of the treasure of Helena, the mother of, 228, 229.

Constantinople, besieged by Bajazet, 166, 185; it is relieved, 185; the Pope aids in obtaining contributions for the Emperor of, against Bajazet, 230; King Richard II. aids him with money, but not with men, 231; he visits England, and is hospitably entertained, 334; visits Henry IV. at Elytham, 335; is rejoiced with news of the defeat and death of the son of Bajazet, 336; on leaving England, is escorted from London by Henry IV., 336; Henry gives him presents, but is unable to supply him with men, 336, 337.

Convocation of the clergy, ordinance in, as to the habits of Bishops belonging to religious Orders, 287; at St. Paul's, 289; statement made in, by Magdelene, the late Priest of King Richard II., 301.

Conway, interview of Richard II. with the Earl of Northumberland and the Archbishop of Canterbury at, 249; his promise at, to resign the crown, 253.

Corinthians, the First Epistle to the, quoted, 163, 171.

Corn, abundance of, in England, 44.

Cornwall, the Earldom of, is given to Piers de Gaveston, 65; the eldest son of Henry IV. is created Duke of, 301.

Cornwall, Richard, Earl of. See Almaine.

Coronation, oath taken by the Kings of England at their, 259; of King Henry IV., 291, 292; of the Kings of England, ceremonial of the, 292-297.

Courteney, Sir Peter, the governor of Bristol Castle, surrenders it to the Duke of Lancaster, 246.


Coventry, a duel arranged at, between the Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk, 225, 226; Richard II. forbids it, 226; a Parliament summoned at, but postponed, 376; the "Unlearned Parliament" is held at, 391, 392; dysentery at, 394.

Crusade, a, projected by Louis IX., King of France, 24; to be granted to the Earl of Huntingdon, as to the Duke of Lancaster or the Bishop of Norwich, 201.

Cutpurse, detection of a, by King Richard II., at Westminster, 165.

Cyprus, Sir John de Roos dies at the city of Paphos, in the Isle of, 164.
INDEX.

D.

Dadinton, near Warwick, Piers de Gaveston seized by the Earl of Warwick at, 77.

Dammori, Roger, dies before judgment pronounced on him, 124.

Danbury, in Essex, alleged appearance of the Devil at, 340; the summit of the Church at, is injured, 340.

Dangwyth (?), an Irish chieftain, submits, 173.

Danube, regions beyond the, 155.

Darkness, marvellous, at the moment of the death of the Earl of Leicester, 19

Dartmouth, the people of, furnish ships against the Bretons, 375; the Sieur de Castellis lands near, and is slain, 383; prowess of the English women at, 384.

David, his grief for his son Absalom, 34.

David, brother of Llewelyn, surprises Sir Roger de Clifford, the Justiciar of Wales, and takes him prisoner, 39; sends him to Llewelyn, 39; he destroys Flint Castle, 39; is pursued by King Edward I., 40; and captured, 41; put to death at Shrewsbury, 41.

De Viris Religiosis, the Statute, 45, 46.

De la Mare, death of Thomas, Abbot of St. Alban's, 195. See St. Alban's.

De la Pole, Michael, petitions for the restoration of certain of his father's estates, 312; answer thereto, 312.

Dearth of victuals, mandate issued, with the view of alleviating the, 89, 90; increase of the, 92; circumstances attending it, 93; evil effects thereof, 93. See Famine.

Debenham, Gilbert de, Sheriff of Norfolk and Suffolk, 184; apprehends certain impostors, 184.

Delisle, Sir Warin, executed, 124.

Denmark, the people of, attack England, 132; piracy of the subjects of the Queen of, 186; the people of Norfolk suffer therefrom, 186; the King of (Eric VII.), asks Philippa, daughter of Henry IV. in marriage, 412; a favourable answer is given, 412; Amaronia, the Queen mother of, asks the daughter of Henry IV. in marriage for her son, 412; loses her husband in war with Sweden, 413; avenges his death, and conquers Sweden, 413; the Princess Philippa is proclaimed Queen of, 417; the Princess leaves England for, 420; the produce of the country consumed by its army, 420; conduct of the Queen of, after her conquest of Sweden, 420.

Deputation of nobles and others, to call upon Richard II. to resign the crown, 252, 253.

Derby, Henry, Earl of, rising against him in the County of Chester, 159; death of his wife, 168; he escorts the King of France at Guynes, 190; is created Duke of Hereford, 222. See Henry IV., Hereford, and Lancaster.

Derby, the Earldom of. See Ferrers.

Derby, the Countess of, her death, 168; she is buried at Leicester, 168.

Despenser, Sir Hugh le, the Earl of Leicester exhorts him to fly, before the Battle of Evesham, 18; he refuses, 18; is slain in the Battle, 20.

Despenser, Hugh, the Elder, Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, his enemy, 107; he is banished, 110. See Winchester.

Despenser, Hugh, the Younger, marries a sister of the Earl of Gloucester, 86; the King's Chamberlain, 107; by the royal favour, gains possession of the Land of Gower, 107; conceals himself from the anger of the Barons, 110; hatred of him by Sir Andrew Harcla, 127; at Newcastle on Tyne, 133.

Despenser, Sir Thomas, suborned as an accuser of the arrested nobles, 207; is created Earl of Gloucester, 222. See Gloucester.
INDEX.

Despenser, the Lady, accuses her brother, the Duke of York, of high crimes, 398; her esquire offers to support the charge, 398.

Despensers, the Barons wreak their vengeance on the, and their friends, 108; the exile of the, is demanded by the Barons, 109.

Deuteronomy, the Book of, quoted, 143.

Devil, alleged appearance of the, at Danbury in Essex, 340.

Devreux, Sir John, King's Seneschal and Constable of Dover, 156; dies suddenly, while preparing to accompany the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester to France, 156.

D'Eyvile, Sir Gocelin, executed, 124.

Dominicans. See Friars Preachers.

Dorset, the Marquis of, denies complicity in the death of the Duke of Gloucester, 313; is adjudged to lose the rank of Marquis, 318. See Somerset.

Douglas, Earl, leads the Scots in their invasion of England, 344; is attacked and defeated by the Earl of Northumberland, 345; taken prisoner, 346; taken at the Battle of Homildon Hill, 366; aids Henry Percy against Henry IV., 366; his prowess at the Battle of Shrewsbury, 367; is taken prisoner, 368; is severely wounded, 368.

Dover, King Henry III. retires to, 8; the Castle of, put in charge of Sir E. Waleran, 8, 9; King Edward I. crosses to, from Witsand, 27; Sir John Devreux, Constable of, 156; Sir Thomas de Beaufort succeeds him, 156; men of, aid the Earl of Somerset against the Spaniards, 389.

Dragon, appearance of a, near Sudbury, 402.

Dublin, the Archbishop of, takes the Bishop of Hereford under his protection, 141; is sent as envoy to the King of France, to request him to excuse the attendance of Edward II. to do homage for Gascoigne, 143; Robert Waldeby, Archbishop of, is made Bishop of Chichester, 186.

Dublin, Richard II. keeps Christmas at, 172.

Dumfries, the County of, 135.

Dunbar, George, Earl of, joins the Earl of Northumberland in the pursuit and defeat of the Scots, at Homildon Hill, 344, 345; also, Earl of March, 349; is commended by Parliament for his services, 349; instigates Henry IV., before the Battle of Shrewsbury, to immediate action, 364, 367; aids the King in that Battle, 367.

Dunstable, a tournament proclaimed at, 14; forbidden by the Earl of Leicester, 14, 15; thieves on the road to, from St. Alban's, 22; a cattle-stealer of, is executed at St. Alban's, 23, 24; the Barons assemble at, and demand the fulfilment of the Ordinances, 77.


Dureward, Sir William, is chosen Speaker in Parliament, 302.

Durham, Louis de Beaumont is consecrated Bishop of, 99; he is imprisoned, and forced to pay ransom, 99; Walter Skirlaw, Bishop of, sent to France by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320; present at Bridlington, at the Translation of John, Prior of that place, 388; Thomas de Langley, succeeds Walter Skirlaw as Bishop of, 419.

Durham, the envoys of the Pope are plundered by robbers near, 99; they are allowed to proceed to, 99; they proceed from, to York, 99.

Dymok, John, the office of Champion heretofore held by, and awarded to him, 288.

Dymyl (?), an Irish Chieftain, submits, 173.

Dymysyn (?), an Irish Chieftain, submits, 173.

Dynesley, timber at, given by Edward II. for repair of the Choir of the Abbey of St. Alban's, 83.

Dysentery at Coventry, 394.
Earthquake, 102.
East March, the Scots invade England by the, 164.
Ecclesiastes, the Book of, quoted, 17, 56.
Edmund, Saint, Archbishop of Canterbury, the Life of, 392.
Edward I., (as Prince,) his father, Henry III., writes to him for aid against the Barons, 6; he collects forces, 6; declines to be absolved from his oath, 6; final terms with the Barons to be delayed till his arrival in England, 7; he returns to England, with William de Valence, 7; enters into a compact with the Barons, 7; remains with the Barons, without the Tower of London, 8; at the Battle of Lewes, 10; pursues the Londoners from the field of battle, 11; is himself made prisoner, 11; and sent to Wallingford Castle, 12; then sent to Hereford Castle, 12, 13; he escapes by stratagem from the Castle, 13; defeats Simon de Montfort, the Younger, 17; defeats the Earl of Leicester at Evesham, 17–19; his sorrow at the death of the Earl, 20; he escorts the widow of Simon de Montfort to her native land, 20; Louis IX., King of France, requests him to join in a Crusade for recovery of the Holy Land, 23; Louis agrees to supply him with money, 25, 26; Edward’s character and prowess, 26; comparison of him with Ishmael, 26; he consents to aid the French King, and obtains his father’s sanction, 26; character of the Princess Alienor, his wife, 26; his daughter, the Princess Joanna of Acre, 27; his anger at her marriage to a man of low degree, 27; how appeased, 27; he sets out for the Holy Land, 27; meets the King of France at Tunis, 27; his resolution on hearing of the death of Louis, 29; the remark of the Soldan of Babylon on hearing it, 29; he is wounded at Acre by an assassin, 30; prowess shown by him in slaying the assassin, 30; friendly feeling of a Saracen Emir towards him, 30, 31; his reasons for not taking vengeance on the Saracens, 31; his followers approve of his advice, 32; he ascertains the diminished numbers of the English troops, 32, 33; orders the English troops to return home, 33; he sets out for England, 33; arrives in Sicily, 33; the King of Sicily informs him of the death of his father, uncle, and son, 33; his lamentation thereon, 34; he assumes the royal dignity, 34; repairs to Rome, 34; and thence to Gascoigne, 34; where he remains a year, 34; the eldest son of Henry III., by Alienor of Savoy, 34; he crosses from Witsand to Dover, and arrives in England, 37; is crowned by Kilwardby, Archbishop of Canterbury, at Westminster, 37; why styled “Edward the Third,” 37; his abundant promises, 37; he summons Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, to Parliament, 38; on Llewelyn’s refusal, he invades Wales, and reaches Snowdon, 38; Llewelyn submits, and accompanies him to London, 38, 39; he again invades Wales, to attack Llewelyn, 39, 40; pursues David, the brother of Llewelyn, 40; enters the Castle of Opa, and takes Anglesey, 40; but suffers great losses, 40; orders Sir John de Vesci to besiege Snowdon, 41; finally conquers Wales, 41; puts David, brother of Llewelyn, 40; enters the Castle of Opa, and takes Anglesey, 40; but suffers great losses, 40; orders Sir John de Vesci to besiege Snowdon, 41; finally conquers Wales, 41; puts David, brother of Llewelyn, to death, 41; he is requested to mediate between the Kings of France and Aragon, 42; at the request of Pope Honorius IV., he crosses over to France, to mediate, 43; his exploits in Gascoigne, 43; his anger, on hearing of another rising in Wales, 43; his praises, 46, 47; deprives John Baliol and Llewelyn of their thrones, 47; necessity for the imposts laid by him upon his people, 47; Mary of Woodstock, his daughter, as-
Edward I.—cont.
sumes the veil, 48; death of Queen Alianor, his wife, at Hardeby, near Lincoln, 49; honours paid by him to her memory, 50; grief manifested by him at the great slaughter of his enemies in a naval combat, 52; he declines to attend the Parliament of the King of France, 52, 53; certain French ships seized, contrary to his wish, 53; he makes overtures of peace to the King of France, 53, 54; and asks his sister, Margaret, in marriage, 54; his offer is accepted, 54; Philip then enters Bordeaux, to give Edward rescisin of Gascoigne, 54; the Count of Flanders determines to give his daughter in marriage to the son of Edward, 55; Edward lands with an army in Gascoigne, 56; is accompanied by his brother, Edmund, Earl of Lancaster and Leicester, 56; is aided by the army of the King of Almaine, 56; and by soldiers of the King of Aragon, 56; the French are defeated in Gascoigne, 57; King Edward expels the Jews from England, 57; he appeals to Pope Boniface VIII. against the King of France, 58; promises, if his appeal is heard, to enter on a Crusade against the Saracens, 58; death of his brother Edmund, leader of the army in Gascoigne, 58, 59; commands the citizens of Oxford to be punished for a commotion, 59; death of, at Burgh on the Sands, 63; enriches his nephews, Henry and John, sons of Edmund, Earl of Lancaster, 71; he is resisted by the Earl of Hereford and Earl Marshal, 74; on the death of the Earl of Hereford, the Earl Marshal submits, 74; he gives the Earl-dom of the Earl Marshal to his son, Thomas de Brotherton, 74; the kingdom of Scotland duly awarded to him, 132.

Edward II.—cont.
cutor, Walter de Langton, Bishop of Chester (Lichfield and Coventry), 63; cause of his hatred, 63, 64; the Bishop is finally restored, in some degree, to the royal favour, 64; Edward recalls Piers de Gaveston from exile, 64, 65; bestows on him the County of Cornwall, 65; he crosses over to France, to marry the Princess Isabella, 65; leaves the kingdom of England in the charge of Piers de Gaveston, 65; disgust of the nobles thereat, 65; with the Queen, is received by the nobles with due honour, 65; shews extreme partiality for Gaveston, 65; is crowned, with the Queen, at Westminster, 65; the nobles are jealous of his preference for Gaveston, and entertain hostile feelings towards him, 66; they draw up certain Articles, to counteract the influence of Gaveston, 66; he ratifies the Ordinances, 66, 67; the exile of Gaveston is provided in the Ordinances, 67; it is carried into effect, but the King delays to put the other provisions of the Ordinances in force, 67; he gives to Gaveston the sister of the Earl of Gloucester in marriage, 67; recalls Gaveston from exile, 67; on the demand of the Barons, again sends Gaveston into banishment, 68; Gaveston, on his speedy return, presents himself to the King, at York, 69; names of his principal opponents, 74; the Earl of Lancaster sends letters to him, at York, requesting him to deliver Gaveston to the Commons, or to send him into banishment, 74; he leaves York, with Gaveston, for Newcastle on Tyne, 75; proceeds with him to Tynemouth, 75; obtains a ship in the port of the Tyne, and proceeds with him to Scarborough, 75; leaves Gaveston in the Castle, and proceeds to York, 75; on the capture of Gaveston, he intercedes with the Barons for his life, 76; the Earl of Pembroke engages to keep Gaveston, in safety, up to a certain day, 76; the King arrives
Edward II.—cont.

at London, 77; the Barons assemble at Dunstaple, and demand the fulfilment of the Ordinances, 77; the clergy, with certain foreign prelates, attempt to mediate between the King and the Barons, 77, 78; the Barons agree to surrender Gaveston's effects to the King, 78, 79; birth of his son, Prince Edward, (afterwards Edward III.), 79; his grief for the death of Gaveston is assuaged thereby, 79, 80; dissensions between the King and the Barons are still caused by certain persons, 80; he rebukes the Barons, in Parliament, for leading an army against him, and for their conduct to Gaveston, 80; the Queen, the Earl of Gloucester, and the Bishops, mediate effectually between the King and the Barons, 80; final agreement, that the Barons shall ask pardon, in Westminster Hall, of the King, 81; a grant made to him, 81; the Pope, to gratify him, appoints Walter Reynolds, Bishop of Worcester, Archbishop of Canterbury, 82; he and the Queen are feasted by Archbishop Walter at Canterbury; he visits St. Alban's, and makes offering to the Saint, 83; his munificence to the Abbey, 83; he spends Easter at Ely, 83; passes through Lincoln, York, and Newcastle on Tyne, to Berwick, 83; he hastens to raise the siege of Stirling Castle 83; loses many troops there, 83; his army is defeated by the Scots, at Bannockburn, 84, 85; desperate valour displayed by him in the battle, 86; the bodies of the Earl of Gloucester and the Baron de Clifford are sent to him at Berwick, by Robert le Brus, 87; he revolves his disaster in his mind, and the successes of the Scots, 88; removes from Berwick to York, 88; holds a private conference there, 88; the two Archbishops come to an understanding as to the primacy, at his request, 88; he keeps Christmas at Windsor, 88; causes the body of Gaveston to be embalmed, and

Edward II.—cont.
buried at Langley, 88; mandate issued by him for alleviation of the dearth in England, 89, 90; his territories in Ireland invaded by Edward, brother of Robert le Brus, 91; invasion of his castles and lands in Wales, 92; when at St Alban's, bread is with difficulty found for the support of his household, 92; he spends Christmas at Clipston in Sherwood, 92; is put in good spirits by the birth of his son, John of Eltham, 95; returns to Clipston in Sherwood, 95; at Woodstock, issues a mandate as to the sale of ale, 95-98; keeps Easter at Clarendon, and returns to London, 98; device employed, through the agency of a female, to remind him of his duty, 98; envoys are sent by the Pope to establish peace between him and the Earl of Lancaster, 99; the envoys make terms between him and the Earl of Lancaster, 102; his daughter, Alisanor, is born at Woodstock, 102; he holds his Court at Beverley, 103; contemplates the recapture of Berwick from the Scots, 103, 104; attempts to intercept the Scots, after the Battle of Mitton on Swale, 104; waits for them near Newminster, but they escape by another road, 104; he reluctantly gives his assent to the nomination, by the Pope, of Reginald de Asser to the Bishopric of Winchester, 105; by his favour, the younger Hugh Despenser gains possession of the Land of Gower, 107; the Barons demand the exile of the Despensers, 109; the King refuses, 109; the Barons come to London, with the King's sanction, and extort certain concessions from him, 109; he sends the Elder Despenser into banishment, 110; lays siege to Leeds Castle, and takes it, 110; keeps Christmas at Cirencester, 111; summons his forces, and many of the Barons submit, 111; he orders the execution of many Barons, 124; collects an army at Newcastle on Tyne, and invades
Edward II.—cont.
Scotland, 125; the unfortunate results thereof, 125; he flies from the Scots, to the Abbey of Byland, 125; escapes to York, 126; flight from him, of the Earls of Lancaster and Hereford, 126; the captured Barons brought before him at Pontefract, 126; he concludes a truce for thirteen years, between England and Scotland, 132-138; conspiracy for liberation of the adherents of the Barons, imprisoned by him, 138; he makes inquisition in the Counties of York and Lancaster, and the towns near the Marches of Wales, as to offenders against the peace, 139; celebrates Christmas at Kenilworth Castle, 139; convenes the nobles at Westminster, 139, 140; he is summoned to do homage to the King of France for Gascoigne, 140; the Bishop of Hereford is examined before him, as to treason, 141; the Archbishops take the Bishop under their protection, 141; the King is surprised at their audacity, 141, 142; on inquisition made by his order, the Bishop is found guilty, 142; the King shews kindness to the Bishop of Lincoln, and he is restored to his possessions, 142; he sends envoys to the King of France, requesting him to excuse his personal attendance to do homage for Gascoigne, 143; the King of France refuses, unless compensation is made for a certain trespass committed against him in Aquitaine, 143, 144; he withdraws certain concessions made by his envoys to the King of France, 145; wishes to appoint Robert de Baldock to the See of Winchester, but is thwarted by the Pope, 148; he disgraces John de Stratford, appointed Bishop by the Pope, 148; but takes him back into favour, 148, 149; he condemns John de Suliac, the French envoy, to death, 150; but spares him, at the intercession of the Queen of France, 150; he keeps Christmas at Nottingham, 152; returns to London, and holds a Parliament at Westminster, 152; the French require him to renounce his title to the County of Ponthieu, 152.

Edward III., birth of, 79; the nobles of England forbid him to be named after the French King, 79; he establishes in Ireland the Bench and the Exchequer, 172; a cup made by his order, given by Richard II. to the King of France, 191.

Edward, Prince (the Black Prince), requests the King of the Majorcas to be godfather to his son, 233; receives the sacred Ointment of St. Thomas, 299; Sir Roger Clarendon, said to have been his bastard son, 340.

Edward, Saint, the Confessor, Richard II. adds to his shield the arms of, 223.

Eleanor (Alianor) of Savoy, married to Henry III., 34; her issue by him, 34; assumes the veil at Amesbury, 48; her death and burial there, 49.

Eleanor (Alianor), the wife of Prince Edward, her virtues, 26; bears a daughter, Joanna, in the Holy Land, 26; follows King Edward I. into Gascoigne, 31; her praises, 48; her children by Edward, 48; dies at Hardoby, near Lincoln, 49; her virtues, 49; Masses celebrated for her, 50; honours paid to her remains, 50; her body rests at St. Alban's, 50; crosses erected in memory of her, 50; she is buried at Westminster, 50.

Eleanor (Alianor), the Princess, daughter of Edward II., born at Woodstock, 102.

Elmham, Sir William, opposes the Duke of Lancaster, 246; is captured, 246.

Eltham, Prince John born at, son of Edward II., 95; the Emperor of Constantinople keeps Christmas, with Henry IV., at 335; Henry IV. keeps Christmas at, 397.

Ely, (John Hotham,) Bishop of, assists at the consecration of the Bishop of Winchester, at St. Alban's, 105; an envoy from the Barons to King Edward II., 109.
Ely, the Barons take possession of the Isle of, against Henry III., 10.

Ely, Edward II. spends Easter at, 83; the people of, obtain full remission for benefactors, on a certain day, from Rome, 348.

Emir, friendly feeling of a Saracen, for Prince Edward, 30, 31.

England, disease among sheep throughout, 37; dissensions of, with France, how commenced, 51; fear of the English manifested by the Normans, 53; and France, the ports of, closed against each other, 53; the goldsmiths of, punished for clipping the coin, 58; Piers de Gaveston is banished from, 67; he returns to, 68; the English are rebuked by Philip IV. of France, for the maltreatment of his daughter, Isabella, by Piers de Gaveston, 68; the Bishops of, mediate between Edward II. and the Barons for peace, 77, 78; rejoicings throughout, for the birth of Prince Edward (afterwards Edward III.), 79; great dearth in, 89, 90; increase of the dearth, 92, 93; great misfortunes befalling the people of, 93; a pestilence in, 94; mandate for the regulation of the sale of ale throughout, 95–98; envoys sent by the Pope to establish peace between, and Scotland, 99; the Scots ravage the North of, 101, 102; an army levied against the Scots from the chief towns of, 102; the English are defeated by the Scots at Milton on Swale, 104; a truce concluded by, with Scotland, for two years, 104; a murrain in, 104; the Scots invade, 125, 126; formerly called "Albion," and inhabited by Giants, 132; afterwards attacked by other nations, 132; takes its name of "Britannia" from Brutus, 132; a truce of thirteen years concluded by, with Scotland, 132–138; evils arising from the dissensions of the Kings of, and of France, 150, 151; a truce between, and France, 151; loss to, in the death of Sir John de Roos, 165; a truce concluded by with France, for four years, 168; the Irish in, are ordered to return home, 171, 172; Richard II. returns to, from Ireland, 183; suffers losses through piracy of the subjects of the Queen of Denmark, 186; the laurels throughout, wither, and then revive, 229; supposed signification thereof, 229; the Bishop of Chalcedon collects money in, to aid the Emperor of Constantinople against Bajazet, 230, 231; money is extorted from seventeen Counties of, on pretence of having supported the Duke of Gloucester, 234, 235; bad feeling in, towards King Richard, when absent in Ireland, 239; all the escheats throughout, said to have been farmed by the Earl of Wiltshire, 240; the Duke of Lancaster prepares to invade, 240; the Duke of Lancaster hovers about the coasts of, 242; good wishes in, for his success, 242; the Duke of Lancaster lands in, 244; the Chronicles in the Monasteries of, to be examined, 252; oath taken by the Kings of, at their Coronation, 258, 259; invaded by the Scots, 270, 271; its loss in the death of the Duke of Gloucester, and his wife and son, 321; the North of, is invaded by the Scots, under "Earl Douglas, 344; the people of, not allowed to keep hostels in Lombardy, 379; the Lombards not allowed to keep hostels in, 379; variations of fortune experienced by the people of, in their contests with the French, 382.

English, Sir William, attacks Sir Thomas Strother, governor of Jedburgh Castle, 166, 167; is challenged by Strother to combat, and defeats him, 167.

Ephesians, the Epistle to the, quoted, 48.

Epidemic, a fatal, 332.

Ergom, Ralph, Bishop of Bath. See Bath.

Erpingham, Sir Thomas, accompanies the Duke of Lancaster in his invasion of England, 243; a Commissioner to pronounce sentence of deposition on Richard II., 278, 279; attends Convocation on the King's behalf, 289; carries the sword
INDEX. 

Erpingham, Sir Thomas—cont. before Henry IV., at his Coronation, 291; presents a petition, as Chamberlain, in behalf of Michael de la Pole, 312. See Deputation.

Erskine, Lord de, taken prisoner, 346.

Essex, pestilence in, 159; singular fraud practised upon the religious houses of, 183, 184; a murraim among cattle, said to have prevailed in, 105. See Colne, and Danbury.

Essex and Hertford, the Sheriff of. See Pereris.

Evesham, Simon, Earl of Leicester, is defeated at the Battle of, 17–19; the Monks of, bury the body of the Earl of Leicester in the Monastery, 20; but conceal his burial-place, 20.

Exeter, Thomas Brantingham, Bishop of, dies, 186; is succeeded by Edmund de Stafford, 186; Stafford is appointed Chancellor, 194, 337.

Exeter, the Duke of, a principal adviser of Richard II., 223; accompanies King Richard to Ireland, 238; Richard, Earl of Arundel, escapes from the house of, 241; the Duke accompanies King Richard from Ireland to England, 248; he is sent by Richard to the Earl of Northumberland and the Archbishop of Canterbury, 249; Richard stipulates for his life, 250; he holds the Acts of 21 and 22 Richard II. to be null and void, 303; challenges Sir William Bagot, 305; denies complicity in the death of the Duke of Gloucester, 313; is adjudged to lose the rank of Duke, 318. See Huntingdon.

Ezekiel, the Book of, quoted 132.

F.

Falkirk, the Scots, at the Battle of Bannockburn, take warning by their disaster at, 84.

Famine in England, increase of the, 94; crimes arising from the, 95. See Dearth.

Ferby, William, a clerk, executed, 332.

Ferby, William de, notary public. See Deputation.

Ferrers (? Derby), the Earl of, his Earldom given by Henry III. to his son Edmund, 70.

Fife, the Earl of, taken prisoner, 346.


Fitz-William, Sir William, executed, 124.

Flagellants, Companies of, arise in Italy, 322.

Flanders, the Count of, determines to give his daughter in marriage to the son of Edward I., 55.

Flanders, Piers de Gaveston leaves France for, 69. See Flemings.

Fleming (Flemyns), Sir David, taken prisoner, 346; receives the Earl of Northumberland and Lord Bardolf, on their flight to Scotland, 414; slain by the Scots, 418.

Flemings, the, with the Bretons, burn Hornseye, 413; they are captured by the men of Hull, 413.

Flint, the Castle of, destroyed by Llewelyn, 39; Richard II. flies to, 249; Richard surrenders to the Duke of Lancaster at, 250.

Flisco, Luke de, Cardinal, an envoy of the Pope to England, 99; he is plundered near Durham, 99; proceeds to York, 99; to London, 100; with his colleague, endeavours to levy money from the English clergy, which is resisted by them, 100; after making terms between the King and the nobles, he returns home, 102.

Fowin, the palfreyman of Edward I., 29.

Framlingham, Margaret, Duchess of Norfolk, dies at the Castle of, 223.
France, Prince Edward arrives in, 25, 27; a powerful man of, brings a diseased sheep into Northumberland, 38; war between the King of, and the King of Aragon, 42; Edward I. crosses over to, to mediate, 42, 43; dissensions of, with England, how commenced, 51; the people of, hang an English sailor, 51; the French fleet is defeated near St. Matthew, 52; and England, the ports of, closed against each other, 53; certain French ships are seized, contrary to the wish of King Edward, 53; the French are defeated in Gascoigne, 57; Edward II. crosses over to, to marry the Princess Isabella, 65; Piers de Gaveston, on his banishment from England, retires to, 68; he is driven from thence, 69; Edmund, Earl of Lancaster, in, 70; Navarre, how joined to the kingdom of, 71; the nobles of England forbid Prince Edward to be named after the King of, 79; a murrain said to have prevailed among the cattle in, 105; Edward II. is summoned to do homage to the King of, for Gascoigne, 140; Sir Roger Mortimer, the Younger, reaches, 146; the French invade Aquitaine, and conquer Agen, 149; Aymer, Earl of Pembroke, is sent envoy to, 150; the Queen of, intercedes with King Edward II. for John de Suliac, the French envoy, 150; evils arising from the dissensions of the Kings of, and England, 150, 151; a truce between, and England, 151; fresh envoys are appointed in England, to be sent to, 152; the French require the English King to renounce his title to Ponthieu, 152; a truce with England for four years, 168; the French promise assistance to the Duke of Lancaster, in his invasion of England, 241; envoys sent to, by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320; ambassadors are sent from, to escort back Queen Isabella, 331; the conditions of peace with, are renewed, 331; Queen Isabella returns to, 337; high estimate of the Earl of Worcester by the King of, 365; a truce made with, 372; the French plunder the Isle of Wight, 378; the French demand tribute from the Isle of Wight, 381; which is refused, 381, 382; variations of fortune experienced by the French, in their contests with the English, 382; many French, who land near Dartmouth, are slain, 384; names of the French prisoners, 384; Henry IV. rewards the captors, and retains the prisoners, 386; singular successes of Henry de Pay in, 386-388; names of the French prisoners taken at the siege of the Castle of Merk, 400, 401; naval victory gained over the French by Thomas, Duke of Lancaster, and the Earl of Kent, 401, 402; French forces are sent in aid of Glendower, 415; they experience losses, but take Caer-merthen, 415; ships of, taken by Lord Berkeley and others, 415; the Seneschal of, taken, 415; French ships taken, sent to aid the Welch, 419. See Charles VI., Louis IX., and Philip IV.

Freville, Baldwin, claims the office of Champion, unsuccessfully, 287, 288.

Friars Minors, London, Margaret, Duchess of Norfolk, is buried in the Church of the, 233.

Friars Preachers, the body of Piers Gaveston buried in the Chapel of the, at Langley, 77.

G.

Ganville, Sir Nicholas, slain at Shrewsbury, 369.

Garton, dissensions between France and England, commenced at, 51.

Gascoigne, King Edward I. and Queen Almar in, 34; Philip IV. of France is advised to withhold, from its sovereign,
Gascoigne—cont.

Edward I.; Charles of Valois contemplates invading, 56; King Edward I. lands in, 56; death of Edmund, Earl of Lancaster and Leicester, in, 58, 71, 72; Edmund, Earl of Lancaster, sent to, 71; misfortunes of the English in, 93; Edward II. is summoned to do homage to the King of France for, 140; the Duke of Lancaster raises troops in England for service in, 161; great abundance of wine of, 167.

Gaucelinus, Cardinal, an envoy of the Pope, to England, 99; he is plundered near Durham, 99; proceeds to York, 99; to London, 100; with his colleague, endeavours to levy money from the English clergy, which is resisted by them, 100; after making terms between the King and the nobles, he returns home, 102.

Gaveston, Piers de, is recalled from exile, 64, 65; account of him, 64; his great cupidity, 64; is made Earl of Cornwall, 65; Edward II. leaves the kingdom of England in the custody of, 65; disgust of the English nobles thereat, 65; the King shews extreme partiality for him, on returning from France, 65; he holds a tournament at Wallingford, and offends the nobles there, 65; the nobles entertain hostile feelings towards him, 66; measures taken by them to counteract his influence, 66; the Ordinances provide for his banishment, 67; he is banished to Ireland, 67; marries the sister of the Earl of Gloucester, 67; returns from exile, 67; his insatiate avarice, 68; Queen Isabella informs her father thereof, 68; insolence shown by him to the English nobles, 68; they again insist on his banishment, 68; he again retires from England, 68; enters France, 68; the King of France threatens him with vengeance, 68; he leaves France for Flanders, 69; returns to England, 69; relies upon the King and the Earl of Gloucester, 69; presents himself to the King at York, 69; the nobles again concert measures against him, 69;

Gaveston, Piers de—cont.

the Earl of Lancaster sends letters to the King, at York, requesting him to deliver him to the Commons, or to send him into exile, 74; he proceeds with the King, from York, to Newcastle-on-Tyne, 75; proceeds, with the King, to Tynemouth, 75; thence, by ship, to Scarborough, 75; is left in the Castle there, while the King proceeds to York, 75; the Barons seize his effects at Newcastle, 75; he surrenders to them, at Scarborough, 76; is taken from the custody of the Earl of Pembroke by the Earl of Warwick, 76; is put to death near Warwick, 77; his body is buried, first at Oxford, 77; finally, in the Chapel of the Friars Preachers, at Langley, 77; his effects agreed to be restored by the Barons to the King, 78, 79; after some hesitation, they are restored, 79; King Edward's grief for his death is assuaged, 79; married to a sister of the Earl of Gloucester, 86; Sir Hugh de Audley marries his widow, 86; ceremonies attending his burial, at Langley, by the King's order, 88; but few of the nobles there, 88.

Gehazi alluded to, 183.

Genesis, the Book of, quoted, 26, 131, 179, 296.

German, a shoemaker of St. Alban's, his munificence, 165.

Germany. See Almaine.

Giants, the former inhabitants of England, 132; conquered by Brutus and Corinnaus, 132.

Giffard, Sir John, executed, 124.

Glastonbury, the Abbot of, a Commissioner to pronounce sentence of deposition on Richard II., 278, 279.

Glastonbury, the Abbot of, a Commissioner to pronounce sentence of deposition on Richard II., 278, 279.

Glendower, Owen, his early education, 333; dissension between him and Reginald, Lord Grey de Ruthin, 333; rising in Wales under, 333, 334; ravages committed by, 337; takes prisoner Lord Grey de Ruthin, 338, 339; defeats the men of Hereford, and captures Edmund
INDEX.

Glendower, Owen—cont.  
Mortimer, 341; prevails against the English army, by magical devices, it is surmised, 343; Edmund Mortimer marries his daughter, 349; Reginald, Lord Grey, pays a ransom to him, 349; his aid is relied on by Henry Percy, in his insurrection, 361; is joined by the Bishop of St. Asaph, 396; his son and chancellor are captured, 399; his son-in-law is taken, 400; with the aid of French forces, he takes Caermarthen, 415; false information given, that many Abbots and Priors of England render him assistance, 416; a son of, slain, 418.

Glosseran, the Castle of, is besieged by Sir William de Munchensy, 43.

Gloucester, Gilbert de Clare, Earl of, reconciled to the Earl of Leicester, 8; the sons of the Earl of Leicester proclaim a tournament at Dunstable against, 14; it is forbidden by the Earl, their father, 14, 15; the Earl's anger thereat, 15; his designs against the Earl of Leicester, 15; he attacks the Earl of Leicester, at Evesham, 18; marries the Princess Joanna of Acre, 27; attends Henry III. to Norwich, 28.

Gloucester, Gilbert de Clare, Earl of, Piers de Gaveston is married to a sister of, 67; nephew of Edward II., 74; a mediator between Edward and the Barons, 74, 80; is slain at Bannockburn, 85; division of his territory, 86; marriages contracted by his three sisters, 86; his body is restored to the King by Robert le Brus, 87.

Gloucester, Thomas, Duke of, an envoy to France, for the establishment of peace, 155; a grant demanded for the purpose, 155; he sets out for France, but is unable to make terms, 157; he effects a truce with France, 158; rising against him, in the County of Chester, 159; the Dukes of Burgundy and Berri are the first to inform him thereof, 160; he returns home, and protests his innocence before Richard II., 160; holds himself in readiness to aid the Duke of Lancaster, 161, 162; accompanies King Richard to Ireland, 172; is sent, as an envoy, from Ireland, to shew the King's necessities to the English Parliament, 173; obtains a grant for the King, 173, 174; escorts the King of France at Guynes, 190; is invited to a banquet by King Richard, with sinister intentions, but, being ill, excuses himself, 201, 202; Richard levies forces, and proceeds to arrest him, at Plashy, in Essex, 203; particulars of the arrest, 203-206; he is taken to Calais, and put in confinement, 205, 206; prophecy fulfilled in his fall, 206; a fox's tail always borne on a lance, in his presence, 206; public sorrow in England for his capture, 206; proclamation, by the King's order, as to the alleged reasons thereof, 206; he is accused in Parliament, 209; impeached by Sir John Bushy, 209; charters of pardon, granted to him by the King, are revoked by Parliament, 210, 211; the Earl of Arundel is charged with treason, jointly with him, 214; he is interrogated at Calais by William de Rikille, Justiciar, 221; by the King's order, is put to death, 221; the King bestows part of his lands, 223; seventeen Counties are charged with having supported him, 234; King Richard takes with him to Ireland the son of, 239; enquiries are made in Parliament, in reference to his murder, 306; his good name asserted in Parliament, by challenge, 308; one Halle accused of being an accomplice in the murder of, 309; who accuses the Duke of Albemarle thereof, 309; certain peers are again charged in Parliament as to their proceedings against him, 313; judgment given against his accusers, 314-320; death of his son, returning from Ireland, 321; Serle, his murderer, is taken, and executed at London, 390, 391.
Gloucester, Thomas Despenser, Earl of, Richard II. stipulates for his life, 250; a Commissioner to pronounce sentence of deposition on Richard II., 278, 279; holds the Acts of 21 and 22 Richard II. to be null and void, 303; denies complicity in the death of the Duke of Gloucester, 313; adjudged to lose the rank of Earl, 318; is beheaded at Bristol, 329. See Despenser.

Gloucester, the Countess of, widow of Gilbert, Earl of, for a time supposed to be pregnant, 86.

Gloucester, the Duchess of, wife of Thomas, Duke of, accompanies the Princess Isabella to the presence of Richard II., 193; death of, 321.

Gloucester, the country in the neighbourhood of, subdued by Edward I., 41.

Goldsmiths, the, of England, punished for clipping the coin, 58.

Gordon, Lord, slain at Homildon Hill, 346.

Gouile, Sir B., slain during the Battle of Shrewsbury, by one of his own household, 369, 370.

Gower, the Land of, belonging to Sir William de Brewes, 107; dispute concerning the alienation of, 107; recovered by the Earl of Nottingham against the Earl of Warwick, 201; King Richard II. condoles with the Earl on the loss of, 202.

Graham (Grame), Sir Walter, taken prisoner, 346.

Gray, Sir Thomas, a Commissioner to pronounce sentence of deposition on Richard II., 278, 279; governor of Werk Castle, 321. See Deputation.

Great Sea, regions beyond the, 155.

Greece, the Bishop of Chalcedon comes from, into England, 230.

Green, John, his election to the See of Worcester is quashed, 186.

Green, Sir Thomas, a confederate with Sir John Bushy, 209; his bad character, 209; at London, gives counsel to the Duke of York, 243; his fear, 244; is beheaded at Bristol, 246.

Grenecornwall, Sir John, conquers a foreign opponent in combat, 333; Henry IV. gives him his sister, widow of the Earl of Huntingdon, in marriage, 333; a son is born to him, 398; the Abbot of St. Alban's is godfather, 398; grief of, for the death of the Earl Marshal, 411; their connexion by marriage, 411.

Grey, Reginald, Lord, de Ruthin, escorts the son of the Duke of Gloucester from Ireland, 321; is taken prisoner by Owen Glendower, 338, 339; pays ransom to Glendower, 349.

Grey Friars. See Friars Minors.

Grimsby, Gilbert de Middleton is landed at, 101.

Gualas (?), 41.

Guernesey, Sir John de Cobham is confined in the Island of, 224; he returns from, 252.

Guynes, Richard II. proceeds from Calais to the Castle of, 189; Richard entertains French nobles in the Castle of, 192.

H.

Hadley, John, appointed Treasurer for War, 379.

Hadley, in Essex, the Castle of, the mansion of the Earl and Countess of Oxford, 327.

Halle, a serving man, confined in Newgate, his evidence is invoked by Sir William Bagot, as to the murder of the Duke of Gloucester, 306; he is accused of having been an accomplice therein, 309.

Hamner, John, son-in-law of Owen Glendower, is taken prisoner, 400.

Harela (Hercele), Sir Andrew, particulars of his treason 126, 127; his hatred of Hugh Despenser, and alliance with the Scots, 127; he is taken, and executed, 127. See Carlisle.

Harcourt, the Count de, bears the sword before the King of France, 190.
Hardeby, near Lincoln, Queen Alienor, wife of Edward I., dies at, 49.

Harlow (Harleslowe), prodigy near, 229.

Hawkwood, death of Sir John, 171.

Helena, mother of Constantine, discovery of her treasure at Rome, 228, 229.

Henry III., King, dissensions between him and the Barons of England, 4, 5; his profuseness to foreigners, 4; he enacts the Provisions of Oxford, 5; rebukes the nobles, and threatens to obtain absolution from his oath, 5, 6; writes to his son Edward, and the King of France, for aid against the Barons, 6; retires to the Tower of London, and seizes the public treasures, 6; obtains from Rome letters of absolution from his oath, 6; agrees to make terms with the Barons, 7; these to be delayed till the arrival of his son, Edward, 7; he refuses the demands of the Barons, 7, 8; and retires to the Tower of London, 8; his advisers retreat to the Tower, 8; he retires to Dover, 8; then to Rochester, 9; determines to break his oath to the Barons, 9; cancels appointments made by the Barons, and appoints officers of his own, 9; at Winchester, 9; returns from Winchester to the Tower of London, 9; hostilities against the Barons, 10; engages the Barons at Lewes, 10; is defeated, and taken prisoner, 11; remains in the power of the Earl of Leicester, 13; he assembles his feelings of indignation against the Earl, 14; the Earl of Leicester postulates with him, 16; certain nobles second the Earl's endeavours, 16; the King's conduct in captivity, 16; he is rescued, through the Earl's defeat at Evesham, 17-19; his sorrow at the death of the Earl of Leicester, 19, 20; he summons a Parliament at Winchester, 23; takes measures against the disaffected, 23; confirms the laws, and restores peace and justice, 23, 24; emotion shown by him, on sanctioning aid by his son Edward to Louis IX. of France, on his Crusade, 26; he takes vengeance on the incendiaries of Norwich Cathedral, 28; his oath, on the occasion, 28; attended by the Bishop of Rochester and the Earl of Gloucester, 28; news of his death imparted by the King of Sicily to his son, Edward, 33, 34; his death, 34; length of his reign, 34; his marriage to Alienor, daughter of the Count of Savoy, 34; his issue by her, 34, 35; he begins the new buildings at Westminster, 35; dissensions with the Barons, through favour shown by him to foreigners, 35; his character for piety, 35; interest taken by him in religious matters, 35; his preference for Mass rather than for Sermons, 36; circumstances attending his death, at Bury St. Edmund's, 36; he is buried at Westminster, 37; his widow assumes the veil, at Amesbury, 48; his sons, Edward and Edmund, 70; gives to Edward the Earldom of Chester, 70; to Edmund, the Earldom of Lancaster, 70; as also, the Earldoms of Ferrers (? Derby) and Leicester, 70.

Henry IV., the Duke of Lancaster is acknowledged as King under that title, 281; he is enthroned by the Archbishops of England, 281; speech made by him, 282; reason for his not claiming the throne by right of conquest, 282; he appoints officers of state, Justiciars, Sheriffs, and others, 282; a Parliament is proclaimed, and the intended Coronation of the new King, 283; appoints his son, Thomas, Seneschal of England, 287; his issue, by the daughter of Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, 287; he presides in Parliament, 288; announcement of his wishes made to Parliament, by the Archbishop of Canterbury, 288; he thanks the clergy, in Convocation, for their prayers, 289, 290; expresses his unwillingness to tallage the clergy, 290; proceeds in state from the Tower to Westminster, 291, 292; special providence manifested to him, on his return to England, 297; the first King anointed with the sacred...
INDEX.

Henry IV.—cont.
ointment of St. Thomas, 300; he creates
his eldest son Prince of Wales, Duke of
Cornwall, and Earl of Chester, 301; presides in Parliament, 301, 302; grants
a petition, presented on behalf of the
Commons, 303; remark alleged to have
been made against him, when Duke of
Hereford, by King Richard II., 304; de-
clares that the prophecy made by Rich­
ard, that he would prove a destroyer of
the Church, would be seen to be false,
304; concedes that the evil councillors
of King Richard shall be arrested, 309;
the covering of the King's head, for pre­
servation of the sacred ointment, to be
removed on the Octave of the Coronation,
309; he interferes to suppress the
commotion, in Parliament, on the accusa­
tion of the Duke of Albermarle, 310,
311; gives the Earldom of Richmond
to the Earl of Westmoreland, 311; creates
certain titles, 311, 312; the King and
others are censured for their leniency
towards the accusers of the Duke of
Gloucester, 320; a letter found, threat­
ening him with vengeance, if the accusers
are not punished with death, 320; the
Knights of Parliament disown the
letter, 320; he sends envoys to various
countries, announcing his assumption of
the crown, 320; he keeps Christmas at
Windsor, 324; alleged attempt to
poison him, 324; conspiracy against
him, by the Earls of Kent, Salisbury,
Huntingdon, and Sir Thomas Despen­
sor, 323-329; places his sons in the
Tower, and proceeds against his enemies,
329; at Oxford, hears of their capture
and execution, 329, 330; he is present
at the obsequies of Richard, the late
King, at St. Paul's, 331; desires the
Abbot of St. Alban's to be present at
the final interment, at Langley, 331; he
requests a subsidy of the clergy, 332;
visits the Abbey of St. Alban's, 332;
invades Scotland, and lays it waste, 333;
proceeds to York, 333; gives his sister,
the widow of the Earl of Huntingdon,
in marriage to Sir John Greccecorn­
wall, 333; ravages part of Wales, 333,
334; meets the Emperor of Constanti­
nople at Blackheath, and honourably en­
tertains him, 334; keeps Christmas at
Eltham, 335; declares that he has had no
share in the spoils of the late King, 335;
escorts the Emperor of Constantinople
from London, 336; gives him presents
but is unable to supply him with men,
336, 337; appoints new officers of state
337; popular murmurs against him, 337;
he escapes a plot to maim, or slay, him,
337; endeavors to influence the election
of an Abbot of St. Alban's, 338; an
ineffectual conspiracy is entered into
against him, promoted by a priest, who
is taken and executed, 339; the Prior
of Lawne is executed, for being privy to
the plot, 339; Minorite Friars executed,
for treason against him, 340; his daugh­
ter (Blanche) proceeds to Cologne, to be
married to a son of the Emperor, 342
Owen Glendower prevails against his
army, by magical devices, it is sur­
mised, 343; his narrow escape, 343;
similar devices against him, attributed
to the Minorite Friars, 343, 344; re­
turns, unsuccessful, to England, 344;
marries the Duchess of Bretagne, at
Winchester, 350; she is crowned at West­
minster, 350; the Earl of Northumber­
land informs him that his presence is not
needed in Scotland, 361; Henry Percy
rises against him, and collects an army in
Shropshire, 361; grounds alleged by
Percy and the Earl of Worcester for
their rising, 361; the King writes to
various persons, in answer to their com­
plaints, 362; he offers them a personal in­
terview, 363; hastens to meet Percy at
Shrewsbury, 363; the Earl of Dunbar
instigates him to immediate action, 364;
he marshals his troops, 366; offers terms
to Percy, 366; his personal danger in the
battle, 367; he defeats Percy, 368; names
Henry IV.—cont.

of his principal supporters slain, at Shrewsbury, 369; the Earl of Northumberland meets him at York, and is placed in safe keeping, 372; a hermit prophesies against him, and is executed, 372, 373; he is prevented by want of means from proceeding against the Welch, 373; at Worcester, the Archbishop of Canterbury apprizes him of the impoverished state of the clergy, 373; the Archbishop of Canterbury convokes the clergy, and obtains a grant for him, 373, 374; the King raises a loan, until the grant is paid, 374; summons a Parliament at Coventry, 376; postpones it, and summons it at London, 377; orders peace and pardon to be proclaimed, 377; keeps Christmas at the Monastery of Abingdon, 378; a grant is made to him in Parliament, 379; a sum is granted for his personal use, 380; he expresses his thankfulness for the victory of the people of Dartmouth over the French invaders, 385; rewards the captors, and retains the prisoners, 386; a conditional grant is made to him by the clergy, 388; the Earl of Northumberland attends him at Pontefract, 390; another grant is made to him by the clergy, 394; the Archbishop of Canterbury complains to him of the irreverent conduct of certain persons, 395; he promises to correct the offenders, 396; keeps Christmas at Eltham, 397; a son is born to his brother-in-law, Sir John Greneormwall, 398; the Archbishop of Canterbury clears himself, before the King, of complicity in the plot of the Duke of York, 399; the Earl of Northumberland and Lord Bardolf prepare to revolt against him, 402; he sets out to curb the Welch, 402; he hastens from Wales to York, 407; refuses an interview to the Archbishop of York, 407; his anger against the citizens of York, 408; they humiliate themselves to him, 408; the Archbishop of Canterbury intercedes with him for the Archbishop of York, 408; he dissembles with the Archbishop, 409; allows the body of the Archbishop of York to be buried in his church, 410; prepares to pursue the Earl of Northumberland and Lord Bardolf, 411; excuses the Mayor of Berwick, on hearing his explanation, 412; the King of Denmark asks his daughter (Philippa) in marriage, 412; a favourable answer is given to the envoys, the King consulting the Archbishop of Canterbury thereon, 413; Hornseye, near Hull, the place of his landing, on his invasion of England, 413; he pursues the Earl of Northumberland, 414; captures Berwick, Alnwick, and other castles, 414; misfortunes overtake his army in Wales, through inundations, 414; he summons the Archbishop of Canterbury to Worcester, 414; demands succour of the clergy, 414; counsel given to him by certain knights, against the prelates, 414; is present, with the Queen, at the marriage of the Earl of Arundel, 417; a grant made to him by Parliament, 418; a grant made to him by the clergy, 418; discontent thereat, 418; the captured son of the King of Scotland is delivered to him, 419; his jocular remark on the occasion, 419; with the Queen, he escorts the Princess Philippa to Lynn, on her road to Denmark, 419, 420. See Derby, Hereford, and Lancaster.

Henry, Prince, son of the Duke of Lancaster, is addressed by Richard II., on his father's invasion, 247; his answer, 247; is confined in Trim Castle, 247; the eldest son of Henry IV., 287; is created Prince of Wales, Duke of Cornwall, and Earl of Chester, 301; made Duke of Aquitaine, 311; alleged attempt to poison him, 322, 323; the Earl of Worcester his governor, 361; is wounded at the battle of Shrewsbury, 367, 368. Hereford, (Adam de Orleton,) Bishop of, an envoy from the Barons to King Ed-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index Entry</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hereford, Bishop of—cont.</td>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ward II., 109; he is arrested, and examined as to treason, 140; refuses to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>answer, without the sanction of the Archbishop of Canterbury and the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bishops, 141; is delivered into the charge of the Archbishop, 141; the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prelates take him under their protection, 141; on inquisition made by</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the King’s order, he is found guilty, 142; his property is confiscated,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142; he remains with the Archbishop of Canterbury, 142; John Trevenaunt,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bishop of, of the Archbishop of York reads the renunciation of Richard II. in his name, 257, 258; he is sent to Rome by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320; death of, 397.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereford, Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of, insulted by Piers Gaveston, at the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tournament at Wallingford, 65; his stout resistance to Edward I., 74; an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adherent of Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, 74; is taken prisoner at the Battle of Bannockburn, 85; is redeemed, in exchange for the wife of Robert le Brus, 87; desires to obtain possession of the Land of Gower, 107; publishes the edict against the Despensers in Westminster Hall, 110; is slain at Boroughbridge, 124, 126; his flight from Edward II., 126; defeated by Sir Andrew Harcla, 126.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereford, Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of, Henry of Lancaster married to his</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daughter, 287.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereford, Henry, Duke of, informs against the Duke of Norfolk to Richard II., 225; a duel, at Coventry, is proposed, 225; the King forbids it, and banishes him for ten years, 226; Richard takes with him to Ireland the sons of the Duke, 239. See Derby, Lancaster, and Henry IV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereford, the Countess of, intercedes for the Earl of Huntingdon, 327, 328.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereford, Prince Edward is sent to the Castle of, 12, 13; the men of, defeated by Owen Glendower, 341.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herefordshire, exemption in favour of lands laid waste in, 380.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herele, Sir William de, at Newcastle on Tyne, 133.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hermit, a, who had prophesied to King Richard II., prophesies against Henry IV., and is executed at York, 372; had been to Rome, 373; prophecy of a foreign, 377, 378; its fulfilment, 378.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herod, his reconciliation with Pilate, 8; imprisonment by him of St. Peter, 146.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hertford, fatal folly of a Constable of, 21; the Castle of, 21; mischief done by an evil spirit to the Church of All Saints at, 342.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hertford and Essex, mandate to the Sheriff of, as to the sale of ale, 96; copy of the mandate sent to St. Alban’s, 96-98.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry, John, his adventure while hunting, 196, 197.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hethworth, William, Abbot of St. Alban’s. See St. Alban’s.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexham, the County of, 380.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hechinburne, Sir Henry, and his brother, are slain in Germany, 43.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hitchin, Religious near, obtain full remission for benefactors, from Rome, on a certain day, 348.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hogue (Hogges) the vill of, burnt by the English, 401.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holt, the Earl of Arundel retires to his castle of, 162; Richard II. flees to, 249.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Land, Crusade proposed for the recovery of the, 24-29.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homildon Hill, the Scots are defeated by the English at, 345, 346.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honorius IV., Pope, sends Edward I. into France, to mediate between France and Aragon, 42.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horace quoted, 10.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hornseye, near Hull, the landing-place of Henry IV. on his invasion of England, 413; burnt by the Flemings and Bretons, 413.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horton, Walter de Selby retreats to the Peel of, 101.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

Hospitallers, the possessions of the Templars are granted to the, 142.
Hotspur. See Percy, Henry.
Hull, the men of, capture a force of Bretons and Flemings, 413.
Humphrey, Prince, fourth son of Henry IV., 287.
Huntingdon, John Holland, Earl of, brother of King Richard II., bears the sword before him, 190; privileges granted to him by Pope Boniface IX., 200, 201; he accompanies Richard, to arrest the Duke of Gloucester, 203; suborned as an accuser of the arrested nobles, 207; is created Duke of Exeter, 222; is reduced to the rank of Earl, 318; joins in a conspiracy to slay Henry IV., 323; privy to the conspiracy against Henry IV., 326; conceals himself in London, 326; is taken prisoner, and carried to Plashy in Essex, 327; is executed, 328; his body is buried in the College of Priests at Plashy, his head sent to London, 329; his widow, sister of Henry IV., given in marriage to Sir John GrencornwaU, 333. See Exeter.
Huntingdon, the Countess of, accompanies the Princess Isabella to the presence of Richard II., 193; is married to Sir John Grencornwall, 333. See Huntingdon, the Earl of.
Huntingdon, Abbots and Priors, accused of complicity with Glendower, summoned to, 416.
Hythe, fire at, 167.

I.

Innocent VII., Pope, excommunicates the slayers of the Archbishop of York, 417; creates a new Senator of Rome, 418; recovers lost territories, 418.
Inundations, great, 159, 394; in Wales, 414.

Ireland, Piers de Gaveston is banished to, 67; the lands of the King of England in, invaded by an army under Edward le Brus, 91; misfortunes of the English in, 93; Edward le Brus is beheaded in, 103; Richard II. intends to set sail for, 166; the Irish throughout England are ordered to return to, 171, 172; their great numbers in England, 172; the native Irish conquer part of the island subject to the English, 172; falling off of the revenues of the island, 172; reasons for the above order being made, 172; mercenary tendencies of the Irish, 172; Richard II. crosses over to, 172; the Irish chiefstains are compelled to submit, 172, 173; Richard remains in, until after Easter, 173; a Parliament held in, 173; the Archbishop of York, and the Bishop of London, are sent as envoys of the English clergy to King Richard in, 173, 182; the banished Justiciars are recalled from, 195, 196; Roger, Earl of March, slain in, 229; King Richard prepares to sail for, 235; he embarks for, 238; his successes there, 239; treasures carried with him to, 239; messengers are sent to, to summon Richard back to England, 245; he leaves, and lands in Wales, 247; many children of the English nobility carried to by Richard, 248; death of the son of the Duke of Gloucester, while returning from, 321; insurrection of the Irish against Henry IV., 337.
Isabella, the Princess, daughter of Philip IV. of France, King Edward II. marries her, 65; is received with due honour by the English nobles, 65; is crowned at Westminster, 65; she informs her father of her state of indigence, through the avarice of Piers de Gaveston, 68; she stays at Tynemouth, 75; Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, her uncle, 75; he pities her distress, 75; sends to her messengers, assuring her that he will expel Gaveston, 75; she gives birth to Prince Edward (afterwards Edward III.) at
INDEX.

Isabella—cont.
Windsor, 79; mediates between the King and the Barons, 80; with the King, she is feasted by Walter, Archbishop of Canterbury, 82; birth of her son, John of Eltham, 95; her daughter, Alianor, is born at Woodstock, 102; she is nearly captured by the Scots, near York, 103; on her way to Canterbury, she is refused admission into Leeds Castle, in Kent, 110, 111; her return from France to England, mentioned, 147.
Isabella, daughter of Charles VI. of France, given by him in marriage to Richard II., 193; she is conducted to Calais, 193; certain nobles, conspiring in favour of Richard, visit her at Sunning, 323; she is escorted back to France, with magnificent presents, 331, 332, 337; the French demand tribute from the Isle of Wight, in her name, 381.
Isaiah, the Prophet, quoted, 5, 35, 258.
Ishmael, Edward I. compared to, 26.
Italy, Companies of Flagellants arise in, 322; reverence for the Sacrament of the Body of Our Lord, shown by the people of, 395, 396.

J.

James, Saint, anointing of the sick inculcated by, 37.
Jedburgh Castle, Sir Thomas Strother, Governor of, 166; it is taken by the Scots, under Sir William English, 166, 167.
Jeremiah, the Prophet, quoted, 93.
Jerusalem, Sir John de Roos dies on his return from, 164; death of the Duke of Norfolk, while returning from, 321; said to be laid waste, 336.
Jews, the, are expelled from England by Edward I., 57; misfortunes to them, in their passage to France, 57; King Philip IV. allows them to settle at Amiens, 57; anger of the Pope thereat, 57.

Joanna, Queen, with King Henry IV. at Abingdon, 378; the Bretons in her household allowed to remain in England, 379; present at the marriage of the Earl of Arundel, 417; the Bretons of her household, with her two daughters, are dismissed, 419; escorts the Princess Philippa to Lynn, 419. See Bretagne.
Joanna of Acre, the Princess, born in the Holy Land, 26; married, first, to Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester, 27; after his decease, she marries a man of low degree, 27; anger of Edward I., her father, and her remark on the occasion, 27.
Job, Orleton, Bishop of Hereford, reduced to the state of, 142; the Book of, quoted, 131.
John, the Gospel of St., quoted, 197.
John XXII., Pope, accession of, 82; previously, Bishop of Avignon, 82; sends envoys to England, 99; his envoys return home, 102; appoints his clerk, Reginald de Asser, to the Bishopric of Winchester, 105; his sentence of excommunication against Robert le Brus, 137; confers the See of Winchester upon John de Stratford, 147, 148; sends envoys to France and England, to establish peace, 151. See Flisco, and Gancellinus.
John, Prince, news of his death imparted to his father, King Edward I., 33.
John of Eltham, son of Edward II. and Queen Isabella, birth of, 95.
John, Prince, third son of Henry IV., 287; receives a force to resist the Scots, 405.
John, third son of Edmund, Earl of Lancaster, 71; enriched by his uncle, King Edward I., 71.
Joshua, the Book of, quoted, 21, 241.
Justiciars, Ordinance in Parliament that they shall not have assessors, 195; the banished, recalled by Richard II., from Ireland, 195, 196.
K.

Kenilworth (Kelingworthe) Castle, Simon de Montfort, the Younger, flees to, 17; Edward II. celebrates Christmas at, 139.

Kent, Edmund, Earl of, advances to the siege of Wallingford Castle, 139; sent as envoy to the King of France, to request him to excuse the attendance of Edward II., to do homage for Gascoigne, 143; takes measures for the defence of Aquitaine, 149.

Kent, Thomas Holland, Earl of, accompanies King Richard II. to arrest the Duke of Gloucester, 203; the Duke is left in his custody, 205; suborned as an accuser of the arrested nobles, 207; nephew of the Earl of Arundel, accuses him of treason, 215; attends the execution of his uncle, the Earl of Arundel, 216, 217; the Earl rebukes him, 217; by the King's order, exhumes the body of the Earl of Arundel, 219; is created Duke of Surrey, 222; is reduced to the rank of Earl, 318; joins a conspiracy to slay Henry IV., 323; declaration made by him, 324; he deprives certain persons of Henry's cognizances, 324; endeavour to arouse the people in favour of King Richard, 324, 325; is taken, and beheaded by the people of Cirencester, 325, 326. See Surrey.

Kent, Edmund Holland, Earl of, gains a victory over the French fleet, 401; ravages the French coast, 401, 402.

Kent, inundations in, 394. See Canterbury, and Leeds Castle.

Kilwardby, Robert de. See Canterbury, Archbishops of.

Kinderton, the Baron de, aids Henry Percy against Henry IV., 366; is taken prisoner, 369; is beheaded, 371.

King's Bench, the Court of, removed from London to York, 156; and back to London, 156.

Kingston, in Cambridgeshire, prodigies seen at, 332.

Knolles, Thomas, appointed Treasurer for War, 379.

L.

Lancaster, Henry, first Duke of, receives the sacred Ointment of St. Thomas, 299.

Lancaster, Henry, Duke of Hereford, becomes Duke of, on the death of his father, 240; prepares to invade England, and to dethrone King Richard II., 240, 241; supported by Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, and Richard, Earl of Arundel, 241; is promised assistance by the French, 241; the names of his adherents, few in number at first, 242; he embarks at Boulogne sur Mer, 242; hovers about the English coasts, 242; good wishes in England for his success, but not openly expressed, 242, 243; the Duke of York prepares to oppose him, 243, 244; the Bishop of Norwich levies troops against him, 244; favourable opinions expressed as to him by the Duke of York and others, 244; he lands in England, 244; many receive pay in Richard's behalf, but desert to his cause, 245; he refuses to enter into negotiation with the Duke of York, 245; the Earl of Northumberland and his son join him, 245; he is joined by the Duke of York and many nobles, 246; the Bishop of Norwich and Sir William Elmham solely oppose him, 246; they are captured by him, and released, 246; he receives the surrender of Bristol Castle, 246; causes three of Richard's Council to be beheaded, 246, 247; King Richard addresses his eldest son, on the Duke's invasion, 247; the youth is confined in Trim Castle, 247; Richard's treasures fall into Lancaster's hands,
Lancaster, Henry, Duke of—cont.  
249; Richard surrenders to him, at Flint Castle, 250; accompanies him to Chester, and to London, 250; aversion of the Cheshire men to him, 250, 251; his respectful conduct to Richard, 251; he causes various persons, banished by King Richard, to be recalled, 252; at Richard's desire, has an interview with him in the Tower, 253, 254; Richard expresses a wish, that the Duke shall be his successor, 256; he attends in Parliament to hear the renunciation of the crown by King Richard, read by his proxies, 257; claims the throne of England, 280, 281; the estates of the realm accede to the claim, 281; the Archbishops place him on the throne, 281.  
See Derby, Hereford, and Henry IV.

receive any other person than the King, or his immediate heir, 169; the Duke is recalled from Aquitaine, 188; arrives in England, and, at Lincoln, marries Katherine de Swynford, 188; escorts the King of France at Guynes, 190; causes his issue by Katherine Swynford to be legitimized, 195; Thomas Beaufort, one of their sons, 195; his Crusade mentioned, 201; he acts as Steward, at the trial of the Earl of Arundel, 214, 215; pronounces sentence on the Earl, 215; with others, exhumes the Earl's body, by the King's order, 219; sheds tears on hearing the confession of the Earl of Warwick, 220; Henry Beaufort, his son by Katherine de Swynford, is made Bishop of Lincoln, 226; his death, 282; he is buried in the church of St. Paul, London, 282; Sir William Bagot is examined as to conspiracy against his life, 308.

Lancaster, Thomas, Duke of, second son of Henry IV., resigns the office of Seneschal, 337; takes part in a naval victory over the French, 401. See Thomas, Prince.

Lancaster and Leicester, Edmund, Earl of, second son of Henry III. by Eleanor of Savoy, 34; accompanies his brother, Edward L, into Gascoigne, 56; death of, in Gascoigne, 58, 71, 72; buried at Westminster, 59, 72; the Earldom of Lancaster given by Henry III. to him, 70; Edmund holds the two other Earldoms of Leicester and Ferrers (? Derby), 70; he marries the widow of the King of Navarre, 70, 71; his sons, Thomas, Henry, and John, 71; sent into Gascoigne, 71; his victories, 71.

Lancaster, Henry, Earl of, second son of Edmund, Earl of Lancaster, 71; enriched by his uncle, King Edward I., 71.

Lancaster, Thomas, Earl of, insulted by Piers Gaveston, at the Tournament at Wallingford, 65; sends letters to King Edward II., at York, requesting him to
INDEX.

Lancaster, Thomas, Earl of—cont.
  deliver Piers de Gaveston to the Commons, or to send him into banishment, 74; uncle of Queen Isabella, 75; he pities her sorrows, 75; sends messengers to her, assuring her that he will expel Gaveston, 76; withdraws from the siege of Scarborough, 76; is appointed the leader of the English nobles in their movement against Gaveston, 69; account of his parentage, and position in England, 69-73; succeeds his father in his three Earldoms, 71, 72; marries the daughter of the Earl of Lincoln, 72; advice given by the Earl to him, 72, 73; who recommends to him the counsels of Guy, Earl of Warwick, 73; names of his adherents, 74; he refuses to attend Edward II., at Berwick, in consequence of his non-fulfilment of the Ordinances, 83; envoys sent by the Pope to establish peace between him and King Edward II., 99; the Pope’s envoys make terms between him and Edward, 102; the Barons resort to him, to make complaint against the Despensers, 107, 108; judgment is pronounced against him, at Pontefract, 112; record and process of judgment against him, 112-124; he is put to death, 124; his flight from Edward II., 126; defeated by Sir Andrew Harcla, 126.

Lancaster, Constance, Duchess of, daughter of Pedro, King of Spain, 162; death of, 168; her great virtues, 168; the Duchess of York her sister, 169.

Lancaster, the Scots ravage England as far as, 102; Edward II. makes inquisition as to offenders in, 139; visited by John, Duke of Lancaster, with a Commission, 160; the people of, support the Duke of Lancaster against the people of Cheshire, 161.

Langley, Thomas de, Bishop of Durham. See Durham.

Langley, the body of Piers de Gaveston buried in the Chapel of the Friars Preachers at, 77; King Edward II.

Langley—cont.
  causes the body of Gaveston to be buried with pomp there, 88; King Richard II. keeps Christmas at, 188; the body of Richard, the late King, is buried at, 331; the body of Edmund, Duke of York, is buried in the Chapel of the Friars Preachers at, 344.

Langton, Walter de, Treasurer, 64. See Lichfield and Coventry.

Laon, prodigy seen at, 185.

Latimer, Thomas, a leader of the Lollards, 174, 182.

Laurels, the, throughout England, wither, and then revive, 229; supposed signification thereof, 229.

Lawne, Walter de Baldock, Prior of, privy to a plot against Henry IV., is executed, 339.

“Le Plesaunce” moneys extorted from certain Counties, by Richard II., so called 235.

Leeds Castle in Kent, Queen Isabella is refused admission into, 110; it is taken by the forces of Edward II., 111.

Leicester, Simon de Montfort, Earl of, is reconciled to the Earl of Gloucester, 8; chosen leader of the army of the Barons, 10; gives orders for King Henry’s safety, when defeated at the Battle of Lewes, 11; his injunctions against pillage are neglected, 12; Henry remains in his power, 13; the King dissem-bles his feelings of indignation against him, 14; his sons proclaim a tournament at Dunstable against the Earl of Gloucester, 14; the Earl forbids the tournament, 14, 15; his threats against his sons, 15; he expostulates with the King, 16; equanimity manifested by him, 17; appropriateness of his name, 17; he is defeated at the Battle of Evesham, 17-19; his address to Sir Hugh le Despenser, 18; the Earl is slain, and his body is mutilated, 18, 19; his constancy and fortitude, 19; marvellous occurrence at the moment of his death, 19; grief of the King and
Leicester, Simon de Montfort, Earl of—cont.

Prince Edward at his death, 19, 20; his body is secretly buried by the monks of Evesham, 20; his wife returns to her native land, 20; his sons are banished, 20, 23; his daughter is married to Llewelyn, Prince of Wales, 39; his Earldom given by Henry III. to his own son, Edmund, 70.

Leicester, the Earldom of, given by Henry III. to his son, Edmund, 70. See Lancaster.

Leicester, Philip de Ripendene, Abbot of the Canons of, is made Bishop of Lincoln, 391.

Leicester, terms made between Edward II. and the Earl of Lancaster at, 102; obsequies of the Countess of Derby at, 168.

L'Estrange, Roger, slays Prince Llewelyn, 40.

Letters Patent, certain, are revoked, 394.

Leviticus, the Book of, quoted, 5, 35.

Lewes, Henry III. defeated by the Barons at the Battle of, 10-13.

Lewes, the Castle of, 11.

Libournne, the Duke of Lancaster enters the town of, 169.

Lichfield and Coventry, Walter de Langton, Bishop of, chief executor of Edward I., is imprisoned by his successor, Edward II., 63; cause of the King's hatred, 63, 64; the Bishop is in some degree restored to favour, 64. See Chester.

Lichfield, King Richard II. keeps Christmas at, 224.

Lincoln, (Oliver Sutton,) Bishop of, excommunicates all who shall break the peace at Oxford, 59; (Thomas Beke,) Bishop of, obtains the favour of Edward II., and is restored to his possessions, 142; John de Buckingham, Bishop of, is deprived by Richard II. of his Bishopric, 226; is transferred to the Bishopric of Chester, 226; Henry Beaufort is appointed to the See of Lincoln, 226; Buckingham declines the translation, 227; retires to Canterbury, and dies at Christchurch.
INDEX.

Lollards—cont.
and Westminster Abbey, 174–182; Conclusions of the, presented to Parliament, 182; their supporters are threatened by King Richard, 183; their movements are checked, 183; Pope Boniface IX. requests the aid of Richard II. against the, 187; the Earl of Salisbury a supporter of the, 326; a Statute passed, enjoining punishment of the, 335; a priest, converted to Lollardism, burned at Smithfield, 335, 336; Sir William Clifford, on leaving them, puts forth certain Conclusions held by them, 347; the said Conclusions, 347–349.

Lolliesworth, in Cambridgeshire, damage done at, by lightning, 159.

Lombards, the, not allowed to keep hostels in England, 379.

Lombardy, the English not allowed to keep hostels in, 379; reverence in, for the Sacrament of the Body of Our Lord, shown by the people of, 395, 396.

London, the Barons, in opposition to Henry III., encamp without, 6; the citizens of, aid the Barons at the Battle of Lewes, 11; they take to flight, and are pursued by Prince Edward, 11; Henry III. dies at Bury St. Edmund's, on his road to, 36; the nobility of England convened at, to meet King Edward I., 37; Prince Llewelyn is brought by Edward I. to, 38, 39; the head of Llewelyn is sent to, 41; the body of Queen Alienor conveyed to, 50; the remains of Edmund, Earl of Lancaster and Leicester, are brought from Gascoigne, 59; the Ordinances are read in the Church of St. Paul at, 67; the Papal envoys hasten to, from St. Alban's, 78; a Parliament held at, 88, 89; mandate issued thence, with the view of alleviating the dearth of victuals, 89, 90; Parliament reassembled at, 90; a Parliament at, 94; the people of, by reason of the famine, place restrictions on the consumption of grain brewed for ale, 95, 96; the like restrictions are enacted by Edward II.

London—cont.
throughout England, 96; Edward II. returns from Clarendon to, 98; the Pope's envoys proceed from York to, 100; Gilbert de Middleton is conveyed to, and executed at, 101; contribution of, to the army levied against the Scots, 102; envoys sent to Edward II. at, by the Barons, from St. Alban's, 109; the Barons come to, from St. Alban's, 109; many inhabitants of, assist King Edward in the siege of Leeds Castle, 111; Sir Andrew Harcla is brought to, and executed at, 127; Edward II. returns to, from Nottingham, 152; the Courts of King's Bench and Chancery are removed from, to York, 156; and back again to, 156; Parliament at, 166, 169; Parliament held at, by Edmund, Duke of York, 173; certain impostors are sent to, by the Sheriff of Norfolk and Suffolk, for punishment, 184; Parliament at, 195; Richard II. sends to the Mayor of, requiring his assistance against the Duke of Gloucester and others, 203; Richard convenes his adherents in Parliament at, 208; the Earl of Arundel is led to execution through the streets of, 216; letters Apostolic, sanctioning the proceedings of King Richard, are published at, 225; the Council convened at, on the invasion of the Duke of Lancaster, 243; King Richard accompanies the Duke of Lancaster to, 250, 251; Parliament at, 251; the Earl of Huntingdon, privy to the plot against Henry IV., conceals himself in, 326; the heads of the Earls of Salisbury, Kent, and Huntingdon, are sent to, 329; execution of conspirators against Henry IV. at, 330; the body of Richard, the late King, is brought from Pontefract to, 333; dissensions of the youths of, in St. Paul's Churchyard, 332; the Emperor of Constantinople is escorted to, by Henry IV., 334; Henry escorts the Emperor of Constantinople from, on leaving England, 336; Parliament at, 349; the Earl of Worcester draws resources
London—cont.
  from, in his insurrection, 361; Parliament summoned at, 377; a Parliament of twelve weeks' duration at, 378; certain citizens of, appointed Treasurers for war, 379; Serle, the murderer of the Duke of Gloucester, is executed at, 390, 391; marriage of the Earl of Arundel at, 417. See Carthusians, Minoresses, St. Paul's, and Tower of London.

London, (Stephen de Gravesend,) Bishop of, consecrates Reginald de Aser, Bishop of Winchester, at St. Alban's, 105, 147; an envoy from the Barons to King Edward II., 109; Robert de Braybrook Bishop of, is sent, as envoy of the English clergy, to King Richard II., in Ireland, 173, 182; Braybrook levies the exactions from the clergy, granted by Papal Bull, 187; he celebrates Mass before a Convocation of the clergy at St. Paul's, 289; death of Roger Walden, Bishop of, 417; his varying fortunes, 417.

London, Little. See Little London.

Lopton, Denis. See Deputation.

Louis IX., King of France, Henry III. writes to him for aid against the Barons, 6; he projects a Crusade, 24; requests Prince Edward to join him, 25; agrees to supply Edward with money, 25; Edward, with his father's sanction, consents to aid him, 26; Louis sets out for the Holy Land, 27; is met by Prince Edward at Tunis, 27; he dies there, 29.

Louis, brother of Queen Isabella, wishes Prince Edward (Edward III.) to be named after the French King, but it is forbidden by the English nobles, 79.

Louvain, death of Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, at, 157; the body of the Earl is removed from, for burial at Colne in Essex, 184, 185.

Lowther, Robert de, at Newcastle on Tyne, 134.

Lucy, Sir Antony, captures Sir Andrew Harcla, 127.

Luke, the Gospel of St., alluded to, 8; quoted, 25, 93, 132, 181.

Lynn, Scottish ships taken by the men of, 332, 333; the Princess Philippa, as Queen of Denmark, is escorted to, 419, 420.

M.

Magdelene, John, Richard II. stipulates for his life, 250; priest of King Richard, a magic scroll found in his possession, 301; statement made by him, in Convocation, in reference thereto, 301; he is executed, 330.

Magical devices, against the English army, attributed to Owen Glendower, and the Minorite Friars, 343, 344.

Magna Charta, Bottlesham, Bishop of Rochester, appeals to, against the Knights of Parliament, 393.

Maideston, William, Esquire of Lady Despenser, offers to support her charges against the Duke of York, 398.

Majorcas, Richard II. named after Richard, King of the, 238.

Man, the Isle of, with the crown, is sold by the Earl of Salisbury to Sir William Scrope, 157, 220, 311; the Earl of Warwick banished to, 220; the Earl of Warwick returns from, 252; he is maltreated there, 252; it is given to the Earl of Northumberland, 311; forfeited by him, 379.

Mansel, Sir John, goes to Winchester, to warn King Henry to return to London, 9.

March, Roger, Earl of, accompanies Richard II. to Ireland, 172; is slain in Ireland, 229; King Richard determines to avenge his death, 229, 230; his sons are carried off from Windsor, but are restored, 398; the Duke of York is accused thereof, 398.

March, George, Earl of. See Dunbar, George, Earl of.
INDEX.

Margaret, sister of Philip IV. of France, 54; asked in marriage by Edward I., 54; is promised him in marriage, 54; the second wife of Edward I., mother of Thomas de Brotherton, 74.

Margaret, daughter of Henry III. and Alienor of Savoy, 35; married to the King of Scotland, 35.

Mark, the Gospel of St., quoted, 132, 181.

Markham, John, Justiciar. See Deputation.

Marshal, (Roger Bigod,) Earl, with the Earl of Hereford, opposes King Edward I., 74; on the death of the Earl, he submits, 74; makes Edward I. his heir, 74; the King gives his Earldom to his son, Thomas de Brotherton, 74.

Marshal, John, Earl, acknowledges that he was aware of the project of the Duke of York, 399; he is pardoned, 399; with the Archbishop of York, draws up a list of grievances, 403-405; joins the interview with the Earl of Westmorland, though reluctantly, 407; and executed, 409; grief of Sir John Grenecornwall for his death, 411; their connexion by marriage, 411.

Marshal, Thomas, Earl, escorts the King of France at Guynes, 190; suborned as an accuser of the arrested nobles, 207. See Norfolk, and Nottingham.

Martin IV., Pope, lays an Interdict on the territories of Peter (Pedro) III. of Aragon, 42.

Mary of Woodstock, daughter of Edward I., assumes the veil at Amesbury, 48.

Massy de Podyngone, Sir John, slain at Shrewsbury, 369.

Matthew, the Gospel of St., alluded to, 8; quoted, 99, 132, 177, 178, 181.

Maudut, Sir Thomas, executed, 12-1.

Meleyn, the Viscount de, escorts King Richard II., 190; is entertained by Richard in the Castle of Guynes, 192.

Mendicant Orders, the, flatter Richard II., 234; enactment by Parliament as to the, 349.

Menteith (Menthez), John de, at Newcastle on Tyne, 134.

Merk, Thomas, Bishop of Carlisle. See Carlisle.

Merk, the Count de St. Pol besieges the Castle of, but is defeated, 400.

Merlawe, Richard, appointed Treasurer for War, 379.

Merton, Walter de, appointed Chancellor by Henry III., 9.

Middlesex, Robert de Baldock (Baudake), Archdeacon of, 133, 147, 148.

Middleton, Gilbert de, plunders the Pope's envoys, and imprisons the Bishop of Durham, forcing him to pay ransom, 99; extends his ravages even to the Priory of Tynemouth, 100; is taken by stratagem, at Mitford Castle, 100, 101; is taken to Newcastle, 101; from thence, by sea, to Grimsby, 101; from thence, with great indignity, to London, 101; where he is executed, 101; his brother is taken with him, 101.

Milan, lands between, and Rome, recovered by Pope Innocent VII., 418.

Milford Haven, French forces arrive at, in aid of Glendower, but experience losses, 415.

Minorite Friars, arrested for treason against Henry IV., 340; one of them is hanged, 340; eight executed for treason, 341; magical devices attributed to the, against King Henry IV., 343, 344. See Friars Minors.


Miracle at Rome, 322.

Miracles alleged to have been wrought by St. Alban, 420.

Mitford, John, Bishop of Chichester. See Chichester.

Mitford, the Bishop of Durham is detained in the Castle of, 99; Gilbert de Middleton is taken prisoner, by stratagem, at, 100, 101.

Mitton on Swale, defeat of the English by the Scots at, 103, 104.
INDEX. 515

Mompesade, Ralph Basset retires to the Castle of, 145.
Montagu, John, a leader of the Lollards, 174.
Montgomery, Lord, taken prisoner, 346.
Montgomery, Llewelyn comes to, from Snowdon, 40.
Montfort, Guido de, is sent into exile, 20.
Montfort, Henry de, slain at the Battle of Evesham, 20.
Montfort, Simon de. See Leicester, Simon, Earl of.
Montfort, Simon de, the Younger, is defeated by Prince Edward, 17; enters Kenilworth Castle, 17; is sent into exile, 20.
Montfort, the Countess de, is escorted by Prince Edward to her native land, 20.
Moot, succession of John, Abbot of St. Alban's, 195. See St. Alban's.
Moray, Thomas Randolph, Earl of, at Newcastle on Tyne, 133.
Moray, the Earl of, taken prisoner, 346.
Morley (Murlee), Thomas, Lord de, challenges the Duke of Albermarle in Parliament, 310; challenges the Earl of Salisbury for complicity in the death of the Duke of Gloucester, 313; the Earl asserts his readiness to accept the challenge, 314.
Mortimer, Edmund, captured by Owen Glendower, 341; said to have been willingly captured, 341; marries the daughter of Glendower, 349; his aid is relied on by Henry Percy, in his insurrection, 361.
Mortimer, Sir Hugh, slain at the Battle of Shrewsbury, 369.
Mortimer, Sir Roger, the Elder, dies in confinement, at Bristol, 147. See Mortimers.
Mortimer, Sir Roger, the Younger, escapes from the Tower of London, 145. See Mortimers.
Mortimers, the two, attempt to gain possession of the Land of Gower, 107; they submit to the King, and are confined in the Tower of London, 111.
Mountburgh, in Normandy, burnt by the English, 403.
Mounray, Sir John de, marries the daughter of Sir William de Brewes, 107; expects to gain the Land of Gower, in right of his wife, 107; is executed, 124.
Munchensy, Sir William de, besieges the Castle of Glosseran, 43; is slain there, 43.
Murrain, among cattle in England, 104; begins in Essex, 105; said to have prevailed in France, 105.

N.

Navarre, the King of, dies, 70; Edmund, Earl of Lancaster, marries his widow, 70, 71; the daughter of the King of, married to the heir to the French throne, 70, 71; how joined to the kingdom of France, 71; Cherbourg restored to the King of, 164. See Philip IV.
Nemesis, the Goddess, alluded to, 185.
Nero, a wrong allusion made to him, 146.
Neustria (or Normandy), successes of Henry de Pay in, 387, 388. See Normandy.
Neville, Lord de, at the trial of the Earl of Arundel, is ordered to remove his belt, 214; made Earl of Westmoreland, 223. See Westmoreland.
Newcastle on Tyne, Edward II. proceeds to, with Piers de Gaveston, from York, 75; the Barons seize Piers de Gaveston's effects at, 75; Edward II. passes through, 83; one of the few places in safety from the Scots, 91; Gilbert de Middleton is brought to, 101; Edward II. collects an army at, for the invasion of Scotland, 125; certain English Barons and others meet the envoys of Robert de Brus at, 133, 134; the Earl of Northumberland returns to, 371.
Newmarket, inundation at, 159.
Newminster, Edward II. waits near, to intercept the Scots, 104.
Nicholas IV., Pope, his anger, on asylum being given by Philip IV. of France to the Jews, 57.
Nicopolis, the Battle of, alluded to, 185.
Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray, Duke of, a principal adviser of Richard II., 223; the Duke of Hereford gives information to Richard against him, 225; a duel between them is arranged at Coventry, 226; public feeling against the Duke, for the murder of the Duke of Gloucester, 226; the duel is forbidden by the King, and he is condemned to perpetual banishment, 226; alleged assertion by, as to his authority for the murder of the Duke of Gloucester, 309; death of, returning from Jerusalem, 321. See Marshal, and Nottingham.
Norfolk, Margaret, dowager Countess of, is made Duchess of, 222; death of, 223; is buried at the Church of the Friars Minors, London, 233.
Norfolk, the Duchess of, widow of Thomas, Duke of Norfolk, 370.
Norfolk, singular fraud practised upon the religious houses of, 183, 184; the people of, suffer from the piracy of the people of Denmark, 186.
Northam, William, a hermit, recommends Robert Waldene to vacate the Archbishops of Canterbury, 231; prophesies to King Richard II. as to his fate, 231, 232; is sent to the Tower of London, 232.
Normandy, the coast of, ravaged by the English, 401. See Neustria.
Normans, quarrel of certain, with English sailors, 51; many slain in battle with the English, 52; hostilities of the, against the English, 53; fear of the English manifested by the, 53.
North of England, the, ravaged by the Scots, 91.
North Wales, Conway, in, 249.
Northumberland, Henry, Earl of, is censured for allowing the Scots to ravage that county, 164; escorts the King of France at Guynes, 190; by Richard II.'s order, exhumes the body of the Earl of Arundel, 219; joins the Duke of Lancaster, 245; accompanies the Duke of Lancaster to Bristol, 246; has an interview with King Richard at Conway, 249; accompanies Richard and the Duke of Lancaster to London, 250; reads to King Richard, in the Tower, his promise, at Conway, to resign the crown, 253; is made Constable of England, 282; attends Convocation on the King's behalf, 289; the Isle of Man is given to him, 311; Examiner of Bills in Parliament, 312; censured for his leniency, as a member of the Council, towards the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester, 320; his son, Thomas, dies in Spain, 342; pursues and defeats the Scots, at Homildon Hill, 344; lays waste Scotland, 360, 361; his complaints answered by King Henry IV., 363; hastens to join his son, but is stopped by the Earl of Westmoreland, on his march, 371; he returns to Newcastle on Tyne, 371; thence to Warkworth Castle, 371; meets the King at York, and is placed in safe keeping, 372; is restored to his possessions, 379; the Isle of Man is excepted, 379; attends Henry IV. at Pontefract, with his grandsons, 390; his design to seize the Earl of Westmoreland is frustrated, 400; prepares to revolt against Henry IV., 402; the King prepares to pursue him, 411; the Earl retreats to Berwick, 411; the Mayor reluctantly admits him, 412; his compunction on finding that the Earl is in rebellion, 412; he is excused by the King, 412; flies to
INDEX.

Northumberland, Henry, Earl of—cont.
Scotland, 414; is received by Sir David Fleming, 414; leaves Scotland, and flies to Wales, 418. See Deputation.

Northumberland, disease among sheep introduced into, by a sheep from Spain, 38; ravaged by the Scots, 91; the rights and possessions of Gilbert de Middleton and his brothers in the County of, are forfeited, 101; the Scots ravage the County of, 164; people of, plunder the followers of Richard II., 249.

Northumberland, the King of Denmark, King of, 412, 413.
Norwich, (John Salmon,) the Bishop of, appointed an envoy to France, 152; Crusade of Henry Spencer, Bishop of, alluded to, 201; Spencer succeeds at the timid councillors of King Richard II., 244; he continues his opposition to the Duke of Lancaster, 246; is captured, 246.

Norwich, the Cathedral is ravaged by fire, 28; King Henry III. takes vengeance on the incendiaries, 28, 36; William de Brunham, Prior, 29.

Nottingham, Thomas Mounbray, Earl of, accompanies Richard II. to Ireland, 172; recovers the Lands of Gower, against the Earl of Warwick, 201; son-in-law of the Earl of Arundel, attends at his execution, 216, 217; the Earl rebukes him, 217; by the King's order, exhumes the body of the Earl of Arundel, 219; is ordered by King Richard, under pain of death, to slay the Duke of Gloucester, 221; obeys the King's order, and has the Duke suffocated, 221; is created Duke of Norfolk, 222. See Marshal, and Norfolk.

Nottingham, Edward II. keeps Christmas at, 152; Richard II. convenes the peers at, and subornes accusers of the arrested nobles, 207.

O.

Ocell'Ouelon (?), submission of, to the English, 172.

Ointment, story of the sacred, delivered by the Virgin Mary to Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury, 297.

Opa, the Castle of, taken by Edward I., 40.

Ordinances, the, are ratified by King Edward II., 65, 67; sentence of excommunication promulgated against all breakers of the, 67; they are read in the Church of St. Paul at London, 67; general pursuit of them, 67; the, provide for the banishment of Piers Gaveston, 67; names of the supporters of the, 73, 74; the Barons demand the fulfilment of the, 77.

Ordination of Acolytes by the Abbot of St. Alban's, 338.

Orkney Islands, the, invaded by the English, 333.

Orleans, the Duke of, meets King Richard II., 189; receives presents from him, 189; escorts Richard, 190; is entertained by King Richard in the Castle of Guynes, 192; they exchange gifts, 192; is excepted in the truce with France, 372.

Orleans, the Bishop of, sent as an envoy by the Pope, to establish peace, 151; levies a tallage for his expenses, and returns home, 151, 152.

Orleans, Reginald de Asser, Canon of, 147.

Oswin, Saint, injuries committed by Gilbert de Middleton upon, 101.

"Our Lady of Peace," Chapel to be dedicated to, on the site of the interview between the Kings of England and France, 191.

Ovid quoted, 218, 382, 383.

Owdeby, John, Clerk, appointed Treasurer for War, 370.
Oxford, Aubrey de Vere created Earl of, 157; his mansion at Hadley, in Essex, 327.

Oxford, Robert de Vere, Earl of, his death at Louvain, 157; his body is brought from Louvain, and buried at Colne in Essex, 184, 185; Richard II. orders the coffin to be opened, and views the body, 185.

Oxford, Robert Alum, Chancellor of, nominated Archbishop of York, by the Pope, 419; Henry IV. forbids it, 419.

Oxford, disturbances between the scholars and burgesses of 59; Sir Fulk de Neirmith, slain at, 59; the body of Piers de Gaveston, for a time, buried at, 77; the Duke of York, with the Council of King Richard, retires to, 244, 245; Henry IV. proceeds to, 329; certain conspirators are executed at, 330.

Oxford, the Provisions of, enacted by King Henry III., 5, 35.

Pay, Henry de, remarkable success of, against the French, 386-388; with Lord Berkeley, he burns French ships arriving in aid of Glendower, 415; takes also fourteen ships, 415.

Pedro, III., King of Aragon, captures Philip, son of Charles II., King of Sicily, 42; his death in battle, 42; Interdict on his territories, 42.

Pedro, King of Spain, his daughter, Constance, wife of the Duke of Lancaster, 162.

Pembroke, Aymer, Earl of, insulted by Piers de Gaveston, at the Tournament at Wallingford, 65; opposes Edward II. 74; with the Earl of Warenne, captures Gaveston, at Scarborough, 76; promises the King to keep him in safety up to a certain day, 76; while visiting his wife, at Dadinton, near Warwick, the Earl of Warwick seizes Gaveston from his custody, 76; with difficulty, he escapes from the Battle of Bannockburn, 85; at Newcastle on Tyne, 133; sent as envoy to France, 150; he dies there, 150.

Pennecharc, in Bretagne, ravaged by the English, 376.

Parwich, John, Doctor of Divinity, heavily fined for preaching against the tyranny of Richard II., 223.

Par, Sir William, sent as envoy to Spain, by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320.

Paradise, life of the first man in, 131.

Parliament is prevailed upon to delegate its powers, 222; the Rolls of, are unlawfully altered, 222; Knights of, their expenses paid by the constituencies, 418.

Parliaments, held or mentioned, 23, 33, 66, 80, 81, 88, 89, 90, 94, 95, 102, 142, 152, 155, 166, 169, 173, 182, 195, 202, 203, 208, 209, 214, 219, 221, 222, 251, 257, 283, 288, 300, 301-308, 311-314, 320, 335, 349, 376, 377, 378, 391, 392, 418, 419.

Pay, Henry de, remarkable success of, against the French, 386-388; with Lord Berkeley, he burns French ships arriving in aid of Glendower, 415; takes also fourteen ships, 415.
Percy, Sir Henry, the Younger—cont. marshals his forces, 365; calls to mind a prophecy as to the place of his death, 365; Henry IV. offers him terms, 366; he is deceived by the Earl of Worcester, as alleged, 366, 367; engages the royal troops, 367; is slain, 368; his body is exposed to public view, 370.

Percy, Ralph, guards the West March against the Scots, 164.

Percy, Sir Thomas, appointed Steward by Richard II., 156, 205; the Duke of Gloucester is placed by King Richard in his custody, 205; he announces the flight of King Richard to his household, 248, 249; as Seneschal, breaks his wand of office, 249; bears the wand of office before Henry IV., 291; on behalf of the Seneschal of the kingdom, examines Sir William Bagot, 308; from illness, unable to pronounce judgment against the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester, 315; succeeds Prince Thomas as Seneschal of England, 337. See Worcester.

Percy, Sir Thomas, son of Henry, Earl of Northumberland, dies in Spain, 342, 390; his son defeats the Scots, 342; his son attends the Duke of Northumberland to Pontefract, 390.

Pereris, R., Sheriff of Essex and Hertford, mandate to, with the view of alleviating the dearth, 89.

Pestilence, a, in England, 94; in Essex, 169.

Peter, Saint, his escape from prison, 146.

Philip III., King of France, death of, 42.

Philip IV., (the Fair,) King of France, his anger against the English, 51; King Edward I. declines to attend his Parliament, 52, 53; Edward makes offers of peace to him, 53, 54; he accepts the offer, 54; enters Bordeaux, to give Edward I. resecisn of Gascoigne, 54; then withdraws his assent, 55; his character as a glutton, 55; gives the Jews, expelled from England, an asylum at Amiens, 57; Edward I. appeals to Pope Boniface VIII. against him, 58; Edward II. mar-

Philip IV., King of France—cont. carries his daughter, Isabella, 65; Isabella complains to him of her state of indigence, through the avarice of Piers de Gaveston, 68; he rebukes the English in consequence, 68; threatens Gaveston with his vengeance, on his entering France, 68, 69; when heir to the French throne, marries the daughter of the King of Navarre, 71.

Philip, son of Charles II. of Sicily, captured by Pedro III., King of Aragon, 42.

Philippa, daughter of Henry IV., is asked in marriage for the King of Denmark (Eric VII.), 412; proclaimed "Queen of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden," 417; is escorted by the King and Queen to Lynn, 419, 420.

Picts, the, attack England, 132.

Pilate, his reconciliation with Herod, 8.


Plashy (or Pleshy), in Essex, King Richard II. arrests the Duke of Gloucester at, 203-206; the Earl of Huntingdon is carried prisoner to, 327; the body of the Earl is buried in the College of Priests at, 329.

Plymouth, burnt by the Bretons, 373, 374; churlishness shown by the inhabitants, 373; the people of, furnish ships against the Bretons, 375; the Sieur de Castellis is elated by his achievements at, 382.

Poitevins (?) many slain in battle with the English, 52.

Poitiers, the Bishop of, and the Cardinal of Saint Prisca, at St. Alban's, as mediators between Edward II. and the Barons, 78; they are repulsed by the Barons, 78; retire from St. Alban's to London, in alarm, 78.

Pontefract, judgment pronounced against Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, at 112; the captured Barons brought before Edward II. at, 127; Richard II. said to have died of starvation in the Castle of, 330, 331; the Earl of Northumberland attends Henry IV. at, 390.
Ponthieu, the French require the King of England to renounce his title to, 152.
Portugal, the bastard daughter of the King of, is married, at London, to the Earl of Arundel, 416, 417.
Power, the Priest of, submits to the English, 173.
Prelates, the, great cowardice shown by, in reference to the revocation of charters of pardon granted by Richard II., 211, 212; they submit to threats, and the King's dictation, 212; nominate Sir Thomas Percy their proxy, 213.
Preston, William de, slain at Homildon Hill, 346.
Primacy, understanding as to the; between the Archbishops of Canterbury and York, 88.
Prodigies seen, 332.
Prodigy, near Bedford, 229.
Prophecy, an alleged, 237. See Hermit.
Provisors, demand by the Pope of the repeal of the Statute against, 228.
PrytweUe, John de, Esquire, the Earl of Huntingdon takes refuge in the house of, 327.
Psalms, the Book of, quoted, 71, 396.

Q.

"Quare Impedit," the Pope, by his Nuncio, demands abolition of the Writ of, 228; the Writ of, objected to by the clergy, 290.
"Quia Emptores," the Statute of, 44, 45.

R.
Radcote Bridge, allegation by the Earl of Kent that King Richard II. is at, 324.
Rain and storm, the English army, in Wales, suffers from, 343.

Ramston, Sir Thomas de, appointed Admiral, 387; as envoy, returns from France, 372.
Ramsay, Sir Alexander, slain at Homildon Hill, 346.
Ramsey, two monks of, make visitation of St. Alban's, 158; the Abbot of, declared Visitor of the Abbey of St. Alban's, 342; his Commissioners visit the Abbey; 342; the Abbot of, accused, falsely, of complicity with Glendower, 416.
Raphael, the Archangel, 3.
Reading, Sunning, near, 323.
Redburn, a cattle-stealer pursued to, 24.
Rees ap Meredith, besieges the King's castles in Wales, 43; is besieged by Sir William de Munchensy, in the Castle of Glosseran, 43.
Reigate. See Ryegate.
Religious, many said to have taken part in the Battle of Mitton on Swale, 104.
Rhenish wine, great abundance of, 167.
Rhodes, the Prior of St. John of, engages the Sultan Bajazet, 185.
Richard II., King of England, keeps Christmas with great magnificence, 155; holds Parliament at Winchester, 155; finds that he cannot assent to certain terms proposed by the French, 157; his envoys effect a truce with France, 158; he creates the Duke of Lancaster also Duke of Aquitaine, 158, 169; false report as to his dealings with the County of Chester, 159; he forbears to inform the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester thereof, 160; they return home, and protest their innocence before him; 160; restores Cherbourg, a pledge to him for money lent, to the King of Navarre, 164; keeps Christmas in the great palace at Westminster, 165; detects a cut-purse there, 165; intends to set sail for Ireland, 166, 171; visits the Abbey and Abbot of St. Alban's, 167; promises certain concessions to the Abbot, which promises are not performed...
Richard II.—cont.
167; death of Queen Anne, his wife, 168; he pollutes the church of Westminster with the blood of the Earl of Arundel, 169, 424; confers on the Duke of Lancaster the Dukedom of Aquitaine, 169; crosses over to Ireland, 172; the Irish chieftains submit to him, 172; he keeps Christmas at Dublin, and remains in Ireland until after Easter, 173; is requested by the English clergy to return to England, in consequence of the designs of the Lollards, 173; with the Duke of Gloucester for his envoy, obtains a grant from the English Parliament, 173, 174; he returns to England, and threatens the supporters of the Lollards, 183; exacts an oath from Richard Stury, that he will not support the tenets of the Lollards, 183; orders the body of Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford, to be brought from Louvain, and buried at the Priory of Colne, in Essex, 185; orders the coffin to be opened, and views the body, 185; the Pope requests his aid against the Lollards, 185; keeps Christmas at Langley, and receives the Duke of Lancaster there, 188; holds an interview with the King of France, near Calais, 188–194; oath made by him, 189; proceeds from Calais to Guynes, 189; the Dukes of Berri and Orleans sup with him, 189; receive presents from him, 189; his dress, 189; his French escort, 190; his brother, the Earl of Huntingdon, bears the sword before him, 190; exchanges gifts with the King of France, 191, 192; entertains French nobles in the Castle of Guynes, 192; exchanges gifts with certain of them, 192; the King of France gives his daughter, Isabella, in marriage to him, 193; he feasts with the King of France, and they then part, 194; grant made to him, by Parliament, 195; he recalls the banished Justiciars from Ireland, 195, 196; news is brought to England that he is about to be elected

Richard II.—cont.
Emperor of Almaine, 199; he sends ambassadors, who, to a great extent, confirm the report, 199; he then commences to practise extortions on the people, 199, 200; meditates the destruction of the Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, 201; invites them to a banquet, 201, 202; the Duke of Gloucester and the Earl of Arundel decline to attend, 202; he dissembles with the Earl of Warwick, and has him arrested, 203; his wonted oath, 202; he persuades the Archbishop of Canterbury to induce his brother, the Earl of Arundel, to deliver himself up, 202; sends to the Mayor of London, requiring his assistance, 203; with a large retinue, proceeds to Plashy, in Essex, to arrest the Duke of Gloucester, 203; particulars of the arrest, 203–206; proclamation, by his order, as to the alleged reasons thereof, 206; he orders that no prayers shall be offered for the arrested nobles, 207; convenes the nobles at Nottingham, and suborns accusers of the arrested nobles, 207; convenes his supporters, in Parliament, at London, 208; malcontents from the County of Chester are summoned to his aid, 208; account of their misdeeds, in reliance on the King's favour, 208; he erects a building at Westminster for trial of the accused nobles, 209; Sir John Bushy's adulation of him, 210; the charters of pardon, granted by him to the accused nobles, are annulled, 210, 211; he threatens the prelates, and they submit to his dictation, 212, 213; he deceives the Archbishop of Canterbury, who is condemned to banishment, 213; the Earl of Arundel is tried before him, in Parliament, 214; he orders the Duke of Lancaster, as Seneschal of England, to pronounce sentence on the Earl of Arundel, 215; is conscience-stricken upon the Earl's death, 218; commands his body to be exhumed, and examined, 219;
Richard II.—cont.

interrogates the Earl of Warwick on his trial, 220; sheds tears on hearing the Earl's confession, 220; sends William de Rikille, the Justiciar, to Calais, to interrogate the Duke of Gloucester, 221; orders the Duke to be put to death, 221; threatens the Earl of Nottingham with death, if disobedient to his order to slay the Duke, 221; prevails on Parliament to delegate its powers, 222; a grant is made to him, 222; he assumes the name of "Prince of Chester," 222; creates many new titles, 222, 223; adds to his shield the arms of St. Edward the Confessor, 223; bestows part of the lands of the Duke of Gloucester and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, 223; shews tyranny and malice against those who expostulate against his misdeeds, 223; his principal advisers, 223; he keeps Christmas at Lichfield, 224; resumes Parliament at Shrewsbury, 224; procures the condemnation of Sir John de Cobham, 224; makes certain promises to him, which he breaks, 224; he grants a general pardon, with the exception of certain persons, whose names are kept secret, 224, 225; obtains Letters Apostolic, by way of sanction of his proceedings, 225; the Duke of Hereford gives information to him against the Duke of Lancaster, 225; a duel is arranged, but is forbidden by him, 225, 226; he banishes the Dukes, 226; consults the clergy as to arbitrary translations made by the Pope, 227; he is offended with their answer, 228; his munificence to the Pope's Nuncio, 228; he determines to avenge the death of the Earl of March, 229; becomes hateful to his subjects for his rapacity, 229; aids the Emperor of Constantinople with money, not men, 230; William Norham, a hermit, advises him to change his course of life, and foretells future disaster to him, 232; he imprisons the hermit in the Tower of London, 232; attends the obsequies of the Duke of Lancaster, 232; condemns the Duke of Hereford to perpetual banishment, 232; recalls certain favours granted him by letters patent, 232, 233; is deceived by false prophets, persuading him that he will be Emperors, 233; is flattered by the Mendicant Orders, 234; borrows large sums of money, 234; extorts money, on certain pretences, from seventeen Counties of England, 234, 235; other acts of tyranny committed by him, when preparing to sail for Ireland, 235, 236; he is said to contemplate the sale of Calais to the King of France, 236; exacts new oaths from the Sheriffs throughout the kingdom, 236; hardships inflicted on certain of his subjects, 236, 237; he entrusts himself entirely to his guard of Cheshire men, 237; an alleged prophecy as to him, 237; when born at Bordeaux, originally named "John," 237, 238; called "Richard" after the King of the Majorcas, 238; he gives expression to his fears, 238; embarks for Ireland, 238, 239; his successes there, 239; how attended, 239; his design to supplant Parliament, 239; treasures carried with him to Ireland, 239; takes with him the sons of the Dukes of Gloucester and Hereford (Lancaster), 239; bad feeling in England towards him, 239, 240; is said to have wished to remove the principal men by judgment in Parliament, 240; while he is in Ireland, the Duke of Lancaster proposes to invade England, and to dethrone him, 240; fears of his vengeance by the well-wishers of the Duke of Lancaster, 243; many receive pay in his behalf, but desert to the Duke, 245; he is summoned back to England by the members of his Council, 245; addresses Henry, eldest son of the Duke of Lancaster, on his father's invasion, 247; has him confined in Trim Castle, 247; many children of the nobles taken into Ireland with him, 248; loss of time
Richard II.—cont.

through his hesitation, 248; he sails for England, 248; in dread of the lower classes, takes to flight, 248; his flight is announced to his household, 248, 249; misfortunes befalling him and his supporters, 249; continues his flight, 249; offers to resign the crown, on certain conditions, at an interview with the Earl of Northumberland, and Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, 249; stipulates for the lives of certain of his followers, 250; surrenders to the Duke of Lancaster, at Flint Castle, 250; accompanies him to Chester, and to London, 250; stays at St. Alban's, on his way to London, 251; is then conveyed to London, 251; begs that he may not be seen by the citizens, 251; is taken to Westminster, and thence, by the Thames, to the Tower, 251; respectful conduct of the Duke of Lancaster to him, 251; Parliament summoned at London in Richard's name, 251; letters directed to the Monasteries in his name, for the examination of their Chronicles, 252; various persons, banished by him, are recalled, 252; he is formally called upon, in the Tower, to resign the crown, 252, 253; requests an interview with the Duke of Lancaster and the Archbishop of Canterbury, before giving a final answer, 253; reads aloud his renunciation of the crown, 254; form thereof, 254-256; appoints the Archbishop of York and the Bishop of Hereford his proxies, to declare his renunciation of the crown, 256; signs his renunciation, and expresses a wish that the Duke of Lancaster shall be his successor, 256; his renunciation is read in the Great Hall at Westminster, 257; it is accepted, 257, 258; certain Articles of Accusation read against him, 258; Oath taken by him at his Coronation, 258, 259; contents of the Articles of Accusation, 259-277; the estates of the realm consent to his deposition, 278; Commissioners are appointed to pronounce sentence of deposition, 278; form of the sentence of deposition, 279; his deposition is announced to him, by Sir William Thornyng, in the Tower, 283, 284; form of the announcement of his deposition, 284-286; answers made by him thereto, 284, 286, 287; his discovery of the sacred Ointment of St. Thomas, and desire to be re-anointed with it 299; is refused by Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, 299, 300; gives it up to the Archbishop, at Chester Castle, 300; a magic scroll found, alleged to have belonged to him, 301; Acts of the Parliament of the 21st and 22nd years of his reign, held to be null and void, 303; alleged intention on his part to vacate the throne, in favour of the Duke of Albemarle, 304; remark alleged to have been made by him against the Duke of Hereford, 304; the Commons request that his evil counsellors may be arrested, 309; they also request that he himself may be brought to trial, 311; he is sentenced to perpetual imprisonment, 313; is taken from the Tower to a place unknown, 313; conspiracy of certain nobles to replace him on the throne, 323; allegation by the Earl of Kent that he has escaped from prison, and is at Radcote Bridge, 324; the Earl endeavours to arouse the people in his favour, 324, 325; he dies, it is said, of starvation, in the Castle of Pontefract, 330, 331; his body is partially shown on the road to London, 331; it rests at St. Alban's, 331; his obsequies are performed, Henry IV. being present, at St. Paul's, 331; he is buried at Langley, 331; his wife is escorted back to France, 331, 332; King Henry declares that he has had no share in his spoils, 335; he is asserted to be alive, and a conspiracy is entered into, in his cause, 339; reports spread by the army of Henry Percy that he is still alive, 363; that he is to be seen in Chester
Richard II.—cont.
Castle, 363; a hermit, who had prophesied to him, is executed, 372, 373; the French demand tribute from the Isle of Wight in his name, 381; reports of his surviving, which have penetrated even to the King's Palace, are now put an end to, 391; his brutal assault on the Earl of Arundel, at the funeral of Queen Anne, 424; he pollutes Westminster Abbey with his blood, 424.

Richard, brother of the Duke of York, accompanies the Princess Philippa to Denmark, 420; report brought back by him, 420.

Richmond, John de Bretagne, Earl of, 126; he is taken prisoner in Scotland, 140; a subsidy is demanded, for his ransom, 140; and refused, 140; he is appointed an envoy to France, 152.

Richmond, the Earldom of, is given to the Earl of Westmoreland, 311; the Commons pray that it may be restored to the Duke of Bretagne, 311.

Rievaulx, Edward II. pursued by the Scots at, 125, 126.

Rikille, William de, an Irishman, Justiciar, sent to Calais, to interrogate the Duke of Gloucester, 221; in his report, he distorts the admissions of the Duke, 221.

Ripendene, Philip. See Leicester, and Lincoln.

Rochelle, wine of, great abundance of, 167; wine of, taken in French ships, 376.

Rochester, (Laurence de St. Martin,) Bishop of, attends Henry III. to Norwich, 28; Haymo de Hythe, Bishop of, assists at the consecration of the Bishop of Winchester at St. Alban's, 106; William de Bottlesham, Bishop of, preaches before a Convocation of the Clergy at St. Paul's, 289; death of William (mis-named "John") de Bottlesham, 337; succeeded by John de Bottlesham, 337; he appeals to Magna Charta against the Knights of Parliament, 393; is called the "Mercury" of

Rochester—cont.
the Archbishop of Canterbury, 393; his death, 397.

Rochester, King Henry III. retires to, 9.

Rokele, Sir R., dispute, at York, between him and one Bekwythe, 160; Rokele is slain, 160.

Rome, Henry III. sends to, for letters of absolution from his oath, 6; he obtains them, 6; Edward I. repairs to, to meet the Pope, 34; the Romans invade England, 132; discovery of the treasure of Helena, mother of Constantine, at, 228, 229; envoys sent to, by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320; miracle at, 322; a new Senator of, created, 418; territories recovered between, and Milan, 418.

Roos, death of Sir John de, while returning from Jerusalem, 164.


Roxburgh, the County of, 135.

Royston, the town of, burnt, 415.

Russell, John, at London, gives counsel to the Duke of York, 243; his fear, 244.

Ruthin, Reginald, Lord Grey, retires to the Castle of, 338.

Rutland, the Earl of, accompanies Richard II. to Ireland, 179; escorts the King of France at Guynes, 190; accompanies King Richard, to arrest the Duke of Gloucester, 203; suborned as an accuser of the arrested nobles, 207; by the King's order, exhumes the body of the Earl of Arundel, 219; is created Duke of Albemarle, 222. See Albemarle, and York.

Ryegate, the Earl of Arundel retires to the Castle of, 202.

S.

Saint Alban's, John Maryns, Abbot of the Abbey of, alluded to, 4; the town of, is strongly fortified, whence styled "Little
Saint Alban's—cont.

"London," 20; danger threatened to the town by Gregory de Stokes, Constable of Hertford, 21; the townsfolk behead him, 21; a stealer of cattle is executed at the town of, 24; the body of Queen Alienor, wife of Edward I., rests at the Abbey, 50; the Bishops of England stay in the town of, while endeavouring to make peace between Edward II. and the Barons, 78; the Cardinal of Saint Prisca, and the Bishop of Poitiers, sent into England to mediate between the King and the Barons, stay at the Abbey of, 78; agreement that the effects of Piers de Gaveston shall be restored by the Barons to the King at, 79; his envoys, Sir John de Sandale and Sir Ingelard de Warlee, attend for the delivery, 79; on non-delivery thereof, certain letters, in testimony thereof, are made, and read in the church, 79; delivery is finally made, 79; visit of King Edward II. to, 83; he makes offering to the Saint, 83; his munificence to the Abbey for renovation of the Choir, 83; mandate sent to the bailiff of the town, as to the price of provisions, 89, 90; Edward II. at, bread being with difficulty found for the support of his household, 92; mandate sent to the bailiffs of, regulating the sale of ale, 96-98; contribution of, to the army levied against the Scots, 102; Reginald de Aser is consecrated Bishop of Winchester at, 105, 106, 147; Letter of the Bishop of Winchester, providing that his consecration shall not act to the detriment of the Abbey of St. Alban's, 106; the safety of the Monastery is miraculously ensured against the ravages of the supporters of the Barons, 108; Robert Walkefare commits depredations at, 108; miserable end of him and his followers, 108; the Barons remain there three days, and send envoys to the King, demanding the exile of the Despensers, 109; consecration of Reginald de Aser, Bishop of Winchester, at, mentioned, 147; visitation of, by two monks of Ramsey, 158; munificence of German, a shoemaker of the town of, 165; fire at Beaulieu, a Priory of, 167; King Richard II. visits the Abbey and the Abbot of, 167; concessions are promised by him to the Abbot, but are not performed, 167; death of Thomas de la Mare, Abbot of, 195; he is succeeded by John Moot, 195; who receives benediction from the Archbishop of Canterbury, 195; new privilege obtained from the Holy See, 195; the Duke of York retires to, on learning the intended invasion by the Duke of Lancaster, 243; he leaves, for Oxford, 244; King Richard II. stays at, on his road to London, 251; the Abbot of, Examiner of Bills in Parliament, 312; the Bishop of Carlisle retires to the Abbey of, 314; the body of Richard II. rests at, and the Office of the Dead is celebrated, 331; the Abbot is present at his interment, at Langley, 331; King Henry IV. visits the Abbey, 332; death of John Moot, Abbot of, 338; he is succeeded by William Hethworth, 338; King Fleury endeavours to influence the election, 338; the Abbot of, according to the new privilege, ordains monks as acolytes, 339; the Commissioners of the Abbot of Ramsey visit the Abbey, 342; the Abbot gives a subsidy of 100 marks to the King, 374; William, Abbot of, is godfather to the son of Sir William Grenecornwall, the King's brother-in-law, 398; a Council is transferred to, 399, 402; contribution of the Abbot for the necessities of the Pope's Nuncios, 417.

Saint Andrew's, William, Bishop of, at Newcastle on Tyne, 133.

Saint Asaph, John Trevor, Bishop of, a Commissioner to pronounce sentence of deposition on Richard II., 278, 279; sent as envoy to Spain by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320; joins Owen Glendower, 396.
Saint Augustine's, Canterbury, death of
the Abbot of, 415.
Saint Clair, Walter, slain at Homildon
Hill, 346.
Saint Giles, men spoiling the Cell of, near
St. Alban's, are miraculously punished,
22.
Saint James of Compostella, pilgrims to,
162.
Saint John of Jerusalem, possessions of the
Hospital of, 380.
Saint Martin's le Grand, enactment by
Parliament as to sanctuary at, 349, 350.
Saint Matthew, in Bretagne, the French
fleet defeated by the English near, 52;
burnt by the English, 376.
Saint Michael, the church of, at St. Alban's,
50.
Saint Paul's, London, the Ordinances are
publicly read in the church of, 67; Henry,
Earl of Lincoln, is buried at, 73; polluted
with human blood, 164; "Con-
"usions" fixed by the Lollards upon
the doors of, 174; verses fixed upon the
doors of, 182, 183; Richard II.
propounds certain questions to the clergy at, as to
arbitrary translations made by the Pope,
227; John, Duke of Lancaster, is buried
in, 232; Convocation of the clergy in
the Chapel of St. Mary at, 259; the
obsequies of King Richard II. are performed
at, 331; dissensions of the youths of
London in the Churchyard of, 332; a
Convocation of the clergy at, for making
a grant to the King, 373, 374; the
clergy convoked at, by the Archbishop
of Canterbury, as to a grant to the King,
388.
Saint Paul's Cross, Letters Apostolic are
promulgated at, 225.
Saint Pol, the Count de, attends upon King
Richard II., 190; excepted in the truce
with France, 372; besieges the Castle of
Merk, but is defeated, 400; names of the
prisoners taken, 400, 401.
Saint Priest, the town of, in Aquitaine,
144.

Saint Prisca, Arnold, Cardinal of, and the
Bishop of Poitiers, at St. Alban's, as
mediators between Edward II. and the
Barons, 78; they are repulsed by the
Barons, 78; retire from St. Alban's to
London, in alarm, 78.
Saint Richer, Aymer, Earl of Pembroke,
dies near, 150.
Saint Walter, the Chapel of, in Norwich
Cathedral, escapes the conflagration, 28.
Salisbury, (Roger de Martival,) Bishop of,
an envoy from the Barons to King Edward,
109; John Waltham, Bishop of,
the Treasurer, is buried at Westminster,
186; John Mitford, Bishop of Chiche-
ter, is appointed Bishop of, 186.
Salisbury, John de Montacute, Earl of,
suborned as an accuser of the arrested
nobles, 207; King Richard II. stipulates
for his life, 250; he holds the Acts of
21 and 22 Richard II. to be null and
void, 303; denies complicity in the death
of the Duke of Gloucester, 313; is
challenged by the Lord de Morley,
314; asserts his readiness to accept the
challenge, 314; joins in a conspiracy to
slay Henry IV., 323; is taken, and
beheaded by the people of Cirencester,
325, 326; a supporter of the Lollards,
326.
Salisbury, William de Montacute, Earl of,
sells the Isle of Man to Sir William
Screope, 157, 311.
Saltwode, a manor of the Archbishop of
Canterbury, the Abbot of St. Alban's
receives benediction there, 195.
Samuel, the First Book of, quoted, 281.
Samuel, the Second Book of, quoted, 6, 29,
34.
Sancerre, the Count de, escorts King
Richard II., 190.
Sandale, Sir John de, attends at St.
Alban's, in the King's behalf, to receive
possession of the effects of Piers de
Gaveston, 79; on non-delivery thereof,
with Sir Engelard de Warlee, causes cer-
tain letters to be made, and read in the
Sandale, Sir John de—cont.
  church, 79; delivery is finally made thereof, 79; he is appointed (misnamed “Cenedele”) Bishop of Winchester, 105. See Winchester.

Sandwich, men of, aid the Earl of Somerset against the Spaniards, 389.

Savage, Sir Ernald, is appointed Speaker in Parliament, 335.

Savaldores, robbers in Northumberland so called, 99.

Savoy, the Count of, his daughter married to King Henry III., 34.

Say, the Lord de, as envoy, returns from France, 372.

Scaarle, J., is appointed Chancellor, 282.

Scarborough, Edward II. and Piers de Gaveston arrive at the Castle of, 75; the King orders the Castle to be fortified, and, leaving Gaveston there, proceeds to York, 75; it is besieged by the Barons, 76; the Castle is surrendered, and Gaveston is taken prisoner, 76.

Schevele, Sir John, insults Richard, Earl of Arundel, 241; accompanies the Earl of Huntingdon in his flight, 327; is taken prisoner, 328; he is executed, 330.

Scotland—cont.
  104; Edward II. vainly attempts to intercept the Scots, after the Battle of Mitton on Swale, 104; they ravage the country, and escape by another road, 104; Edward II. invades, 125; Edward flies from the Scots to the abbey of Byland, 125; the Scots take prisoner John de Bretagne, Earl of Richmond, 126; the kingdom of, duly awarded to Edward I., 132; early attacks of the Scots on England, 132; a truce of thirteen years concluded with England, 133; the Scots ravage Northumberland, and the Earl of Northumberland is cashiered for allowing it, 164; Ralph Percy guards the West March against the Scots, 164; the Scots take Jedburgh Castle, 166, 167; the Scots give the name of “Hotspur” to Henry Percy, 245; the Scots invade England, and destroy the Castle of Wark, 320, 321; Scottish ships taken by the men of Lynn, 332, 333; Scotland invaded and laid waste by Henry IV., 333; the constant attacks of the Scots on Henry IV., 333, 337; the Scots invade the West March of England, 341; are defeated by the Bishop of Carlisle and others, 342; the Scots, under Earl Douglas, invade the North of England, 344; they retreat, and are pursued by the Earl of Northumberland, 344; they receive a force to resist the Scots, 405; a civil war in Scotland, 418; the son of the King of, is taken at sea, and delivered to Henry IV., 418.

Scrop, Geoffrey le, at Newcastle on Tyne, 133.

Scrop (or Scorpe), Richard, Archbishop of York. See York.

Scrop, Sir William le, buys the Isle of Man of the Earl of Salisbury, 157, 220; suborned as an accuser of the arrested nobles, 207; created Earl of Wiltshire, 223. See Wiltshire.

Seine, Henry de Pay sails up the river, and destroys French ships, 387, 388.
Selby, Walter de, plunders the Pope's envoys, and imprisons the Bishop of Durham, forcing him to pay ransom, 99; retreats to the Peel of Horton, 101.

Serle, the murderer of the Duke of Gloucester, taken by Sir William de Clifford, 390; he is executed, 390, 391.

Seton, Lord de, taken prisoner, 346.

Sheep, disease among, 37, 38.

Sherborne in Elymedon, the Barons meet at, to make complaint against the Despensers, 107, 108.

Sheriffs, King Richard II. exacts new oaths from the, throughout the kingdom, 236.

Shirley (Schirle) Sir Hugh, slain at Shrewsbury, 369.

Shrewsbury, the Abbot of, offers terms, on part of Henry IV., to Henry Percy, 366.

Shrewsbury, Henry Percy is defeated by Henry IV. at the Battle of, 363-368; fierceness of the combat, 370.

Shrewsbury, David, brother of Llewelyn, is put to death at, 41; Parliament is convened at, 222; Parliament is resumed at, 224; the people of, relieved by the presence of Henry IV., 364.

Shropshire, Henry Percy collects an army in, against Henry IV., 361; exemption in favour of lands laid waste in, 380.

Sibyl, the Princess Alonor, wife of Prince Edward, compared to the, 33.

"Significavit," the Writ of, objected to by the clergy, 291.

Simon Magus, alluded to, 183.

Skirlaw, Walter, Bishop of Durham. See Durham.

Slyue, French ships burnt by the English at, 401.

Smithfield, a Lollard burnt at, 336.

Snowdon, Edward I. penetrates Wales as far as, 38; Sir Roger de Clifford sent to Prince Llewelyn, in the districts of, 39; Llewelyn leaves, for Montgomery, 40; Sir John de Vesci ordered to besiege, 41.

Somerset, Thomas Beaufort—cont.

Swynford, is created Earl of, 195; is suborned as an accuser of the arrested nobles, 207; is made Marquis of, 222; after escorting the King's daughter to Cologne, returns to England, 342, 343; victory gained by, over Spanish ships, 389.

Sopwelle, a girl saved from drowning at the mill of, through the merits of St. Alban, 420.

South Tyne, 135.

Spain, a sheep of, introduces disease into England, 38; treacherous conduct practised towards the Queen of, daughter of the Duke of Lancaster, 162; envoys sent to, by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320; high estimate of the Earl of Worcester by the King of, 365; victory gained by the Earl of Somerset over Spanish ships, 389; alleged discovery, by the Spaniards, of the Canary Island, 389, 390. See Pedro.

Spalding, Peter de, Berwick surrendered to the Scots through the treachery of, 103.

Spencer, Henry, Bishop of Norwich. See Norwich.

Spirit, story of a widow vexed by a, 196-198; determined act of self-destruction through the alleged agency of a, 197-199; mischief done by an evil, to the church of Danbury in Essex, 342.

Stafford, the Earl of, slain at the Battle of Shrewsbury, 367.

Stafford, the Countess of, the Princess Isabella delivered into the charge of, 193.

Stafford, Edmund de, Bishop of Exeter. See Exeter.

Stafford, fraud perpetrated by an esquire of, upon the religious houses of Essex and Norfolk, 183, 184.

Stirling Castle, Edward II. hastens to raise the siege of, 83; he loses many troops, 83; the Battle of Bannockburn, or Bannokemore, fought in the vicinity of, 86.

Stokes, Gregory de, Constable of Hertford, fatal folly committed by, 21.
INDEX.

Gowe, Thomas, Doctor of Laws. See Deputation.

Stratford, John de, Bishop of Winchester. See Winchester.

Rickland, William, Bishop of Carlisle. See Carlisle.

rother, Sir Thomas, governor of Jedburgh Castle, attacked by Sir William English, 166, 167; challenges English to combat, but is defeated by him, 167.

ury, Richard, a leader of the Lollards, 174, 182; is compelled by Richard II. to make oath that he will not support the tenets of the Lollards, 183; he dies, 183.

yard de Ermesworth, Lord, taken prisoner, 346.

adbury, appearance of a dragon near, 402.

elleston, near Bedford, 229.

iac, John de, is appointed envoy from France to England, 150; narrowly escapes death, 150.

ly, Sir —— de, an envoy of Robert le Brus to Edward II., 133.

n, eclipse of the, 419.

anning, certain nobles visit Queen Isabella at, 323.

rey, Thomas Holland, Duke of, accompanies King Richard II. from Ireland to England, 248; Richard stipulates for his life, 250; he holds the Acts of 21 and 22 Richard II. to be null and void, 303; challenges Sir William Bagot, 305; defends the Duke of Albermarle, in Parliament, against the charges of Lord Fitz-Water, 310; denies complicity in the death of the Duke of Gloucester, 313; adjudged to lose the title of Duke, 318. See Kent.

rey, John, Earl of. See Warenne.

ale, many English drowned in the river, at the Battle of Mitton on Swale, 104.

eden, the King of, slays the King of Denmark, 413; he is defeated by the Queen of Denmark, and slain, 413; the country is made subject to Denmark, 13, 420.

Swinton, Sir John de, slain at Homildon Hill, 346.

Swynburne, Sir Thomas, takes French ships, sailing to aid Glendower, 415.

Swynford, John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, marries Katherine de, 188; she accompanies the Princess Isabella to the presence of King Richard II., 193; her issue by the Duke of Lancaster legitimized, 195; Thomas Beaufort, their son, 105; Henry Beaufort, her son by the Duke of Lancaster, is made Bishop of Lincoln, 226; allowance made to her, after the decease of her husband, 314.

T.

Tamari, Sir Roger de, marries the widow of Sir John de Burgh, sister of the Earl of Gloucester, 88.

Templars, the possessions of the, are granted to the Hospitallers, 142.

Thames, King Richard II. is conveyed by the, from Westminster to the Tower, 251; the Earl of Huntingdon attempts to escape by the, 326.

Thernyng, Sir William, a Commissioner to pronounce sentence of deposition on Richard II., 278, 279; his opposition to Henry IV. claiming the crown by right of conquest, 282; announces his deposition to Richard II., in the Tower, 283-287; pronounces judgment against the accusers of the Duke of Gloucester, 315. See Deputation.

Thomas, Saint, of Canterbury, his constancy in suffering, 13; Translation of, in the reign of Henry III., 34; alluded to, 179; story of the sacred Ointment delivered to him by the Virgin Mary, 297-300.

Thorpe, near York, Articles of Truce between England and Scotland dated at, 138.

Thunder and lightning, damage done by, 158, 159; most dreadful storm of, 340, 342.

Timothy, the First Epistle to, quoted, 182.

Toad and Lizard, story of a, 423, 424.

Tobit, the Book of, alluded to, 3.

Tournament, by nobles, clothed in monastic habits, 165.

Tournament. See Dunstable, and Wallingford.

Tower of London, Henry III. retires to the, and seizes the public treasures, 6, 8; Sir John Maunsel in the, 8; Henry III. returns to the, from Winchester, 9; the head of Prince Llewelyn to be hung up over the, 41; females taken at Leeds Castle, are sent to the, 111; the two Mortimers are confined in the, 111; Sir Roger Mortimer, the Younger, escapes from the, 145, 146; the Earl of Arundel is executed near the, 217; William Norham, a hermit, who prophesies to Richard II., is sent by him to, 232; King Richard is taken to, by the river Thames, 251; Richard in the, is called upon to resign the crown, 253; the Duke of Lancaster has an interview with Richard in the, 254; the deputation to Richard leaves the, 256; his deposition is announced to Richard in the, 283, 284; Henry IV. proceeds in state from the, to Westminster, 291; the sacred Ointment of St. Thomas found in the, 299; Richard II. is taken from the, to a place unknown, 313; Henry IV. leaves his sons in the, on pursuing his enemies, 329; the Bishop of Carlisle is confined in the, 330; the son of the King of Scotland, and the Earl of Orkney, are confined in the, 419.

Tower Hill, the Earl of Arundel is executed on, 216.

Treasurers for War are appointed, 379.

Trevannant, John, Bishop of Hereford. See Hereford.

Trevor, John, Bishop of St. Asaph. See St. Asaph.

Trim Castle, Henry, eldest son of the Duke of Lancaster, is confined in, 247.

Tuchet, Sir William, executed, 124.

Tudyntone, marvellous event in the Parish of, 197, 199.

Tunis, Louis IX. of France, and Prince Edward, arrive at, 27; Louis IX. dies at, 29.

Turkey, the Sultan of, besieges Constantinople, 166.

Tweed, many Scots drowned in the river, after the Battle of Homildon Hill, 346.

Twinham, Walter de, at Newcastle on Tyne, 134.

Tydyman, the King's physician, is appointed to the See of Worcester, 186.

Tyne, Sir Henry, executed, 124.

Tynedale, the Land of, 135.

Tyne, King Edward II. takes a ship in the Port of, and proceeds to Scarborough, 75; Gilbert de Middleton is conveyed to Grimsby in a ship of the Port of, 101.

Tynemouth, Queen Isabella at, 75; Edward II. proceeds to, with Piers de Gaveston, 75; he leaves, for Scarborough, 75; one of the few Northern places in safety from the Scots, 91; the ravages of Gilbert de Middleton extended to the Priory of, 100.

Typetot, Sir Robert, made Warden and Justiciar of Wales, 43.

Ulster, the Earl of, Sir John de Burgh his son and heir, 86.

"Unlearned Parliament," the, held at Coventry, 391; hostility of its members to the clergy, 391; anxiety caused to the Archbishop of Canterbury thereby, 391.

Usk, Glendower is defeated at, 399.

Utrecht, Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, on his banishment, retires to, 241.
INDEX.

V.

Valence, William de, his alleged attempt to pervert the English laws, 5; he returns from banishment into England, 7.

Vegetius quoted, 125.


Vernon, Sir Richard, aids Henry Percy against Henry IV., 366; is taken prisoner at Shrewsbury, 369; is beheaded, 371.

Vesci, Sir John de, ordered by Edward I. to besiege Snowdon, 41.

Vienne, the Archbishop of, sent as an envoy by the Pope, to establish peace, 151; levies a tallage for his expenses, and returns home, 151, 152.

Vineres, Sir Ralph, the Earl of Northumberland attempts to seize the Earl of Westmoreland in the stronghold of, 400.

Vylainos, (?) the Bishop of, escorts King Richard II., 190.

W.

Wakefield, Henry de, Bishop of Worcester. See Worcester.

Waldegrave, the servants of Sir Richard de, attack a dragon, 402.

Walden, Roger, Treasurer of Calais, is appointed High Treasurer, 186. See Canterbury, and London.

Waleran, Sir E., put in charge of Dover Castle, 8, 9.

Wales, invaded by Edward I., 38; Sir Roger de Clifford sent into, as Justiciar, 39; again invaded by King Edward, to attack Llewelyn, 39, 40; finally conquered by Edward I., 41; another rising in, 43; Sir Robert Typetot made Warden and Justiciar of, 43; the castles and lands of the King of England in, are invaded by the insurgents, 92; misfortunes of the English in, 93; the March of, 107; Edward II. passes through the towns near the March of, 139; Richard II. lands in, from Ireland, 247; the people of, plunder the followers of Richard II., 249; with the sanction of Parliament, the eldest son of Henry IV. is created Prince of, 301; rising in, under Owen Glendower, 333, 334; Henry IV. ravages part of, 334; insurrection of the Welsh against Henry IV., 336, 337; atrocities practised by the Welsh women on the bodies of the slain, 341; Henry IV. sets out to curb the Welsh, 402; Henry IV. hastens from, to York, 407; inundations in, attended with loss to the army of Henry IV., 414; the Welsh are defeated, 418; the Earl of Northumberland and Lord Bardolf fly to, 418; French ships taken while sent to aid the Welsh, 419. See Glendower, and Llewelyn.

Walkefare, Robert, commits depredations at the Monastery of St. Alban’s, 108; miserable end of him and his followers, 108.

Wallingford, Prince Edward confined in the Castle of, 12; Piers de Gaveston holds a tournament at, and offends the English nobles, 65; nobles confined in the Castle of, 138; taken by adherents of the Barons, 138, 139; they surrender it, and take refuge in the chapel, where they are taken, 139.

Waltham, John, Bishop of Salisbury. See Salisbury.

Waltham, the Abbot of, present at the interment of Richard II., at Langley, 321; death of William, Abbot of, 334.

Ware, a priest is taken at, for plotting against Henry IV., 339.

Warenne, John, Earl de, insulted by Piers Gaveston, at the tournament at Wallingford, 65; wavers between the King and the Barons, 74; through the Archbishop of Canterbury, joins the Barons, 74;
Warrene, John, Earl de—cont.

with the Earl of Pembroke, captures Piers de Gaveston, at Scarborough, 76; refuses to attend the King at Berwick, in consequence of his non-fulfilment of the Ordinances, 83.

Warkworth, the Earl of Northumberland retires to the Castle of, 371.

Warlee, Sir Ingelard de, attends at St. Alban's, in the King's behalf, to receive possession of the effects of Piers de Gaveston, 79; on non-delivery thereof, with Sir John de Sandale, causes certain letters to be made, and read in the church, 79; delivery is finally made thereof, 79.

Warwick, Guy de Beauchamp, Earl of, his counsels are recommended by the Earl of Lincoln to Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, 73; he opposes Edward II., 74; seizes Piers de Gaveston, in the custody of the Earl of Pembroke, at Dadinton, 76; puts Gaveston to death, near Warwick, 77; refuses to attend the King at Berwick, in consequence of his non-fulfilment of the Ordinances, 83.

Warwick, Thomas de Beauchamp, Earl of, the Earl of Nottingham recovers the Lands of Gower against, 201; invited to a banquet by Richard II., 201, 202; the King condoles with him on the loss of the Lands of Gower, 202; has him arrested, 202; allusion to him in a prophecy, 206; his cognizance, 206; is accused in Parliament, 209; charter of pardon, granted to him by the King, is revoked by Parliament, 211; he is charged with treason, jointly with the Earl of Arundel and the Duke of Gloucester, 214; is accused in Parliament, and confesses his criminality, 219; is banished to the Isle of Man, for life, 220; the King bestows part of his lands, 223; King Richard promises him a sufficient maintenance, which promise is broken, 224; he returns from the Isle of Man, 252; is inhumanly treated there, 252; endeavours, in Parliament, to excuse himself, as to his former admission of treason, 307; is finally foiled in his attempt at excuse, 307, 308; challenges the Duke of Albemarle, in Parliament, 310; death of, 337.

Warwick, Piers de Gaveston seized at Dadinton, near, 76; Gaveston taken to the Castle of, 76; executed near, 77.

Waterford, Power, the Irish chieftain, submits to the English, near, 172.

Wax, cheapness of, through capture of foreign ships, 419.

Waterton, Robert, stops the Earl of Northumberland in his march to join his son, 371.

Werk Castle destroyed by the Scots, 321.

West March, the, invaded by the Scots, 341.

Westminster, the new buildings at, commenced by Henry III., 35; Henry III. buried in the Church of, 37; Edward I. crowned at, 37; Queen Alia, wife of Edward I., buried at, 50; Edmund, Earl of Lancaster and Leicester, buried at, 59, 72; Edward II. and Queen Isabella crowned at, 65; mandate tested at, by Edward II., 90; Edward II. convenes the nobles at, 139, 140; a Parliament at, 152; Richard II. keeps Christmas in the Great Palace at, 165; he detects a cut-purse there, 165; Queen Anne, wife of Richard II., buried at, 168, 424; the Church of, is polluted with the blood of the Earl of Arundel, 169, 424; “Conclusions” fixed by the Lollards upon the doors of the Abbey, 174; a building is erected in the Palace at, for the trial of the accused nobles, 209; the Abbot of, accompanies Richard II. from Ireland to England, 248; King Richard is brought to the Palace at, 251; the Abbot of, one of a deputation to call upon Richard to resign the crown, 252, 253; the renunciation of the crown by Richard is read in the Great Hall at, 257; the Coronation of Henry IV. at, is proclaimed, 283; Henry IV. proceeds in state to, for his Coronation, 291; the
INDEX.

Westminster—cont.

Abbot of, his duties at the Coronation, 292; the Abbot of, questioned on suspicion of conspiracy, is liberated, 330; the Duchess of Bretagne, on her marriage to Henry IV., is crowned at, 350; meeting of the nobles at, 398; the body of Queen Anne, wife of Richard II., is buried at, 424; the Church is polluted with the blood of the Earl of Arundel, shed by the King, 424. See White Hall.

Westminster Hall, the Barons ask pardon in, of Edward II., 81; a female enters, on horseback, and reminds Edward of his duty, 98; the edict against the Despensers published in, 110.

Westminster, the Statutes of, 38, 44-46.

Westmoreland, Ralph, Lord de Neville, created Earl of, 223; is made Marshal of England, 282; attends Convocation on the King's behalf, 289; appeals to the Earl of Warwick, as to advice given to him, 307; the Earl of Northumberland, in his march to join his son, 371; the design of the Earl of Northumberland to seize him is frustrated, 400; he meets the Archbishop of York, 405, 406; he dissembles, 406; treacherously seizes the Archbishop, 407. See Deputation, and Neville.

Westmoreland, people of, plunder the followers of Richard II., 249.

Wheathamsted, the Barons stay at, to treat with Edward II., 78.

White Hall, Henry IV. holds a banquet in the, 283.

Widow, story of a, vexed by a spirit, 196, 197.

Wight, the Earl of Arundel is kept in confinement in the Isle of, 208; the French plunder the island, 378; the French demand tribute from it, 381; which is refused, 381, 382.

Wigmore, Sir Roger Mortimer, the Younger, lord of, 145.

Wilford, successes of William de, against the Bretons, with an English fleet, 375, 376; he challenges the Bretons to fight, 376.

William the Conqueror, Chronicles from the times of, to be examined, 252.


Wiltshire, William le Scrop, created Earl of, 223; is a principal adviser of Richard II., 223; is said to have farmed all the escheats throughout England, 240; at London, gives advice to the Duke of York, 243; his fear, 244; and other members of the Council, flee to Bristol, 245, 246; he is beheaded, at Bristol, 246; his servants maltreat the Earl of Warwick, in the Isle of Man, 252. See Scrop, Sir William le.


Winchester, death of John de Sandale, Bishop of, 105; Reginald de Asser, appointed by the Pope Bishop of Winchester, in opposition to the monks, 105; refuses to be consecrated by the Archbishop of Canterbury, 105; is consecrated at St. Alban's, 106; letter of the Bishop, providing that his consecration shall not act to the prejudice of the Abbey of St. Alban's, 106; death of Reginald de Asser, Bishop of, 147; John de Stratford, Dean of London, is made Bishop of, 147, 148; King Edward II. desires to confer the See upon Robert de Baldock, 148; Stratford is disgraced, 148; he is finally restored to the royal favour, 148, 149; appointed an envoy to France, 152; William de Wykeham Bishop of, Examiner of Bills in Parliament, 312; death of, 391; his munificence, 391; he is succeeded by Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Lincoln, 391. See Sandale.

Winchester, the Earl of, advances to the siege of Wallingford Castle, 139. See Despenser, Hugh, the Elder.
Winchester, Henry III. at, 9; a Parliament summoned at, 23; a Parliament held at, 155; Henry IV. marries the Duchess of Bretagne at, 350.

Windsor, Queen Isabella gives birth to Prince Edward (afterwards Edward III.) at, 79; Edward II. keeps Christmas at, 88; Henry IV. keeps Christmas at, 322; conspiracy to slay Henry IV. at, 323; the sons of the Earl of March are carried off from, but restored, 398.

Wine, great abundance of, 167; bought up by the great, 419.

Witsand, King Edward I. crosses from, to Dover 37.

"Wo men," play upon the words, 420.

Woodstock, mandate issued by Edward II. at, as to the sale of ale, 95-98; the Princess Alianor, daughter of Edward II., born at, 102.

Worcester, Walter Reynolds, Bishop of, is appointed by the Pope Archbishop of Canterbury, 82; death of Henry de Wakefield, Bishop of, 186; the election of John Green is quashed, and Tydman, the King's physician, succeeds, 186.

Worcester, Thomas Percy, Earl of, sent as envoy to France by Henry IV., announcing his accession, 320; governor to Prince Henry, 361; joins his nephew, Henry Percy, in his insurrection against Henry IV., 361; draws resources from London, 361; a chief supporter of Henry Percy, 365; his previous high character, with the Kings of France and Spain, 365; has an interview with Henry IV., on behalf of Henry Percy, 366; his alleged treacherous conduct, on making report thereon, 366, 367; taken prisoner at the Battle of Shrewsbury, 368; his sorrow, on beholding the body of his nephew, Henry Percy, 370; he is beheaded, against the King's wishes, 370, 371. See Percy, Sir Thomas.

Worcester, the Archbishop of Canterbury meets Henry IV. at, 373; Henry IV. summons the Archbishop of Canterbury to, 414.

Wyclif, alluded to (as Doctor Evangelicus) 176.

Wymondham, fire at, 167.

Y.

York, (William de Grenfeld,) Archbisch of, at the King's request, comes to a understanding with the Archbishop of Canterbury, as to the primacy, 88; (William de Melton,) Archbishop of, takes the Bishop of Hereford under his protection, 141; persists in bearing his cross in the Province of Canterbury, 142, 14; Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of, is set as an envoy of the English clergy, Richard II., in Ireland, 173, 182; leves exactions from the clergy, granted by Papal Bull, 187; is made Archbishop of Canterbury, 194; Richard Scrope, Archbishop of, in Parliament, reads the renunciation of the crown by Richard II., 257; assists in placing Henry IV. on the throne, 281; at Bridlington, at the Translation of John, Prior of that place, 388; aids the Archbishop of Canterbury in the cause of the Church, 392; with the Earl Marshal, draws up a list of grievances, 403-405; places himself at the head of a considerable force, 405; deceived by the Earl of Westmoreland and seized, 406, 407; Henry IV. refuses him an interview, 407; his cross wrested from him, 408; the Archbishop of Canterbury intercedes for him, 409; he is condemned to death, executed, 410; miracles at his tomb, 410; his aspect of his features, after his execution, 410; grief of the Archbishop of Canterbury on hearing thereof, 411; his slay are excommunicated, 417. See Deputation.
ork, Edmund, Duke of, Guardian of England, 173; holds a Parliament at London, 173; takes counsel how to oppose the Duke of Lancaster, 243; by advice of the Council, retires to St. Alban's, 243; summons forces in the King's name, and on his behalf, 243, 244; expresses favourable opinions as to the Duke of Lancaster, 244; sends messengers to the Duke of Lancaster, who says that he will communicate personally, 245; accompanies the Duke of Lancaster to Bristol, 246; his death, 344; he is buried at Langley, near the body of his wife, 344.

ork, Edward, Duke of, is accused by his sister, Lady Despenser, of high crimes, 398; of carrying off the sons of the Earl of March from Windsor, 398; he is arrested, 398; Richard, brother of, escorts Philippa to Denmark, 420.


ork, William de Ayrmine, Canon of, 133.

ork, Piers de Gaveston, on his return from banishment, presents himself to Edward II. at, 69; the Earl of Lancaster sends letters to Edward at, 74; Edward leaves, 75; he returns to, leaving Piers de Gaveston at Scarborough, 75;

York—cont.
Edward passes through, 83; he removes to, from Berwick, 88; he holds a private conference there, 88; the country from Carlisle to, ravaged by the Scots, 91; the Pope's envoys, after being plundered, proceed from Durham to, 99; they leave, for London, 100; the Scots ravage the North of England, as far as, 101; an army summoned to, against the Scots, 102; it is disbanded, without effecting its object, 102; the Scots nearly capture Queen Isabella near, 103; Edward II. flies to, from Byland, 126; Thorpe, near, 138; Edward II. makes inquisition as to offenders in, 139; the Courts of King's Bench and Chancery are removed to, from London, 156; and back again from, to London, 156; visited by the Duke of Lancaster, with a Commission, 160; outbreak at, through a dispute between Sir R. Rokele and one Bekwythe, 160; Rokele is slain, 160; Henry IV. proceeds to, 333; a duel fought there, 333; a prophesying hermit is executed at, 372; Henry IV. hastens from Wales to, 407; the citizens of, humiliate themselves to Henry, 408; the Archbishop of York and the Earl Marshal are brought to, 408; the Archbishop of York and the Earl Marshal are executed near, 409, 410.
INDEX TO THE NAMES OF BENEFACTORS MENTIONED IN THE APPENDIX.
INDEX TO THE NAMES OF BENEFACIORS MENTIONED IN THE APPENDIX.

A.

Adeliza, wife of Theodoric de Forho, 446.
Adeliza, wife of William de Bosrohard, 446.
Adeliza, Pope, 440.
Adrian I., Pope, 437.
Adrian (IV.), Pope, 439.
Aelfstan, 445.
Agnes, wife of John Guimbard, 458.
Agnes, wife of Robert de la Chaumbre, 459.
Allward, and Leofwyn, 449.
Albini, Nigel de, 451.
Albini, Nigel de, and Amicia, his wife, 445.
Albini, Robert de, 443.
Albini, William de, and Cecilia, his wife, 449.
Albreda, wife of Berenger de Totheni, 445.
Alexander, Popes (2), 440.
Alexander, Pope, 438, 440.
Alfred, King, 431.
Alianor, Queens (2), 435.
Alicia, wife of Adam Raulyn, 461.
Almodis, wife of Rodbert, Count of Mortain, 446.
Alured, and his wife, 450.
Alured, Butler of Rodbert, Count of Mortain, 447.
Amicia, wife of Nigel de Albini, 445.
Anastasius, Pope, 440.
Appelby, Master John, 456.

Arsi, Manasses de, 447.
Arundel, Thomas de, Bishop of Ely, 443.
Athetaed, King, 431.
Athetaed, King, 431.
Avelina, wife of Richard Odham, 461.
Ayeliza, wife of Oswulf, widows of Ulf, 443, 444.
Aynel, John, 453.

B.

Bailul, Wydo de, 447.
Bansted, Petronilla de, 452.
Barbere, John, 464.
Barnet, John, Bishop of Ely, 442.
Bayle, Edmund, 463.
Bedul, Thomas, 462.
Belvoir, Adam de, 452.
Benedict, Pope, 440.
Berfere, King, 431.
Bertone, Henry de, 461.
Bertulf, King, 431.
Berwill, Nigel le, 448.
Bibuswarthe, Hugh de, 446.
Blancfront, Walter, 448.
Bloys, Sir Charles de, 436.
Boniface, Pope, 440.
Bosrohard, William de, and Adeliza, his wife, 446.
Bradewey, Emma de, and Hugh, her son, 447.
Burcote, Master William, 456.
Burges, Sir William, 457.
Burtoum, Master William, 455.
Burited, King, 431.
INDEX TO NAMES OF BENEFACTORS.

Bunun, Roger de, 446.
Bury, Richard de, Bishop of Durham, 441.
Bury, William de, 461.

C.
Calixtus, Pope, 438.
Cambridge, Edward de, and his mother, 450.
Cana, wife of Bermond de St. Ouen, 449.
Cecilia, wife of William de Albini, 449.
Cecilia, wife of William Mescinus, 451.
Ceolwulf, King, 431.
Chaumbre, Robert de la, and Agnes, his wife, 459.
Chestone, John, 460.
Chewpayn, William, and Joanna, his wife, 459.
Childewick, Geoffrey de, 449.
Christina, wife of Had, 444.
Clemencia, wife of Richard Egleshale, 460.
Clement, Pope, 438.
Clerk, Laurence, 452.
Cliftone, John, and his wife, 463.
Clohale, Richard de, 448.
Cnut, King, 432.
Cnbwurthe, Humphrey de, 450.
Coelestinus, Pope, 438.
Coke, Master Robert, and Helena, his wife, 464.
Colyh, Roger, 464.
Constance, wife of John, Duke of Lancaster, 435.
Cotemenpa, Aegelwyn, 449.
Cotel, Sir Richard, 457.
Cristiana, wife of John Redyngham, 463.
Crokesle, Richard de, 445.
Croysele, Sir William, 454.

D.
Damasus, Pope, 440.
De la Mare, Thomas, Abbot of St. Alban's, 428, 437, 461.
De la Souche, Lady Elizabeth, 437.
De la Vache, Sir Richard, 454.
De Lavale, See Lavale.
Desbaus, Robert, 450.
Dynesley, John, 464.

E.
Edgar, King, 431.
Edmund, King, 431, 432.
Edred, King, 431.
Edward (the elder), King, 431.
Edward (the Martyr), 431.
Edward I., King, 433.
Edward (II.) of Caernarvon, King, 433.
Edward (III.) of Windsor, King, 433.
Edward, Prince of Wales, (the Black Prince), 433.
Edwin, King, 431.
Edwin de Cadyngtone, 444.
Egelwin the Swarte, and Wynfleda, his wife, 444.
Egfrid, King, 431.
Egleshaie, Richard, and Clemencia, his wife, 460.
Eleutherius, Pope, 440.
Eilhelm, servant of King Ethelred, 443.
Emma, Queen, 435.
Enderby, Master John, 457.
Estune, Matildis de, 445.
Ethelbert, the noble, 445.
Ethelgiva, 444.
Ethelred, King, 431, 443, 445.
Ethelred, Bishop of Dorchester, 441.
Euere, John, and Joanna, his wife, 462, 463.
Euere, Robert, and Helewysa, his wife, 462.
Eueresdone, Humphrey de, 447.
Eugenius III., Pope, 440.
Eydone, Thomas, Esquire of the Abbot of St. Alban's, 462.
Eywode, Roger de, 449.

F.
Fisher (Piscarius), Gerard, 448.
Fitz-Osbern, Hugh, 448.
Fitz-Phrot, Alan, 451.
Fitz-Simon, Gerard, 449.
Flecchere, John, 463.
Fuinnere, William, 461.
Furneux, John, 461.
Fytlyng, Sir Thomas, 454.
### INDEX TO NAMES OF BENEFACTORS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gardinere, William, and Hauwisia, his wife, 463.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geinus, John, 458.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geoffrey, the Chamberlain, 443.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giffard, Walter, 450.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Godoleva of London, 446.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregory, Pope, 438.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gregory IX., Pope, 440.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gumbard, John, and Agnes, his wife, 458.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gunnilda, wife of Walter de Magnaville, 450.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Had, and Christina, his wife, 444.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halsted, John, 463.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamundesham, Walter de, 452.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardecnut, King, 432.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harold (I.), King, 432.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harold (II.), King, 432.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hatfield, Adam Fitz-William de, 449.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hatfield, Thomas de, Bishop of Durham, 442.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hauwisia, wife of William Gardinere, 463.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haveryng, Sir Richard, 454.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hay, Sir John, 454.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helena, wife of Robert Coke, 464.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helewynsa, wife of Robert Euere, 462.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hengham, Ralph de, Clerk, 452.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry I., King, 432.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry II., King, 432.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry III., King, 433.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry IV., King, 434.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henry, Bishop of Winchester, 442.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herbenger, and Hugelina, his wife, 450.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hertford, Robert de, Dean of Salisbury, 452.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hertford, Roger de, 446.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hesdin, Ermulph de, 447.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hesdin, Matilda, daughter of Ernalde de, 448.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heynotaceoffotone, Reginald, 460.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hieg, Alfrie de, 446.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honorius III., Pope, 440.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoppere, Roger, and Margery, his wife, 463.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosiere, William, and Joanna, his wife, 462.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotham, John, Bishop of Ely, 442.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hugh, son of Emma de Bradewey, 447.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hugelina, wife of Herbenger, 450.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntingdon, William de Clyntone, Earl of, 453.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Innocent III., Pope, 440.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innocent IV., Pope, 440.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isabella, Queen, 435.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>J.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joanna, Princess, (wife of Edward, the Black Prince,) 435.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joanna, wife of William Chewpayn, 459.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joanna, wife of William Hosiere, 462.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joanna, wife of John Euere, 462, 463.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John, King, 432.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John, Pope, 440.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John, Bishop of Ardfert, 442.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John, Rector of Hodicru', 448.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John, Abbot of St. Alban's, 455.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juthota, wife of Earl Waltheof, 447.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>K.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keneswurth, Henry de, 449.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kewewulf, King, 431.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knollis, Robert, 453.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kynebelle, Humphrey de, 448.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kynsulle, William, 459.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>L.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lamare, Stephen de, 458.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landesdale, John, 464.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Langeforde, Agnes de, 460.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX TO NAMES OF BENEFACTORS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Langeleye, William de</td>
<td>459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavale, William de</td>
<td>448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leo, Pope</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leofric, the Deacon</td>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leofwyn, Ailward and</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>London. See William</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loryng, Sir Nigel</td>
<td>453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowkyn, Sir John</td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucius, Pope</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucy, Sir Geoffrey</td>
<td>454</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ludokan, King</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luvet, William</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymsey, Ralph de, Baron</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lynchelade, William</td>
<td>463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyndesey, Angodus de</td>
<td>446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyolf, and his wife</td>
<td>451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mabel, wife of Serlo le Mercer</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnaville, Walter de, and Gunnilda, his wife</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mara, Thurstan, brother of William de</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margaret, Queens (2)</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margery, wife of Roger Hoppere</td>
<td>463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marisco, Richard de, Bishop of Durham</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martyn, William</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mason, Rodbert</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matildis, Queen</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matildis, wife of John Pikebon</td>
<td>459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meduana, Robert Fitz-Turgis de</td>
<td>451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meduana, William Fitz-Turgis de</td>
<td>451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercer, Serlo le, and Mabel, his wife</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merlowe, William de, and Rohays, his wife</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merstone, Nigel de</td>
<td>445, 448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mescinus (? Meschines), William, and Cecilia, his wife</td>
<td>451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miller, Nigel</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mordone, John</td>
<td>463 ; his son, 464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortain, William, Count of</td>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortain, Rodbert, Count of, and Almodis, his wife</td>
<td>446, 447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muntfaltrel, Norman de</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.

Nasche, Hugh atte, 463.
Nicholas, Pope, 440.
Noreys, William, 451, 452.
Norfolk, Margaret, Countess of, 436.
Northumberland, Henry Percy, Earl of, 436.
Northumberland, Robert de Munbray, Earl of, 448.

O.

Odiham, Richard, and Avelina, his wife, 461.
Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, 441.
Offa, King, 430, 431, 437.
Oili, Rodbert de, 451.
Onger, Alexander, 460.
Oswin, King and Martyr, 443.
Oswulf, and Aveliza, his wife, 443.

P.

Paul, Abbot of St. Alban’s, 441.
Pelagius, Pope, 440.
Pembroke, John de Hastings, Earl of, 436.
Pembroke, Mary de Saint Pol, Countess of, 436.
Percy, Sir Henry, 437.
Percy, Sir Thomas, 437.
Percy, Lady Mary, 437.
Philepot, John, citizen of London, 460.
Philippa, Queen, 435.
Pikebon, John, and Matildis, his wife, 459.
Pursere, William, 453.
Pyperel, William, 443.

Q.

Quyntine, John, 463.
INDEX TO NAMES OF BENEFACTORS. 543

R.
Raulyn, Adam, and Alicia, his wife, 461.
Redyngham, John, and Cristiana, his wife, 463.
Reynulph, King, 431.
Richard I., King, 432.
Richard II., King, 433.
Richard, Earl of Cornwall, 433.
Robert, Abbot of St. Alban's, 432.
Robert, Bishop of Lincoln, 441.
Roger, 446.
Roger, Chaplain of the Chapel of the Earl of Warwick, at Flamstede, 457.
Roger, the Refectoror, 462.
Rohays, wife of William de Merlowe, 445.
Rokamstede, Godfrey de, 445.
Rolland, son of Herbenger, 450.
Roulonde, Sir John, 455.
Rous, Master Adam, 458.
Rouse, Master William, 457.

S.
Sabrina, wife of Henry Yherdele, 460.
Saint Alban's, Master Reginald de, 453.
Saint Alban's, John de, 454.
Saint Ouen, Bermund de, and Cana, his wife, 449.
Scaliers, Hardewyn de, 446.
Sergius, Pope, 440.
Saxi, a Dane, 444.
Silvester, Pope, 440.
Sixtus, Pope, 440.
Stafford, Nigel de, 447.
Stephen, King, 432.
Stephen, Pope, 440.
Straylere, Alan, 464.
Stukeley, Geoffrey, 461.
Stynnaux, Theodoric, 462.

T.
Tankerville, Master William, 457.
Tannere, Thomas, and Agnes, his wife, 464.

Thekkere, John, 463.
Thomas of Woodstock. See Woodstock.
Thuresfleda, 444.
Tigermulle, Ivo de, 451.
Tolf, a Dane, 444.
Totheni, Berenger de, and Albreda, his wife, 445.
Totheni, Robert de, 443.
Tyler, Nicholas, 463.

U.
Urban, Pope, 439.

V.
Valoines, Peter de, 443.
Valoines, Roger de, 445.
Valoines, Walter de, 445.

W.
Wake, Lady Blanche, 436.
Walsam, Sir Robert de, Praecentor of Salisbury, 454.
Walter, Bishop of Durham, 441.
Walthof, Earl, 447.
Warbelton, Robert, 461.
Ware, Joanna de, 460.
Warwick, Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of, 436.
Warwick, Margaret, Countess of, 436.
Wast, Nigel de, 447.
Wedone, William de, 448.
Wellovere, Sir David, 457.
Wendover, Sir Bartholomew de, 454.
Whittewelle, John, Seneschal of the Liberty of St. Alban's, 458.
Whytewelle, John, 455.
William the Conqueror, 432.
William Rufus, King, 432.
William, Vicar of Redburn, 457.
William de London, 446.
William ——, 448.
Winchester, Alan de, 449.
INDEX TO NAMES OF BENEFACTORS.

Woodstock, Thomas of, 434.
Wulfgar, servant of King Ethelred, 445.
Wulfsin, 445.
Wulsin, 445.
Wyglaf, King, 431.
Wykyng, John, 464.
Wyliot, Master John, 457.
Wynfleda, wife of Egelwin the Swarte, 444.

Y.
Yherdele, Henry, and Sabrina, his wife, 460.
Yhonge, the Executors of Philip de, 463.
Ymayn, the Executors of Emma, 463.
LIST OF WORKS
PUBLISHED

By the late Record and State Paper Commissioners, or under the Direction of the Right Honourable the Master of the Rolls, which may be purchased of Messrs. Longman and Co., London; Messrs. Parker and Co., Oxford and London; Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Cambridge and London; Messrs. A. and C. Black, Edinburgh; and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

PUBLIC RECORDS AND STATE PAPERS.


Statutes of the Realm. Edited by Sir T. E. Tomlins, John Raithby, John Caley, and Wm. Elliott, Esqrs. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts), 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). Price 31s. 6d. each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, price 30s. each.


* * The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. Price 2s. 6d.


Ducatus Lancastriæ Calendarium Inquisitionum post Mortem, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) Edited by R. J. Harper, John Caley, and Wm. Minchin, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), price 31s. 6d.; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), price 21s.

Calendars of the Proceedings in Chancery, in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. Edited by John Bayley, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, price 21s. each.

Parliamentary Writs and Writs of Military Summons, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King’s High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. Edward I., II. Edited by Sir Francis Palgrave. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., price 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 2, price 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 3, price 42s.

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDNANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. Edited by Sir N. Harris Nicolas. 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. Price 98s.; or separately, 14s. each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. Edited by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. Price 31s. 6d.

** The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. Price 9s.

ROTULI CURIAE REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King’s Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. Edited by Sir Francis Palgrave. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. Price 28s.

ROTULI NORMANNICI IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. Edited by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. Price 12s. 6d.

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. Edited by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. Price 18s.


ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216. Edited by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. Price 30s.

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831 to 1837. 1 vol. folio, boards. Price 8s.
Registrum vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. Edited by Sir Henry Ellis. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. Price 31s. 6d.

Ancient Laws and Institutes of England; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbriht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. Edited by Benjamin Thorpe, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. Price 40s. Or, 2 vols, royal 8vo. cloth. Price 30s.

Ancient Laws and Institutes of Wales; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. Edited by Aneurin Owen, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. Price 44s. Or, 2 vols, royal 8vo. cloth. Price 36s.

Rotuli de Liberate ac de Misis et Præstitis, Regnante Johanne. Edited by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. Price 6s.

The Great Rolls of the Pipe for the Second, Third, and Fourth Years of the Reign of King Henry the Second, 1155—1158. Edited by the Rev. Joseph Hunter. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. Price 4s. 6d.


Documents Illustrative of English History in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records in the Exchequer. Edited by Henry Cole, Esq. 1 vol. fep. folio (1844), cloth. Price 45s. 6d.

Modus Tenendi Parliamentum. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. Edited by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. Price 2s. 6d.


THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. Edited by THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. Price 42s. Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11; price 10s. 6d. each.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS. 1466—1494. Edited by THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). Price 10s. 6d.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES. 1478—1495. Edited by THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). Price 10s. 6d.


ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. Edited by FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. Price 30s. Or, royal 8vo. cloth. Price 21s.

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. Edited by FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. Price 40s. Or, royal 8vo. cloth. Price 30s.

NOTES OF MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF PUBLIC DEPARTMENTS By F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. Demy folio (1846), cloth. Price 10s.

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. By F. S. THOMAS, Esq. Royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. Price 12s.
STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH. 11 vols. 4to., cloth, (1830—1852), with Indices of Persons and Places. Price 5l. 15s. 6d.; or separately, price 10s. 6d. each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND; FROM THE Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. By F. S. Thomas, Esq. 3 vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. Price 40s.

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; FOR THE REIGNS OF HENRY III. AND EDWARD I. Edited by CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 vols. imperial 8vo. (1865), cloth. Price 15s. each.
CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS.

[Imperial 8vo. Price 15s. each Volume or Part.]

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reigns of Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by Robert Lemon, Esq., F.S.A. 1856-1865.

Vol. I.—1547-1580.
Vol. II.—1581-1590.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of James I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by Mary Anne Everett Green. 1857-1859.

Vol. II.—1611-1618.
Vol. III.—1619-1623.
Vol. IV.—1623-1625, with Addenda.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by John Bruce, Esq., F.S.A. 1858-1865.

Vol. II.—1627-1628.
Vol. III.—1628-1629.
Vol. IV.—1629-1631.
Vol. V.—1631-1633.
Vol. VI.—1633-1634.
Vol. VII.—1634-1635.
Vol. VIII.—1635.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by Mary Anne Everett Green. 1860-1866.

Vol. II.—1661-1662.
Vol. III.—1663-1664.
Vol. IV.—1664-1665.
Vol. VI.—1666-1667.
Vol. VII.—1667.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Scotland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by Markham John Thorpe, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509-1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589-1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543-1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568-1587.
Calendar of State Papers relating to Ireland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by Hans Claude Hamilton, Esq., F.S.A. 1860. 

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574-1660. 
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513-1616.

Calendar of Letters and Papers, Foreign and Domestic, of the Reign of Henry VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. Edited by J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862-1864. 
Vol. I.—1509-1514. 
Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515-1518.


Vol. II.—1559-1560. 
Vol. III.—1560-1561.

Calendar of Letters, Despatches, and State Papers relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. Edited by G. A. Bergenroth. 1862. 

Calendar of State Papers and Manuscripts, relating to English Affairs, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. Edited by Rawdon Brown, Esq. 1864. 
Vol. I.—1202-1509.
In the Press.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Ireland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by Hans Claude Hamilton, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. II.—1574-1585.


Calendar of State Papers and Manuscripts, relating to English Affairs, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. Edited by Rawdon Brown, Esq. Vol. II.—Henry VIII.


Calendar of Letters, Despatches, and State Papers relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. Edited by G. A. Bergenroth. Vol. II.—Henry VIII.

In Progress.


Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by Mary Anne Everett Green.
THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8vo. Price 10s. each Volume or Part.]

1. THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND, by John Capgrave. Edited by the
2. CHRONICON MONASTERICI DE ABINGDON. Vols. I. and II. Edited
by the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College,
Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.
3. LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aed-
ward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris.
III.—Vita Æduardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. Edited by
Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant
Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.
4. MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de
Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco
Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. Edited by
J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's
College, London. 1858.
5. FASCIICULI ZIZANIIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO.
Ascribed to Thomas Netter, of Walden, Provincial of the
Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the
Fifth. Edited by the Rev. W. W. Shirley, M.A., Tutor and late
Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.
6. THE BUIK OF THE CROCHLIS OF SCOTLAND; or, A Metrical
Version of the History of Hector Boece; by William Stewart.
Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of
Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.
7. JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS. Edited
1858.
8. HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARENSIS, by Thomas
of Elmham, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation.
Edited by Charles Hardwick, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's
Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge.
1858.

10. **Memorials of Henry the Seventh:** Bernardi Andrae Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quaedam ad eundem Regem spectantia. Edited by James Gairdner, Esq. 1858.

11. **Memorials of Henry the Fifth.** I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. Edited by C. A. Cole, Esq. 1858.


13. **Chronica Johannis de Oxenedes.** Edited by Sir Henry Ellis, K.H. 1859.


17. **Brut y Tywysogion; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales.** Edited by the Rev. J. Williams ab Ithel. 1860.


20. **Annales Cambriæ.** Edited by the Rev. J. Williams ab Ithel. 1860.


42. Le Livre de Reis de Britannie e Le Livere de Reis de Engletere. Edited by John Glover, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

In the Press.


A Collection of Sagas and other Historical Documents relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. Edited by George W. Dasey, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.

Official Correspondence of Thomas Bekynton, Secretary to Henry VI., with other Letters and Documents. Edited by the Rev. George Williams, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

Original Documents Illustrative of Academical and Clerical Life and Studies at Oxford between the Reigns of Henry III. and Henry VII. Edited by the Rev. Henry Anstey, M.A.

Roll of the Privy Council of Ireland, 16 Richard II. Edited by the Rev. James Graves, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.


Matthæi Parisiensis Historia Anglorum, sive, ut vulgo dicitur, Historia Minor. Edited by Sir Frederick Madden, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

Chronicon Radulphi Abbatis Coggeshalensis Majus; and, Chronicon Terrae Sanctæ et de Captis a Saladino Hierosolymis. Edited by the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham.


Recueil des Chroniques et anciennes Stories de la Grant Bretaigne a present nomme Angleterre, par Jehan de Waurin (continued). Edited by William Hardy, Esq., F.S.A.

Chronica Monasterii de Melsa, ab Anno 1150 usque ad Annun 1400. Edited by Edward Augustus Bond, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum.


Iter Britanniarum: the Portion of the Antonine Itinerary of the Roman Empire relating to Great Britain. Edited by William Henry Black, Esq., F.S.A.

Annales Monastici. Vol. III. Edited by Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrar of the University, Cambridge.


Chronique de Pierre de Langtoft. Edited by Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A.

In Progress.

Documents relating to England and Scotland, from the Northern Registers. Edited by the Rev. James Raine, M.A., of Durham University.

Willelmi Malmesbiriensis de Gestis Pontificum Anglorum, Libri V. Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by N. E. S. A. Hamilton, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.


February 1866.